



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

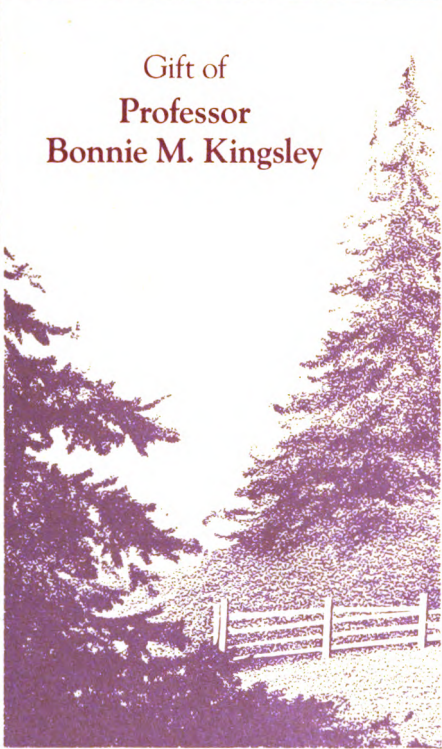
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

SANTA CRUZ

Gift of
Professor
Bonnie M. Kingsley

THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

SANTA CRUZ



Hamilton, Locke and Clark Series.

THE
ANABASIS OF XENOPHON;

WITH AN
INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE
LEARNERS,

ON THE
HAMILTONIAN SYSTEM,

AS IMPROVED BY
THOMAS CLARK,
Editor of the Latin and Greek Interlinear Classics.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, INC.
NEW YORK

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1859, by
CHARLES DE SILVER,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern
District of Pennsylvania.

Reprinted December 1964

Copyright,
CHARLES DE SILVER & SONS.
1887.

Printed in the United States of America

PREFACE.

THIS interlinear edition of the *Anabasis* of Xenophon has been carefully translated by the editor of the Latin and Greek series of interlinear classics. His plan is somewhat peculiar, being intermediate between the systems of Hamilton and Locke. The uncouth and frequently unintelligible sentences of Hamilton are avoided, while on the other hand the verbal and grammatical meanings are given with an accuracy fully equal to his, if not surpassing it. By this plan the sense of the text is also conveyed more precisely than is done either by the plan of Hamilton or that of Locke—every idiomatic and grammatical difficulty being completely overcome.

The work will be found of great service to the student of the Greek language, as it removes many of the difficulties so perplexing in its study.

The use of a few signs and characters, explained on another page, has, in a measure, enabled the author to accomplish what he has above set forth.

THOMAS CLARK.

(iii)

A
4494
A5
C48
1557

EXPLANATIONS

THE union of two or more words by hyphens denotes, that they together express the meaning of one Greek word; as,

γίγονται.
are-born.

When two or more words, employed to express a Greek word, are separated by one or more words placed between them, such interposition is denoted by a figure ' prefixed to the word next preceding that interposed, and another figure ' placed before the next succeeding word; as,

οὕτω διατιθεῖς πάντας.
'having so 'disposed all.

An English word or sentence included within parentheses () is an indication that such word or sentence is not expressed in Greek; as

ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν *παρὰ βασιλέως.*
used-to-come to him of-the (persons sent) from (the) king.

When a word placed in parentheses is italicized, it shows that the word above it is either superfluous or not to be expressed in English; as,

ἐβούλετο τὸ ἀμφοτέρω *παῖδε.*
he-desired (the) both (his) sons.

A dash directs the word above it to be omitted in the translation; as,

ὁ *Κῦρος.*
— Cyrus.

Where an italicized word or sentence within parentheses is followed by another word or sentence, also in parentheses, but not in italics, the latter forms the proper reading; as,

ἐτύγχανε *παρῶν.*
happened (being-present) (to-be-present).

When a word or sentence is put in brackets [] it serves as an explanation, in the nature of a note; but when the reading thus enclosed is to be used instead of the literal translation, a vertical line (|) is placed at the beginning of the reading that is to be changed; as,

ἔχοιεν.
| might-have (themselves) [might be].

(12)

TESTIMONIALS

AS TO

THE MERITS OF

The Interlinear Translation of the Classics.

Testimony of celebrated men in favour of the interlineary system of translations, as being best adapted for learning a language.

MILTON. — We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely in scraping together as much Latin and Greek as might be learned easily and delightfully in one year.

If, after some preparatory grounds of speech by their certain forms got into memory, they were led to the *praxis* thereof in some chosen short book *lessoned thoroughly to them*, [that is, read and translated to them], which would bring the whole language quickly into their power. This I take to be the most natural and most profitable way of learning languages.

[Children] should begin with the chief and necessary rules of some good grammar, either that now used, or any better; and while this is doing, their speech is to be fashioned to a distinct and clear pronunciation, as near as may be to the Italian, especially in the vowels. Next, to make them expert in the usefulest points of grammar, some easy and delightful book should be read to them.

[By this, Milton means that the teacher should read ~~some~~ easy Latin book to his pupils, and translate and explain it repeatedly, until they understand such Latin book, and can themselves translate it.]

JOHN LOCKE, author of the "Essay on the Human Understanding."—When I consider what ado is made about a little Latin and Greek, how many years are spent in it, and what a noise and business it makes to no purpose, I can hardly forbear thinking that the parents of children still live in fear of the schoolmaster's rod, which they look on as the only instrument of education; as a language or two to be his whole business. How else is it possible that a child should be chained to the oar, seven, eight, or ten of the best years of his life, to get a language or two, which, I think, might be had at a great deal cheaper rate of pains and time, and be learned almost in playing.

[The first project of Locke] is to trouble the child with no grammar at all, but to have Latin as English has been, without the perplexity of rules, talked into him, for, if you will consider it, Latin is no more unknown to a child, when he comes into the world, than English; and yet he learns English without a master, rule, or grammar; and so might he Latin, too, as Tully did, if he had somebody always to talk to him in this language. And when we so often see a French woman teach an English girl to speak and read French perfectly in a year or two, without any rule of grammar, or anything else but prattling to her, I cannot but wonder how gentlemen have overseen this way for their sons. If, therefore, a man could be got, who, himself speaking good Latin, would always be about your son, talk constantly to him, and suffer him to speak and read nothing else, this would be the true and genuine way, and that which I would propose, not only as the easiest and best, wherein a child might, without pains or chiding, get a language which others are wont to be whipt for at school six or seven years together; but also as that wherein, at the same time, he might have his mind and manners formed, and be instructed in all other parts of knowledge of things that fall under the senses, and require little more than memory. But if such a man cannot be got who speaks good Latin, the next best thing is to have him taught as near this way as may be, which is by taking some easy and pleasant book, such as *Æsop's Fables*, and writing the English translation (made as literal as can be) in one line, and the Latin words which answer each of them, just over it in another. These let him read every day over and over again, till he perfectly understands the Latin; and then go on to another *Fable*.

till he is also perfect in that, not omitting what he is already perfect in, but sometimes reviewing that to keep it in his memory.

The formation of the verb first, and afterwards the declensions of the nouns and pronouns, perfectly learned by heart, facilitate his acquaintance with the genius and manner of the Latin tongue, which varies the signification of verbs and nouns, not as the modern languages do, by particles prefixed, but by changing the last syllable. More than this of grammar, I think, he need not have, till he can read himself Sanctii Minerva.

As he advances in acquiring a knowledge of words, he must advance, *pari pasu*, in obtaining a thorough and critical knowledge of grammar. When by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little farther, to the reading of some other easy Latin book, such as Justin, or Eutropius; and, to make the reading and understanding of it the less tedious and difficult to him, let him help himself with the English translation. Nor let the objection, that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one. This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning a language. For languages are only to be learned by rote; and a man who does not speak English and Latin perfectly by rote, so that having thought of the thing he would speak of, his tongue, of course without thought of rule or grammar, falls into the proper expression and idiom of that language, does not speak it well, nor is master of it. Languages were made, not by rules of art, but by accident, and the common use of the people; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that, nor anything to trust to but his memory, and the habit of speaking after the fashion learned from those that are allowed to speak properly, which, in other words, is only to speak by rote.

SYDNEY SMITH. — The Hamiltonian system, on the other hand, 1st. Teaches an unknown tongue by the closest interlinear translations, instead of leaving a boy to explore his way by the lexicon or dictionary. 2d. It postpones the study of grammar till a considerable progress has been made in the language, and a great degree of practical grammar has been acquired. 3d. It substitutes the cheerfulness and competition of the Lancasterian

system for the dull solitude of the dictionary. By these means a boy finds he is making a progress, and learning something from the very beginning. He is not overwhelmed with the first appearance of insuperable difficulties; he receives some little pay from the first moment of his apprenticeship, and is not compelled to wait for remuneration till he is out of his time. The student, having acquired the great art of understanding the sense of what is written in another tongue, may go into the study of the language as deeply and as extensively as he pleases. The old system aims at beginning with a depth and accuracy which many men never will want, which disgusts many from arriving even at moderate attainments, and is a less easy, and not more certain road to a profound skill in a language, than if attention to grammar had been deferred to a later period.

In fine, we are strongly persuaded that, the time being given, this system will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed. If there is any truth in this, it will make Mr. Hamilton one of the most useful men of his age; for, if there is anything which fills reflecting men with melancholy and regret, it is the waste of mortal time, parental money, and puerile happiness, in the present method of pursuing Latin and Greek.

THE

ANABASIS OF XENOPHON

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται δύο παῖδες,
OF DARIUS and Parysatis are-born two sons,
 πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, δὲ νεώτερος
(the) elder (indeed) Artaxerxes, (but) (the) younger
 Κῦρος. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἡσθένει καὶ ὑπώπτει
Cyrus. After — Darius was-sick, and suspected (the)
 τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τῷ ἀμφοτέρῳ
and (of-the) (his) life, he-desired (the) both (his)
 παῖδε παρεῖναι. Ὁ πρεσβύτερος μὲν
sons to-be-present (with him). The elder indeed
 οἷν ἐτίγχανε παρὼν· δὲ μεταπέμ-
(therefore) happened | (being-present) (to be present); but he-sends
 πεται Κῦρον ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς ἐποίησε
for Cyrus from the government, of-which 'he (had) 'made
 αὐτὸν σατραπὴν καὶ ἀπέδειξε αὐτὸν δὲ
him satrap, and 'he (had) 'appointed him also
 στρατηγὸν πάντων, ὅσοι ἀδροίζονται εἰς
commander of-all (the forces), as-many-as muster in
 πεδίον Καστωλοῦ. Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν ἀναβαίνει
(the) plain of-Castolus. — Cyrus therefore goes-up
 λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον,
(to his father) having-taken (with him) Tissaphernes as (a) friend.

καὶ ἀνέβη ἔχων δὲ τριακοσίους ὀπλίτας
and he-went-up having also (with him) three-hundred heavy-armed-men
τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν
of-the Greeks, (and) (the) commander also of-them Xenias

Παρράσιον.

(the) Parrhasian.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης
After — Darius died, and Artaxerxes

κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, Τισσαφέρνης δια-
was-established in the kingdom, Tissaphernes ca-

βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, ὥς
lumniates — Cyrus to (the) (his) brother, as-how-that

ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. Ὁ δὲ πείθεται
he-might-be-plotting against-him. — (Artaxerxes) indeed believes

τε καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὥς ἀποκτενῶν.
(this) and also he-arrests Cyrus | as-if about-killing;

δὲ ἡ μήτηρ
[with the intention of putting him to death;] but (the) (his) mother

ἐξαίτησαμένη αὐτὸν, ἀποπέμπει
having-entreated-for-her-own-sake (pardon for) him sends

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. Ὁ δ' ὥς ἀπῆλθε,
(him) back to — (his) government. — But when he-departed,

κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθεὶς, βουλευέται
(after) having-been-in-danger and disgraced, he-deliberates

ὅπως μήποτε ἔσται ἔτι ἐπὶ τῷ
how 'he-shall never 'be hereafter (dependent) on — (his)

ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ' ἢν δύνηται βασιλεύσει ἀντ'
brother, but if he-could he-would-reign instead

ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχη τῇ
of-him. Parysatis indeed — the mother went-for —

Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα
Cyrus, loving him more than the reigning

Ἀρταξέρξη. Ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν
Artaxerxes. Whoever indeed used-to-come to him

τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως, οὕτω διατιθεῖς
of-the (persons sent) from (the) king, | 'having so 'disposes

πάντας, ὥστε ἀπεπέμ
all, [having so disposed all towards himself,] that he-used-to-

πετο εἶναι φίλους αὐτῷ
'send (them) 'away-from-him (inclined) to-be friends to-himself

μᾶλλον ἢ βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δὲ ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν
more than 'to (the) 'king. And also he-took-care of-the

βαρβάρων παρ' αὐτῷ, ὥς τε εἴησαν ἱκανοὶ
barbarians with him, in-order-that not-only they-might-be fit

πολεμεῖν καὶ ἔχοιεν εὐνοϊκῶς
to-wage-war but-also | might-have (themselves) [might be] well-disposed

αὐτῷ. Δὲ ἡθροίζε τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν
to-him. But he-collected the Greek force

ἐπικρυπτόμενος ὥς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, ὅπως ὅτι
concealing (this) as most he-could, in-order that

λάβοι βασιλέα ἀπαρασκευότατον. Ὡς οὖν
he-might-take the-king the-most-unprepared. Thus therefore

ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. Ὅποσας φυλακὰς
did-he-make the collection (of troops). As-'many garrisons 'as

εἶχε ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἐκάστοις
he-had in the cities, he-sent-instructions — to-each

φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν Πελοποννησίους ἀνδρας ὅτι
commander-of-them to-take Peloponnesian men as

πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὥς
many-as (they could) and (the) best (soldiers), inasmuch-as

Τισσαφέρνους ἐπιβουλείοντος ταῖς πόλεσι. Καὶ
Tissaphernes is-plotting-against the cities. —

γὰρ αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις ἦσαν τὸ ἀρχαῖον
For the Ionian cities were — formerly (under the

Τισσαφέρνους, δεδομένοι ἐκ
government) of-Tissaphernes, (they) having-been-given (to him) by

βασιλέως, τότε δ' ἀφεστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον
(the) king, afterwards they-had-revolted to Cyrus

πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου. Δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισ-
all (of them) except Miletus. But Tissaphernes having-be-

δόμενος ἐν Μιλήτῳ βουλευομέ-
forehand-perceived (that certain persons) in Miletus are-plan

νοὺς ἰὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἀποστῆναι πρὸς
ning — these very-same (things) | to-have-revolted [to revolt] to

Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ'
Cyrus, | the indeed [some indeed] of-them he-killed, | the but

ἐξέβαλεν. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς
[but others] he-banished. — But Cyrus having-received | (the

φεύγοντας συλλέξας στρατεύμα
fleeing) (the exiles) (and) having-collected (an) army

ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
he-besieged Miletus both by land and by

θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπ-
sea, and he-endeavoured to-bring-back | (the) having-

τωκότας. Καὶ αὖ ἦν αὕτη ἄλλη
(been)-driven-out (the exiles). And again there-was this other

πρόφασις αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀδροῖζειν στρατεύμα.
pretext for-him | (of-the) to-collect (for assembling) (an) army.

Δὲ πέμπων πρὸς βασιλέα ἡξίον ὦν
For sending to (the) king he-requested (that) being (a)

ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ταύτας τὰς πόλεις δοθῆναι
brother of-him, those — cities (ought) to-have-been-given

αὐτῷ μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρην ἄρχειν
to-himself rather than (that) Tissaphernes (should) rule

αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ
them, and — (his) mother supported him (in)

ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς οὐκ μὲν ᾔσδανετο
this; therefore (the) king 'did not indeed 'perceive

τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, δὲ ἐνόμιζε αὐτὸν
the plot against himself, but he-thought he (Cyrus)

πολεμοῦντα Τισσαφέρνει δαπανᾶν ἀμφὶ
fighting with-Tissaphernes spends (his means) upon

τὰ στρατεύματα· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο
| (the) (his) armies; | therefore 'it-was not 'hated

αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων.

of-them fighting [therefore he was not displeased with their

Καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε βασιλεῖ
being at war]. For — Cyrus remitted 'to (the) 'king

τοῖς δασμοῖς γιγνομένους ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὧν
the tributes arising from the cities, which

Τισσαφέρης ἐτίγχανεν ἔχων.

Tissaphernes | happened having [had].

Δ' ἄλλο στρατεύμα συνελέγετο αὐτῷ ἐν
But another army was-collected for-him in

Χερρόνησῳ τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβίδου, τόνδε
Chersonesus (in the) right-over-against Abydos, this (was)

τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἦν
the manner (thereof.) Clearchus (a) Lacedæmonian was (an)

φυγᾶς· ὁ Κῦρος συγγενόμενος τοίτῳ
exile; — Cyrus having-become-acquainted with-this (man,

τε ἠγάσθη αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
not-only was struck-with-admiration (for) him, but-also gives him

μυρίους δαρεικοίς. Ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον
ten-thousand darics. — But having-taken the gold

συνέλεξε στρατεύμα ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων,
he-collected (an) army | from these — things

καὶ ὀρμώμενος ἐκ Χερρόνησου
[by means thereof], and making-irruptions from (the) Chersonesus

ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, τοῖς οἰκοῦσι ὑπὲρ
he-waged-war against (the) Thracians, — (who) dwell above (the)

Ἑλλήσποντον, καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· καὶ
Hellespont, and he-was-of-service to-the Greeks; and

ὥστε αἱ Ἑλλεσποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι συνεβάλ-
so-that the Hellepontian towns willingly contri-

λουντο χρήματα αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν
buted (the necessary) things to-him for the nourishment-of-the

στρατιωτῶν. Τοῦτο δ' αὖ αὐτῷ τὸ στρατεύμα
soldiers. | This indeed again (was) thus — (an) army

τρέφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ.

being-maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was so

σέτῳ τρέφεται for him]. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς
Aristippus — the Thessalian

ὧν ἐτίγχανεν αὐτῷ ξένος,
being happened to-him (a) guest-friend [happened to be his

καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν
 guest bound by the ties of hospitality], and being-pressed by the
 ἀντιστασιωτῶν οἰκοὶ ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον, καὶ
 opposite-faction at-home he-goes to — Cyrus, and
 αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ μισθῶν
 requests (of) him — two-thousand mercenaries, and pay

τριῶν μηνῶν, ὥς οὕτω ἂν περιγε-
 (for them for) three months, as thus | 'he might 'have-been
 νόμος τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.
 superior [so that he might be superior to] the opposite-faction.

Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρα-
 — But Cyrus gives him to (the number of) four-
 χιλιῶν καὶ μισθόν ἕξ μηνῶν, καὶ δεῖται
 thousand and pay (for) six months, and he-requests

αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς
 of-him he-'would not first 'terminate (the strife) against

τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν συμβουλευέσθαι
 the opposite-faction before (that) — he-should-consult

κῦτῳ. Οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ στράτευμα τρε-
 with-him [Cyrus]. | Thus — again — (an) army being-

φόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ
 maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was secretly

ἐν Θετταλίᾳ. Ἐκέλευσε Πρόξενον
 maintained for him] in Thessaly. He-ordered Proxenus

δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ὄντα ξένον αὐτῷ
 — the Boeotian | being (a) guest (of) him [who was in the ties

λαβόντα πλείστους
 of hospitality with him] (that) | having-taken [having collected] as-many

ἄνδρας ὅτι παραγενέσθαι, ὥς βουλόμενος
 men as-possible to-come-to (him), as-if he-were-wishing

στρατεύεσθαι εἰς Πισίδας, ὥς, τῶν
 to-lead-an-army against (the) Pisidians, in-as-much-as, the

Πισιδῶν παρεχόντων πράγματα τῇ χώρᾳ ἑαυτοῦ.
 Pisidians being-pretending thing in-the province of-himself

Ἐκέλευσε δὲ Σοφαίνετον
 [for the Pisidians infested his territories]. He-ordered also Sophænebes

τον Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, τούτους
 the Stympheian and Socrates the Achaian, these
 καὶ ὄντας ξένους, λαβόντας
 also being (his) guest-friends, (that) | having-taken [having collected]
 πλείστους ἄνδρας ὅτι ἔλθειν, ὥς
 as-many men as-possible | to-have-come [to come to him], as
 πολεμήσωι Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι
 he-was-about-waging-war against-Tissaphernes with the exiles
 τῶν Μιλησίων. Καὶ οὗτοι ἐποιοῦν οὕτως.
 of-the Milesians. And they did so.

CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἤδη πορεύεσθαι
 AFTER indeed it-seemed to-him already (time) | to-go
 ἔκω, μὲν ἐποιεῖτο
 up, [to march into the interior against his brother], — he-made
 τὴν πρόφασιν ὡς βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν
 (he) (this) pretext, that (he-wishing) (he was desirous) to-expe-
 Πισίδας παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀδροῖζει
 (the) Pisidians entirely from the territory; and he-collects
 ἐνταῦθα ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν
 there, as-if against these (Pisidians), the — barbarian
 καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα, καὶ παραγγέλλει τε
 and the Grecian army, and he-sends-word not-only
 τῷ Κλείρχῳ ἥκειν λαβόντι ὅσον στράτευμα
 — to-Clearchus to-come (to him) | taking whatever army
 ἦν αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ Ἀρις-
 there-was to-him [bringing all the forces he had] but-also — Aris-
 εἰπῶ, συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς
 saying, (that) having-been-reconciled with — (those opposed
 οἱκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
 to him) at-home | (to-have-sent) (to send) to himself (the
 στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε· καὶ παραγγέλλει Ξενίᾳ τῷ
 army which he-had; and he-sent-word to-Xenias the

Ἀρκάδι, ὃς προεστήκει τοῦ ξενικοῦ ἐν ταῖς
 Arcadian, who had-been-commander-over the mercenaries in the
 πόλεσι αὐτῷ, ἦκειν λαβόντα τοῖς ἰσθμοῖς,
 towns for-him, to-come | taking [bringing] (all) the narrows,
 πλὴν ὅποσοι ἦσαν ἱκανοὶ φυλάττειν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις
 except as-many-as were sufficient to-guard the citadels
 Ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοῖς πολιορκκοῦντας Μίλητον
 He-called-for — also — (those) besieging Miletus
 καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοῖς φυγάδας στρατεῖεσθαι σὺν αὐτῷ,
 and he-exhorted the exiles to-serve-as-soldiers with him,
 ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν,
 having-promised to-them, if 'he-should successfully 'accomplish
 ἐφ' ᾧ ἔστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσασθαι
 (the objects) for which he-took-the-field, || not (first) to-cease
 πρὶν καταγάγοι αὐτοὺς οἰκαδε.
 before he-might-have-led them home [he would not cease before
 Οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπέιδοντο· γὰρ
 he led them home]. — — 'They cheerfully 'obeyed (him); for
 ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα
 they-believed him; and having-taken — (their) arms
 παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίας μὲν δὲ
 | were-present at [joined him at] Sardis. Xenias also —
 παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις λαβὼν τοῖς
 came to Sardis having-taken (with him) the (soldiers)
 ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρα-
 from the towns, (being) heavy-armed-men to-the-number-of four-
 κισχιλίους· Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλί-
 thousand; Proxenus — | was-present [came] having heavy-
 τας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους,
 armed-men — to-the-number-of five-hundred and a-thousand,
 δὲ πεντακοσίους γυμνήτας· Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ
 also five-hundred light-armed; Sophænetus likewise, the
 Στυμφάλιος ἔχων χιλίους ὀπλίτας· Σωκράτης
 Stymphalian having a-thousand heavy-armed-men; Socrates
 δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους ὀπλίτας
 also the Achaean having about five-hundred heavy-armed-men

Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς δὲ παρεγένετο ἔχων μὲν
Pasion the Megarean also came having —

εἰς τριακοσίους ὀπλίτας, δὲ τριακοσίους
to-the-number-of three-hundred heavy-armed-men, and three-hundred

πελταστας· καὶ δὲ οὗτος ἦν καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης
peltastæ, both he was and (also) — Socrates

τῶν στρατευομένων ἀμφὶ Μίλητον.
(among) — (those) serving-in-the-army at Miletus

Οὗτοι μὲν ἀφίκοντο αὐτῷ εἰς Σάρδεις.
These indeed | arrived-at to-him [joined him] at Sardis

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανόησας ταῦτα, καὶ ἡγησάμενος
Tissaphernes - having-observed these-things, and having-considered

τὴν παρασκευὴν εἶναι μείζονα ἢ ὥς ἐπὶ
the preparation to-be greater than as-if against (the)

Πισίδας, πορεύεται ὥς βασιλεῖα τάχιστα ἢ
Pisidians, he-set-out to (the) king as-speedily as

εἰδίνατο, ἔχων ὥς πεντακοσίους ἵππείας. Καὶ
he-could, having about five-hundred cavalry. And (the)

Βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνου
king — therefore, after he-heard from Tissaphernes

τὸν στόλον Κίρου ἀντιπαρεσκευάζεται.
(of) the military-expedition of-Cyrus began-to-prepare-himself-against-it.

Κῦρος δὲ, ἔχων οἷς εἶρηκα ὥρμη·
Cyrus —, | having which I-have-said [as I said] put-himself-in-

το ἀπὸ Σάδων· καὶ ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας
motion from Sardis; (and) he-advances through — Lydia

τρεῖς σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι
| three stations [three days' march], (being a distance of) twenty

καὶ δύο παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Μαίανδρον.
and two parasangs, to the river Mæander.

Τὸ εἶρος τοῦτου δύο πλέθρα·
The breadth of-this (river was) two plethra; [about 200 feet]; (a,

γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὶν ἐξευγμένη ἐπτά πλοίοις.
bridge — was-over (it) connected-together by-seven boats.

Διαβάς τοῦτο ἐξελαίνει διὰ Φρυγίας
Having-crossed-over this river) he-advances through Phrygia

ἓνα σταδμόν ὀκτὼ παρασάγγας, εἰς
one station [one day's march] (being) eight parasangs, to

Κολοσσάς· οἰκουμένην πόλιν, εὐδαίμονα καὶ
Colossa, (an) inhabited town, wealthy and

μεγάλην. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας· καὶ
large. Here he-remained seven days; and

Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦκε ἔχων χιλίους
Menon the Thessalian came (to him) having (a) thousand

ὀπλίτας καὶ πεντακοσίους πελταστας,
heavy-armed-men and five-hundred peltastæ [targetiers],

Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.
(they being) Dolopians and Ænians and Olynthians.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνειν τρεῖς σταδμοὺς
Hence he-advances three stations [three days' march]

εἰκοσιν παρασάγγας εἰς Κελαινὰς οἰκουμένην
(making) twenty parasangs to Celsænæ (an) inhabited

πόλιν τῆς Φρυγίας, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα.
town of-the Phrygians, large and wealthy.

Ἐνταῦθα ἦν βασιλεία Κίρω
| Here there-was (a) palace for-Cyrus, [here Cyrus had a pa-

καὶ μέγας παράδεισος, πλήρης ἀγρίων θηρίων,
lace] and (a) large park, full of-wild beasts,

ᾧ ἐκεῖνος ἐδήρυνεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε
which he used-to-hunt | from horse, [on horseback], | when

βούλοιτο γυμνάσαι ἑαυτὸν
he-might-wish to-have-exercised [when he wished to exercise] himself

τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. Ὁ ποταμὸς Μαίανδρος ρεῖ
— and the horses. The river Mæander flows

διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου· δὲ αἱ πηγαὶ
through (the) middle — of-the park; | and the springs

αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων·
of-it are from the palace; [and its springs issue from

δὲ καὶ ρεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως Κελαινῶν.
the palace]; and also it flows through the city of-Celsænæ.

Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἑρμυῖα βασιλεία μεγάλου
There-is also — (a) fortified palace 'of (the) 'great

βασιλεύς ἐν Κελαιναῖς, ἐπὶ ταῖς
 king [the king of Persia] in Celænæ, (situated) at the
 πηγαῖς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Μαρσίου, ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει
 sources of-the river Marsyas, under the citadel;
 οὗτος δὲ καὶ ρεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ
 this (river) also — flows through the city, and
 ἑμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τὸ δὲ εὖρος τοῦ
 empties into the Mæander; the — breadth of-the
 Μαρσίου ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.
 Marsyas is twenty and five | of-feet [feet]
 Ἐνταῦθα Ἀπόλλων λέγεται ἐκδεῖρα Μαρσίαν.
 Here Apollo is-said to-have-flayed Marsyas
 νικῆσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ
 having-conquered (him) | contending — (they contending) about
 σοφίας, καὶ κρεμάσαι τὸ δέρμα ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ
 music, and to-have-hung-up the skin in the cave
 ὁθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ τοῦτο δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς
 whence the springs (rise); from this indeed the river
 καλεῖται Μαρσίας. Ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἀπεχώρει
 is-called Marsyas. Here Xerxes, when he-departed
 ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ, λέγεται
 from — Greece having-been-defeated in-the battle, is-said
 οἰκοδομῆσαι τε ταῦτά τα βασιλεία καὶ τὴν
 to-have-built also this — palace and the
 ἀκρόπολιν Κελαινῶν. Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἔμεινε
 citadel of-Celænæ. Here Cyrus remained
 τριάκοντα ἡμέρας καὶ Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος
 thirty days and Clearchus the Lacedæmonian
 φυγὰς ἦκε, ἔχων χιλίους ὀπλίτας, καὶ
 exile came (to him), having a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and
 ὀκτακοσίους Θράκας πελταστάς, καὶ διακοσίους
 eight-hundred Thracian targetiers, and two-hundred
 Κρήτας τοξότας. Δὲ καὶ ἅμα Σωκράτης ὁ
 Cretan archers. And also at-the-same-time Socrates the
 Συρακόσιος παρῆν ἔχων τριακοσίους
 Syracusian | was-present [arrived] having three-hundred

οπλίτας, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς, ἔχων χίλιους
heavy-armed-men, and Sophænetus the Arcadian, having a-thousand

ὀπλίτας. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐποίησεν
heavy-armed-men. And here Cyrus made (an)

ἀριθμὸν καὶ ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν τῷ
enumeration and (had a) review of-the Greeks in the

παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σὺμπαντες, μὲν
park, and they-were — all-together, (indeed)

μῖριοι καὶ χίλιοι ὀπλίται, δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς
ten-thousand and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, but about —

δισχιλίους πελτασταί.

two-thousand peltastæ [light-armed men and targetiers].

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς,

Hence he-advances two stations [two days' march],

δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Πέλτας, οἰκουμένην
(making) ten parasangs to Peltæ, (a) peopled

πόλιν. Ἐνταῦδ' ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν αἷς
city. Here he-remained three days; in which (days)

Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔδυσε τὰ Λύκαια καὶ ἔδηκε
Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycæan-rites, and instituted (a)

ἀγῶνα· τὰ δὲ ἀδλα ἦσαν χρυσαὶ
contest; [public games]; the — prizes were golden

στλεγγίδες· καὶ δὲ Κῦρος ἐδεώρει τὸν ἀγῶνα.
strigils; and also Cyrus viewed the public-games.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς, δώδεκα
Hence he-marches-forth two stations, (making) twelve

παρασάγγας εἰς ἀγοράν Κεραμῶν,
parasangs to (the) market-place 'of (the) 'Ceramians, (an)

οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἐσχάτην
inhabited city, (the) last (on the road to Mysia) (and)

πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει τρεῖς
next-to the Mysian territory. Hence he-advances three

σταδμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας,
stations, [days' march], (making) thirty parasangs,

εἰς πεδίον Καῦστρου, οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦδ'
to (the) plain of-Caÿstrus, (an) inhabited city. Here

ἔμεινε πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ μισθὸς ὠφείλετο τοῖς
 ne-remained five days; and pay was-due to-the

στρατιώταις πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ ἰόντες
 soldiers (for) more than three months, and going

πολλάκις ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπῆλθον.
 often | to the gates [to his quarters] they-demanded (It)

Δὲ ὁ λέγων ἐλπίδας διῆγε
 But — Cyrus | saying hopes [giving hopes] | passed-the-time [put

καὶ ἦν δῆλος ἀνιώμενος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ
 them off], and he-was manifestly distressed; for it-was not

πρὸς τρόπου τοῦ Κίρου μὴ ἀποδιδόναι
 of the-nature — of-Cyrus not to-pay

ἔχοντα.

ne-having (wherewith so to do).

Ἐνταῦθα Ἐπίαξα ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος τοῦ
 Here Epyaxa the wife of-Syennesis the

βασιλέως Κιλίκων ἀφικνεῖται, παρὰ
 king 'of (the) 'Cilicians arrives, (on a visit) to

Κῆρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο δοῦναι Κίρῳ πολλά χρήματα.
 Cyrus; and she-was-said to-have-given Cyrus much money.

Κῆρος δ' οὖν τότε ἀπέδωκε τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν
 Cyrus — therefore then paid the army (their) wages

τεττάρων μηνῶν. Ἡ Κίλισσα δὲ καὶ εἶχε
 for-four months. The Cilician (queen) also — had (a)

φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπεν-
 guard with her (composed of) Cilicians and Aspen-

δίους· καὶ δὲ ἐλέγετο Κῆρον συγγενέσθαι τῇ
 dians; and also it-was-said (that) Cyrus had-connexion with-the

Κιλίσσῃ. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοῖς,
 Cilician (queen). Hence — he-marches-forth two stations,

δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Θύμβριον, οἰκουμένην
 (making) ten parasangs to Thymbrium, (a) peopled

πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη
 town. Here there-was, by the road (side) (a) fountain

ἡ καλουμένη Μίδου τοῦ βασιλέως
 which was-called (the fountain of) Midas, the king

Φρυγῶν, ἐφ' ἣ Μίδας λέγεται θηρεῦσαι τὴν
of-Phrygia, at which, Midas is-said to-have-captured the

Σάτυρον, κεράσας αὐτὴν οἶνῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν
Satyr, having-mixed it [the fountain] with-wine. Hence

ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς δέκα παρασάγγας,
he-marches-forth two stations (making) ten parasangs,

εἰς Τυριαῖον οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε
to Tyriæum (an) inhabited town. Here he-remained

τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα λέγεται δεηθῆναι
three days, and the Cilician (queen) is-said to-have-requested

Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ.
of-Cyrus | to-have-shown [to show] | (the) (his) army to-her.

Οὖν βουλόμενος ἐπιδείξει, ποιεῖται
He therefore 'willing | to-have-shown [to show it], makes (a)

ἐξέτασιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν
review in the plains of-the Greeks and of-the

βαρβάρων. Ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας οὕτω
barbarians. He-orders — the Greeks | so

ταχθῆναι ὥς νόμος αὐτοῖς
to-have-been-arranged [so to be marshalled] as (was the) custom for-them

εἰς μάχην καὶ στήναι, δὲ ἕκαστον
in battle, and to-stand (in such order), but (that) each

συντάξει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.

(commander) was-to-arrange | the of-himself [his own men]. | 'They-

Οὖν ἐτάχθησαν ἐπὶ τεττάρων.
were therefore 'arranged in fours; [they were drawn up

Μένων μὲν δέ, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἶχε
four deep]; Menon indeed — and | (the) (those) with him had

τὸ δεξιὸν, δὲ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου
the right, but Clearchus | and the of-him [and his men]

τὸ εὐώνυμον, οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ δὲ τὸ μέσον.
the left, the other commanders — the centre.

Ὁ Κύρος οὖν μὲν πρῶτον ἐδεῶρει τοὺς βαρβάρους
— Cyrus therefore — first reviewed the barbarians

ἢ δὲ παρήλαυνον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἵλας καὶ
— and they-marched-fast-him drawn-up in troops and

κατὰ τάξεις, δὲ εἶτα τοὺς Ἑλληνας
 in companies, and afterwards (he reviewed) the Greeks
 παρελαίνων ἐφ' ἅρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ'
 riding-by-them in (his) chariot, and the Cilician (queen) in
 ἄρμαμάξης. Πάντες δὲ εἶχον χαλκᾶ κράνη, καὶ
 (a) covered-carriage. All — had brazen helmets, and
 φοινικοῦς χιτῶνας, καὶ κνημίδας, καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας
 scarlet tunics, and greaves, and the shields
 ἐκκεκαδαρμένας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ παρήλασε πάντας,
 barnished. After — he-had-ridden-past all,
 στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος,
 having-stopped — (his) chariot in-front-of the phalanx, (and)
 πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατη-
 having-sent Pigres the interpreter to the comman-
 γοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι
 ders of-the Greeks he-commanded (them) to-thrust-forward
 τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι τὴν
 — (their) arms, and | to-have-moved-forward [to move forward] the
 ὅλην φάλαγγα. Οἱ δὲ προεῖπον ταῦτα
 entire phalanx. The (commanders) — announced these
 τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλ-
 (things) to-the soldiers; and after it-was-sounded-with-the
 πυγξέ, προβαλλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα, ἐπίεσαν.
 trumpet, putting-forward — (their) arms, they-advanced.
 Δὲ ἐκ τοῦτου προϊόντων δᾶσσον σὺν κραυγῇ
 And from this going-on more-quickly with (a) shout, | (a)
 δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις
 running happened to-the soldiers [the soldiers commenced ran-
 ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. Καὶ δὲ
 sing] of — their-own-accord to the tents. And also
 πολὺς φόβος ἄλλοις τῶν βαρβάρων, καὶ
 (there was) (a) great fear to-others of-the barbarians, and
 τε ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφυγεν ἐκ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης, καὶ
 — the Cilician (queen) fled from the Persian-carriage, and
 οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἐφυγον καταλιπόντες τὰ
 - (those) in the markets fled having-left-behind the

ὤνια· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰς
things exposed-to-sale; but the Greeks went to the

σκηνας σὺν γέλῳτι. Δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα ἰδοῖσα
tents with laughter. (But) the Cilician (queen) having-seen

τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος
the splendour and the discipline of-the army

ἔθαίμασε. Δὲ Κῦρος ἥσθη ἰδὼν τὸν
was-struck-with-admiration. (But) Cyrus was-delighted seeing the

φόβον ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους.
fear (inspired) by the Greeks into the barbarians.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει τρεῖς σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι
Hence he-marches-forth three stations, (making) twenty

παρασάγγας, εἰς Ἰκόνιον, ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς
parasangs, to Iconium, (the) last town —

Φρυγίας. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας.
of-Phrygia. Here he-remained three days.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας πέντε
Hence he-marches-forth through — Lycania five

σταδμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας. Ἐπέτρεψε
stations, (making) thirty parasangs. He-permitted

τοῖς Ἕλλησι διαρπάσαι τὴν ταύτην
the Greeks | (to-have-plundered) (to plunder) — this

χώραν, ὡς οὔσαν πολεμίαν. Ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος
country, as being hostile. Hence Cyrus

ἀποπέμπει τὴν Κίλισσαν τὴν ταχίστην
sends-away the Cilician (queen) by-the | quickest [shortest]

ὁδὸν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ
road into — Cilicia; and he-sent-with her (the)

στρατιώτας, οὓς Μένων εἶχε, καὶ αὐτόν.
soldiers, that Menon had, and (Menon) himself.

Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαίνει διὰ Καπ-
Cyrus indeed with the others marches-forth through Cap-

παδοκίας τέτταρας σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε
padochia four stations, (making) twenty and five

παρασίγγας, πρὸς Δάναν οἰκουμένην πόλιν,
parasangs, to Dana (a) peopled town

μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς
large and wealthy. Here they-remained three

ἡμέρας· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινε Πέρσῃ
days; during which (time) Cyrus put-to-death (a) Persian

ἄνδρα Μεγαφέρνην, βασίλειον φοινικιστὴν,
(man) Megaphernes (by name), (a) royal purple-wearer

καὶ τινὰ ἑτερόν δυνάστην τῶν ὑπάρχων
(and) a-certain other powerful-person of-the officers-high-in-command

αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.
having-accused (him) | to-conspire to-him [of conspiring against

ἑαυτῷ]. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν
him]. Hence they-endeavoured to-throw-themselves into —

Κιλικίαν· δὲ ἡ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς
Cilicia; but the entrance was (a) road (only broad enough for a

ἁμαξιτὸς, ἰσχυρῶς ὄρδια, καὶ ἀμήχανος
single) wagon-way, very steep, and impracticable 'for (an)

στρατεύματι εἰσελθεῖν, εἴ τις ἐκώλυε. Καὶ δὲ
'army to-enter, if any-one opposed. And also

Συέννεσις ἐλέγετο εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, φυλάττων
Syennesis was-said to-be on the heights, guarding

τὴν εἰσβολήν· δι' ὃ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν
the entrance; for which (reason) he-remained (a) day on

τῷ πεδίῳ. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγγελος ἦκε λέγων
the plain. But on-the next-day (a) messenger came saying

ὅτι Συέννεσις εἶη λελοιπῶς τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ
that Syennesis | might-be having-left [had left] the heights, after

ᾗσθετο ὅτι τὸ στρατεύμα Μένωνος ἦν ἤδη ἐν
he-perceived that the army of-Menon was already in

Κιλικίᾳ, εἰς τῶν ὄρεων, καὶ ὅτι ἤκουε
Cilicia, within the mountains, and because he-heard (that)

Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τριήρεις τὰς Λακε-
Tamos having galleys (namely) — (those) 'of (the) 'Lace-

δαμονίων καὶ Κίρου αὐτοῦ, περιπλε-
daemonians and of-Cyrus himself, (and that) 'he (Tamos) 'was-sail-

οῦσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν. Κῦρος δ' οὖν
ing-round from Ionia into Cilicia. Cyrus — therefore

ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς κωλίοντος, καὶ εἶδε
ascended (on) the mountains, no-one opposing, and he-saw

τὰς σκηνάς, οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφίλαττον. Ἐντεῦθεν
the tents, where the Cilicians kept-guard. Hence

δὲ κατέβαινον εἰς μέγα καὶ καλὸν πεδίον,
— he-descended into (a) large and beautiful plain,

ἐπὶ ῥύτον, καὶ ἐμπλεων παντοδαπῶν δένδρων καὶ
well-watered, and (being)-full of-all-kinds of-trees and

ἀμπέλων· καὶ δὲ φέρει πολὺ σῆσαμον καὶ μελίνην,
vines; and also it-bears much sesamum, and panico,

καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθάς. Ὅρος δ'
and millet, and wheat, and barley. (A) mountain (chain)—

ὄχυρόν καὶ ὑψηλὸν περιέχει αὐτὸ
strong (by nature and art) and high surrounds it

πάντη ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.
on-all-sides from sea to sea.

Καταβάς δὲ διὰ τοῦτου τοῦ πεδίου ἦλассе
Descending — through this — plain he-proceeds

τέτταρας σταδμούς, πέντε καὶ εἰκοσι παρα-
four days' march, (making) five and twenty para-

σάγγας, εἰς Ταρσοὺς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα πόλιν
sangs, to Tarsus (a) large and wealthy city

τῆς Κιλικίας. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασίλεια
— of-Cilicia. Here were the palaces

Συεννέσιος τοῦ βασιλέως Κιλικίων· δὲ δια
of-Syennesis the king 'of (the) 'Cilicians; and through (the)

μέσης τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμός ὄνομα
middle of-the city runs (a) river (the) name (of which is)

Κύδνος, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. Οἱ
Cydnus, (the) breadth (of which is) two plethra. — (Those)

ἐνοικοῦντες τὴν ταύτην πόλιν ἐξέλιπον μετὰ
inhabiting — this city deserted (it) together-with

Συεννέσιος εἰς ὄχυρόν χωρίον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, πλὴν
Syennesis for (a) fortified place on the mountains, except

οἱ ἔχοντες τὰ καπηλεῖα· καὶ δὲ οἱ οἰκοῦντες
— (those) having — shops; and also — (those) dwelling

ἔρχεται τὴν θάλατταν ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.
 near the sea at Soli and at Issus.

Ἐπίιξα δὲ, ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος ἀφίκετο εἰς Ταρσοῦς
 Epixaxa also, the wife of-Syennesis arrived at Tarsus

πέντε ἡμέρας προτέρα Κίρου· δὲ ἐν τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
 five days before Cyrus; but in the crossing-over

τῶν ὄρων, τῶν εἰς τὸ πεδίον,
 of-the mountains, — (namely, those which descend) to the plain,

δύο λόχοι στρατεύματος τοῦ Μένωνος
 two companies of (the) army — of-Menon

ἀπώλοντο. Οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς
 perished. — (Some) indeed said | (that while) plundering

τι κατακοπῆναι
 something to-have-been-cut-to-pieces [that they had been cut to pieces

ἕνθ' ὥστε ἀρπάζοντες] ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικίων· δὲ οἱ
 while plundering] by the Cilicians; but — (others) (that;

ὑπολειφθέντας, καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο
 being-left-behind, and not being-able to-find the rest (of the)

στράτευμα οἷδ' ἐπὶ ταῖς ὁδοῖς εἴτα πλανωμένους
 army nor the roads after wandering-about

ἀπώλεσθαι· οὗτοι δὲ οὖν ἦσαν ἑκατὸν ὀπλιται.
 to-have-perished; these — therefore were a-hundred heavy-armed-men.

Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, ὀργιζόμενοι
 But the rest (of Menon's command) after they-arrived, enraged

διὰ τὸν ὀλεσθῆναι τῶν συστρατιωτῶν διήρπασαν
 at the destruction — (of their) fellow-soldiers plundered

τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοῦς, καὶ τὰ βασιλῆα τὰ ἐν
 the — city — Tarsus, and the palaces — in

αὐτῇ. Κύρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,
 it. Cyrus indeed after he-entered into the city,

μετεπέμπετο τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ
 sent-for — Syennesis (to come) to him; —

ὃς ἔφη οὔτε πω πρότερον εἰσέλθειν εἰς χεῖρας
 but he-said | never yet before-this to-have-come into hands

οὐδενί

[that never yet before this had he put himself in the power of] any-person

κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ, οὔτε ἤδελε τότε ἰέναι
 superior-in-power (to) himself, neither would-he then | (to-go) (go)
 Κίρῳ, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ ἔπεισε αὐτόν, καὶ ἔλαβε
 to-Cyrus, before — (his) wife 'brought him 'to-it, and he-received
 πίστει. Μετα δὲ ταῦτα, ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο
 assurances (of safety). After — these-things, when they-met
 ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κίρῳ πολλὰ χρήματα
 one-another, Syennesis (indeed) gave Cyrus many things
 εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, δὲ Κίρος ἐκείνῳ δῶρα, ἃ
 for — (his) army, and Cyrus (gave) to-him gifts, which
 νομίζεται τίμια παρὰ βασιλεῖ
 are-accustomed-to-be-held as-valuable by (a) king (namely) (a)
 ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον, καὶ χρυσοῦν στρεπτόν, καὶ
 horse having-a-golden-bridle, and a-golden twisted-collar, and
 ψέλλια, καὶ χρυσοῦν ἀκινάκην, καὶ Περσικὴν στολὴν,
 bracelets, and a-golden scimitar, and a-Persian robe,
 καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι ἀφαρπάζεσθαι.
 and (he agreed that) the country (was) not-hereafter to-be-plundered;
 δὲ ἀπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα,
 and (that they were) to-receive-back the captured slaves,
 ἣν πού ἐντυγχάνωσι.
 if any-where they-meet-with-them.

CHAPTER III.

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατία ἔμεινε εἰκοσὶν
 HERE Cyrus and the army remained twenty
 ἡμέρας· γὰρ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφασαν οὐκ ἰέναι τοῦ
 days; | for the soldiers said not to-go ^{any further} ^{to go}
 πρὸς.
 farther [for the soldiers refused to go any farther].
 ἰπώπτευν ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
 they-suspected | to-go against (the) king; [that they were going
 δὲ ἔφασαν οἱ
 against the king of Persia]; and they-said (that they) 'were not

Γὰρ ἤδη
 For already
 Now at 143-

μισθωθῆναι ἐπὶ τοίτῳ. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρῶτος
hired for this (purpose, Clearchus — first

ἐβιάζετο τοῖς στρατιώταις αὐτοῦ
^{αὐτοῦ}endeavoured-to-compel | the soldiers of-him [his soldiers]

ἵεναι· οἱ δὲ τε ἐβαλλον αὐτόν
to-go; — but — (his men) began-to-pelt him (with stones)

καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου,
and (also) the beasts-of-burden | the of-him, [belonging to him],

ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προΐεναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ μὲν τότε
after he-began to-advance. Clearchus indeed — then

μικρὸν ἐξεφυγε μὴ τὸ καταπετρωθῆναι·
narrowly escaped | lest the to-have-been-stoned; [stoning to death];

ἕστερον δ', ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δύνησεται
at-length —, after he-knew that he-'would not 'be-able

βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν στρατιωτῶν
to-use-force, he-brought-together (a) meeting | of-the soldiers

αὐτοῦ. ^{But first of all} Καὶ μὲν πρῶτον ἐστῶς
of-him [of his soldiers]. And — at-first standing (before them)

ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον· δὲ οἱ ὁρῶντες
he-shed-tears (for a) long time; but — (they) seeing-this

ἐθαίμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε
wondered and ^{gradually}were-silent; afterwards — he-spoke-to-them

τοιάδε.
thus.

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλε-
Men soldiers, 'do not 'wonder that 'I griev-

πῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασι. Γὰρ
easily 'bear the present (state of) things. | For

Κύρος ἐγένετο ξένος ἐμοί
Cyrus became (a) guest-friend to-me [for Cyrus bound himself to

καὶ ἐτίμησε με, φεῖγοντα
me by the ties of hospitality] and he-honoured me, (an) exile

ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος, τε τα ἄλλα,
from — (my) country, | and the others, [and also in other

καὶ ἔδωκε μυρίου δαρεικοῖς
things], and (in particular) he-gave (me) ten-thousand daries

οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν, οὐ κατεδέμην ἐμοὶ εἰς τὸ
 which I having-taken, 'did not 'put-by for-myself for — (my)
 ἰδιον, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ καθηδυνάδῃσα, ἀλλ' ἔδαπάνην
 own-private (use), — neither did-I-spend-it-in-luxury, but I-spent-it
 εἰς ὑμᾶς. Καὶ ^{first of all} πρῶτον μὲν ἐπολέμησα πρὸς τοὺς
 for you. For first — I-made-war against the
 Θρᾶκας, καὶ μεθ' ὑμῶν ἐτιμωροῦμην ὑπὲρ
 Thracians, and together-with you I-took-vengeance (on them) for
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἐξελαίνων αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῆς Χερσονήσου,
 — Greece, expelling them from the Chersonesus,
 βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν τοὺς
 (they) desiring to-take-away the land (of) the
 Ἕλληνας ἐνοικοῦντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει
 Greeks dwelling-there. After — Cyrus called-me
 ἐπορευόμεν, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς, ἵνα εἴ τι
 I-went, taking you (with me), in-order-that if —
 δέοιτο ὠφελοῖν αὐτὸν ἀνδ'
 he-might-need (my assistance) I-might-help him | for (those things)
 ὧν ἔπαδον εἴ ὑπ' ἐκείνου.
 of-which I-was-affected beneficially by him [in return for the bene-
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς βούλεσθε οὐ
 [as I have received from him]. Since however you wish not
 συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι
 to-accompany (him), | the-necessity — (is) to-me [I am constrained]
 ἢ προδόντα ὑμᾶς χρῆσθαι τῇ φιλίᾳ Κίρου,
 either (by) deserting you | to-use the friendship of-Cyrus,
 ἢ ψευσάμενον
 [to preserve the friendship of Cyrus], or having-deceived (him by being
 πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἵνα μεθ' ὑμῶν. Εἰ μὲν δὴ
 false) towards him to-go with you. | If indeed —
 ποιήσω δίκαια οἶδα οὐκ
 I-shall-make just-things I-know not [whether indeed I shall act cor-
 αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς, καὶ συν
 rectly, I know not] I-shall-hold — therefore (to) you, and with
 ὑμῖν πείσομαι ὃ τι ἂν δέη. Καὶ οὐδεὶς
 you will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. | And no-one

οἵποτε ἔρεϊ, ὥς ἔγω
 shall never 'have-said, [and no one shall ever say], that I
 ἀγαγὼν Ἕλληνας εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοῖς
 having-led Greeks among the barbarians, deserting
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰλόμεν τὴν φιλίαν τῶν βαρ-
 the Greeks took-in-preference the friendship of-the bar-
 βάρων. Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι
 barians. But since you 'do not 'desire to-obey
 ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ ἑπείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ ἔψομαι σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ
 me nor to-follow (me), I will-follow (with) you, and
 πείσομαι ὃ τι ἂν δέη. Γὰρ νομίζω
 will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. For I-consider
 ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἐμοὶ καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ
 you to-be to-me (and) (my) country, and (my) friends and (my)
 συμμάχους, καὶ ἂν μὲν οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν
 fellow-soldiers, and 'I may indeed 'think (that) with you (I am)
 εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, δὲ ὦν ἔρημος ὑμῶν,
 to-be honoured wherever 'I may 'be, but being destitute of-you,
 ἂν οἶμαι οὐκ εἶναι ἱκανὸς οἷτ' ἂν ὠφελησαι
 I may 'think (myself) not to-be competent either — to-help
 φίλον, οἷτ' ἂν ἀλέξασθαι ἐχθρὸν. Ὡς οὖν
 (a) friend, or — repel (an) enemy. That therefore
 ἐμοῦ ἰόντος, ὅπη καὶ ὑμεῖς ἂν, οἷτο ἔχετε
 I am-going, where also you may (be going), then hold-to
 τὴν γνώμην. Ταῦτα
 — (this) opinion (that I am determined to go with you). | These-things
 εἶπε· δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται, οἳ τε
 he-said [thus did he speak]; and the soldiers, | — as-well
 ἐκείνου αἰτοῦ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι,
 of-those of-himself, [as well those of his own command], as the others,
 ἀκοίσαντες ταῦτα, ὅτι φαίη οὐ
 hearing these-things, that he-should-say (that he was) not
 πορεῖσθαι παρα βασιλέα, ἐπινεσαν· πλείους ἢ
 to-march-forth against (the) king, they-applauded; more than
 δισχίλιοι παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος,
 two-thousand (soldiers) from — Xenias and Pasion.

λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἔστρα-
taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage en-

τοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κύρος δὲ ἀπορῶν
camped with Clearchus. Cyrus — being-perplexed

τε καὶ λυποῖμενος τοῖτοισι, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέ-
and also distressed at-these-things, sent-for — Cle-

αρχον· ὁ δὲ ἤδελε οὐ μὲν ἵεναι, λάδρα δὲ
archus; who however would not — go, unknown however (to)

τῶν στρατῶν πέμπων ἄγγελον αὐτῷ ἔλεγε
the soldiers, sending (a) messenger to-him, he-told (him)

θαρρεῖν, ὥς τοῖτων καταστησομένων εἰς τὸ
to-l-e-of-good-courage | as these-things being-arranged in the

δέον· δὲ
req uired-manner; [as those affairs would be satisfactorily arranged]; also

μεταπέμπεσθαι ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν·
(he requested Cyrus) to-send (and again) request him

δ' αὐτὸς ἔφη
(to come to him); but he (after being sent for again) said (that he

οὐκ ἵεναι. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς
would) not go. After — this assembling | the

δὲ στρατιῶτας ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ τοὺς
— soldiers of-himself, [his soldiers] and — (those)

προσελθόντας αὐτῷ, καὶ τὸν βουλόμενον τῶν
having-joined him, and the desirous of-the

ἰλῶν, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
(soldiers to be present), he-spoke thus (to them.)

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὲν δὴ δῆλον ὅτι τὰ
Men soldiers, (it is) indeed — evident that | the (affairs)

Κύρου ἔχει οὕτως πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ὥσπερ τὰ
of-Cyrus hold (themselves) so to us, as —

ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον·
our (affairs do) to him; [the affairs of Cyrus are in the

γὰρ οὔτε ἡμεῖς ἐτι
same relation to us, that ours are to him]; for neither (are) we now

στρατιῶται ἐκείνου γε ἐπεὶ οὐ
! (the) soldiers of-him [his soldiers] at-least after wa-'do not

συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι μισθοδότης
'follow him, nor (is) he now paymaster

ἡμῖν. Ὅτι μὴντοι νομίζει ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑφ'
to-us. That however he-thinks (himself) injured by

ἡμῶν οἶδα· καὶ ὥστε αὐτοῦ μεταπεμτομένου
us I-know; and so-that he sending-for (me)

ἐδέλω οὐκ ἐλθεῖν, μὲν τὸ μέγιστον,
I-will not have-gone, [go], indeed (what is) the greatest,

αἰσχυνόμενος, ὅτι σῖνοῖδα ἑμαυτῷ
being-ashamed, because I-am-conscious to-myself (of)

ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν πάντα, καὶ δὲ ἔπειτα
having-deceived him in-all (this), and indeed then-also

δεδιώς, μὴ, λαβὼν με ἐπιδῆ
having-feared, lest, having-seized me | he-may-have-inflicted [he may

δίκην, ὧν νομίζει
inflict] punishment, (for the things) | of-which [in which] he-thinks (him-

ῆδικῆσθαι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ. Οὖν δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ
self) to-have-been-injured by me. Therefore (this) seems to-me

εἶναι οὐχ ὥρα ἡμῖν καθεύδειν, οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν
to-be no time for-us to-sleep, nor to-neglect our

αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὃ, τι χρὴ ποιεῖν
selves but to-deliberate — what is-necessary to-do

ἐκ τούτων. Καὶ ἕως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ,
[from these [next]. And as (long) indeed (as) we-remain here,

δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι σκεπτέον, ὅπως μενοῦμεν
it-seems to-me to-be necessary-to-be-considered, how 'we (may) remain

ἀσφαλέστατα, εἰ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως
the-most-securely, if also (it) now seems (best) to-depart, how

ἂπμεν ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ ὅπως ἔξομεν τὰ
we-may-depart the-most-safely, and how we-shall-have the

ἐπιτήδεια· γὰρ ἄνευ τούτων οὐδέν
necessaries-of-life; for without these (necessaries) | (there is) no

ὄφελος οὔτε στρατηγῷ οὔτε
advantage | neither [either] (to the) commander | nor [or] (to the)

ιδιώτου.

private-soldier [the commander and private soldier are alike inefficient].

Δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν φίλος ἄξιος πολλοῦ
But the man (is) indeed (a) friend worthy of-much (estimation)

ᾧ ἂν ᾗ φίλος, δὲ χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρὸς,
to-whom 'he may 'be (a) friend, but (a) most-bitter enemy,

ᾧ ἂν ᾗ πολέμος· ἔχει δὲ καὶ δύναμιν
to-whom 'he may 'be (an) enemy; he-has — also (a) force

καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἵππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν, ἣν
both foot and cavalry, also (a) naval (one), which 'we

πάντες ὁμῶς ὁρῶμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ
all alike 'see and also know; and (this is

γὰρ δοκοῦμέν μοι καθῆσθαι οὐδὲ
not strange) for we-seem to-me | to-sit [to be encamped] not-indeed

πόρρω αὐτοῦ· ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὃ τι τις
far-from him; wherefore (it is) time to-say what — any-one

γινώσκει εἶναι ἄριστον. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἐπαίσατο.
knows to-be better. Saying this he-finished.

Ἐκ τοῦτο δ' ἀνίσταντο, οἳ μὲν ἐκ
Upon this then (several) rose (to speak), — (some) indeed —

τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέγοντες ἃ ἐγίγ-
— of-their-own-accord, | (about)-saying [intending to say] what they-

νωσκον, καὶ οἱ δὲ ἐγκέλευστοι ὑπ'
thought (of affairs) and — (others) indeed ordered by

ἐκείνου ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία
him [Clearchus] pointing-out what might-be the difficulty

ἄνευ τῆς γνώμης Κίρου καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι.
without the consent of-Cyrus both to-remain and to-go.

Δὲ εἷς δὲ προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν
And one namely (of those instructed) pretending earnestly-to-desire

πορεύεσθαι ὥς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
to-proceed as speedily-as-possible to — Greece,

εἶπε, ἄλλους στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι
said, (that) other commanders — | to-have-been-chosen

ὥς τάχιστα, εἰ Κλέαρχος μὴ
[were to be chosen] . as speedily-as-possible, if Clearchus 'is not

βούλεται ἀπάγειν· δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
'willing to-lead-them-back; (that) also the necessaries-of-life

ἀγοράζεσθαι, δ' ἦν ἡ ἀγορὰ ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ
are-to-be-bought, for there-was — (a) market in the barbarian

στρατείματι, καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· δ'
army, and-also (the) baggage-is-to-be-packed-up; and

ἐλθόντας Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὥς
(that they), going to-Cyrus, to-ask-for ships, in-order-that

ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, αἰτεῖν
they-may-set-sail; if however he-'do not 'give these, to-ask

Κῦρον ἡγεμόνα, ὅστις ἀπάξει διὰ τῆς φιλίας
Cyrus (for a) leader, who will-lead (them) through the friendly

χώρας. Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ἡγεμόνα
countries. If however he-'does not-even give (a) leader (they are)

συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, καὶ
to-form-themselves-in-order-of-battle — as-speedily-as-possible, and

δὲ πεμψαὶ προκαταληφόμενους τὰ ἄκρα,
also | to-have-sent hereafter preoccupying the heights, [and also

ὅπως μῆτε
to send men to take possession of the heights in advance], so-that neither

Κῦρος νῆτε οἱ Κίλικες μὴ καταλαβόντες
Cyrus nor the Cilicians | 'may not having-seized-upon

φθάσωσι

'have-occupied, [may not have anticipated us, in taking possession of these

ὧν ἔχομεν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ
heights], of-whom [the Cilicians] we-have many-men and much

χρήματα ἀνηρπακότες Οὗτος μὲν δὴ
property having-taken-them-away-from-them. Thus indeed — (in)

τοιαῦτα εἶπε· δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος
this (manner) he-spoke; but after this Clearchus

εἶπε τοσοῦτον.
spoke just-so-much.

Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω ὥς μὲν ἐμὲ στρατη-
'Let no-one of-you 'say that — | I (am) about-lead-

γῆσοντα ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν·
ing-the-army (in) this the command (thereof); [that I

will accept the office of commander]; γὰρ ἐνορῶ πολλὰ,
for I-perceive many-things,

δι' ἃ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον ἐμοί· δ'
 on-account-of which this 'must not 'be-done by-me; but (let him
 ὥς πείσομαι ἢ μάλιστα δυνατόν, τῷ ἀνδρὶ
 say) that I-shall-obey in-as much-as possible, the man,
 ᾧ ἂν ἐλθῃς, ἵνα εἰδῇτε ὅτι καὶ ἐπίσταμαι
 whom 'you may 'choose, that you-may-see, that also I-know-how
 ἄρχεσθαι καὶ ὥς τις μάλιστα ἄλλος
 to-be-commanded, | and even-thus — as-much-as (any) other
 ἀνδρώπων. Μετὰ τοῦτων ἄλλος
 of-men [as well as any other man]. After this another
 ἀνέστη ἐπιδεικνύς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ
 arose (to speak) pointing-out — the simplicity — (of him)
 κελεύοντος αἰτεῖν τὰ πλοῖα, ὥσπερ Κίρου
 advising to-ask — (for) ships, as-if Cyrus 'would
 μὴ ποιουμένου τὸν στόλον πάλιν,
 not 'hereafter | be-making the fleet return, [order the fleet to re-
 δ' ἐπιδεικνύς ὥς εἰηδες εἶη αἰτεῖν
 turn], also showing how foolish (a thing) it-would-be to-ask-for (a)
 ἡγεμόνα παρὰ τοῦτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα
 leader from this (very person) whom we-are-frustrating
 τὴν πράξιν. Καὶ δὲ εἰ πιστεύσομεν τῷ
 (in) — (his) undertaking. And also if we-shall-confide in-the
 ἡγεμόνι ᾧ Κῦρος ἂν διδῷ, τί κωλύει Κῦρον
 leader, whom Cyrus may give, what hinders (that) Cyrus 'may
 καὶ κελεύειν τὰ ἄκρα προκαταλαμβάνειν ἡμῖν;
 also 'order the heights | to-preoccupy for us?
 Γὰρ ἐγὼ μὲν ὀκνοῖν ἂν
 [to be preoccupied for us]? For I indeed shall-be-reluctant —
 ἐμβαίνειν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, ἃ δοίη ἡμῖν,
 to-embark on (board) the vessels, which he-might-give us,
 μὴ καταδίῃσθαι ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι·
 lest he-should-submerge us (together) with-'these — galleys
 ἂν δὲ φοβοίμην ἐπεσθαι τῷ ἡγεμόνι
 themselves; 'I should indeed 'be-afraid to-follow the guide
 ᾧ δοίη, μὴ ἀγάγῃ ἡμᾶς ὅθεν
 whom he-may-give, lest he-might-lead us (to a place) whence it-'will

οὐχ ἔσται οἷόν τε ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν
not 'be possible — to-escape; | I-would-wish — —

ἀπιών. Κίρου ἀκοντος, ἀπελθών λαθεῖν
departing. Cyrus (being) unwilling, depart to-have-concealed

αὐτόν·

him [I would rather, if departing against the will of Cyrus, depart

ὁ ἔστιν οὐ δυνατόν. Ἄλλ' ἐγώ
without his knowledge]; which is not possible. But I

φημι ταῦτα μεν εἶναι φλυαρίας. δὲ μοι
say (that) these (things) indeed are absurdities; but to-me

δοκεῖ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι, ἐλθόντας
it-seems (that) men, who (are) fit, having-gone

πρὸς Κῦρον σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον τι
to Cyrus with Clearchus to-ask him (for) what

βοίλεται χρῆσθαι ἡμῖν· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ
(purpose) he-wished to-use us; and if indeed the

πρᾶξις ἢ παραπλησία οἷαπερ καὶ
undertaking be similar (to that) in-which-kind 'he also

πρὸς δὲν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, καὶ ἡμᾶς
before 'employed — foreign-troops, and (that) we (should)

ἑπείσθαι, καὶ μὴ εἶναι κακίους
follow (him), and (that we might) not be worse (than)

τῶν πρὸς δὲν συναναβάντων τοῦτ'·
— (those) | before going-up with-him; [who before

ἐὰν δὲ ἡ πρᾶξις φαίνεται μείζων
went up with him]; but if the undertaking may-seem greater (than)

τῆς πρὸς δὲν, καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρα, καὶ ἐπικινδυνότερα,
the former, and more-difficult, and more-dangerous,

ἄξιον ἢ πείσαντα ἄγειν
(then that we) request either (that) having-persuaded (us) to-lead

ἡμᾶς, ἢ πεισθέντα
us (with him), or having-been-persuaded (by us) (he would allow us

ἀφιέναι πρὸς φίλιαν· γὰρ οὕτω καὶ
to-depart to (a) friendly (country); for thus also

ἐπόμενοι αὐτῷ φίλοι, καὶ ἂν ἐποίμεθα
accompanying him 'as) friends, 'we also may 'accompany (him)

πρόθυμοι καὶ ἀπιόντες ἂν ἀπίοιμεν
 zealous (in his cause), and leaving (him) 'we may 'leave-him
 ἰσφαλῶς· δεῖρο ἀναγγεῖλαι δ
 safely; (that) here | they-have-announced [they report] —
 τι δ' ἂν λέγῃ πρὸς ταῖτα· δ' ἡμᾶς
 what (he) — may say to these (things); and we
 ἀκοίσαντας βουλευέσθαι πρὸς ταῖτα.
 having-heard (it) to-deliberate upon these (things)
 Ἔδοξε ταῖτα,
 [It-seemed-good (respecting) these-things, [these propositions were ap-
 καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἀνδρας πεμπουσι σὶν Κλε-
 proved], and having-chosen men they-send (them) with Cle-
 ἀρχῳ, οἱ ἡρώτων Κῆρον τὰ δόξαντα
 archus, who asked Cyrus | (respecting) the (things) were-seeming
 τῇ στρατιᾷ. Ὁ
 (good) to-the army [the questions agreed on by the army]. Who
 δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἀκοίει Ἀβροκόμαν ἀνδρα
 — answered, that he-hears (that) Abrocomas (a) mar-
 ἐχθρὸν εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ,
 inimical (to him) is on the river Euphrates,
 ἀπεχοντα δώδεκα σταδμοῖς· ἔφη οὖν βοῦ-
 being-distant twelve days'-march; he-said (that) therefore he-
 λεσθαι ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τοῦτον· καὶ μὲν ἦ
 desires to-go against this (Abrocomas); and-if — he-were
 ἐκεῖ ἔφη χρίζειν ἐπιδεῖναι τὴν δίκην
 there he-said (that) he-longed to-have-inflicted — punishment
 αὐτῷ δ' ἢν φείγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ βουλευσόμεθα πρὸς
 on-him but if he-retreat, we there will-deliberate about
 ταῖτα. Οἱ αἵρετοὶ ἀκοίσαντες δέ ταῖτα
 these-things. The deputies having-heard — these-things
 ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· δὲ τοῖς
 announce (them) to-the soldiers; but — (to them)
 μὲν ἦν ὑποψία ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς
 indeed there-was suspicion that he-is-leading (them) against (the)
 βασιλέα, δὲ ὅμως ἐδόκει ἐπεσθαι.
 king, but however it-seemed (to them best) to-accompany (him)

Προραιτυῖσι δὲ μισθὸν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται
 They-ask-for-more — wages; — — Cyrus promised
 δώσειν πᾶσι ἡμιόλιον οὐ ἔφερον
 to-give-hereafter to-all the-half-more (than that) which they-had-received
 πρότερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρεῖκα
 before, (that is) in-place-of (a) daric three half-darics
 τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· δὲ ὅτι ἄγοι
 the month — 'to (each) 'soldier; but that he-might-be-leading
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδεὶς ἤκουσεν οἷδὲ ἐνταῦθα
 (them) against (the) king, no-one heard, not-even there,
 γε ἐν τῷ φανερώ.
 (at least) indeed in — public.

CHAPTER IV.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς δέκα
 Hence (Cyrus) proceeds two days'-march (making) ten
 παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Ψάρον, τὸ εἶρος
 parasangs, to the river Psarus, the breadth
 οὗ ἦν τρία πλεθρα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει ἓνα
 of-which was three plethra. Thence he-proceeds one
 σταδμὸν πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
 days'-march (making) five parasangs to the river
 Πύραμον, τὸ εἶρος οὗ στάδιον. Ἐνταῦθεν
 Pyramus, the breadth of-which (is a) stadium. Thence
 ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρα-
 he-proceeds two days'-march (making) fifteen para-
 σάγγας εἰς Ἴσσοὺς ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς Κιλικίας,
 sangs to Issus, the-last town — in-Cilicia,
 ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ, οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ
 (situated) on the sea (coast), peopled, large and
 εὐδαίμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ
 wealthy. Here they-remained three days; and
 αἱ τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε νῆες ἐκ Πελοποννήσου
 the thirty and five ships from Peloponnesus

παρήσαν Κίρῳ, καὶ ναύ-
 [were-present (for) Cyrus, [arrived at Cyrus's camp], and (the) ad-
 αρχος ἐπ' αὐταῖς Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος.
 miral over them (was) Pythagoras (the) Lacedæmonian
 Δὲ Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἡγεῖτο αὐτῶν ἐξ Ἐφέσου
 But Tamos (an) Egyptian conducted them from Ephesus
 χῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν ἑτέρας ναῦς
 having (with him) five and twenty other ships (belonging to)
 Κίρου, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε ἦν φίλη
 Cyrus, with-which he-(had)-besieged Miletus when it-was friendly
 Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κίρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν.
 to-Tissaphernes, and he-fought-with Cyrus against him.
 Καὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος παρὴν ἐπὶ
 And also Cheirisophos the Lacedæmonian was-present on (board)
 τῶν νεῶν, μετὰπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κίρου, ἔχων ἑπτακοσίος
 the ships, having-been-sent-for by Cyrus, he-having seven-hundred
 ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κίρῳ.
 heavy-armed (soldiers), of-whom he-was-commander for Cyrus
 Αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν κατὰ τὴν σκηνὴν Κίρου.
 The — ships moored opposite the tent of-Cyrus.
 Ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μισθοφόροι παρ'
 Here also the Greek mercenaries, (who were) with
 Ἀβροκόμα ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κίρον,
 Abrocomas, deserting-him went to Cyrus, (in number)
 τετρακόσιοι ὀπλῖται, καὶ συνεστρατεῖοντο
 four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and accompanied-the-expedition
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει ἓνα σταδ-
 against (the) king. Hence he-proceeds one days'-
 μόν, πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ πύλας
 march, (making) five parasangs to (the) gates [passes]
 τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. Ταῦτα δ' ἦσαν
 — of-Cilicia and — of-Syria. These — were
 δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ
 two walls, and (of) the — internal (one) — (that) before
 τῆς Κιλικίας Σύννεσις καὶ φυλακή Κιλικίων
 Cilicia, Syennesis and (a) guard of-Cilicians

εἶχε· δὲ τὸ ἔξω, το πρὸ τῆς Συρίας,
had (charge); but the external (one), — (that) before — Syria,

ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ βασιλέως φυλάττειν.
it-was-said (that a) guard 'of (the) 'king's (soldiers) guarded-it.

Διὰ μέσου δὲ τοιῶτων ποταμὸς
| Through (the) middle — of-these [between these two walls] (a) river

Κάρσος ὄνομα ρεῖ, εὖρος πλεθρῶν.
Carsus (by) name flows, (the) breadth (being a) plethrum.

Δὲ ἅπαν τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν
But the-whole — middle (space between) the walls were

τρεις στάδιοι· καὶ παρελθεῖν βία ἦν οὐ·
three stadia; and to-have-passed by-force was not (possible);

γὰρ ἡ πάροδος ἦν στενὴ καὶ τὰ τεῖχη καθήκοντα
for the passage was narrow, and the walls reaching

εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ὑπερδεν δ' ἦσαν ἡλίστατοι
to the sea, above also were impassable

πέτραι· δὲ πύλαι ἐφειστήκεσαν ἐπὶ ἀμφοτέροις
rocks; and (the) passes (had) stood-by (at) each

τοῖς τείχεσιν. Ἔνεκα ταύτης τῆς
(of) the walls. (It was) on-account-of this —

παρόδου Κῦρος μετεπέμψατο τὰς ναῦς. ὅπως
passage (that) Cyrus sent-for the fleet, so-that

ἀποβιβάσειεν ὀπλίτας εἰσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν,
he-might-land heavy-armed-men within and without the passes,

καὶ βιασάμενοι παρέλθοιεν τοῖς πολε-
and (who) having-forced (a passage) might-pass-through the ene-

μίους, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις
my, if they-'might (yet) 'guard — the Syrian

πύλαις ὅπερ ὁ Κῦρος ᾤετο ποιήσιν, τὸν Ἀβρο-
passes which — Cyrus thought would-be-done, — Abro-

κόμαν ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Δ' Ἀβροκόμας
eomas having (a) great army. But Abrocomas

οὐκ ἐποίησε τοῦτ', ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον
'did not 'do this, but after he-heard (of) Cyrus

ὄντα ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀπήλαινε
being in Cilicia having-retired from Phoenicia he-departed

παρὰ βασιλέα ἔχων ὥς ἐλέγετο τριάκοντα
to (the) king having as it-was-said | thirty

μυριάδας στρατιᾶς.
ten-thousands [three hundred thousand] military.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ Συρίας ἓνα σταδ.
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds through Syria one days'.

μον πέντε παρασάγγας, εἰς Μυριάνδρον,
march, (making) five parasangs, to Myriandrus, (a)

πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλλάττῃ οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ
town on the sea (west) peopled by

Φοινίκων. Ἡ δ' ἐμπόριον τὸ χωρίον,
Phoenicians. It-was also (a) mart (for that district of) the country,

καὶ πολλαὶ ὀλκάδες ὥρμουν αὐτόδι. Ἐνταῦθ'
and many ships-of-burden arrived there. Here

ἔμειναν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας· καὶ Ξενίας, ὁ Ἀρκὰς
he-remained seven days; and (here) Xenias, the Arcadian

στρατηγός, καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς, ἐμβάντες
commander, and Pasion the Megarian, having-embarked

εἰς πλοῖον, καὶ ἐνδέμενοι τὰ ἄξια
in (a) vessel, and having-placed-on-board — (their) effects

πλείστου, ἀπέπλευσαν, ὥς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις
of-the-greatest (value), they-sailed-away, as indeed to-the most

ἑδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες
they-thought having-been-made-jealous-of-their-honour [the most thought,

ὅτι Κῦρος εἶα τὸν
that they were influenced by jealousy] because Cyrus allowed —

Κλεάρχον ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν,
Clearchus to-have | the soldiers of-them, [their soldiers],

τοὺς ἀπελθόντας παρὰ Κλεάρχον, ὥς
(namely) — (those) deserting to Clearchus, | as

ἀπὸντας πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
departing back to — Greece [when they intended to

καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα. Ἐπεὶ
return to Greece] and not (march) against (the) king. | After

οὐ ᾗσαν ἀφανεῖς λόγος
— they-were invisible [after their disappearance] (a) remark

διῆλθε ὅτι Κῦρος διώκοι αὐτοῖς
 went-through (the army) that Cyrus might-follow them 'with (the)
 τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν εἶχοντο αὐτοῖς
 'galleys; and — (some) indeed prayed (that) they (might)
 ληφθῆναι ὡς ὄντας δολίους, οἱ δ'
 'be-taken as being perfidious (men), — (others) indeed
 ᾤκτιρον εἰ ἀλώσιντο. Δὲ Κῦρος
 pitied (them) if they-should-be-captured. But Cyrus
 συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπε· Ξενίας καὶ
 having-called-together the commanders said; Xenias and
 Πασίῳ ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς· ἀλλὰ γε
 Pasion have-left us; but 'let-them at-least 'be
 εἰ μὲντοι ἐπιστάσδωσαν, ὅτι οἷτε ἀποδε-
 well indeed 'assured, that they-'have neither 'fled-
 δράκασι, γὰρ οἶδα ὅπη οἰχονται, οἷτε
 away (clandestinely), for I-know where they-are-going, nor
 ἀποπεφείγασι, γὰρ ἔχω τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν
 have-they-escaped, for I-have galleys | in-order-to have-seized
 τὸ πλοῖον ἐκείνων. Ἀλλά, μα
 the ship of-them [to capture their ship]. But, by
 τοῖς θεοῖς οἶκ ἐγωγε διώξω αὐτοὺς· οἷδ'
 the gods not even-I will-follow them; nor (shall)
 οἷδεις ἐρεῖ, ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν τις ἂν παρῇ
 any-one say, that I, as-long-as indeed any-one might stay-with
 χρῶμαι, δ' ἐπειδὰν βοίληται ἀπι-
 (me), make-use (of their services), but after he-may-wish to-
 εἶναι συλλαβὼν αὐτοῖς καὶ κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ
 leave (me) having-seized them 'I both ill 'treat (them) and
 ἀποσυλῶ τὰ χρήματα. Ἀλλὰ ἰόντων,
 despoil (them of their) — goods. But let-them-go,
 εἰδότες ὅτι εἰς καχίους
 [they-having-known [they being conscious] that they-are worse
 περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. Καίτοι γε
 towards us than we towards them. Although 'I indeed
 ἔχω καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας αὐτῶν φρουροῦμενα
 'have both (the) children and wives of-them guarded

ἐν Τράλλεσι· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ στερήσονται
 at Tralles; but they-'shall not-even 'be-deprived
 τοιούτων, ἀλλ' ἀπολήφοντα ἔνεκα τῆς
 of-these, but they-shall-receive (them) on-account-of — (their)
 ἀρετῆς περὶ ἐμὲ πρόσθεν. Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶπε
 good-conduct towards me formerly. And — | 'he indeed 'said
 ταῦτα· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ
 these; [thus did he speak]; and the Greeks, if any (one) in-fine
 ἦν ἀδυμότερος πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν ἀκούοντες
 was disinclined towards the ascent [expedition] hearing
 τὴν ἀρετὴν Κίρου, συνεπορεύοντο ἥδιον
 the noble-conduct of-Cyrus, accompanied (him) with-great-pleasure
 καὶ προδυμότερον.
 and with-greater-alacrity-of-mind.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαίνει τέτταρας
 After these (things) Cyrus proceeds four
 σταδμοῖς εἰκοσιν παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν
 days'-march (making) twenty parasangs to the
 ποταμόν Χάλον, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέδρου,
 river Chalus, (it) being the breadth 'of (a) 'plethrum,
 δὲ πλήρη μεγάλων καὶ τραέων ἰχθύων, οἷς οἱ
 and full of-large and tame fish, which the
 Σύροι ἐνόμιζον θεοὺς, καὶ οὐκ εἶων
 Syrians considered (to be) gods, and 'did not 'permit (any one)
 ἀδικεῖν οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. Αἱ δὲ
 to-injure (neither them) nor the pigeons. The —
 κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν ἧσαν Παρυσατίδος
 villages in which they-encamped | were of-Parysatis [belonged
 δεδομένοι εἰς ζώνην.
 to Parysatis] having-been-given (her) | for (her) girdle [for pin-money]
 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει πέντε σταδμοῖς τριάκοντα
 Thence he-proceeds five days'-march, (making) thirty
 παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 parasangs to | the springs [sources] of-the river
 Δάρδετος τὸ εὖρος οὗ πλέδρου.
 Dardes the breadth of-which (is that) 'of (a) plethrum

Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασιλεια Βελέσνος τοῦ
 Here were the palaces of-Belesys | the
 ἄρξαντος Συρίας, καὶ παράδεισος, πάνν
 having-ruled-over [the ruler] of-Syria, and (a) park, very
 μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὥρα
 large and beautiful, having all, how-much-so-ever (th:) seasons
 φῖνουςι. Δὲ Κύρος αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ κατέκαισε
 produce. But Cyrus 'cut it 'down and burned
 τὰ βασιλεια.
 the palaces.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαινει τρεῖς σταδμοῖς πεντε-
 Thence he-proceeds three days'-march (making) ff.
 καίδεκα παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην
 teen parasangs, to the river Euphrates
 ὄντα το εἶρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ
 (it) being (there) the breadth of-four stadia; and (there
 πόλιν αὐτόδι Θάψακος ὀνόματι ὥκειτο
 was a) city there Thapsacus by-name (which) was-inhabited,
 (and which was) μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων. Ἐνταῦθα
 (and which was) large and wealthy. There
 ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ Κύρος μεταπεμψάμενος
 they-remained five days; and Cyrus having-sent-for
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ
 the commanders of-the Greeks, said that the
 ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο εἰς Βαβυλῶνα πρὸς μέγαν
 road might-hereafter-be to Babylon against (the) great
 βασιλέα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα
 king; and he-requests them to-tell these (things
 τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἑπείσδαι.
 to-the soldiers, and to-persuade (them) to-follow (him;
 Δ' οἱ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν
 And who | having-made [having called] (an) assembly (of the soldiers)
 ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται
 communicated these (things to them). But the soldiers
 ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοῖς
 were-angry with-the commanders, and told 'them

πάλαι εἰδόντας ταῦτα
 (that) 'having already-before 'known these-things, (that they)
 κρύπτειν· καὶ ἔφασαν
 conceal (them from the soldiers); and they-said (that they would)
 οἷκ' ἵεναι, ἐὰν μὴ τις διδῶ χρήματα αὐτοῖς
 not go, unless some-one should-give money to-them
 ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς προτέροις ἀνα-
 | as also (had been given) to-the former (soldiers) having-
 βῦσι μετὰ Κίρου
 gone-up with Cyrus, [in like manner as had been given to the soldiers,
 παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ
 who had formerly accompanied Cyrus] to the father —
 Κίρου, καὶ ταῦτα οἷκ' ἰόντων ἐπὶ μάχην, ἀλλὰ
 of-Cyrus, and this not going to battle, but
 τοῦ πατρὸς καλοῦντος Κίρον. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 the father (merely) sending-for Cyrus. The commanders
 ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα Κίρῳ· δ' ὁ ὑπέσχετο
 reported these (things) to-Cyrus; and who promised
 δῶσειν πέντε μνᾶς ἀργυρίου ἐκάστῳ ἀνδρὶ, ἐπὰν
 to-give five minæ of-silver to-each man, when
 ἦκωσι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ τὸν ἐντελῆ μισθὸν
 they-arrived at Babylon, and — (their) entire pay
 μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πάλιν
 until 'he should 'place the Greeks back-again
 εἰς Ἰωνίαν. Τὸ πολὺ μὲν δὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
 in Ionia. The most indeed — of-the Greek
 οὕτως ἐπείσθη.
 (force) 'was thus 'persuaded (to accompany him).

Δὲ Μένων, πρὶν εἶναι δῆλον τί οἱ ἄλλοι
 But Menon, before | to-be [it is] evident what the other
 στρατιῶται ποιήσουσι, πότερον ἔψονται Κίρῳ
 soldiers will-do, whether they-will-follow Cyrus
 ἢ οὐ, συνέλλεξε τὸ στράτευμα αὐτοῦ χωρὶς
 or not, assembled | the army of-himself [his army] apart
 τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. Ἄνδρες
 from-the others, and spoke | these (things) [thus]. Men

ἐάν πεισθῇτε μοι, προτιμήσεσθε ὑπὸ Κίρου
if you-might-be-persuaded by-me, you-will-be-honoured by Cyrus

πλέον τῶν ἄλλων στρατιῶτων οἷτε
more (than) the other soldiers (and this) 'having neither

κινδυνεύσαντες, οἷτε πονήσαντες. Τί οὖν
'incurred-danger, nor having-laboured. What therefore

κελεύω ποιῆσαι: Κῆρος νῦν δεῖται
do-I-request (of you) | to-have-done? [to do]? Cyrus now wants

τοῖς Ἕλληνας ἔπεσθαι ἐπὶ βασιλέα·
the Greeks to-accompany (him) against (the) king;

ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι
I therefore say | (that) you to-behave [that it behoves you]

διαβῆναι τον ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, πρὶν εἶναι
to-have-crossed the river Euphrates, before | to-be [it is]

δῆλον ὃ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται
manifest — what the other Greeks will-answer

Κίρῳ. Γὰρ ἢν μὲν ψηφίσωνται ἔπεσθαι,
Cyrus. For if indeed they-should-determine-by-ballot to-follow,

ἡμεῖς δόξετε εἶναι αἰτιοί, ἄρξαντες τοῦ
(then) you will-appear to-be (the) cause, | having-begun of-the

διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὑμῖν
crossing-over, [as having first crossed over the river], and to-you

ὥς οὖσι προθυμοτάτοις Κῆρος εἴσεται
as being most-prompt, Cyrus perceive (and acknowledge

χάριν, καὶ ἀποδώσει· δ' ἐπίσταται
the) favour, and will-repay (it); | but he-knows (how to do this)

εἰ καὶ τις ἄλλος·
If even-also any other (does); [but he knows how to reward a favour,

δ' ἢν οἱ ἄλλοι ἀποψηφίσωνται,
as well as any other man]; but if the others should-ballot-against-it,

ἅπαντες μὲν ἀπιμεν εἰς τοῖμπαλιν·
[we] all-together indeed | depart to the-contrary; [return back

δέ ὑμῖν, ὥς μόνους πειδομένοις πιστο-
again]; but you, as alone being-persuaded (and as being) most-

τάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ
faithful he-will-use (and employ) both in garrisons and

εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι Κίρου
for captaincies, and-also I-know that as friends of-Cyrus

τεύξεσθε οὐτινος ἄλλου ἂν δέησθε.
you-will-obtain whatever else 'you may 'require. (The soldiers)

Ἀκουσάντες ταῦτα, ἐπείδοντο, καὶ διέβησαν
having-heard these (things), were-persuaded, and crossed-over

πρὶν τοῖς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
before (that) the others answered. But when

Κῦρος ᾗσθετο διαβεβηκότας, τε
Cyrus perceived (them) having-crossed-over (the river), 'he not-only

ᾗσθη, καὶ πέμψας Γλοῦν τῷ στρατεύματι
was-pleased, but-also having-sent Glus to-the army

εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μὲν ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἐπαινῶ
(of Menon) said, I indeed O men, now praise

ὑμᾶς· δὲ μελήσει ἔμοι ὅπως καὶ ὑμεῖς
you; | but it-shall-be-a-care to-me how also you

ἐπαινέσητε ἐμὲ,
might-praise me, [but I will take care, that you also shall praise me],

ἢ μηκέτι νομίζετε με Κῦρον. Οἱ στρατιῶται
or no-longer think me Cyrus. The soldiers

ὄντες δὴ μὲν ἐν μεγάλαις ἐλπίσι εὔχοντο αὐτὸν
being now indeed in great hopes | wished him

εὐτυχῆσαι· δὲ καὶ ἐλέγετο
to-have-been-fortunate; [prayed for his success]; and also he-was-said

πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς δῶρα Μένωνι. Δὲ,
to-have-sent in-a-magnificent-manner presents to-Menon. And,

ποιήσας ταῦτα, διέβαινε· δὲ καὶ
having-done these (things), he-crossed-over (the river); and also

ἵπαν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα συνέιπετο αὐτῷ. Καὶ
all the other army followed him. And

οὐδεὶς τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν
no-one — (of those) crossing the river

ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῖ
was-wetted higher (than) the breasts by the

ποταμοῦ. Δὲ οἱ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον, ὅτι οὗτος
river. But the Thapsaceni said, that this

ὁ ποταμὸς οὐ πώποτε γένοιτο διαβατος πεζῇ
 (the) river never at-any-time might-be passable on-foot
 εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις· ἃ Ἀβρο-
 [if not [except], then, but (always) in-boats; which Abro-
 κόμας προΐων τότε κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα Κύρος
 comas going-before 'had then 'burnt, that Cyrus
 μὴ διαβῇ. Δὴ ἐδόκει εἶναι
 might not 'cross-over (the river). (This) then seemed to-be (a)
 γεῖον, καὶ τὸν ποταμὸν σαφῶς ὑπο-
 livine (interposition), and (that) the river manifestly re-
 χωρῆσαι Κύρῳ ὥς βασιλεύσονται. Ἐντεῦθεν
 ceded for-Cyrus as about-reigning. Hence
 ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας ἑννέα σταδμοὺς,
 he-advances through — Syria nine days'-march, (making)
 πεντήκοντα παρασάγγας, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς
 fifty parasangs, and they-came to
 τὸν ποταμὸν Ἀράξην. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν πολλὰ
 'he river Araxes. Here there-were many
 κῶμαι μεστὰι σίτου καὶ οἴνου. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
 villages full of-corn and wine. Here they-remained
 τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
 three days, and provisioned (the army).

CHAPTER V.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας, ἔχων
 THENCE he-marches through — Arabia, having
 τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν δεξιᾷ, πέντε
 the river Euphrates on (the) right, (making) five
 ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς,
 desert stations, [five days' march through the desert], (and;
 τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε παρασάγγας. Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ
 thirty and five parasangs. But in this
 τῷ τόπῳ ἡ γῆ ἦν μὲν πεδῖον, ἅπαν
 — district-of-country the ground was indeed (a) plain, entirely

εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι Κύρου
for captaincies, and-also I-know that as friends of-Cyrus

τεύξεσθε οὐτινος ἄλλου ἂν δέησθε.
you-will-obtain whatever else 'you may 'require. (The soldiers)

Ἀκουσάντες ταῦτα, ἐπείδοντο, καὶ διέβησαν
having-heard these (things), were-persuaded, and crossed-over

πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
before (that) the others answered. But when

Κῦρος ᾗσθετο διαβηκότας, τε
Cyrus perceived (them) having-crossed-over (the river), 'he not-only

ᾗσθη, καὶ πέμψας Γλοῦν τῷ στρατεύματι
was-pleased, but-also having-sent Glus to-the army

εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μὲν ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἐπαινῶ
(of Menon) said, I indeed O men, now praise

ὑμᾶς· δὲ μελήσει ἐμοὶ ὅπως καὶ ὑμεῖς
you; | but it-shall-be-a-care to-me how also you

ἐπαινέσητε ἐμὲ,
might-praise me, [but I will take care, that you also shall praise me],

ἢ μηκέτι νομίζετε με Κύρον. Οἱ στρατιῶται
or no-longer think me Cyrus. The soldiers

ὄντες δὴ μὲν ἐν μεγάλας ἐλπίσι εὐχοντο αὐτὸν
being now indeed in great hopes | wished him

εὐτυχῆσαι· δὲ καὶ ἐλέγετο
to-have-been-fortunate; [prayed for his success]; and also he-was-said

πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς δῶρα Μένωνι. Δὲ,
he-have-sent in-a-magnificent-manner presents to-Menon. And,

ποιήσας ταῦτα, διέβαινε· δὲ καὶ
having-done these (things), he-crossed-over (the river); and also

ἵπαν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα συνείπετο αὐτῷ. Καὶ
all the other army followed him. And

οὐδεὶς τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν
no-one — (of those) crossing the river

ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῖ
was-wetted higher (than) the breasts by the

ποταμοῦ. Δὲ οἱ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον, ὅτι οὗτος
river. But the Thapsaceni said ^{αὐτῷ} this

ὁ ποταμὸς οὐ πώποτε γένοιτο διαβατος πεζῇ
(the) river never at-any-time might-be passable on-foot

εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις· ἃ Ἀβρο-
[if not [except], then, but (always) in-boats; which Abro-

κόμας προῖων τότε κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα Κύρος
comas going-before 'had then 'burnt, that Cyrus

μὴ διαβῇ. Δὴ ἐδόκει εἶναι
might not 'cross-over (the river). (This) then seemed to-be (a)

γεῖον, καὶ τὸν ποταμὸν σαφῶς ὑπο-
livine (interposition), and (that) the river manifestly re-

χωρῆσαι Κύρῳ ὥς βασιλεύσονται. Ἐντεῦθεν
ceded for-Cyrus as about-reigning. Hence

ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας ἑννέα σταδμοὺς,
he-advances through — Syria nine days'-march, (making)

πεντήκοντα παρασάγγας, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς
fifty parasangs, and they-came to

τὸν ποταμὸν Ἀράξην. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν πολλοὶ
'he river Araxes. Here there-were many

κῶμαι μεστὰί σίτου καὶ οἴνου. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
villages full of-corn and wine. Here they-remained

τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
three days, and provisioned (the army).

CHAPTER V.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας, ἔχων
THENCE he-marches through — Arabia, having

τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν δεξιᾷ, πέντε
the river Euphrates on (the) right, (making) five

ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς,
desert stations, [five days' march through the desert], (and;

τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε παρασάγγας. Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ
thirty and five parasangs. But in this

τῷ τόπῳ ἡ γῆ ἦν μὲν πεδῖον, ἅπαν
— district-of-country the ground was indeed (a) plain, entirely

ὅμαλόν ὥσπερ θάλαττα, δὲ πλήρες ἄψινδίου,
 level as (the) sea, and full of-wormwood,
 εἰ δὲ καὶ τι ἄλλο ὑλῆς ἢ καλάμου
 if indeed also any other (kind) of-underwood or of-reed
 ἐνῆν, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα·
 was-on-it, all were (as) odoriferous as perfumes;
 δ' οὐδεὶ δένδρον ἐνῆν. Δὲ παντοῖα
 but no tree was-thereon. But (here there were) various
 θηρία, πλείστοι μὲν ἄγριοι ὄνοι, δὲ
 wild-animals, the-most (numerous) indeed (were) wild asses, also
 πολλοὶ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες
 many | sparrows the large [ostriches]; and also bustard
 καὶ δορκάδες ἐνῆσαν· δὲ οἱ ἵππεις ἐνίοτε
 and antelopes were-thereon; and the horsemen sometimes
 ἐδίωκον ταῦτα τὰ θηρία. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ὄνοι
 pursued these — wild-animals. And indeed the wild-asses
 ἵππαις τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες
 when any-one might-pursue (them), having-run-before (some distance)
 ἔστασαν· γὰρ ἔτρεχον πολὺ θᾶττον τῶν
 stood-still; for they-ran much (more) quickly (than) the
 ἵππων· καὶ πάλιν ἐπεὶ οἱ ἵπποι πλησιάζουσιν
 horses; and again when the horses might-approach
 ἐποίουν ταῦτόν· καὶ ἦν οὐ λαβεῖν
 they-did the-same (thing); and it-was not (possible) to-take
 εἰ μὴ οἱ ἵππεις διαστάντες
 (them) | if not [unless] the horsemen stationed-at-intervals
 θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι τοῖς
 should-hunt (them), (also) succeeding (one another) 'with (fresh) —
 ἵπποις. Δὲ τὰ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν
 'horses. And the flesh 'of — (those) 'caught was
 παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, δὲ ἀπαλότερα.
 like the stags' (flesh), but more-tender
 Δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβε στρουθόν· δὲ οἱ τῶν
 But no-one took (an) ostrich; | and — (those) of-the
 ἵππεων διώξαντες ταχὺ
 horsemen having-pursued [and those horsemen that pursued them] quickly

ἱπαίνοντο· γὰρ ἀπεσπᾶτο πολὺ
desisted; | for it-withdrew-itself much [for it outstripped the horse-

φείγουσα, δρόμῳ μὲν τοῖς
men] fleeing (away from them), in-running (using) — — (its)

ποσὶ, δὲ ταῖς πτέρυξιν αἵρουσα, ὥσπερ
feet, and — (its) wings raising (these), as

χρωμένη ἰστίῳ. Δὲ ἐστὶ λαμβάνειν τὰς
using (a) sail. But it-is (possible) to-take the

ὠτίδας, ἂν τις ἀνιστῇ ταχὺ· γὰρ
bustards, if any-one should-'start (them) 'up quickly; for

πετοῦνται βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες, καὶ
they-fly (a) short (distance) like-as partridges, and

ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. Δὲ τὰ κρέα αὐτῶν ἦν
speedily tire. But the flesh of-them was

ἥδιστα.
very-delicious.

Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφί
Marching — through this — country they

κοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Μάσκαν, τὸ εἶρος
come to the river Mascas, the breadth

πλεδριαῖον. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη
(of which is a) plethrum. Here there-was (a) large

ἐρήμη πόλις, δ' ὄνομα αὐτῇ Κερσωτή·
deserted city, but (the) name (to-it) (of it was) Corsote;

δ' αὕτη περιέρρεϊτο ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα
|and this (city) was-flowed-round by the Mascas 'in (a)

κίκλῳ. Ἐνταῦδ'
'circle [the river Mascas flowed round about this city]. Here

ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
they-remained three days and provisioned (the army).

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει τρεῖς καὶ δέκα
Thence 'he (Cyrus) 'proceeds | three and ten [thirteen

ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς ἐνενήκοντα
desert stations (or days' march) (making) ninety

παρασάγγας, ἔχων τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν
parasangs, having the river Euphrates on (the)

δεξιᾷ, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. Ἐν τούτοις
 right, and he-arrives at (the) Gates. In these
 τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο
 — stations many of-the beasts-of-burden perished
 ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· γὰρ ἦν οὐ χόρτος οὐδὲ οὐδέν
 of hunger; for there-was no grass nor any
 ἕτερον δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἀπασα χώρα ἦν
 (other) (kind of) tree, but the entire country was
 ψιλὴ· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες
 bare (being destitute of vegetation); | the — inhabiting [the
 ὀρύττοντες καὶ τοιοῦντες
 inhabitants of this desert district] quarrying and fashioning
 ἀλέτας ὄνους παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν, ἦγον
 [grinding upper-stones [millstones] near the river, carried
 εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ ἐπώλουν, καὶ ἀντα-
 (them) to Babylon and sold (them), and buying-
 γοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. Ὁ δὲ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε
 in-return corn lived (thereon). — Also corn failed
 τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἦν οὐ πρίασθαι
 the army, and it-was not (possible) to-buy (any)
 εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ βαρ-
 [if not [unless] in the Lydian market among the bar-
 βαρικῷ Κίρου, τὴν καπίδην ἀλείρων ἢ
 barian (forces) of-Cyrus, the capithe of-wheat-flour or
 ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. Ὁ δὲ σίγλος
 barley-meal (being sold for) four sigli. The — siglus
 δύναται ἑπτὰ Ἀττικὸὺς ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιόβολιον·
 is-worth seven Attic oboli and (a) half-obolus;
 δὲ ἡ καπίδη ἐχῶρει δύο Ἀττικὰς χοίνικας.
 and the capithe contained two Attic chœniceæ.
 Οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο ἐσθίωντες κρέα
 | Therefore the soldiers continued eating flesh
 Ἦν δὲ
 [therefore the soldiers lived entirely on flesh]. There-were also (some)
 τούτων τῶν σταδμῶν, οἷς ἤλαυνε
 of-these — days'-marches, which he-urged-on (so as to make them)

πάν μακροῖς, **ὅποτε** βοῖλοιο διατελέσαι
 very long, whenever he-might-wish | to-finish-the-road [to ar-
 ρίβε] **ἢ** πρὸς ὕδωρ, **ἢ** πρὸς χιλόν. **Καὶ** δὴ
 either at water, or at forage. And indeed
ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος δυσπο-
 ance-when | narrow-place and mud having-appeared difficult-
ρεύτου ταῖς ἀμάξαις,
 of-passage for-the wagons, [a narrow and muddy road appeared,
 ὃ Κῦρος ἐπέστη
 which was of difficult passage for wagons], — Cyrus stood
συν τοῖς ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις περὶ
 with the most-distinguished and most-wealthy about
αὐτὸν, καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα,
 him, and ordered Glus and Pigres, (that)
λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ, **συνεκ-**
 having-taken (a part) of-the barbarian army, to-extri-
βιάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. **Δ'** ἐπεὶ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ
 cate the wagons. But when they-seemed to-him
ποιεῖν σχολαίως, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς
 to-do (this) tardily, as-if in-anger he-ordered the
κρατίστους Πέρσας περὶ αὐτὸν **συνεπισ-**
 most-distinguished Persians about him | together-to-have-acce-
πεῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. **Ἐν**θα δὴ ἦν θεάσασ-
 lerated [to hasten] the wagons. There then was to-be-
δαι τι μέρος τῆς εὐταξίας. **Γάρ**
 seen some portion (of) — good-order (and discipline). For
ρίψαντες τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάन्दυς, ὅπου ἕκαστος
 having-thrown-off — (their) purple cloaks, where each
ἔτυχεν ἑστηκώς **ἱέν-**
 ||happened having-been-standing [happened to have stood] | they-sent-
το, ὥσπερ τις ἂν δράμοι
 themselves, [they rushed], as-if | any-one might run [on a race]
περὶ νίκης, καὶ κατὰ μάλα πρανοῦς γηλόφου,
 for victory, and down (a) very steep hill,
ἔχοντες τε τούτους τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας,
 having also (on) those — rich tunics,

καὶ ταῖς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, δὲ καὶ ἔνιοι
 and — variegated trousers, and also some (having)
 στρεπτοῖς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις, καὶ ψέλλια
 chains about — (their) necks, and bracelets
 περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐδὶς δὲ εἰσπηδήσαντες
 about — (their) hands; [wrists]; directly also having-leaped
 σὺν τοῖτοις εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐξεκόμισαι
 with these (ornaments) into the mud they-brought-out
 τὰς ἀμάξας μετεώρους θᾶττον ἢ ὥς τις
 the wagons lifted-up quicker than (even-thus) any-one
 ἂν ᾤετο. Δὲ τὸ σίμπαν Κῦρος ἦν δῆλος
 might have-thought. And (on) the whole | Cyrus was evident
 σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν
 hastening all the road, [Cyrus was evidently hastening
 καὶ οὐ διατρίβων, μὴ ὅπου ἐκαδέζετο
 the march], and not delaying, unless where he-halted
 ἔνεκα ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου,
 on-account-of provisions or of-some other necessary
 νομίζων ὅσω μὲν θᾶττον ἔλθοι
 (thing), thinking (that) by-how-much — the-more-speedily he-might-go
 τοσοῦτω ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ μαχεῖσθαι
 by-so-much the-more-unprepared (he might come) to-fight
 βασιλεῖ, δὲ ὅσω σχολαιότερον
 (the) king, and by-how-much the-more-tardily (he might march)
 τοσοῦτω πλέον στρατεύμα συναγείρεσθαι
 by-so-much the-more (numerous) army is-to-be-collected
 βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δ' ἦν συνιδεῖν τῷ προσέ-
 'for (the) 'king. | And also it-was to-perceive to-the direct-
 χοντι τὸν νοῦν
 ing the mind [and it might readily be perceived by any one
 ἢ ἀρχὴν βασιλέως οἷσα
 directing his attention to it] | the empire 'of (the) 'king (as) being
 ἰσχυρὰ μὲν
 strong indeed [that the empire of the king was indeed strong] 'from
 πλήθει χώρας καὶ ἀνδρῶν,
 (the) 'multitude (and extent of) territory and (the number) of-men.

δὲ ἀσθενής τοῖς μήχεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ
 but weak by-the lengths of-the roads and | in-the
 διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις, εἰ τις
 to-have-separated [in the dispersion] (of) — (its) forces, if any-one
 ἐποιοεῖτο τὸν πόλεμον διὰ ταχέων.
 made — war (against it) by quick (movements).

Δὲ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ Εὐφράτου, κατὰ
 But beyond the river Euphrates, through (the opposite)
 τοῖς ἐρήμοις σταθμοῖς ἦν
 — | desert stations [marches through the desert] there-was
 εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη πόλις, δὲ ὄνομα
 (an) opulent and large city, and (its) name (was)
 Χαρμάνδη. Ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἡγόραζον
 Charmande. From this (city) the soldiers brought
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια διαβαίνοντες σχεδίας ὧδε·
 the necessities-of-life crossing-over on-temporary-rafts (made) thus;
 ἐπίμπλασαν κοίφου χόρτου διφθέρας αἱ
 they-filled with | light grass [hay] (the) skins, which
 εἶχον στεγάσματα, εἶτα συνῆγον
 they-had (as) covering (for their tents), then they-united-togeth er
 καὶ συνέσπων ὥς τὸ
 (the edges) and | 'drew (them) 'together [sewed them] so-that the
 ἔδωρ μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης· ἐπὶ τοῦτ' ἦν
 water (could) not (to)-touch the hay; on th' acc
 διέβαινον, καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, τέ
 they-crossed-over, and procured the necessities, not-only
 οἶνον πεποιημένον ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου τῆς ὑπὸ
 wine made of the fruit — from
 τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ σῖτον μελίης· γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν
 a palm-tree, but-also corn of-pannic; for this was
 πλεῖστον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
 most-plentiful in — (this) country.

Δὲ ἐνταῦθα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε τοῦ Μέναιος
 And here the soldiers not-only — of-Meason
 καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ἀμφιλεξάντων
 but-also — (those) of-Clearchus having-been-disputing-about

τι, ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας τὸν τοῦ
 something, — Clearchus | having-judged [judging] the (soldier) —
 Μένωνος ἀδικεῖν ἐνέβαλε πληγὰς·
 of-Menon | to-do-wrong [to be in the wrong] inflicted blows (on him);
 δὲ ὁ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ στρατεύμα ἑαυτοῦ
 but who having-gone | to the army of-himself [to the
 ἔλεγε· δ' οἱ
 army, to which he belonged] told [what had befallen him]; but the
 στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ἰσχυρῶς ἐχάλε-
 soldiers having-heard (this) 'were vehemently 'irri-
 παινον, καὶ ὀργίζοντο τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. Δὲ τῇ
 tated, and enraged — (at) Clearchus. And the
 αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν
 same day Clearchus, having-gone to the crossing
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγοράν,
 of-the river, and here having-inspected the market.
 ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἑαυτοῦ
 he-rides-away | to the tent of-himself [to his own tent].
 διὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος Μένωνος, σὺν ὀλίγοις
 through the army of-Menon, | with (a) few
 τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· δὲ Κῦρος
 followers, namely (the) (those) about him; but Cyrus 'had
 οὐτὼ ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλαινε· δὲ τις
 not-yet 'come, but still proceeded (on his march); but some-one
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν Μένωνος σχίζων ξύλα, ὥς
 of-the soldiers of-Menon (who was) splitting wood, as
 εἶδε τὸν Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἵησι
 he-saw — Clearchus riding-through (the camp), throws (at him)
 τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ αὐτός μὲν ἡμαρτεν
 'with — (his) 'axe; and this (soldier) indeed missed
 αὐτοῦ· δ' ἄλλος λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος,
 him, but another (throws) 'with (a) 'stone and-also another,
 εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης.
 'then many, (a) shout (at the same time) having-occurred.
 Δε ὁ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ στρατεύμα ἑαυτοῦ,
 But — (Clearchus) takes-refuge | in the army of-himself,

και εὐδὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς
 [in his own camp], and immediately calls [his men] to
 τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας
 — arms; and he-ordered | the — heavy-armed-men
 οὗτοῦ μέναι δέν
 of-him [his heavy-armed men] | to-have-remained [to remain] having-
 τας τας ἀστίδας πρὸς τα γόνατα· δὲ αὐτὸς
 placed — (their) shields against — (their) knees; but he
 λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾶκας καὶ τοὺς ἰππέας,
 [having-taken [taking] the Thracians and the horsemen,
 οἱ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ
 that were with-him in the army more than
 τετταράκοντα, δὲ οἱ πλείστοι τούτων
 forty (in number), but the most of-these (were)
 Θρᾶκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ'
 Thracians, proceeded-out against the (troops) of-Menon, so (that)
 ἐκείνους ἐκπεπληχθαι καὶ Μένωνα
 they were-struck (with astonishment, as was) also Menon
 αὐτὸν, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. Δὲ
 himself, and (so that they) run to — arms. But
 καὶ οἱ ἕστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγ-
 also — (some) stood hesitating (about) the af-
 ματι.
 fair (not knowing what to make of it).

Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος, γὰρ ἔτυχε προσιών ὕστερος,
 — But Proxenus, | for he-happened approaching last
 καὶ τάξις τῶν ὀπλι-
 (in order), [who brought up the rear], and (a) division of-the heavy-
 τῶν ἐπομένη αὐτῷ, ἄγων οὖν
 armed-men following him, leading therefore (his soldiers)
 εὐδὺς εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων
 immediately | into the middle of-both [into the space be-
 ἔδετο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλε-
 tween both] stood (under) — arms, and required of — Cle-
 ἄρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δὲ ὁ
 archus not to-do these (things). But — (Clearchus,

ἐχάλεπαινεν, ὅτι αὐτοῦ δεήσαντος ὀλίγου κατα-
 was-irritated, because he having-wanted little to-have
 λευσθῆναι, πρῶως λέγοι τὸ πάθος
 been-stoned, (that he, Proxenus,) 'should mildly 'mention | the suffering
 αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευέ τε αὐτὸν ἐξίστασθαι
 of-him [his ill treatment] he-ordered — him (then) to-stand-out
 ἐκ τοῦ μέσου. Δὲ Κῦρος καὶ ἐν τοίτῳ ἐπίει,
 from the middle. But Cyrus also at this came-up,
 καὶ ἐπίδετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· δ' εὐδὴς ἔλαβε
 and inquired-into the affair; — (then) 'he immediately 'took
 τὰ παλτά εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, καὶ σὺν τοῖς
 — javelins in — (his) hands, and with — (those)
 παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ
 present of — (his) faithful-attendants, came hastening to the
 μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Κλέαρχε καὶ
 midst (of them), and speaks thus. O-Clearchus and
 Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες οἱ παρόντες,
 Proxenus, and (you) the other Greeks who are-present,
 ἴστε οὐκ ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. Γὰρ εἰ συνάψετε
 you-know not what you-are-doing. For if you-shall-join-in
 τινα μάχην ἀλλήλοις, νομίζετε ἐμὴ
 any battle with-one-another, | think [be assured] (that) I
 τε κατακεκόψεσθαι ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ
 not-only will-instantly-be-cut-off in this (the) (very) day, but-also
 ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ὕστερον ἐμοῦ· γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων
 you not long after me; | for — our-affairs
 ἐχόντων κακῶς πάντες οἴντοι
 having badly [for if our affairs go ill] all these
 βάρβαροι, οἷς ὁράτε ἔσονται πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν
 barbarians, that you-see will-be more-hostile to-us
 τῶν ὄντων παρὰ βασιλεῖ
 than — (those barbarians) | being [who are] with (the) king.
 Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκοίσας ταῦτα ἐγένετο ἐν
 — Clearchus hearing these (things) | became in
 φαυτῷ· καὶ ἀμφοτέροι παυσά-
 himself; [recovered self-possession]; and both (parties) having-

μενοι ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα κατὰ
 reased (from strife) placed — (their) arms in ('their appropriate'
 χώραν.
 place.

CHAPTER VI.

Προϊόντων ἐντεῦθεν ἰχνια καὶ κόπρος ἵππων
 PROCEEDING thence (the) footsteps and dung of-horses
 ἐφαίνετο· ὁ στίβος δ' εἰκάζετο εἶναι ὥς
 appeared; the track indeed was-conjectured to-be about (that)
 δισχιλίων ἵππων. Οἷτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ
 of-two-thousand horses. These going-before burned both (the,
 χιλὸν καὶ τι ἄλλο εἰ ἦν χρήσιμον. Ὀρόντης
 fodder and any-thing else, if (it) was useful. Orontes
 δέ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ τε προσήκων γένει
 indeed, (a) Persian man not-only being-related by-birth 'to (the,
 βασιλεῖ, καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος
 'king, but-also (as respects) — warlike-affairs being-considered
 ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν, ἐπιβουλεύει
 among the most-distinguished 'of (the) 'Persians, plots-against
 Κίρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολένηςας
 Cyrus, and (with whom) he-'had formerly 'been-at-war,
 δὲ καταλλαγεῖς. Οἷτος εἶπε Κίρῳ εἰ
 but had-become-reconciled. This (person) said to-Cyrus, if
 δοίῃ αὐτῷ χιλίους ἵππας, ὅτι ἐνεδρεΐσας
 he-would-give him a-thousand horsemen, that having-lain-in-ambush
 ἂν ἢ κατακάνοι τοῖς ἵππας προκατα-
 'he would either 'destroy the horsemen burning-down-every-
 καίοντας ἢ ἔλοι πολλοὺς αἰτῶν ζῶντας, καὶ
 thing-before-them, or might-take many of-them alive, | and
 κωλύσειε ἐπιόντας τοῦ καίειν,
 would-hinder (them) going-against of-the to-burn, [and would hinder
 καὶ ποιήσειεν,
 them from going and burning everything], | and would-make, [and would

ὥστε αὐτοῖς ἰδόντας τὸ στράτευμα Κύρου
cause], that they having-seen the army of-Cyrus

μήποτε δύνασθαι διαγγεῖλαι
'would never 'be-able | to-have-told [to tell] (it) 'to (the,

βασίλει. Δὲ τῷ Κίρῳ ἀκοῖσαντι ταῦτα
'king. | But to — Cyrus hearing these (things,

ἐδόκει εἶναι ὠφέλιμα,
it-seemed to-be advantageous, [but Cyrus hearing these propositions

καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν
approved of them as being advantageous], and he-ordered him

λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγε-
to-take (a) part (of the troops) from each of-the com-

υόνων. Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντης, νομίσας τοῖς ἰππέας
manders. — But Orontes, having-thought the horsemen

εἶναι ἐτοίμους αὐτῷ, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ
to-be ready for-him, writes (a) letter to (the)

βασίλεα, ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων πλείστους ἰππέας
king, that he-would-come having the-most horsemen

ὥς ἂν δύνηται.
that 'he might 'be-able (to obtain); [that he would come to him with

ἀλλὰ ἐκέλευε
the greatest number of horsemen he could obtain]; but he-requested

φράσαι τοῖς ἰππεῦσιν ἑαυτοῦ
(him) | to-have-told the horsemen of-him [to tell his horsemen]

ὑποδέχεσθαι αὐτὸν ὥς φίλον. Καὶ ἐνῆν
to-receive him as (a) friend. And there | was [were]

ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ δὲ ὑπομνήματα πρόσθεν φιλίας
in the letter not-only reminiscences of-former friendships

καὶ πίστεως. Δίδωσι ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν
but-also of-fidelity (to him). He-gave this the letter

πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὥς ᾤετο. δὲ ὁ λαβὼν
to (a) 'faithful man, as he-thought; but — (he) taking (the letter)

δίδωσι Κίρῳ. Δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἀναγνοὺς αὐτὴν
gave (it) to-Cyrus. But — Cyrus having-read it

συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντην, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν
arrests Orontes, and he-convokes | in the

σκηνὴν ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς ἑπτὰ ἀρίστους
tent of-himself [in his own tent] the seven most-distinguished

Περσῶν τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν· καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς
'of (the) 'Persians — about him; and he-ordered the

στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀγαγεῖν ὀπλίτας,
commanders of-the Greeks to-bring-up heavy-armed-men,

δὲ θέσθαι τοίτους τὰ ὄπλα περὶ
and | to-have-placed [to place] these — (in) arms around

τὴν σκηνὴν αὐτοῦ. Δὲ οἱ ἐποιήσαν
|the tent of-him [his tent]. And — (they) did

ταῦτα ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτας.
these (things) bringing about three-thousand heavy-armed-men.

Δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσε εἰσω Κλέαρχον σίμβουλον,
And also he-called within Clearchus (as) counsellor,

ὃς γε ἐδόκει καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
who at-least seemed both to-himself and the others 'to-be

μάλιστα προτιμηθῆναι τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δ' ἐπεὶ
the-most 'honoured of-the Greeks. But after

ἐξῆλθεν ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ
he-came-out he-related to — (his) friends the trial —

Ορόντου, ὡς ἐγένετο· γὰρ ἦν οὐκ
of-Orontes, how it-was (conducted); for there-was no

ἀπόρρητον. Ἐφη δὲ Κῦρον ἀρχεῖν
secrecy (enjoined), He-said — (that) Cyrus began

τοῦ λόγου ὧδε·
the subject thus;

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως βου-
I-have-invited you (O-men) (my) friends, that de-

λεύομενος σὺν ὑμῖν πράξω περὶ τούτου Ὀρόντου
liberating with you I-will-do respecting this Orontes

τοῦτο ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν
| that whatever just is [that which is just] both before gods

καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων. Ἰὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς
and before men. For first indeed — my

πατὴρ ἔδωκε τούτον εἶναι ὑπήκοον ἐμοί. Δ
'father gave this (man) to-be obedient to-me But

ἔπει ταχθεὶς, ὡς αὐτὸς ἔφη, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ
when having-been-ordered, as 'he himself 'said, by (he) my

ἀδελφοῦ, οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων
brother, this (Orontes) made-war-against me (he) having

τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν Σάρδεσι καὶ ἐγὼ προσπολεμῶν
the citadel in Sardis, and I making-war-against

αὐτὸν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξει
him | made (it so) [carried it on so] that (it) seemed (best)

τοῖτ'ω παύσασθαι τοῦ πολέμου πρὸς
to-this (person) to-have-put-an-end (to) the war against

ἐμέ, καὶ ἔλαβον δεξιάν καὶ ἔδωκα.
me, and I-took (his) right-hand and gave (him mine is

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντα ἔστιν
friendship). After these he-said, O Orontes is-there

ὃ τι ἥδίκησα σε; Ἀπεκρίνατο
| what any [any thing in which] I-have-wronged you? He-answered

ὅτι οὐ. Δὲ ὁ Κίρος πάλιν ἠρώτα.
that (there-is) not. But — Cyrus again inquired; (did you)

οὐκοῦν ἴστερον, ὡς σὺ αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖς, ἀποστὰς
not-then afterwards, as you yourself confess, having-gone-over

εἰς Μυσοὺς ἀδικοίμενος οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ
to (the) Mysians, being-injured (in) no (manner) by me,

ἐποίεις κακῶς τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν, ὃ τι
act ill (against) — my territory, | what any-thing

ἐδύνω; Ὁ Ὀρόντης ἔφη.
[in whatever] you-could? — Orontes said (that he did).

Οὐκοῦν ἔφη ὁ Κίρος ὅπου αὐτὸς ἔγνω
(Did you) not-then said — Cyrus | when again you-knew

τῇ δυνάμει σεαυτοῦ
the strength of-yourself, [when you were aware of the little strength

ἔλθων ἐπὶ τὸν βωμόν τῆς
you possessed against me], coming to the altar —

Ἀρτέμιδος, ἔφησθα τε μεταμέλειν σοι,
of-Diana, you-said (that it) not-only repented you

καὶ, πείσας ἐμέ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι
but-also, having-persuaded me, 'you again 'gave me

πιστά, καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; Καὶ
pledges (of good faith), and received (the same) from me? And

ὁ Ὀρόντης ὁμολογεῖ ταῦτα Τί οἶν, ἔφη
— Orontes confessed these (things). (In) what then, said

ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδίκηδεῖς ἱπ' ἐμοῦ,
— Cyrus, | having-been-injured by me, [hast thou been injured by

νῦν τὸ τρίτον γέγονας φαιερὸς
me], (that) now (for) the third (time) you-have-been manifestly

ἐπιβουλεύων μοι; Δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντου εἰπόντος ὅτι
plotting-against me? But — Orontes saying, that

ἀδίκηδεῖς οὐδέν. Ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτησεν
having-been-injured (in) nothing (he did so). — Cyrus asked

αὐτόν· Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν γεγενῆσθαι ἀδικος περὶ
him; You-confess therefore to-have-been unjust towards

ἐμέ; Γὰρ ἡ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ
me? (I confess it) for certainly (there is a) necessity, said —

Ὀρόντης. Ἐκ τοῦτο ὁ Κῦρος πάλιν ἠρώτησεν·
Orontes. After this — Cyrus again asked;

Ἄν ἔτι οἶν γένοιο πολέμιος τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ,
Would 'you yet then become hostile — to-my brother,

δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός ἐμοί; Ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο
but friendly and faithful to-me? — And he-answered,

ὅτι οἶδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, ἂν ἔτι
that neither if I-should-become (so), O Cyrus, would-it yet-ever

δόξαιμι, σοὶ γε ποτε. Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος
seem-so, to-you at-least never. On this Cyrus

εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν. Ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν
said — (to those) present. — (This) man indeed 'has

μὲν πεποίηκε τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει τοιαῦτα. Δὲ
certainly 'done each-things and he-acknowledges the-same. And

ὑμῶν σὺ ὦ Κλέαρχε πρῶτος ἀπόφηναι
of-you (present) 'do you O Clearchus first declar

γνώμην, ὃ τι δοκεῖ σοι. Δὲ Κλέαρχος
(your) opinion, whatever seems (right) to-you. And Clearchus

εἶπε τάδε· Ἐγὼ συμβουλεύω τον τοῦτον ἄνδρα
spoke thus; I advise (that) — this man

ποιεῖσθαι ἐκποδὼν ὥς τάχιστα, ὥς
 oe-put out-of-the-way as quickly (as possible), that 'it-may
 μηκέτι δέη φυλάττεσθαι τοῦτον,
 no-longer 'be-necessary to-guard-against this (person),
 ἀλλὰ ἢ σχολὴ ἡμῖν, κατὰ τὸ εἶναι
 but (that) there-may-be leisure to-us, | concerning the to-be
 τοῦτον ποιεῖν εὖ τούτους
 this-one [so far as relates to this man] to-do good (to) those
 τοὺς ἐδελοντάς φίλους. Δὲ ἔφη ταύτη
 — willing (to be) friends. And he-said (that) in-this
 τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσδέσσαι. Μετὰ
 — opinion also the others concurred. After
 ταῦτα, Κίρου κελεύοντος, ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ
 these (things), Cyrus ordering (it), all even the
 συγγενεῖς ἀναστάντες ἔλαβον τὸν Ὀρόντην
 relations (of Orontes) rising-up took — Orontes
 τῆς ζώνης ἐπὶ θανάτῳ.
 (by) the girdle | as-to death; [in token of his being condemned
 δὲ εἴτα οἷς προσετάχθη ἐξῆγον
 to death]; but then (those) to-whom it-was-commanded, led
 αὐτὸν. Δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ πρόσθεν
 him (out). But when (those) saw him who formerly
 προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν,
 used-to-bow-down (before him), and then (also) they-bowed-down
 καὶ περ εἰδότες, ὅτι ἄγοιτο ἐπὶ θάνατον.
 (before him) although knowing, that he-might-be-led to death.
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσηνέχθη τὴν σκηνὴν Ἀρταπάτου, τοῦ
 And then he-was-led to-the tent of-Artapatas, the
 πιστοτάτου τῶν σκηπτοῦχων Κίρου,
 most-faithful (and trusted) of-the | sceptre-bearers [ushers] of-Cyrus,
 μετὰ ταῦτα οὐδεὶς πώποτε εἶδε Ὀρόντην οὔτε
 after this no-one ever saw Orontes, neither
 ζῶντα οὔτε τεθνηκότα, οὔδ' οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς
 living nor having-died, | nor any-one having-known
 ἔλεγεν ὅπως ἀπέθανε.
 was-said [nor could any one of his own knowledge say] how he died

οἱ ἄλλοι εἰκαζον ἄλλως.

[and others conjectured otherwise [some conjectured this, and others that]. But no tomb of-him 'was ever

ἑφαινη.

'seen.

CHAPTER VII.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας

HENCE he-proceeds through the Babylonian (province)

τρεῖς σταδμοὺς δώδεκα παρασάγγας. Δ' ἐν
three days'-march (making) twelve parasangs. And on

τῷ τρίτῳ σταδμῷ Κῦρος ποιεῖται, περὶ μέσας
the third day's march Cyrus makes, about (the) middle

νύκτας, ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν Βαρβάρων,
of-night, a-review of-the Greeks and of-the Barbarians,

ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· γὰρ ἐδόκει βασιλέα ἥξειν
on the plain; for he-thought (that the) king would-arrive

εἰς τὴν ἑω ἐπιούσαν σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι
on the morning coming with the army (and)

μαχοῦμενον· καὶ μὲν ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι
offering-battle; and — he-ordered Clearchus to-take-command

τοῦ δεξιῦ κέρως, δὲ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ
of-the right wing, and Menon the Thessalian of-the

εὐωνύμου δὲ αὐτὸς διέταξε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.
left; but he-himself drew-up-in-order-of-battle [the of-himself

Δὲ μετὰ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα
[his own troops]. But after the review | at-the-same-time

τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, αὐτόμολοι ἤκοντες
with-the coming day, [at dawn of day], deserters come

παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ
from (the) great king informed Cyrus

περὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς βασιλέως. Δὲ Κῦρος,
about (the state) of-the army 'of (the) 'king. — Cyrus,

συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν
having-assembled the generals and captains of-the

Ελλήνων, συνεβουλευέτο τε, πῶς ἂν
Greeks, consulted (with them) not-only, how 'he might

ποιοίτο τὴν μάχην, καὶ αὐτὸς
'make the battle, [conduct the engagement], but-also he

θαρρύνων τοιαύδε παρήνει. Ὁ Ἕλληνας ἄνδρες,
encouraging thus exhorted (them). O Grecian men,

οὐκ ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων ἀνδρώπων
(it is) not (for) being-in-want of-barbarian men (that)

ἄγω ὑμᾶς συμμάχους, ἀλλὰ νομίζων
I-lead you (with me as) auxiliaries, but thinking

ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν
you to-be more-efficient and better (than) many

βαρβάρων, διὰ τοῦτο
(or a great multitude of) barbarians, 'I for this (reason alone)

προσέλαβον. Οὖν ὅπως ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες
'take-you-with (me). (See) then that you-will-be men

ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ὑπὲρ
worthy of-the liberty which you-have-acquired and for

ἧς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ εὖ ἴστε,
which I 'esteem you 'fortunate. For 'you well 'know,

ὅτι ἂν ἐλοίμην τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἀντὶ πάντων
that 'I would 'prefer — liberty before all

ὧν ἔχω καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίῳ.
(that) which I-have, and other (things) numerous

Δὲ καὶ ὅπως εἰδῆτε εἰς
(and greater). But also in-order-that 'you (may) 'know to

οἶον ἀγῶνα ἔρχεσθε, ἐγὼ εἰδώς
what (kind of) contest you-come, | I having-known [I knowing

διδάξω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος μὲν πολὺ
well] will-inform you. For the multitude (is) indeed large,

καὶ ἐπίασι πολλῇ κραυγῇ· δ' ἂν ἀνάσ-
and they-come-on 'with (a) 'great shout; but should you-

χησθε ταῦτα, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα
have-sustained this, and (as respects) the other (things)

δοκῶ μοι αἰσχύνεσθαι γνώσεσθε οἷους τοῖς
I-seem to-myself to-be-ashamed (that) you-will-know what the

ἀνδράτους ὄντας ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἡμῖν.
men | being [born] in — (this) country (are of use) to-us

Δὲ ὑμῶν ὄντων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ
(as soldiers). But you being men (of courage), and

γενομένων εὐτόλμων,
having-become bold (and spirited), (so as to conquer in the ap-

ἐγὼ μὲν ποιήσω τὸν ὑμῶν
proaching engagement), I indeed will-make (the) (those) of-you

βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι οἰκαδε ἀπελθεῖν ζηλωτὸν
desiring to-go home | to-have-departed [to-return] envied

τοῖς οἶκοι· δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσῃν πολλοὺς
— (by those) at-home; but I-think to-'make many 'hereafter

ἐλέσθαι τὰ
[to-have-taken-for-yourselves [to prefer] the (things to be obtained)

παρ' ἐμοὶ ἀντὶ τῶν οἶκοι.
with me before — (those that may be obtained) at-home.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης Σάμιος φυγάς, δὲ
Then Gaulites (a) Samian exile, but (a)

πιστός Κίρῳ παρών εἶπε· καὶ μὲν ὦ
faithful (adherent of) Cyrus being-present said; and yet, O

Κῆρε τινες λέγουσι, ὅτι νῦν ἱπισχνῇ πολλὰ
Cyrus, some say, that now you-promise many (things)

διὰ τὸ εἶνα ἐν τοιοῦτῳ τοῦ προ-
on-account-of | the to-be [being] in such (a state) of — ap-

σιόντος κινδύνου· δὲ ἂν τι γένηται εἴ,
proaching danger; but should any-thing happen well, [but

φασὶ σε οὐ μεμ-
should success attend you], they-say | (that) you 'would not 'have-

νῆσθαι·
remembered; [that you would not hereafter remember your promises]

δ' ἐνιοι οἷδ' εἰ μεμνῶ τε καὶ βοῖλοιο
— some (also say that) neither if you-remember and also may-wish

δίνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῖναι ὅσα ἱπισχνῇ. Ὁ Κῆρος
will-you-be-able — to-give what you-promise. — Cyrus

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν· Ἀλλ' ἔστι ἡμῖν ὧ ἄνδρες,
hearing this said; But there-is to-us, O men,

ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴα,
[the empire the paternal, [the empire, that belonged to my father],

μὲν μέχρι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οὗ
(which) indeed (extends) so-far to (the) south where

ἄνθρωποι οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν διὰ καῦμα,
men 'are not 'able to-dwell by-reason-of heat,

δὲ μέχρι πρὸς ἄρκτον οὐ διὰ
and so-far to (the) north where (they cannot live) for

χειμῶνα· δὲ οἱ φίλοι τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σατρα-
cold; but the friends of — my brother govern-as-

πεύουσι πάντα τὰ ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.
entrap all (the countries situated) — in (the) middle of-these

Δὲ ἦν νικήσωμεν δεῖ ἡνᾶς
(northern and southern limits). But if we-conquer it-becomes us

ποιῆσαι τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους ἐγκρατεῖς τούτων.
to-make — our friends masters of-those

Ὡστε οὐ δέδοικα τοῦτο μὴ ἔχω
(countries). So-that I-'have not 'feared this, lest I-have

οὐκ τι ὃ δῶ ἐκάστω τῶν φίλων,
not any-thing which I-might-give to-each — 'of (my) friends,

ἀν γένηται εὖ, ἀλλὰ, μὴ ἔχω
[should it-happen well, [should we be successful], but lest I-have

οὐκ ἱκανοὺς, οἷς δῶ. Δὲ
not (friends) enough, to-whom I-might-give. But 'I-will

καὶ δώσω ἐκάστω ὑμῶν Ἑλλήνων χρυσοῦν
also 'give to-each of-you Greeks (a) golden

στέφανον. Δὲ οἱ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
crown. But the (Greeks present) hearing these (things),

αὐτοὶ ἦσαν τε πολὺ προθυμότεροι,
they were not-only much 'more (encouraged and) 'prompt-for-action,

καὶ ἐξήγγελλον τοῖς ἄλλοις.
but-also they-reported (what they had heard) to-the others (of the

Δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τινὲς
Greeks). And not-only the commanders about in but-also some

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εἰσῆσαν ἀξιῶντες
of-the other Greeks entered (his tent) desiring

εἰδέναι τι ἔσται σφίσιν, ἐὰν κρατήσωσι.
to-know what (reward) shall-be to-them, if they-should-conquer.

Δὲ ὁ ἐμπιπλὰς τὴν γνώμην ἀπάντων,
But — (he) having-satisfied the minds of-all,

ἀπέπεμπε· Δὲ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο
'sent (them) 'away. And all whoever conversed

παρεκελεύοντο αὐτῷ, μὴ μάχεσθαι,
(with him) exhorted him, not to-fight (personally),

ἀλλ' τάττεσθαι ὀπισθεν ἑαυτῶν.
but to-place-himself behind (the line of battle) of-themselves.

Ἐν δὲ τῷ τούτῳ καιρῷ Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον
At — — this time Clearchus inquired-of — Cyrus

πῶς ὧδε· Οἶει γὰρ σοι ὦ Κῦρε τὸν
some-how thus; Do-you-think then (to-you), O Cyrus, (that) — (your

ἀδελφόν μαχεῖσθαι; Νῆ Δί ἐφη ὁ Κῦρος
brother will-fight? Yes, by-Jupiter, said — Cyrus,

εἴπερ γε ἐστὶ παῖς Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος,
if indeed he-is (the) son of-Darius and Parysatis,

δὲ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, ἐγὼ οὐ λήψομαι
and my brother, I 'shall not 'take (possession of

ταυτ' ἀμαχεῖ.
these (dominions) without-a-fight.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ
There indeed (of those) (in) — under-arms (the,

ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων μυρία καὶ
number was of-the — Greeks ten-thousand and

τετρακοσία ἄσπης, δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πέντα-
four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and two-thousand and five-

κόσιοι πελτασταί, δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων
hundred targetiers, and (the number) of-the barbarians

μετὰ Κῦρον δέκα μυριάδες, καὶ
with Cyrus (was) | ten ten-thousands, [one hundred thousand], and

ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα. Δὲ
about — twenty scythe-bearing chariots. And (the number)

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν· Ἄλλ' ἔστι ἡμῖν ὧ ἀνδρες
 hearing this said; But there-is to-us, O men,

ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴα,
 [the empire the paternal, [the empire, that belonged to my father],

μὲν μέχρι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οὐ
 (which) indeed (extends) so-far to (the) south where

ἄνθρωποι οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν διὰ καῦμα,
 men 'are not 'able to-dwell by-reason-of heat,

δὲ μέχρι πρὸς ἄρκτον οὐ διὰ
 and so-far to (the) north where (they cannot live) for

χειμῶνα· δὲ οἱ φίλοι τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σατρα-
 cold; but the friends of— my brother govern-as-

πεύουσι πάντα τὰ ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.
 satraps all (the countries situated) — in (the) middle of-these

Δὲ ἣν νικήσωμεν δεῖ ἡμᾶς
 (northern and southern limits). But if we-conquer it-becomes us

ποιῆσαι τοῖς ἡμετέροις φίλους ἐγκρατεῖς τούτων.
 to-make — our friends masters of-those

Ὡστε οὐ δέδοικα τοῦτο μὴ ἔχω
 (countries). So-that I-'have not 'feared this, lest I-have

οὐκ τι ὃ δῶ ἐκάστω τῶν φίλων,
 not any-thing which I-might-give to-each — 'of (my) friends,

ἂν γένηται εὖ, ἀλλὰ, μὴ ἔχω
 [should it-happen well, [should we be successful], but lest I-have

οὐκ ἱκανοὺς, οἷς δῶ. Δὲ
 not (friends) enough, to-whom I-might-give. But 'I-will

καὶ δώσω ἐκάστω ὑμῶν Ἑλλήνων χρυσοῦν
 also 'give to-each of-you Greeks (s) golden

στέφανον. Δὲ οἱ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
 crown. But the (Greeks present) hearing these (things),

αὐτοὶ ἦσαν τε πολὺ προθυμότεροι,
 they were not-only much 'more (encouraged and) 'prompt-for-action,

καὶ ἐξήγγελλον τοῖς ἄλλοις.
 but-also they-reported (what they had heard) to-the others (of the

Δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τινὲς
 Greeks). And not-only the commanders about is but-also some

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εἰσῆσαν ἀξιούντες
of-the other Greeks entered (his tent) desiring

εἰδέναι τι ἔσται σφίσιν, ἐὰν κρατήσωσι.
to-know what (reward) shall-be to-them, if they-should-conquer.

Δὲ ὁ ἐμπιπλὰς τὴν γνώμην ἀπάντων,
But — (he) having-satisfied the minds of-all,

ἀπέπεμπε· Δὲ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο
'sent (them) 'away. And all whoever conversed

παρεκελεύοντο αὐτῷ, μὴ μάχεσθαι,
(with him) exhorted him, not to-fight (personally),

ἀλλ' τάττεσθαι ὀπισθεν ἑαυτῶν.
but to-place-himself behind (the line of battle) of-themselves.

Ἐν δὲ τῷ τούτῳ καιρῷ Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον
At — — this time Clearchus inquired-of — Cyrus

πῶς ὧδε· Οἶει γὰρ σοι ὦ Κῦρε τὸν
some-how thus; Do-you-think then (to-you), O Cyrus, (that) — (your

ἀδελφόν μαχεῖσθαι; Νῆ Δί ἐφη ὁ Κῦρος
brother will-fight? Yes, by-Jupiter, said — Cyrus,

εἵπερ γε ἐστὶ παῖς Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος.
if indeed he-is (the) son of-Darius and Parysatis,

δὲ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, ἐγὼ οὐ λήψομαι
and my brother, I 'shall not 'take (possession of)

ταυτ' ἁμαχεί.
these (dominions) without-a-fight.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ
There indeed (of those) (in) — under-arms (the,

ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων μυρία καὶ
number was of-the — Greeks ten-thousand and

τετρακοσία ἄσπης, δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πέντα-
four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and two-thousand and five-

κόσιοι πελτασταί, δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων
hundred targetiers, and (the number) of-the barbarians

μετὰ Κῦρον δέκα μυριάδες, καὶ
with Cyrus (was) | ten ten-thousands, [one hundred thousand], and

ἅμφι τὰ εἴκοσι δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα. Δὲ
about — twenty scythe-bearing chariots. And (the number)

τῶν πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸι καὶ εἰκοσι
of-the enemy was-said to-be | a-hundred and twenty

μυριάδες, καὶ διαχόσια δρεπανηφόρα
ten-thousands, [1,200,000], and two-hundred scythe-bearing

ἄρματα. Δὲ ἦσαν ἑξαχισχίλιοι ἄλλοι ἵππεις,
chariots. And there-were six-thousand other horsemen,

ᾧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἤρχεν· οἱτοὶ ἦσαν
of-whom Artagerses had-the-command; these (horsemen) were

τεταγμένοι πρὸ βασιλέως αὐτοῦ. Δὲ
drawn-up before (the) king himself. But 'of (the)

στρατεΐματος τοῦ βασιλέως ἦσαν τέτταρες
'army of-the king there-were four (being)

ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες, ἕκαστος
commanders and generals and leaders, each

τριάκοντα μυριάδων
(having under his command) | thirty ten-thousands, [300,000],

Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρίας,
(their names were) Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobruas,

Ἀρβάκης. Δὲ τοιῶτων παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
Arbaces. But of-these there-were-present in the battle

ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες, καὶ ἑκατὸν καὶ
| nine-hundred ten-thousands, [900,000], and a-hundred and

πεντήκοντα δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα· γὰρ Ἀβροκόμας
fifty scythe-bearing chariots; for Abrocomas

ἐλαύνων ἐκ Φοινίκης ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης πέντε
marching from Phoenicia arrived-after the battle five

ἡμέρας. Δὲ οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν
days. And — (those) having-deserted from the

πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως
enemy (that were) with (the) great king

ἠγγελλον ταῦτα πρὸς Κῦρον πρὸ τῆς μάχης·
announced these (things) to Cyrus before the battle;

καὶ, μετὰ τὴν μάχην, οἱ ὕστερον
and, after the battle, — (those that) thereafter

ἐλήφθησαν ἠγγελλον ταῦτα.
were-taken-prisoners reported the-same (things).

Δέ ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος ἐξελαίνει ἓνα σταδμον
 And thence Cyrus proceeds one days'-march,
 τρεῖς παρασάγγας παντί τῷ στρατεύματι,
 (making) three parasangs, with-all the army,
 καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ συντε-
 both the Greek and the barbarian, drawn-up-in-
 ταγμένῳ· γὰρ ᾧετο βασιλέα μαχεῖσθαι
 order-of-battle; for he-thought (that the) king would-offer-battle
 ταίτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· γὰρ κατὰ μέσον τὸν
 (on) that — (same) day; for about (the) middle (of) the
 σταδμόν ἦν τάφρος ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ
 days'-march there-was (found) a-ditch dug deep, the
 εὔρος μὲν πέντε ὀργυαί, δὲ τὸ βάθος τρεῖς
 breadth indeed (was) five fathoms, and the depth three
 ὀργυαί. Δὲ ἡ τάφρος παρετέτατο ἄνω διὰ τοῦ
 fathoms. And the ditch was-extended up through the
 πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι τείχους
 plain to twelve parasangs, just-to (the) walls
 τοῦ Μηδίας. Ἐνθα δὴ εἰσιν αἱ διώρυχες ῥέουσαι
 — of-Media. Here — are the canals flowing
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ εἰσὶ τέτταρες,
 from the river Tigris; and there-are four (of them),
 τὸ μὲν εὔρος πλεδριαῖαι, δὲ ἰσχυρῶς
 the — breadth (of each is) of-the-size-of-a-plethrum, and very
 βαθεῖαι, καὶ σιταγωγὰ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς·
 deep, and corn-carrying vessels sail on them;
 δὲ εἰσβάλλουσι εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, δὲ δια-
 and they-discharge-their-water into the Euphrates, and they-
 λείπουσιν ἐκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ'
 leave (between) each a-parasang, bridges also
 ἔπεισιν. Ἦν δὲ στενὴ πάροδος
 'are (thrown) 'over (them). There-was — (a) narrow passage
 παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην, μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ
 along the Euphrates, between the river and
 τῆς τάφρου ὥς τὸ εὔρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. Ταίτην
 the trench about the breadth of-twenty feet. This

δε τὴν τάφρον μέγας βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἀντι
— — trench (the) great king makes for (a'

ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνδάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα.
defence, after he-heard-of Cyrus marching-against

Ταύτην τὴν πάροδον δὴ τε Κῦρός καὶ
(him). This — passage indeed not-only Cyrus but-also

ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε, καὶ ἐγένοντο εἰς τῆς
the army went-through, and (so) became within the

τάφρου. Βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ οὖν ἐμαχέσατο
trench. (The) king indeed 'did not therefore 'offer-battle

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἀλλὰ πολλά ἵχνη καὶ ἵππων
on-that — day, but many tracks both of-horses

καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὑποχωρούντων ἦσαν φανερά.
and of-men retreating were visible.

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρα-
There Cyrus having-called Silanus the Ambra-

κιώτην μάντιν, ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ τρισχιλίους δαρεικοὺς,
cian soothsayer, gave him three-thousand darics,

ὅτι πρότερον τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης τῆς
because previously on-the eleventh (day) from that —

ἡμέρας θύομενος, εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς
day (while) sacrificing, he-said to-him that (the) king

οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν· Κῦρος δ'
'would not 'fight (for) ten days; Cyrus then

εἶπεν, οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ οὐ
said, he-'will not then thereafter 'fight, if he-'will not

μαχεῖται ἐν ταύταις ταῖς ἡμεραῖς· δ' ἐὰν ἀλ-
fight in these — days; but if you-speak-

δεύσης, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. Τοῦτο
the-truth, I-promise you ten talents. This

τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ αἱ δέκα ἡμέρα
— gold 'he then 'paid, when the ten days

παρῆλθον. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ, βασιλεὺς
elapsed. After indeed, at the trench, (the) king

ἐκώλυε τὸ στράτευμα Κῦρου διαβαίνειν,
'prevent the army of-Cyrus to-go-through (it)

ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι
 he-seemed both to-Cyrus and to-the others to-have-given-up
 τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κύρος
 the (design) to-fight; so-that on-the following (day) Cyrus
 ἐπορεύετο μᾶλλον ἡμελημένως. Δὲ
 proceeded (on his march) more negligently. But
 τῇ τρίτῃ ἐποιεῖτο τὴν πορείαν τε καθήμενος
 on-the third (day) he-made the march not-only being-seated
 ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος, καὶ ἔχων πρό αὐτοῦ
 in — (his) chariot, but-also having before him
 ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει· δὲ τὸ πολὺ
 few (men, drawn up) in order; but the greater (part of
 αὐτῷ ἐπορεύετο ἀνατεταραγμένον,
 the army) for-him proceeded-on | having-been-put-in-disorder, [without
 καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρα-
 observing any order], and many of-the arms for-the sol-
 τώταις ἤγοντο ἐπὶ ἅμαξων καὶ ἵποξυγίων.
 diers were-carried on wagons and beasts-of-burden.

CHAPTER VIII.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε ἀμφὶ πλήθουσιν ἀγορὰν,
 And it-was now not-only about full market (time),
 καὶ ὁ σταδμὸς ἦν πλησίον ἐνθα ἔμελλε κατα-
 vat-also the station was near where he-was-about to-ter-
 λύειν ἡνίκα Παταγίας Πέρσης ἀνὴρ,
 .minate (the day's march) when Patagias (a) Persian man,
 τῶν πιστῶν ἀμφὶ Κύρον προφαίνεται.
 of-the faithful (adherents) about Cyrus appears
 ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος τῷ ἵπῳ ἰδρῶντι·
 riding at full-speed — (with his) horse sweating,
 καὶ εὐθὺς ἐβόα πᾶσιν, οἷς ἐνετύγχανε,
 and immediately he-called-out to-all, whom he-met,
 καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς, ὅτι
 both | in-barbarian [in Persian] and in-Greek, that (the)

βασιλεὺς προσέρχεται σὺν πολλῷ στρατεύματι,
 king approaches with (a) large army,
 παρεσκευασμένος ὥς εἰς μάχην. Ἐνθα δὴ ἐγένετο
 prepared as for battle. Then indeed there-
 νετο πολὺς τάραχος· γὰρ οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ δὲ
 was great confusion; for the Greeks and also
 πάντες ἐδόκουν αἰνίκα ἐπιπε-
 all thought (that) 'he (the king) 'would suddenly 'fall
 σείσθαι σφίσιν ἀτάκτοις· Κῦρός τε, καταπηδήσας
 on them in-disorder; Cyrus not-only, having-leaped-down
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος, ἐνέδυ τὸν θώρακα, καὶ
 from the chariot, put-on — (his) breast-plate, but-also
 ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἔλαβε τὰ παλτά
 mounting on — (his) horse he-took — (his) javelins
 εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, τε παρήγγελλε πᾶσι τοῖς
 in — (his) hands, (and) not-only did-he-order all the
 ἄλλοις ἐξοπλίζεσθαι, καὶ ἕκαστον καδίστασθαι
 rest to-arm-themselves, but-also each-one | to-place-himself
 εἰς τὴν τάξιν ἑαυτοῦ.
 in the rank of-himself [to station himself in his own rank].

Ἐνθα δὴ καδίσταντο σὺν
 There indeed (in their proper stations) they-placed-themselves with
 πολλῇ σπουδῇ, Κλέαρχος μὲν ἔχων τὰ δεξιὰ
 great haste, Clearchus indeed having the right
 τοῦ κέρατος πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ, δὲ
 of-the (right) wing near the river Euphrates, but
 Πρόξενος ἔχόμενος δ' οἱ ἄλλοι
 Proxenus having (his station next to him) and the others

μετὰ τοῦτον. Δὲ Μένων καὶ τὸ
 after this (in order). But Menon and — (his)
 στρατεύμα ἔσχε τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ.
 army had the left wing of-the Greek

Δὲ τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεις μὲν Παφλα-
 (army). But of-the barbarian (force) horsemen namely (the) Paphla-
 γόνες εἰς χιλίους ἴστησαν παρὰ Κλέαρχον
 goniar about a thousand stood near Clearchus

καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ·
 and the Greek peltastio (force) on the right,
 δὲ ἐν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τε Ἀριαῖος ὁ ὑπαρχος
 but on the left (was) not-only Ariæus the lieutenant
 Κύροι, καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν· Κύρος δὲ
 of-Cyrus, but-also the other barbarian (force); Cyrus also
 καὶ ἵππεις μετ' αὐτοῦ ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι,
 and (the) horsemen with him about six-hundred (were in the
 αὐτοὶ μὲν ὥπλισμένοι θώραξι καὶ
 centre), they indeed having-been-armed with-breastplates and
 παραμηριδίοις, καὶ πάντες κράνεσι πλὴν Κύρου·
 armour-for-the-thighs, and all with-helmets, except Cyrus;
 Κύρος δὲ καδίστατο εἰς τὴν μάχην ἔχων
 Cyrus indeed stationed-himself in the battle having
 τὴν κεφαλὴν ψιλὴν· δὲ καὶ λέγεται
 — (his) head bare; and (it is) also said (that)
 τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας διακινδυνεύειν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ
 the other Persians expose-themselves in — battle
 ταῖς ψιλαῖς κεφαλαῖς. Δὲ πάντες οἱ ἵπποι,
 — with-bare heads. Also all the horses, (namely)
 οἱ μετὰ Κύρου, εἶχον καὶ προμετώ-
 — (those) with Cyrus, had both defensive-armour-on-their-
 πίδα καὶ προστερνίδα· δὲ οἱ ἵππεις καὶ
 foreheads and defensive-armour-for-the-breast; and the horsemen also
 εἶχον Ἑλληνικάς μαχαίρας.
 had Grecian swords.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε μέσον ἡμέρας,
 And it-was now not-only (the) middle 'of (the) 'day,
 καὶ οὐπω ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοι καταφανεῖς· δὲ
 but-also not-yet were the enemy visible; but
 ἥνίκα ἐγίγνετο δεῖλη κονιορτός ἐφάνη, ὥσπερ
 when it-was early-afternoon a-dust appeared, like-as
 λευκὴ νεφέλη, δὲ οὐ συχνῷ χρόνῳ ὕστερον
 (a) white eloud, but 'in no 'much time after,
 τις ὥσπερ μελανία ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ
 something like blackness (appeared) on the plain on

πολί. Δὲ ὅτε ἐγίγνοντο ἐγγύτερον,
 much [much extended]. But when they-became nearer,
 καὶ δὴ τάχα τις χαλκός ἤστραπτε, καὶ
 and — thereupon something (like) brass gleamed-forth, and
 αἱ λόγγαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις ἐγίγνοντο καταφανεῖς.
 he spears and the ranks became visible.
 Καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν λευκοδόρακες ἐπὶ
 And there-were horsemen — (having) white-corselets on
 τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων, Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο
 the left of-the enemy, Tissaphernes was-said
 ἄρχειν τούτων· ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων
 to-command these; next then (to) these (were the)
 γερρόφοροι· ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλίται
 wicker-shield-bearers; next also (to these were) heavy-armed-men
 σὺν ξυλίταις ἀσπίσι ποδῆρεσι· δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο
 with wooden shields reaching-to-the-feet; and these were-said
 εἶναι Αἰγύπτιοι· δ' ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς
 to-be Egyptians; and (next followed) other horsemen (next)
 ἄλλοι τοξόται. Πάντες δ' οὗτοι
 other bowmen. All — these (marched together)
 κατὰ ἔθνη, ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο
 according-to (their) nation, each — nation marched-on
 ἐν πλασίῳ πλήρει ἀνδρώπων. Δε
 | in (an) oblong full of-men [in solid column]. And
 πρὸ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν
 before them (were) chariots leaving (a) considerable (space)
 ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, τὰ δὴ καλούμενα δρεπανη-
 between one-another, — (these) indeed were-called scythe
 φόρα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἀποτεταμένα ἐκ
 chariots; they-had — the scythes extended from
 τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον, καὶ ὑπὸ
 the axles in (an) oblique (direction), and (others) under
 τοῖς δίφροις βλέποντα εἰς γῆν ὥς
 the seats-of-the-drivers looking towards (the) ground so-as
 διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. Δὲ ἡ γνώμη
 to-cut-through whatever they-might-meet And the | design

ἦν ὡς ἐλόντων καὶ διακοψόντων εἰς
(of them) was that hereafter-driving-into, and cutting-through into
τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
the ranks of-the Greeks. [The design of these chariots

ὁ Κύρος
was to drive into, and cut through the ranks of the Greeks.] What Cyrus
μέντοι εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο
however said when having-called (the men) he-exhorted
τοῖς Ἑλλήσι ἀνέχεσθαι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρ-
the Greeks to-sustain the shout of-the bar-
βάρων, τοῦτο ἐψεύσθη· γὰρ προσήεσαν οὐ
barians, in-this he-was-deceived; for they-approached not 'with (a)
κραυγῇ, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ, ὡς ἀνυστόν,
'shout, but 'in (as much) 'silence, as (it was) possible,
καὶ ἡσυχῇ, ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως. Καὶ ἐν
and quietly, in (an) even (step) and slowly. And at
τούτῳ Κύρος, παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι.
this (time) Cyrus, riding-by himself with Pigres,
τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ, καὶ τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι ἄλλοις, ἐβόα
the interpreter, and three or four others, he-called-out
τῷ Κλέαρχῳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ τὸ
— to-Clearchus to-lead — (his) army against the
μέσον τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι βασιλεὺς εἶη ἐκεῖ·
centre of-the enemy, that (the) king might-be there;
καὶ εἶπε νικῶμεν τοῦτο πάντα πεποιήται
and-if, said-he, we-conquer (in) this (quarter) all has-been-done
ἡμῖν. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ὄρων τὸ μέσον στίφος,
for-us. But — Clearchus seeing — (that) middle dense-body
καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου βασιλέα ὄντα
(of soldiers), and hearing from-Cyrus (of the) king being
ἐξω τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εἰωνύμου, γὰρ βασιλεὺς
beyond the Grecian left, for (the) king
περιῆν τοσοῦτον πλῆθει, ὥστε ἔχων τὸ μέσον
excelled so-much in-multitude, | so-that having the middle
ἑαυτοῦ ἦν
of-himself [so that, stationed in the centre of his army,] he-was (even)

οἷκ ἤδελεν ἀποσπάσαι τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ ἀπὸ
 'did not 'wish to-draw-off the right wing from
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖν ἑκατέ-
 the river, fearing lest he-might-be-surrounded on-both-
 ρωθεν, δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι μέλοι
 sides, but — to-Cyrus he-replied, | that it-would-be-a-care
 αὐτῷ ὅπως ἔχοι καλῶς.
 to him that it-may-have (itself) well [that he would take care,

that everything should terminate well].

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν
 And during this — time the — barbarian
 στράτευμα προῆει ὁμαλῶς, δὲ τὸ Ἑλλη-
 army advanced steadily (and equally), and the Gre-
 νικὸν ἔτι μένον ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ, συνε-
 cian (army) still remaining in the same (place), was-formed-
 τάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. Καὶ ἔ-
 in-order-of-battle from — (those) still coming-up. And —
 Κύρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ
 Cyrus riding-past not very near to-this (his) —
 στρατείματι, κατεδεῖατο ἀποβλέπων ἑκατέρωσε,
 army, surveyed (the armies) looking-at each-side,
 τε εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς
 not-only towards the enemy but-also (towards) — (his;
 φίλους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος ἰδὼν αὐτοῖς
 friends. But Xenophon (an) Athenian seeing him
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ, ὑπελάσας ὥς συναν
 from the Grecian (line), having-ridden-up as-if to-have
 τῆσαι, ἥρετο εἰ τι παραγγέλλοι
 met (him), asked if he-may-'have any-thing 'to-order
 ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε, καὶ ἐκέλευε
 who — having-stopped (his horse) said, and-also ordered (him)
 λέγειν πᾶσιν, ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια
 to-tell all, that both the sacrifices and the victims (were)

καλα. Λέγων δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε θορύβου ἰόντος
favourable. Saying — this he-heard (a) noise going
διὰ τῶν τάξεων, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος
through the ranks, and he-inquired what the noise
εἶη. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν, ὅτι τὸ σύνδημα
might-be. — And Xenophon said, that the watch-word 'is
ἴδη παρέρχεται δεύτερον. Καὶ
now 'passing (through the ranks) for-the-second-time. And
ὁς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει, καὶ
[(who) (Cyrus) wondered what-person gives-out (the word), and
ἤρετο ὅ τι τὸ σύνδημα εἶη. Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,
he-asked what the watch-word might-be. — And he-replied,
ὅτι Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. Ὁ δὲ Κύρος
that (it was) Jupiter (the) preserver and victory. — And Cyrus
ἀκούσας, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ τε δέχομαι καὶ ἔστω
having-heard (it), said, but 'I not-only 'receive (it) but-also let-it-be
τοῦτο. Δὲ εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἀπήλαυσε εἰς τὴν
so. And having-said this he-rode-away to | to-the
χώραν ἑαυτοῦ· καὶ τὸ φάλα-
place of-himself; [to his own station in the line;] and the-two ar-
λαγγε διειχέτην ἀπ' ἀλλήλων οὐκέτι τρία ἢ
mies were-apart from one-another not-more-than three or
τέτταρα στάδια, ἥνίκα οἱ Ἕλληνες τε ἐπαιάνιζον,
four stadia, when the Greeks not-only sang-the-pæan,
καὶ ἤρχοντο ἰέναι ἀντίοι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Δὲ
but-also began to-go against the enemy. But
ὥς πορευομένων τι τῆς φάλαγγος ἐξεκύ-
as (they) were-proceeding some (part) of-the phalanx fluctu-
μαινε τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο
ated (from the rest) the (part) left-behind began
θεῖν δρόμῳ· καὶ πάντες ἅμα ἐφδέγξαντο
to-run with-speed; and (they) all together made-a-noise
οἷόν περ ἐλελίζουσι τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ, καὶ δὲ πάντες
like-as they-shout to — Mars, and also all
ἔδεον. Δὲ τιτιες λέγουσι, ὥς καὶ ἐδούπησαν
ran. And some say, that 'they also 'sounded

ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα, ποιοῦντες
 — 'with (their) 'shields against the spears, causing
 φόβον τοῖς ἵπποις. Δὲ πρὶν τόξευμα
 fear to-the horses. But before (that) (an) arrow
 ἐξικνεῖσθαι, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐκκλίνουσι, καὶ
 reaches (them), the barbarians give-way, and
 φεύγουσι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες
 flee. And also there indeed the Greeks
 ἐδίωκον κατὰ κράτος, δὲ ἐβόων ἀλλήλοις
 followed with (all their) might, and calling-out to-one-another
 μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλὰ ἑπείσθαι ἐν τάξει. Δὲ
 not to-run with-speed, but to-follow in order. But
 τὰ ἄρματα, κενὰ ἡνιόχων, ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν
 the chariots, void of-drivers, were-born — (some) indeed
 διὰ τῶν πολεμίων αὐτῶν, δὲ τὰ
 through (the ranks) of-the enemy themselves, but — (others)
 καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δὲ οἱ,
 also through (the ranks) of-the Greeks. But — (they),
 ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, δίσταντο.
 when they-could-see (them coming) | they-stood-apart [they opened their
 δ' ἔστι ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη,
 ranks]; but there-was some-one-person (who) also was-caught,
 ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ, ἐκπλαγεῖς· καὶ
 as in (a) race-course, he-having-been-struck-with-fear; and
 ἔφασαν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν οὐδέν·
 they-said however (that) neither 'did this-person 'suffer | nothing;
 οὐδ' οὐδεὶς ἄλλος δὲ
 [in any thing]; | neither 'did no-one other indeed [nor did any one
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπαθεῖν οὐδέν ἐν
 else] of-the Greeks | suffer nothing [suffer any thing] in
 ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τις
 this — battle, except on the left, some-one
 ἐλέγετο τοξευθῆναι.
 was said to-have-been-shot-with-an-arrow.

Δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας, καὶ
 But Cyrus seeing the Greeks conquering and

διώκοντας τὸ καδ' αὐτοὺς, ἡδόμενος
 pursuing the (part of the army) opposed-to them, being-pleased.
 καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν
 and being-saluted now as king by — (those)
 ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν,
 about him, nor (yet) was-'he thus 'led-away to-pursue (the enemy),
 ἀλλὰ ἔχων συνεσπειραμένην τὴν τάξιν τῶν
 but keeping drawn-up-in-close-order the band of-the
 ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων σὺν ἑαυτῷ, ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅτι
 six-hundred horsemen with himself, he-carefully-watched what
 βασιλεὺς ποιήσει· γὰρ καὶ ᾔδει αὐτόν
 (the) king would-do; for 'he well 'knew (him),
 ὅτι ἔχοι μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.
 that he-kept the-centre of-the Persian army.
 Καὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν βαρβάρων
 And also all the commanders of-the barbarians
 ἔχοντες τὸ μέσον αὐτῶν ἡγοῦντο,
 occupying the centre of-their (command) led (them thus
 νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ
 into action) thinking thus also to-be — the-most-secure
 ἢ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἢ ἑκατέρωθεν,
 if | the strength of-them [their strength] should-be on-either-side,
 καὶ εἰ χρήζοιεν παραγγεῖλαι τι, τὸ
 and, if they-should-want to-order any-thing, (that) the
 στρατεῖμα ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι ἡμίσει χρόνῳ. Καὶ
 army may perceive in-half (the) time. And
 δὴ βασιλεὺς ἔχων τότε μέσον τῆς
 even-indeed (the) king having then (the) centre of-the
 στρατιᾶς αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο ὁμως ἔξω
 [army of-him [of his army] was nevertheless beyond (the)
 εὐωνύμου κέρατος τοῦ Κύρου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς
 left wing — of-Cyrus. When indeed no-one
 ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου αὐτῷ οὐδὲ
 fought from the opposite (part) (either) against-himself (nor) (or)
 τοῖς τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ,
 - (those of his own troops) drawn-up before him.

ἐπέκαμπτεν ὥς εἰς κυκλῶσιν.
he-commenced-wheeling-round as for-the-purpose-of surrounding

Ἐνθα δὴ Κύρος δείσας μὴ γενόμενος ὀπισθεν
Then indeed Cyrus, fearing lest having-got in-the-rear

κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος·
he-might-cut-to-pieces the Grecian (forces), moves-on against

καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις
(him); and having-charged with the six-hundred (horsemen with

νικᾷ τοὺς τεταγμένους πρὸ βασιλέως,
him), conquers — (those) drawn-up before (the) king,

καὶ ἔτρεψε εἰς φυγὴν τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους,
and turns into flight the six-thousand (horsemen

καὶ αὐτὸς λέγεται ἀποκτεῖναι
guarding the king), and he (Cyrus) is-said to-have-killed

τῇ χειρὶ ἑαυτοῦ Ἄρταγέρσῃ
[with-the hand of-himself [with his own hand] Artagersea

τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. Δὲ ὥς ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο,
the commander of-them. But as the rout occurred,

καὶ οἱ ἑξακόσιοι Κύρου, διασπείρονται
also the six-hundred (horsemen) of-Cyrus, are-dispersed

ὀρμήσαντες εἰς τὸ διώκειν· πλὴν πάνυ
having-rushed-on | to the pursuing; [in pursuit]; except (a) very

ὀλίγοι κατελείφθησαν ἄμφ' αὐτόν,
few, (that) were-left about him, (and who were)

σχεδὸν οἱ καλούμενοι ὁμοτράπεζοι. Ὦν
nearly-all — (those who) are-called table-companions. Being

δὲ σὺν τούτοις, καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ
therefore with these, he-sees (the) king and the

στίφος ἄμφ' ἐκείνον, καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ
dense-body-guard around him, and immediately he-'did not

ἡνέσχετο ἀλλ' εἰπὼν, ὁρῶ τὸν ἄνδρα, ἵετο ἐπ'
'restrain-himself, but saying, I-see the man, he-rushed on

αὐτόν· καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στήρνον, καὶ
him; and strikes at — (his) breast, and

τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὥς Κτησίας ὁ
wounds (him) through the breast-plate. as Ctesias the

ἰατρός φησί, καὶ αὐτὸς φησί ἰᾶσθαι
 physician says, and (moreover) he-himself says (that) he-healed
 τὸ τραῦμα. Δὲ τις παίοντα
 the wound. But some-one, (while he was) striking (at the king)
 ἀκοντίζει αὐτὸν βιαίως παλτῶ ὑπὸ τὸν
 hits him violently 'with (a) 'javelin under the
 ὀφθαλμόν· καὶ ἐνταῦθα καὶ βασιλεὺς
 eye; and there (then were) both (the) king
 καὶ Κῦρος μαχόμενοι, καὶ οἱ ἀμφ'
 and Cyrus fighting, and — (those likewise) about
 αὐτούς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου·
 them (were fighting), for each (of their own chiefs);
 ὅπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέδνησκον
 how-many indeed — (of those) about (the) king died
 Κτησίας λέγει· γὰρ ἦν παρ' ἐκείνῳ·
 (in battle) Ctesias tells (us); | for he-was about him;
 δὲ τε Κῦρος αὐτός
 [for he attended the king's person]; and not-only Cyrus himself
 ἀπέθανε, καὶ ὀκτῶ, οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν
 died, but-also eight, the most-distinguished (persons) —
 περὶ αὐτὸν, ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Δὲ
 (of those) about him, lay (dead) on him. But
 Ἀρταπάτης, ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπ
 Artapates, the most-faithful to-him — (of his) sceptre-
 τούχων θεραπέων, λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ εἶδε Κῦρον
 bearing servants, is-said, after he-saw Cyrus
 πεπτωκότα, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου
 fallen, (that) having-leaped from — (his) horse
 περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ
 to-have-thrown (himself) on-him. And — (some) indeed say (that)
 βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάζαι
 (the) king ordered some one | to-have-killed [to kill!]
 αὐτον Κῦρῳ, οἱ δὲ σπασάμενον
 him (lying) on-Cyrus, — but (others say, that) having-drawn
 τὸν ἀκινάχην, ἐπισφάξασθαι ἑαυτὸν· γὰρ
 — (his) scimitar, he-killed himself; for

εἶχε χρυσοῦν· δὲ καὶ ἐφόρει στρεπτόν, καὶ
 he-had (a) golden-one; and also he-wore (a) chain, and
 ψέλλια, καὶ τᾶλλα, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι
 bracelets, and (such) other (ornaments), as the most-distinguished
 Περσῶν· γὰρ ἐτετίμητο
 'of (the) 'Persians (are accustomed to wear); for he-had-been-honoured
 ὑπὸ Κύρου τε δι' εὖνοιαν καὶ
 by Cyrus not-only for (his) good-will-and-affection, but-also (for his)
 πιστότητα.
 very-great-fidelity.

 CHAPTER IX.

Οὕτως οὖν μὲν ἐτελευτήσῃ Κῦρος, ἀνὴρ ὢν
 Thus now indeed died Cyrus, (a) man being
 τε τῶν Περσῶν γενομένων μετὰ Κῦρον·
 not-only 'of (all) 'the Persians existing since Cyrus
 τὸν ἀρχαῖον, βασιλικώτατος, καὶ ἀξιώτατος
 the elder, princely, but-also the-most-worthy
 ἄρχειν, ὡς ὁμολογεῖται παρὰ πάντων τῶν
 to-reign, as is-agreed-to by all — | (those
 δοκούντων γενέσθαι ἐν πείρᾳ Κύρου.
 appearing to-have-been in (the) experience of-Cyrus [those inti-
 Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον, ὢν ἔτι
 mately acquainted with Cyrus]. For indeed first, being yet (a)
 παῖς, ὅτε ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ
 boy, when he-was-educated both with — (his) brother
 καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, ἐνομίζετο κράτιστος
 and with the other boys, he-was-thought (to be) the-best
 πάντων πάντα. Γὰρ πάντες οἱ παῖδες
 of-all in-all-things. For all the sons
 Περσῶν τῶν ἀρίστων παιδεύονται ἐπὶ ταῖς
 of-Persians — eminent-in-rank, are-educated | at the
 θύραις βασιλέως· ἐνθα τις ἂν
 gates 'of (the) 'king; [in the royal palace]; there one may

καταμάδοι μὲν πολλήν σωφροσύ-
learn indeed much (of the) wisdom-of-temperance-and-
νην, δ' ἔστι οὐτ' ἀκούσαι οὐτ' ἰδεῖν
modesty, but it-is (possible) neither to-hear nor to-see
οὐδὲν αἰσχρόν. Δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ θεῶνται τοὺς
any-thing base. But the boys both see — (those)
τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούνουσι,
honoured by (the) king and hear (thereof),
καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθύς
and (in like manner of) others being-disgraced; so-that straightway
όντες παῖδες μανθάνουσι τε ἄρχειν καὶ
being (yet) boys they-learn not-only to-govern but-also
ἄρχεσθαι. Ἐνθα Κῦρος μὲν ἐδόκει πρῶτον
to-be-governed. There Cyrus indeed seemed first (of all)
εἶναι αἰδημονέστατος τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν, τε
to-be the-most-modest — (of his) equals-in-age, (and) not-only
πεῖθεσθαι τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις καὶ μᾶλλον
to-obey the elders but-also much-more (readily than)
τῶν ὑποδεεστέρον ἑαυτοῦ· δ' ἔπειτα
— (those) more-inferior (to) him (in rank); and next-then
φιλιππότατος, καὶ χρῆσθαι τοῖς
he-was-most-fond-of-horses, and (was able) to-use (or manage) the
ἵπποις ἄριστα. Δ' ἔκρινον αὐτὸν
horses (in the) best (manner). And they-discerned him
εἶναι καὶ φιλομαδέστατον καὶ μελετηρότα-
to-be also the-most-desirous-in-learning, and most-diligent and-indefa-
τον τῶν ἔργων εἰς τὸν πόλεμον,
tigable (in) the operations for — war, [in warlike exercises],
τε τοξικῆς καὶ ἀκοντίσεως. Ἐπεὶ
not-only (those) of-archery but-also (those) of-throwing-the-dart. When
δὲ ἐπρεπε τῇ ἡλικίᾳ, ἣν καὶ φιλοθηρότατος,
indeed it-became — (his) age, he-was both most fond-of-hunting,
καὶ μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος πρὸς
and even most-fond-of-danger-and-adventure (in encounters) against
τὰ θηρία. Καὶ ποτὲ οὐκ ἔτρεσεν ἄρκτοι
— wild-beasts And once he-'did not 'fear (a) she-bear
~~θηρία~~
~~ἦσαν~~

ἐπιφερομένην, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν
 (when) attacking (him), | but falling-together [but in the at-
 tack and conflict] κατεσπᾶσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου,
 he-was-dragged from — (his) horse,
 καὶ μὲν ἔπαθε τὰ καὶ, τὰς
 [and indeed he-suffered the [he received some wounds] and, the
 ὠτειλὰς ὧν εἶχε φανεράς, δὲ τέλος
 scars of-which he-had visible (on his body), but at-last
 κατέκτανε, καὶ μέντοι ἐποίησε τὸν πρῶτον
 he-killed (the bear), and indeed he-made the (person) first
 βοηθήσαντα ^{most richly rewarded} μακαριστὸν πολλοῖς.
 coming-to-assist (him) to-be-considered-very-happy by-many.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
 When indeed he-was-sent-down by — (his) father (as
 σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας
 satrap of-Lydia and also of-the Great Phrygia
 καὶ Καππαδοκίας, δὲ καὶ ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγὸς
 and Cappadocia, and likewise appointed commander
 πάντων, οἷς ^{is due to} καθήκει ἀδροῖσθαι εἰς πεδίον
 of-all, to-whom it-appertains to-be-assembled in (the) plain
 Καστωλοῦ, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι
 of-Castolus, first indeed he-showed himself | that
 ποιοῖτο περὶ πλείστου,
 he-'made (it) for 'himself very-much, [that he held it of the great
 εἰ σπείσαιο τῷ καὶ
 est importance to himself], if he-made-a-treaty — (with any one), and
 εἰ σῖνδοιτο τῷ καὶ εἰ τῷ
 if he-made-an-agreement — (with any one), and if — (to any one)
 ὑπόσχοιτό τι ψεύδεσθαι μηδέν. Καὶ γὰρ
 he-promised any-thing, to-deceive (in) nothing. And —
 οὖν μὲν αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι αὐτῷ ἐπίσταν
 therefore indeed the cities entrusting-themselves to-him, confided
 δ' οἱ ἄνδρες ἐπίσταν.
 in 'him) as-also (in like manner did private) — men confide
 καὶ εἰ τις ἐγένετο πολέμιος, Κύροι
 (in him); and if any-one became hostile, Cyro-

σπεισάμενον ἐπίστευε ἄν
having-made-a-treaty (with him) he-was-confident (that) 'he would (have to)

παθεῖν μηδὲν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς. Τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ
suffer nothing contrary to-the treaty. Therefore when

ἠπολέμησε Τισσαφέρνει, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις
he-waged-war (against) Tissaphernes, all the towns

ἐκούσαι εἶλοντο Κῦρον ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν
and voluntarily chose Cyrus before Tissaphernes except (the)

Μιλησίων· δὲ οὗτοι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν διὰ ὅτι οὐκ
Milesians; but they feared him, because he-'did not

ἤθελε προέσθαι τοὺς φεύγοντας. Γὰρ
'wish to-abandon | — (those) fleeing [the exiles]. For

καὶ ἐπεδείκνυντο ἔργῳ, καὶ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι
'he also 'showed 'by (his) 'deeds, and said, that

ἂν οὐ ποτε προοῖτο ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ ἐγένετο
'he would not ever 'desert (them), when once he-became (a)

φίλος αὐτοῖς, οὐδ' εἰ μὲν γένοιτο ἔτι μείους
friend to-them, nor if indeed they-should-become yet less

δὲ πρᾶξιαν ἔτι κάκιον.
(in number), and should-suffer (a) yet worse (condition than they

Καὶ εἰ τις ποιήσειεν αὐτόν τι ἀγαθόν
were in). And if any-one should-do him any-thing good

ἢ κακόν, ἦν δὲ φανερός πειρώμενος
or bad, it-was indeed evident (that he was) striving

νικᾶν· καὶ δὲ τινες ἐξέφερον
to-conquer (in these respects); and also some used-to-mention (a)

εὐχὴν αὐτοῦ, ὥς εὐχοίτο ζῆν τοσοῦτον χρόνον,
wish of-him, that he-desired to-live so-long (a) time,

ἔστε ἀλεξόμενος, νικῶν καὶ τοὺς
until 'he, requiting (them), 'might-excel both — (those)

ποιοῦντας εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς.
act'ing well and — (those acting) ill (to him)

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν δὴ πλείστοι ἐπεθύμησαν
And — therefore truly the-most (of men) desired

τροέσθαι αὐτῷ ἐνὶ ἀνδρὶ γε τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν
to-commit to-him (the) one (only) man at-least — in our (time)

καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ σώματα
— (their) property, — (their) towns, | and the bodies

ἐαυτῶν.

of-them [and their persons].

Οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν τις εἴποι οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ὥς εἶα τοὺς
Nor indeed — can any-one say — this, that he-let the

κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους καταγελαῖν, ἀλλ'
evildoers and unjust deride (his authority), but

ἀφειδέστατα πάντων εἰτιμωρεῖτο. Δ'
most-unsparingly of-all (men) he-punished (transgressors). | And

ἦν πολλάκις ἰδεῖν, παρὰ
it-was often to-see, [and there were often to be seen], | on

τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς, ἀνδρώπους
the trodden roads [on the frequented roads] men

στερομένους καὶ ποδῶν, καὶ χειρῶν καὶ
deprived — of-feet, — (or) of-hands, — (or)

ὀφθαλμῶν· ὥστε ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ Κύρου ἐγένετο
of-eyes; so-that in the dominion of-Cyrus it-was

καὶ Ἑλληνι καὶ βαρβαρῷ, μηδὲν
(possible) 'for both Greek and barbarian, 'doing nothing

ἀδικοῦντι, πορεύεσθαι ἀδεῶς, ὅποι τις ἤθελεν,
'wrong, to-travel fearlessly, withersoever one wished,

ἔχοντι ὃ τι προχωροίη.
(and) having (with him) whatever he-might-proceed-with (that suited

ᾧ μολόγητο γε μέντοι
his convenience). It-has-been-acknowledged — indeed (that)

τιμᾶν διαφερόντως τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον.
he-honoured very-much | — (those) good for war

Καὶ

[those having a disposition for, and skilled in, military affairs]. And

μὲν πόλεμος ἦν αὐτῷ πρῶτον
indeed |(a) war was to-him first [his first war was]

πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· καὶ οὖν αὐτὸς
against (the) Pisidians and Mysians; and therefore himself

στρατευόμενος εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οἷς
leading-an-army into these — places, (those) whom

ἑώρα ἐδελοντας κινδυμεύειν τούτους
 he-saw willing to-encounter-danger (in his service) the-same

καὶ ἐποίει ἄρχοντας χώρας ἧς κατεστρέφετο,
 (also) he-made rulers 'of (the) 'places which he-subjugated,

δε ἔπειτα καὶ ἐτίμα δώροις ἄλλῃ.
 and moreover 'he also 'honoured (them) with-rewards in-another (man

ner). Ὡστε μὲν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς φαίνεσθαι
 So (that) indeed | the good [brave men] appear

εὐδαιμονεστάτους, δὲ τοὺς κακοὺς
 (to be) the-most-fortunate, but (that) the bad [cowards]

ἀξιωῖσθαι εἶναι δούλους τούτων.
 were-considered-worthy (only) to-be (the) slaves of-these (brave

Τοιγαροῦν ἦν πολλή ἀφθονία αὐτῷ
 men). Therefore there-was (a) great abundance to-him

τῶν θελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις
 [Cyrus] of-those willing to-encounter-danger, when any-one

οἶοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθῆσθαι.
 might-think (that) Cyrus would-perceive (him).

Μὲν γε εἰς δικαιοσύνην, εἴ τις γένοιτο
 In-truth — as-regards justice, if any-one might-become

φανερὸς αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἐπιδείκνυσθαι,
 apparent to-him (as) desiring to-show (this vir-

περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο ποιεῖν τούτους
 tue in himself), above all, he-caused to-make such

πλουσιωτέρους τῶν φιλοκερδούντων
 (persons) richer (than) — (those) seeking-gain

ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου. Καὶ γὰρ οὐν τε πολλὰ ἄλλα
 by — injustice. And therefore — not-only many other

διεχειρίζετο δικαίως αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐχρήσατο
 (things) were-administered justly for-him, but-also he-had the-use-of

ἀληθινῷ στρατεύματι. Γὰρ
 (a) real army, (and one worthy of the name). For

καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἐπλευσαν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον
 also generals and captains | sailed to him,

οὐ ἕνεκα χρημάτων,
 [came to him from other countries] not on-account of-money,

ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσαν εἶναι κερδαλεώτερον πειθαρχεῖν
but after they-knew (it) to-be more-profitable to obey

Κύρῳ καλῶς, ἢ τὸ κέρδος κατὰ μῆνα.
(and serve) Cyrus well, | than the gain for (a) month

Ἀλλὰ μὲν εἰ τις γέ, αὐτῷ
[than their monthly wages]. But indeed if any-one at-least, he

προστάξαντι τι, ὑπηρετήσκειν καλῶς
having-commanded any-thing, should-have-assisted-to-do (it) well

οὐδενὶ πώποτε εἶασε τὴν προθυμίαν
to-no-one (acting thus) did-'he ever 'permit — (his) alacrity

ἀχάριστον. Τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρε-
(to go) unrewarded. Therefore truly | the-best servants-and-

ται παντὸς ἔργου ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι
officers of-every work (or undertaking) were-said to-be

Κύρῳ.

to-Cyrus [the best talents for all affairs were at the command of Cyrus].

Εἰ δὲ ὀρώη τινα ὄντα δεινὸν οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ
If also he-saw any-one (being) (a) skilful manager | from —

δικαίου, καὶ κατασκευάζοντά, τε
justice, [consistent with justice], and improving-the-land, not-only

χώρας, ἥς ἄρχοι, καὶ ποιοῦντα προσ-
'of (the) 'country, which he-governed, but-also making (an) increased-

όδους ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο οὐδένα
produce (therefrom) 'he would never 'take-away any-thing (from

ἀλλ' αἰεὶ προσεδίδου πλεῖον· ὥστε
such a person), but always (rather) he-added more; so-that

καὶ ἐπόνουν ἡδέως, καὶ ἐκτῶντο θαρβாலίως,
— (men) laboured cheerfully, and acquired (property) confidently,

καὶ αὖ ὃ τις ἐπέπατο ἥκιστα ἐκρυπτε
and moreover what any-one had-acquired the-least did-he-conceal (it);

Κῦρον· γὰρ ἐφαίνετο οὐ φθονῶν
from-Cyrus; | for he-was-manifestly not envying [for he manifestly

τοῖς φανερῶς πλουτοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ
did not envy] — (those who) openly acquire-riches, but

πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς χρήμασι
was-endeavouring to-use (or put into circulation) the wealth

τῶν ὑποκρυπτομένων. Ὅσους φίλους γε μὴν
of-those concealing (it). As-'many friends 'as — indeed

ποιήσαιτο, καὶ γνοίη ὄντας εὖνους,
he-might-make, and knew (them as) being well-disposed (to him-

καὶ κρίνει εἶναι ἱκανοὺς συνεργοὺς,
self), and might-judge (them) to-be fit co-operators,

ὅ τι βουλόμενος τυγχάνοι κατεργάζεσθαι,
in whatever wishing he-might-happen to-accomplish, [in

ὁμολογεῖται
whatever he might happen to wish to accomplish], he-is-acknowledged

πρὸς πάντων γενέσθαι δὴ κράτιστος
by all to-have-been certainly the-best (and most skilful)

θεραπεύει····· Γὰρ
he-cherish "all friends, and attach them to himself). For

καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔνεκα οὐπὲρ αὐτὸς
also (for) this same (reason) on-account of-which he-himself

ᾤετο δεῖσθαι φίλων ὥς ἔχοι συνερ-
thought (that) he-needed friends (namely) that he-might-have co-ope-

ργοὺς, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειράτο εἶναι κράτιστος συνεργός
rators, and he-himself endeavoured to-be the-best assistant

τοῖς φίλοις ὅτου τούτου αἰσθάνοιτο
'to — (his) 'friends (in) whatever that he-might-perceive

ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα.
each-one (was) desiring (to effect).

Δὲ μὲν οἶμαι γε ὧν εἰς ἀνὴρ
And indeed I-think | (that) 'he at-least being one man [that he

ἐλάμβανε πλεῖστα δῶρα
of any one man at least] 'received the-most presents, (and this)

διὰ πολλά· δὲ ταῦτα διεδίδου τοῖς
for many (reasons); but these (presents) he-distributed 'to —

φίλοις μάλιστα δὴ
(his) 'friends very-much (excelling) certainly (in this respect)

πάντων, σκοπῶν πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἑκάστου,
all (men), looking to the manners of-each,

καὶ ὅτου ὁρῶν ἕκαστον μάλιστα δεόμενον
and (to that) of which he-saw each-one the-most needed

Καὶ ὅσα τις πέμπτοι κόσμον
And whatever (present) any-one might-send (him as a.) ornament

τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ, ἢ ὥς εἰς
|for the body of-him, [for his person], either as-if for (use in

πόλεμον, ἢ ὥς εἰς καλλώπισμόν, καὶ
war, or as-if for (use in personal) ornament, and

περὶ τούτων ἔφασαν λέγειν, ὅτι μὲν
about these (presents) they-affirmed (that) he-said, | that indeed

τὸ σῶμα ἑαυτοῦ ἂν οὐ δύναίτο κοσμηθῆναι
the body of-himself could not be-able to-have-been-adorned

πᾶσι τούτοις,

[that his own person could not be adorned] with-all these (presents).

δὲ νομίζοι φίλους καλῶς κεκοσμημένους
but he-might-think (that) friends (having-'been) handsomely 'adorned

μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ. Καὶ μὲν τὸ
(to be) the-greatest ornament 'to (a) 'man. | And indeed the

νικᾶν τὰ μεγάλα
to-surpass [the surpassing] the great [greatly] [and indeed that

τοὺς φίλους ποιοῦντα εὖ
he should greatly surpass] — (his) friends (in) doing good (is)

οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδὴ γε ἦν καὶ δυνατώτερος·
nothing wonderful, since at-least he-was also the-most-able;

δὲ τὸ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων
|but the to-be-superior [but that he should excel] — (his) friends

τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ, καὶ τῷ προθυμείσθαι
— in-kind-attention, and | the to-be-eager [his eagerness]

χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ εἶναι
to-gratify (and oblige), these, to-me-at-least, seem to-be

μᾶλλον ἀγαστά. Γὰρ Κῦρος πολλάκις ἐπεμπε
more admirable. For Cyrus often sent

ἡμιδεεῖς βίκους οἴνου, ὅποτε λάβοι πάνυ
half-empty jars of-wine, whenever he-might-receive (any) very

ἡδὺν, λέγων, ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ
sweet (and fine-flavoured), saying, that never-yet truly 'for (a) 'long

χρόνου ἐπιτύχοι ἡδίονι οἴνῳ τούτου·
time and-he meet with-finer-flavoured wine (than) this

οὖν ἐπεμψε τοῦτον σοί, καὶ δεῖταιί σου εκπιῖν
therefore he-sent this to-you, and he-requests of-you to-drink

τοῦτον τήμερον σὺν οἷς φιλεῖς μάλιστα.
this to-day with those-whom you-love most

Πολλάκις δὲ ἤπεμπε ἡμιβρώτους χῆνας,
Often indeed he-sent | half-eaten geese [parts of geese].

καὶ ἡμίσεα ἄρτων, καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, κελεύων
and halves of-loaves, and other such (things), ordering

τὸν φέροντα ἐπιλέγειν· Κῦρος
the bearer to-say (when he presented them); Cyrus

ἦσθι τούτοις. οὖν βούλεται καὶ σὲ γεύσασθαι
was-delighted-with-these; therefore he-wishes also you to-taste

τούτων. Ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς εἴη πάνυ σπάνιος,
of-these (same). Whenever indeed fodder was very scarce,

δ' αὐτὸς ἐδύνατο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ ἔχειν
and he was-able to-procure-it | through the to-have

πολλοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐτιμέλειαν,
[by having] many servants and through — (his) care,

διαπέμπων τοὺς φίλους ἐκέλευε
sending-it-about (among) — (his) friends he-ordered (them)

ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλὸν τοῖς ἵπποις ἄγουσ
to-throw this — fodder to-the horses | carrying

τὰ σώματα ἑαυτῶν ὥς
the bodies of-them [carrying their persons], so-that (the horses)

μὴ ἄγωσι τοὺς φίλους ἑαυτοῦ πεινῶντες. Εἰ
'may not 'carry the friends of-himself hungering. If

δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο, καὶ πλείστοι
— indeed at-any-time he-might-proceed (anywhere), and many

μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους
might-be-about to-see (him), calling-to — (his) friends

ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὥς δηλοῖη οὖς
he-held-earnest-conversation-with-them, that he-might-show (those) whom

τιμᾶ. Ὡστε ἔγωγε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω κρίνω
he-honoured. So-that I-at-least, from (that) which I-hear judge

οὐδένα οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων
(that) no-one either 'of (the) 'Greeks or 'of (the) 'barbarians

πεφιλησθαι ὑπὸ πλείονων. Δὲ καὶ τόδε
 to-have-been-loved by more (persons). And also this
 τεκμήριον τούτου, οὐδείς μὲν ἀπήει
 (is a) proof of-this-same (thing), no-one indeed deserted
 πρὸς βασιλέα παρὰ Κύρου, ὄντος
 to (the) king from Cyrus, he-being (as a subject ne
 δούλου· πλὴν Ὀρόντας
 better than a) slave (of the king); except Orontes (who)
 ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ δὴ οὗτος ταχὺ εὔρε αὐτὸν
 attempted (it); and truly this (Orontes) speedily found him,
 ὃν ᾤετο εἶναι πιστόν οἱ φιλαίτερον Κύρῳ
 whom he-thought to-be faithful to-himself, more-friendly to-Cyrus
 ἢ ἑαυτῷ· δὲ πολλοὶ ἀπῆλθον παρὰ βασιλέως
 than to-himself; but many deserted from (the) king
 πρὸς Κύρον, ἐπειδὴ ἐγένοντο πολέμιοι ἀλλήλοις,
 to Cyrus, after they-became hostile to-one-another,
 καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ἀγαπώμενοι
 and these indeed — (persons) the-most beloved
 ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, νομίζοντες ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ
 by him (the king), thinking (that) being brave (men)
 παρὰ Κύρῳ, ἂν τυγχάνειν ἀξιοτέρας τιμῆς
 under Cyrus, — to-obtain more-worthy honour (and reward)
 ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. Δὲ καὶ τὸ γεγόμενον
 than from (the) king. And also — (that) happening
 αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου μέγα
 to-him at the end — 'of (his) 'life (is a) great
 τεκμήριον, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθός, καὶ ἐδύνατο
 proof, that — he was brave, and could
 ὀρθῶς κρίνειν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους
 rightly judge — (those) faithful (to him), and well-disposed,
 καὶ βεβαίους. Γὰρ αὐτοῦ ἀποδνήσκοντος, πάντες
 and steadfast. For he dying, all
 οἱ φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι παρ' αὐτὸν ἀπέθανον
 — (his) friends and table-companions with him died
 μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου, πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος
 fighting over Cyrus. except Ariæus; this (person

δε τεταγμένος ἐτύγγανεν ἐπὶ
 indeed | stationed happened [happened to be stationed] on
 τῷ εὐκυνύμῳ, ἄρχων τοῦ ἵππικοῦ· δ' ὥς ᾗσδετο
 the left, commanding the cavalry; but when he-learned
 Κύρον πεπτωκότα ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ
 (of) Cyrus having-fallen he-fled having also (with him)
 τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα οὗ ἡγεῖτο.
 the entire army which he-commanded.

CHAPTER X.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἡ κεφαλὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμενται
 There indeed the head of-Cyrus is-cut-off,
 καὶ ἡ δεξιὰ χεὶρ. Δὲ βασιλεὺς, καὶ οἱ
 and-also the right hand. But (the) king, and — (those)
 σὺν αὐτῷ, διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κυρεῖον
 with him, pursuing falls | on the Cyrean
 στρατόπεδον· καὶ μὲν οἱ
 camp; [on the camp of Cyrus]; and indeed — (those soldiers)
 μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι
 with Ariæus no-longer stand but flee
 διὰ τοῦ στρατοπέδου αὐτῶν εἰς τὸν
 through | the camp of-them [their camp] to the
 σταδμόν, ἐνθεν ὤρμηντο· δ' ἐλέγοντο εἶναι
 station, whence they-had-started (last); | and there-were-said to-be
 τέτταρες παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ.
 four parasangs of-the road [and which was said to be
 Δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν
 four parasangs distant]. But (the) king and — (those) with
 αὐτῷ τε διαρπάζουσι τὰ ἄλλα
 him not-only plunder — other (things, which were)
 πολλὰ, καὶ λαμβάνει τὴν Φωκαῖδα τὴν
 many, but-also he-takes the Phocæan (woman), the
 παλλακίδα Κύρου καὶ λεγομένην εἶναι, τὴν
 concubine of-Cyrus, and (who) was-said to-be, —

σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν. Δὲ ἡ νεωτέρα ἡ Μιλησία,
 wise and beautiful. But the younger (concubine) the Milesian
 ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα
 (woman), having-been-taken by — (those) about (the) king
 ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν
 escapes | naked [in her under garments] to (those of) the
 Ἑλλήνων, οἱ ἔχοντες ὅπλα ἔτυχον ἐν
 Greeks, who having arms happened (to be stationed) among
 τοῖς σκευοφόροις· καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες
 the baggage-train; and having-been-drawn-up-against (the Persians)
 ἀπέκτειναν πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀρπάζοντων, δὲ
 they-killed many indeed of — (those) plundering, but
 οἱ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· γε μὴν
 — (some) also of-themselves died; at-least indeed they-'did
 οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔσωσαν ταύτην, καὶ
 not 'flee, but also saved this (woman), and
 ἄλλα, ὅποσα ἐγένοντο ἐντὸς αὐτῶν
 other (things), whatever were within (the lines) of-them,
 καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνδρωποι, πάντα ἔσωσαν.
 both property and men, all were-saved.
 Ἐνταῦθα τε βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 There not-only (the) king, but-also the Greeks
 διέσχον ἀλλήλων ὥς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ
 were-distant from-one-another about thirty stadia, the
 μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς κατ' αὐτοὺς,
 (Greeks) indeed pursuing — (those opposed) against themselves,
 ὥς νικῶντες πάντας, δ' οἱ ἀρπάζοντες, ὥς
 as conquering all, but the (Persians) plundering, as
 ἤδη νικῶντες πάντες. Δ' ἐπεὶ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες
 now conquering all. But when indeed the Greeks
 ᾗσδοιτο, ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι
 perceived, that (the) king with — (his) army
 εἶη ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις, δὲ βασιλεὺς
 might-be among — (their) baggage-train, and (the) king
 αὐτὸς ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους, ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες
 on-the-other-hand heard from-Tissaphernes that the Greeks

νικῶεν τὰ καδ' αὐτοὺς, καὶ διώκοντες
might-be-conquering the (army) opposed to-them, and pursuing,

οἰχονται εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἔνταῦθα δὴ
they-advance to — (a distance) forward, there truly (they

βασιλεὺς μὲν τε ἀδροῖζει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ,
(the) king indeed not-only | collects — (those) of-himself,

καὶ συντάττεται· δὲ ὁ
[collects together his forces], but-also draws-them-up-in-line; but —

Κλέαρχος καλέσας Πρώξενον, γὰρ ἦν πλησιαίτατος,
Clearchus having-called Proxenus, for he-was the-nearest,

ἐβουλευέτο, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας, ἢ
consulted (with him), if they-should-send some (of the troops), or

πάντες ἴοιεν ἀρήξοντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
all should-go | about-helping [to relieve] (to) the camp.

Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἦν πάλιν
During this (time) also (the) king was again

δῆλος προσιών, ὥς ἐδόκει ὀπισθεν. Καὶ μὲν οἱ
evidently approaching, as it-seemed from-behind. And indeed the

Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὥς
Greeks having-faced-about prepared-themselves, as-if (the king

προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι ταύτη· δὲ ο
were-advancing and-also receiving (him) in-that (direction); but the

βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ ἤγε ταύτη,
king indeed 'did not lead (his troops) in-that (direction),

δὲ ἢ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου
but (by the way) in-which he-had-passed beyond — (their) left

κέρατος, ταύτη καὶ ἀπήγαγεν, ἵνα λαβὼν
wing, by-the-same (way) also he-led-back (his forces), taking-with

καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ αὐτομολήσαντας
(him) both — (those) in the battle, having-deserted

κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ Τισσαφέρην, καὶ τοὺς
to the Greeks, and Tissaphernes, and —

σὺν αὐτῷ. Γὰρ ὁ Τισσαφέρης οὐκ
(those) with him. For — Tissaphernes 'did not

ἔφυγεν ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ, ἀλλὰ διήλασε κατὰ
'flee in the first encounter, but charged again

τους Ἕλληνας πελταστάς παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν·
the Greek targetiers along the river·

δὲ διελαύνων μεν κατέκαινε οὐδενά,
but charging-through (the ranks) 'he indeed 'killed no-one

δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες διασπάντες ἔπαιον
out the Greeks standing-apart (and making a passage) struck

καὶ ῥκόντιζον αὐτούς·
(them with their swords) and threw (their javelins) at-them;

Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἤρχε τῶν πελ-
Episthenes — (the) Amphipolite commanded the tar-

ταστῶν, καὶ ἐλέγετο γενέσθαι φρόνιμος.
getiers, and was-said to-be (a) prudent (and able com-

Δ' ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὖν, ὥς ἔχων μείον,
'nander). But — Tissaphernes therefore, as having | less

ἀπηλλάγη, μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει
[the worst], was-forced-to-depart, indeed he-'does not 'return

πάλιν, δὲ ἀφικόμενος εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ τῶν
again, but having-arrived at the camp — of-the

Ἑλλήνων, ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ δὴ
Greeks, there he-meets-with (the) king, and —

συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ὁμοῦ πάλιν.
(then) having-drawn-up-their-forces they-marched together back (again)

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τῶν
But when they-were opposite the left wing of-the

Ἑλλήνων, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐδεισαν, μὴ προσάγοιεν
Greeks, the Greeks feared, | lest they-might-lead

πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ
against — (that) wing [lest they would attack that wing] and

περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν κατακόψειαν
surrounding (them) on-both-sides they-might-'cut

αὐτούς· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ
them 'off; and it-seemed (best) to-them to-fold-back the

κέρας, καὶ ποιήσασθαι τὸν ποταμόν ὀπισθεν.
wing and to-place the river in-the-rear.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβυλεύοντο,
In (the time) in-which indeed (that) they-were-planning (this manoeuvre)

καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμενψάμενος
 and now-indeed (the) king having-changed (his line)
 εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν
 into the same form (that) he-placed (it) fronting the
 φάλαγγα, ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον συνήει μαχοῦ-
 phalanx, | just-as — (at) first he-might-have-come fight-
 μενος. Δὲ ὥς οἱ
 ing [just as he came at first to offer battle]. But as the
 Ἕλληνες εἶδον ὄντας τε ἐγγὺς καὶ παρα-
 Greeks saw (them) being not-only near and-also drawn-
 τεταγμένους, αὖθις παιανίσαντες ἐπήεσαν ἔτι
 up-in-order-of-battle, again singing-the-pæan they-advanced yet
 πολὺ προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. Δ'
 much more-eagerly (and spirited) than — before. But
 αὖ οἱ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ'
 again the barbarians 'did not 'receive (their attack), but
 ἔφειγον ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ
 they-fled from a-greater (distance from them) | than (they did) —
 πρόσθεν· δ' οἱ ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι τινός
 before; but — (the Greeks) pursued (them) to a-certain
 κώμης· δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν. Γὰρ
 village; but there the Greeks halted. For
 ἦν γήλοφος ὑπὲρ τῆς κώμης, ἐφ' οὗ οἱ
 there-was (a) hill above the village, upon which — (those)
 ἀμφὶ βασιλεά, ἀνεστράφησαν, μὲν
 about (the) king, stood-faced-about, (there-were) indeed
 οὐκέτι πεζοί, δὲ ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη
 no-longer (any) foot-soldiers (there), but the hill was-filled
 τῶν ἰππέων, ὥστε μὴ γιγνώσκειν τὸ
 with-the cavalry, | so-that they-'did not 'know the (thing)
 ποιούμενον.
 that) was-doing [so that they knew not what the infantry might
 Καὶ ἔφασαν ὅρᾱν τὸ Βασιλεῖον
 be doing]. And they-said (that) they-saw the roys

σημελον τινα χρυσοῦν ἀετόν ἀνατεταμένον ἐπὶ
standard a-certain golden eagle elevated on

πέλτης.

(a) shield.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐχώρουν ἐνταῦθ',
When indeed also the Greeks proceeded thither,

οἱ ἵππεῖς δὴ καὶ λείπουσι τὸν λόφον, οὐ μὴν ἔτι
the horsemen indeed also leave the hill, not however as

ἄθροοι, ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν,
collected-in-a-body, | but others in-other-direction, [but dispersed in

δ' ὁ λόφος ἐψιλοῦτο τῶν
different directions], and the hill 'was (gradually) 'thinned of-the

ἵππεων. δὲ τέλος καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. Ὁ
horsemen; but at-last also all departed. —

Κλέαρχος οὖν οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν
Clearchus therefore 'did not 'march on (to) the

λόφον, ἀλλ' στήσας ὑπὸ αὐτὸν πέμπει
hill, but having-halted | under [at the foot of] it he-sends

Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον,
Lycius the Syracusian and another on the hill,

καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ
and he-orders (them) having-viewed the (things) on the

λόφου ἀπαγγεῖλαι τί ἐστι. Καὶ ὁ Λύκιος
hill to-report what is (there). And — Lycius

ἦλασε τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγ-
rode-on — (to the hill) and seeing (the state of affairs) brings

γέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. Δὲ
word that they-fly to the-utmost-of-their-ability. And

σχεδὸν ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν ἥλιος καὶ
nearly when these (things) | were [happened] (the) sun also

ἰδύετο. Δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν, καὶ
set. And there the Greeks halted, and

σεμενοὶ τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα
placing — (their) arms rested; and at-the-same-time

μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδαμοῦ φαίνοντο
indeed they-were-surprised that Cyrus no-where appeared

οὐδ' ἄλλος οὐδεὶς παρείη αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ
 nor 'did (any) other one 'come from-him. For
 ἤδεσαν οὐ αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἰκάζον
 they-knew not (that) he was-dead, but they-supposed (him)
 ἢ οἶχεσθαι διώκοντα ἢ προεληλακένα
 either to-go-away pursuing (the enemy) or to-have-pushed-on-before
 καταληψόμενον τι. Καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλευόντες
 about-to-seize some (post). And they deliberated
 εἰ μέιναντες αὐτοῦ ἄγοιντο ἐνταῦθα τὰ σκευο-
 if remaining there they-should-bring thither the baggage
 φόρα, ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἔδοξεν
 train, or return to the camp; it-seemed
 αὐτοῖς οὖν ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ
 to-them therefore (best) to-return; and they-arrived at
 τὰς σκηνάς ἀμφὶ δόρπηστον. Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ
 the tents about supper-time. Such was the
 τέλος μὲν ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας. Δὲ καταλαμβά-
 end indeed of-this — day. But they
 νοῦσι τε τὰ πλεῖστα τῶν ἄλλων χρημάτων
 find not-only the most of — (their) other things
 διηρπασμένα, καὶ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτόν
 plundered (or destroyed), but-also whatever food or drink
 εἶ ἦν· καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ
 there may-be; and the wagons full-of wheat-flour and
 οἴνου, ἃς Κύρος παρεσκευάσατο, ἵνα εἰ ποτε
 wine, which Cyrus provided, that if ever
 σφοδρὰ ἐνδεῖα λάβοι τὸ σπράτευμα, διαδοίη
 vehement want should-seize the camp, he-might-distribute
 τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, αὐταὶ ἀμαξαὶ δ' ἦσαν
 (them) to-the Greeks, these wagons — were
 τετρακόσαι ὥς ἐλέγοντο, καὶ ταύτας τότε
 four-hundred as they-said, and these then
 οἱ σὺν βασιλεὶ διήρπασαν. Ὡστε οἱ πλεῖστοι
 — (those) with (the) king plundered. So-that the most
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἦσαν ἄδειπνοι· δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
 of-the Greeks were supperless; but also they-were

ἀνάριστοι· γὰρ δὴ πρὶν τὸ στράτευμα
 without-dinner; for indeed before the army

καταλῦσαι πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη.
 halted for dinner (the) king appeared.

Οὕτως οὖν μὲν διεγένοντο ταύτην τὴν
 Thus therefore indeed did-they-pass that --

νύκτα.
 night

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Ως μὲν οὖν τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἠδροίσθη
 How — therefore the Grecian (force) was-collected
 Κύρῳ, ὅτε ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν
 for-Cyrus, when he-led-an-army against — (his) brother
 Ἀρταξέρξην, καὶ ὅσα ἐπάχθη ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ,
 Artaxerxes, and what was-done in the upward-march,
 καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε,
 and how — (a) battle took-place, and how Cyrus died,
 καὶ ὡς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐλθόντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον
 and how the Greeks having-come to the camp
 ἐκοιμήθησαν, οἰόμενοι νικᾶν τὰ πάντα,
 went-to-rest, | thinking to-conquer — all, [believing that
 καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν,
 they were completely victorious], and (that) Cyrus lived, (all this)
 δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Δέ
 has-been-indicated in the preceding discourse (or book). But
 ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 | at-the-same-time with-the day [at dawn of day] the generals
 συνελθόντες ἐθαύμαζον, ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε πέμποι
 having-come-together were-surprised, that Cyrus 'had neither 'sent
 ἄλλον σημανοῦτα ὅτι χρὴ ποιεῖν, οὔτε
 any-one-else signifying what is-necessary to-do, nor
 αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. Ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς
 did-'he himself 'appear. It-seemed therefore (best) to-them
 πυσχευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον, καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις,
 having-packed-up what they-had, and having-armed-themselves,
 προῖέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἕως συμμίξειαν
 to-march in the forward [to advance] until they-formed-a-junction

Κύρω. Δὲ ἤδη ὄντων ὀρμῇ, ἅμα ἀνίσ-
 with-Cyrus. But now being in-motion, at-the-same-time with-the-
 χοντι ἡλίῳ ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ ἄρχων Τευθρανίας
 rising sun, came Procles the governor-of Teuthrania
 γεγονώς ἀπὸ Δημαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ
 having-descended from Damaratus the Lacedæmonial, and
 Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. Οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος
 Glus the (son of) Tamos. These informed (them) that Cyrus
 μὲν τέθνηκε, δὲ Ἀριαῖος πεφευγώς εἶη μετὰ
 indeed was-dead, and (that) Ariæus having-fled was, with
 τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ σταδμῷ ὅθεν
 the other barbarians, at the station whence
 ὠρμῶντο τῇ προτεραίᾳ, καὶ λέγει, ὅτι ἂν μὲν
 they-started on-the day-before, and he-said, that 'he might indeed
 περιμένειεν αὐτούς ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν, εἰ μέλ-
 'wait-for them that-same — day, if they-
 λοιεν ἔχειν, δὲ φαίη ἀπιέναι τῇ
 might-intend to-come, — (for) he-said (he was about) to-depart on the
 ἄλλῃ ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθεν περ ἦλθε.
 next (day) for Ionia, whence he-had-come.

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ οἱ
 The generals hearing these (things), and the
 ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι
 other Greeks hearing (them from the generals)
 ἔφερον βαρέως. Δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε τάδε· Ὁφέλε
 bore-it grievously. But Clearchus spoke thus: Would
 ἀλλὰ μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· δὲ ἐπεὶ τετελεύτηκεν,
 then indeed (that) Cyrus lived; but since he-has-died,
 ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ, ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε
 announce to-Ariæus, that we are-victorious not-only (over
 βασιλέα, καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι μάχεται
 the) king, and as you-see, no-one any-longer 'offers
 ἡμῖν, καὶ εἰ μὴ ἦλθετε ὑμεῖς, ἂν
 us 'battle, but-also if you-'had not 'come to-us, 'we would
 ἐποροῦμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα. Ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ
 have-marched against (the) king. We-promise also

Αριαίῳ, ἐὰν ἔλθῃ ἐνθάδε, καδίσειν
 Ariæus, if he-come here, (that we are ready) to-place
 αὐτόν εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασιλείον. γὰρ
 him on the throne, the royal (throne); for
 τῶν νικῶντων μάχῃ καὶ ἐστὶ τὸ ἄρχειν.
 — (those) conquering in-battle also (to them) | is the to-rule
 Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ἀποστέλλει τοὺς
 [it belongs to rule]. Saying these (things) he-sends-away the
 ἁγγέλους, καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα
 messengers, and with them Cheirisophus the Lacedæmonian
 καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· γὰρ καὶ Μένων
 and Menon the Thessalian; for indeed Menon
 αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο· γὰρ ἦν φίλος καὶ ξένος
 himself desired (to go); for he-was (a) friend and guest
 Ἀριαίου. Οἱ μὲν ὥχοντο,
 of-Ariæus (bound by the ties of hospitality). — (These) then departed,
 δὲ Κλέαρχος περιέμενε. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα
 out Clearchus waited (for them). But the army
 ἐπορίζετο σῖτον ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν
 supplied-itself with-food as-well-as they-were-able from — (their)
 ὑποζυγίων, κόπτοντες τοὺς βούς καὶ ὄνους·
 beasts-of-burden, slaughtering — (their) oxen and asses;
 δὲ προϊόντες μικρὸν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗ
 and advancing (a) little from the army, (to) where
 ἡ μάχῃ ἐγένετο ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις, τε τοῖς
 the battle took-place they-got wood (for fuel), not-only from-the
 οἰστοῖς, οὓσιν πολλοῖς, οὓς οἱ Ἕλληνες
 arrows, being many (in number), which the Greeks,
 ἠνάγκαζον τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως
 compelled — (those) deserting from (the) king
 ἐκβάλλειν, καὶ τοῖς γέρβοις, καὶ ταῖς
 to-throw-away, and the wicker-shields (of the Persians), and the
 ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίνας ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις. Δὲ καὶ
 shields the wooden-ones the Egyptian. And also
 πολλὰί πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἔρημοι ἦσαν
 many targets and wagons emptied (of their contents) were

φέρεισθαι. χρώμενοι πᾶσι οἷς, ἔψοντες κρέα
 'to-be-carried-off; using all which, (for) cooking meat

ἥσδιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.
 they-eat (enough for) that — day.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε περὶ πλήδουσιν ἀγορὰν,
 And it-was now not-only | about full market,

καὶ ἔρχονται παρὰ
 [about the middle of the forenoon], but-also there-arrived from (the)

βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι
 king and Tissaphernes heralds, | the — others

βάρβαροι δὲ ἦν εἰς αὐτῶν Ἕλληνας
 barbarian [being barbarian] but there-was one of-them (a) Greek

Φαλίνος, ὃς ἐτύγχανε ὦν παρὰ
 Phalinus (by name), who | happened being [happened to be] with

Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ ἔχων ἐντίμως.
 Tissaphernes, | and (who) holding (him) honourably; [and was

καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο εἶναι
 highly esteemed by him]; — for he-pretended to-be

ἐπιστήμων τῶν τε ἀμφοῖν τάξεις καὶ
 skilled (in) the (things) not-only relative-to tactics but-also

ὀπλομαχίαν. Δὲ οὗτοι
 (In those relative to) fighting-with-heavy-arms. But these (heralds)

προσελθόντες, καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς ἄρχοντας
 approaching, and calling-to the generals

τῶν Ἑλλήνων, λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει
 of-the Greeks, said, that (the) king commanded

τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει,
 the Greeks, | since conquering he-happens, [since he had

καὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον, παραδόντας
 gained the victory], and had-slain Cyrus, (that) having-delivered-up

τὰ ὅπλα, ἰόντας ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας
 — (their) arms, (and) going | to the gates 'of (the,

βασιλέως, εὐρίσκεισθαι ἂν
 'king, [to the palace of the king], to-obtain-for-themselves if

δύνανται τι ἀγαθόν. Ταῦτα μὲν οἱ
 they-can any-thing good (or favourable). Thus — 'did the

κήρυκες βασιλέως εἶπον· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν
 heralds 'of (the, 'king 'speak; but the Greeks indeed
 ἤκουσαν βαρέως, δὲ Κλέαρχος ὁμῶς
 heard (them) heavily (with concern), but Clearchus only
 εἶπε τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἴη οὐ τῶν νικῶντων
 spoke so-much, that it-was not (the part) of — (those) conquering
 παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα· ἀλλ', μὲν ἔφη ὑμεῖς
 to-give-up — (their) arms; but, indeed said-he, 'do you
 ὧ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ ἀποκρίνασθε τούτοις
 O men generals 'reply to-these (men)
 τε ὅ τι ἔχετε κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον·
 not-only what you-hold (to be) most-proper but-also the-best;
 δὲ ἐγὼ ἥξω αἰτίκα. Γὰρ τις τῶν ὑπηρετῶν
 and I will-come directly. For some-one of-the attendants
 ἐκάλεσε αἰτόν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱέρα
 called him, that he-might-see the (entrails of a) victim
 ἐξηρημένα· γὰρ ἔτυχε θνύμενος.
 (that just) had-been-taken-out; for he-happened (to be) sacrificing.
 Ἐνθα δὴ Κλέανωρ μὲν ὁ Ἀρκὰς, ὦν πρεσβύτατος,
 Then indeed Cleanor — the Arcadian, being the-oldest,
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἂν πρόσθεν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ
 answered that 'they would sooner 'die than (that)
 παραδοίησαν τὰ ὅπλα· δὲ Πρόξενος ὁ Θηβαῖος
 they-would-deliver-up — (their) arms; but Proxenus the Theban
 ἔφη, Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ ὧ Φαλῖνε θαυμάζω. πότερα
 said, But I, O Phalinus, wonder, whether (the)
 βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὅπλα ὥς κρατῶν ἢ
 king asks (for) — (our) arms as conquering or
 ὥς δῶρα διὰ φιλίαν. Γὰρ εἰ μὲν ὥς κρατῶν,
 as gifts through friendship. For if indeed as conquering,
 τί δεῖ αἰτόν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐκ ἐλθόντα
 why does-it-become him to-ask (for them) and not coming
 λαβεῖν; δὲ εἰ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν,
 take (them)? but if having-persuaded (us) he-desires to-take
 λεγέτω, τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,
 them), let-him-say, what will-be (left) to-the soldiers,

ἐὰν χαρίσωνται αὐτῷ ταῦτα. Πρὸς ταῦτα
if they-should-gratify him (in) this. To this

Φαλίνος εἶπε, βασιλεὺς ἡγεῖται νι-
Phalinus said, (The) king considers (himself) to-be-the-con-

κᾶν, ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον· γὰρ τίς ἐστιν αὐτῷ,
queror, since he-has-slain Cyrus; for who is-there against-him,

ὅστις ἀντιπoiεῖται τῆς ἀρχῆς; δέ κᾶν
who disputes the government (with him)? | and also

νομίζει ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἑαυτοῦ
considers you to-be to-himself [he moreover considers you as

ἔχων ἐν τῇ μέσῃ χώρᾳ
belonging to him as captives] | having (you) in the middle country

ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ἐντὸς
of-himself, [having you in the interior of his kingdom], and within

ἀδιαβάτων ποταμῶν, καὶ δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ἐφ'
impassable rivers, and being-able to-lead against

ὑμᾶς πλῆθος ἀνδρῶπων ὅσον εἰ
you (such a) multitude of-men (and) so-great (that) if

παρέχοι ὑμῖν οὐδὲ ἂν δύναισθε ἀποκτείνειν
he-should-allow-it to-you neither would you-be-able to-kill (them).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν
After this-one Theopompus (the) Athenian spoke,

ὦ Φαλίνε, νῦν, ὥς σὺ ὁρᾷς, ἐστὶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο
O Phalinus, now, as you see, there-is nothing else

ἀγαθὸν ἡμῖν, εἰ μὴ ὅπλα
good (or of value) to-us, | if not [unless] (our) arms

καὶ ἀρετή. Οὖν μὲν ἔχοντες ὅπλα,
and courage. Therefore indeed having (our) arms,

οἴομεθα ἂν καὶ χρῆσθαι τῇ
we-are-of-the-opinion (that) 'we could also 'make-use — (of our)

ἀρετῇ, δὲ παραδόντες ἂν ταῦτα, στερηθῆναι
courage, but giving-up — these, (would be) to-deprive

καὶ τῶν σωμάτων. Οὖν μὴ οἶον
(us) also — (of our) bodies. Therefore 'do not 'suppose

παραδώσειν ὑμῖν τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ
'that) we-will-give-up to-you the sole (advantageous) good

ὄντα ἡμῖν· ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ
existing for-us; but with these (in our hands) 'we also

μαχοόμεθα περὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἑμτέρων. Δὲ ὁ
'may-fight for the good-things of-yourselfs. But —

Φαλῖνος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐγέλασε, καὶ εἶπεν·
Phalinius hearing these (things) smiled, and said·

Ἐλλὰ μὲν, ὦ νεανίσκε, ἔοικας φιλοσόφῳ,
But indeed, O young-man, you-seem (to be like to a) philosopher.

καὶ λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ὦν
and you-speak not without-grace; | know however (you) being

αἰνόητος, εἰ
out-of-your-senses, [be assured that you are out of your senses], if

οἶει τὴν ἑμτέραν ἀρετὴν ἂν περιγενέσθαι
suppose (that) — your valour — is-to-be-superior

τῆς δυνάμεως βασιλέως. Δὲ ἔφασαν
(to) the power 'of (the) 'king. But they-reported (that)

τινας ἄλλους ἵπομαλακίζο-
some others (of the generals) having-become-somewhat-timid-and-

μένους λέγειν, ὥς καὶ ἐγένοντο πιστοὶ Κύρῳ,
apprehensive said, as also they-had-been faithful to-Cyrus,

καὶ ἂν γένοιτο ἀξιοὶ πολλοῦ βασιλεῖ
so 'they might 'become | worthy of-much 'to (the) king

εἰ βούλοιο γενέσθαι
[of great service to the king] if he-desired to-become (their)

φίλους· καὶ εἴτε θέλοι χρῆσθαι τι
friend; and afterwards he-might-wish to-employ (them) for-any

ἄλλο, εἴτε στρατεύειν ἐπ'
other (purpose), (or if) afterwards (he were) to-march against

Αἴγυπτον, ἂν συγκαταστρέψαιντο αὐτῷ. Ἐν
Egypt, 'they would 'assist-in-reducing-it for-him. During

τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε, καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη
this (time) Clearchus came, and inquired if now

ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Δὲ Φαλῖνος ὑπολαβὼν
they-had-retained-an-answer. But Phalinius having-taken-up (the dis-

εἶπεν· Ὁ Κλέαρχε, οὗτοι λέγει ἄλλος
source) said O Clearchus, these say (one thing), others

ἀλλὰ· δὲ σὺ εἰπέ ἡμῖν, τί λέγεις.
(say) other (things); but 'do you 'tell us, what you-say.

Δ' ὁ εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος
But — 'he [Clearchus] 'said: I, O Phalinus, am-glad

ἑώρακα σε, δὲ καὶ οἶμαι πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι·
I-have-seen you, and also I-think all the others (are so);

γὰρ τε εἰ σύ Ἕλλην, καὶ ἡμεῖς,
for not-only are you (a) Greek, but-also we (ourselves are),

ὄντες τοσοῦτοι, ὅσους σὺ ὁρᾷς· ὄντες δὲ
being so-many (in number), as you see; being then

ἐν τοιούτοις πράγμασι, συμβουλευόμεδά σοι,
in such circumstances, 'we (would) 'consult with-you,

τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις.
(about) what it-is-proper to-do concerning (that) which you-announce

Οὖν, πρὸς θεῶν, σὺ συμβού-
'(from the king). Therefore, by (the) gods, | 'do you 'con-

λευσον ἡμῖν ὃ τι δοκεῖ σοι εἶναι
sult with-us [give us your advice] what seems to-you to-be

κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον, καὶ ὃ σοι οἴσει
the-most-honourable and the-best, and which to-you will-bring

τιμὴν εἰς τὸν χρόνον ἔπειτα ἀναλεγόμενον
honour in the time to-come, (when) it-is-related,

ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως,
that Phalinus when, having-been-sent from (the) king,

κελεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα,
commanding the Greeks to give-up — (their) arms,

ξυμβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς ξυμβουλευομένοις τάδε
counselled them consulting (with him) so-and-so

Οἶσδα δὲ, ὅτι ἃ ἂν συμβουλεύσης
(For) you-know —, that what 'you may 'have-advised (of a;)

ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος
necessity is-to-be-reported in — Greece. — — Clearchus

ἰπήγετο ταῦτα, καὶ βουλόμενος αὐτόν,
craftily-urged these (things), also desiring (that) he

τὸν πρὸςβείοντα παρὰ βασιλέως, συμβουλευεῖν
— coming-as-en-vy from (the) king, should-counsel

μη παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα, ὅπως οἱ Ἕλληνες
 (them) not to-give-up — (their) arms, that the Greeks
 εἶεν μᾶλλον εὐέλπιδες. Δὲ Φαλῖνος ὑποστρέψας
 might-be more full-of-good-hopes. But Phalinus | having-turned

παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ
 [having evaded this appeal] contrary to-the opinion of-him [Clearchus]
 εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων ἐστὶ
 said: I, if indeed of — ten-thousand hopes there-is

τις μία ὑμῖν σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας
 any one (remaining) to-you to-save (yourselves) fighting-against
 βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ
 (the) king, counsel (you) not to-give-up —

ὅπλα· εἰ δὲ τοι ἐστὶν μηδεμία ἐλπίς
 (your) arms; if indeed — there-is not-one hope (for you)
 σωτηρίας ἄκοντος βασιλέως, συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν
 of-safety opposing (the) king, I-advice you

σώζεσθαι ὅπῃ δυνατόν. Δὲ
 to-save-yourself | in-what-way possible [in the only way you can]. But

Κλέαρχος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν
 Clearchus to these (things) said: But indeed

δὴ σὺ λέγεις ταῦτα· δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν
 really 'do you 'say these (things); but for our (part)

ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἴομεθα, εἰ μὲν
 announce this, that we think, if indeed

δέοι εἶναι φίλους βασιλεῖ ἂν
 it-may-become (us) to-become friends 'to (the) king | (that) 'we would

ἄξιοι πλείονος εἶναι φίλοι,
 'be-worthy of-more to-be friends, [that we would be more valuable

ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες
 friends), having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up

ἄλλω· δὲ εἰ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἂν ἄμεινον
 to-another; but if it-behoves (us) to-make-war, (it) would (be) better.

πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες
 to-make-war having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up

ἄλλω. Δὲ ὁ Φαλῖνος εἶπε, Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ
 to-another. But — Phalinus said, These (things) — certainly

ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσε
 we-will-announce; but also (the) king commanded (us)
 εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν τάδε, ὅτι μὲν μένουσι αὐτοῦ
 to-say to-you thus, that — (to you) remaining here
 εἴησαν σπονδαί, προῖοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιοῦσι
 here-would-be (a) truce, (but) advancing and also [going-away
 πόλεμος. Καὶ οὖν εἶπατε
 [retreating] (there would be) war. And therefore tell (us
 περὶ τούτου, πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ
 your answer) respecting this, whether you-will-remain and
 εἰσι σπονδαί, ἢ ἀπαγγελῶ παρ' ὑμῶν
 there-is (a) truce, or (whether) I-shall-announce from you
 ὥς πολέμου ὄντος. Δὲ Κλέαρχος
 [that war being [that there is war]. But Clearchus
 ἔλεξεν· Ἀπάγγελλε καὶ τοίνυν περὶ τούτου,
 said: Announce also therefore respecting this,
 ὅτι καὶ δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, ταῦτ' ἅπερ καὶ
 [that 'it also 'seems to-us, the-same as (it does) likewise 'to (the)
 βασιλεῖ.
 'king [that we are of the same opinion and determination with the king]
 Τί οὖν ἐστί ταῦτα; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. Ὁ Κλέ-
 What therefore are these? said — Phalinus. — Cle-
 αρχος ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν σπονδαί,
 archus replied: If indeed we-remain (here), (a) truce,
 ἀπιοῦσι δὲ καὶ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. Δὲ ὁ
 (if) we-retreat and also (if) we-advance war. But — (Phalinus)
 πάλιν ἠρώτησε· Ἀπαγγελῶ σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον;
 again asked: Shall-I-announce (a) truce or war?
 Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο ταῦτ' ἅπαν· σπονδαί
 But Clearchus answered the-same again; (a) truce
 μὲν μένουσι, δὲ ἀπιοῦσι ἢ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. Δὲ
 — remaining, but retreating or advancing war. But
 τι ὁ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.
 'what — (he) might-do he-'did not 'signify.

CHAPTER II.

Φαλλινὸς μὲν ἤν ὤχετο, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ
 PHALINUS — indeed departed, &c.-also — (those) with him

Δὲ οἱ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦγον, Προκλῆς καὶ
 But — (those) from Ariæus were-come, (namely) Procles and

Χειρίσοφος· δὲ Μένων ἔμενε αὐτοῦ παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ·
 Cheirisophus; but Menon remained there with Ariæus;

δὲ οὗτοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι Ἀριαῖος φαίη εἶναι
 and these reported, that Ariæus said (that) there-are

πολλοὺς Πέρσας βελτίους ἑαυτοῦ, οὓς οὐκ
 many Persians superior (to) himself, who 'would not

ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε
 'endure him reigning; but if you-wish

συναπιέναι κελεύει ἦκειν ἤδη τῆς
 'to-depart-with (him) he-requests (you) to-come now — (this)

νυκτός· δὲ εἰ μὴ, φησὶν αὐτὸς ἀπιέναι
 night; but if (you do) not, he-says (that) he (is) to-depart

πρωί. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ
 early-in-the-morning. And — Clearchus said: But

χρὴ ποιεῖν οὕτως· ὥσπερ λέγετε, εἰ μὲν
 it-is-necessary to-do so; as you-say, if indeed

ἦκωμεν· δὲ εἰ μὴ, πράττετε ὅποιον τι
 we-might-come (to Ariæus); but if not, do whatever

ἂν οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν. Δὲ οὐδὲ
 you may 'think (to be) the-most advantageous. But neither

εἶπε τούτοις ὅτι ποιήσοι. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα,
 did-he-say to-those what he-would-do. But after these

ἡλίου ἤδη δύνοντος, συγκαλέσας τοὺς
 (things), (the) sun now setting, having-assembled the

στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιάδε·
 generals and captains he-spoke (in) this-manner:

ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμοί θυομένῳ
 O men. to-me sacrificing-and-inspecting-the-entrails (for a sign re-

ἰένα. ἐπὶ βασιλέα τὰ ἱερά οὐκ
 specting) | to-go [marching] against (the) king the victims 'did not
 ἐγίγνετο. Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἐγίγνετο
 'become (favourable). And with-good-reason therefore they-were
 οὐ· γὰρ ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι ὁ ναυσίπορος
 not (so); for as I now learn the navigable
 ποταμός Τίγρης ἐστὶ ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ
 river Tigris is in (the) middle (between) us and
 βασιλέως, ὃν ἂν οὐ δυναίμεθα διαβῆναι
 (the) king, which 'we would not 'be-able to-cross
 ἄνευ πλοίων· δὲ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα. Μὲν δὴ
 without boats; but we have not boats. — Certainly
 γε οὐκ οἶόν τε μένειν αὐτοῦ· γὰρ
 'for us) at-least (it is) not possible to-remain here; for
 τα ἐπιτήδεια ἔστιν οὐκ ἔχειν·
 the necessities-of-life | are not to-have; [are not to be procured];
 δὲ ἰέναι παρα τοὺς φίλους Κύρου τὰ ἱερά ἦ
 but to-go to the friends of-Cyrus the sacrifices were
 πάννυ καλὰ ἡμῖν. Οὖν ὧδε χρῆ
 altogether favourable to-us. Therefore thus it-is-necessary (for us,
 ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δεῖπνεῖν ὃ τι τις ἔχει.
 to-act; having-retired to-sup (on) whatever any-one has
 Ἐπειδὴν δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι ὡς
 After indeed the-signal-may-be-given with (the) horn as (if)
 ἀναπαύεσθαι συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὴν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον
 to-go-to-rest pack-up-your-baggage; after — the second
 ἀναΐδεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· δὲ
 (signal) place (the baggage) on the beasts-of-burden; but
 ἐπὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ,
 on the third (signal), follow — (your) leader,
 ἔχοντες μὲν τὰ ὑποζύγια πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
 having indeed the beasts-of-burden next the river,
 δὲ τὰ ὀπλα ἔξω. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ
 but the heavy-armed-men on-the-outside. The generals and
 λοχαγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῖτα ἀπῆλθον καὶ
 captains having-heard these (things) departed, and

ἐποίουν οὕτω. Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ
did so. And (for) the rest (of the time) — (Clearchus)

μὲν ἤρχε, δὲ οἱ ἐπείδοντο, οὐχ
indeed commanded, and — (the others) obeyed, (they) not

ἐλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὁρῶντες
having-chosen (him actually as their commander), but perceiving

ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα
that (he) alone thought (and had the mental qualifications) such-as

ἔδει τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ ἄλλοι δ' ἦσαν
became — (a) commander, the other (commanders) indeed were

ἄπειροι. Ἄριθμός δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ,
inexperienced. | (The) number — of-the road, [the computation

ἦν ἡλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας
of the distance] which they-came from Ephesus — (in) Ionia

μέχρι τῆς μάχης, τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα
to-the (place) of-the battle, (was) three and ninety

σταδιοὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντα-
day's-march (making) five and thirty and five-

κόσιοι παρασάγγαι, πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακίς-
hundred [535] parasangs, (or) fifty and six-

χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι στάδιοι. ἀπὸ
thousand and ten-thousand [16,050] stadia; (the distance) from

δὲ τῆς μάχης εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἐλέγοντο εἶναι
— (the place) of-the battle to Babylon was-said to-be

ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι στάδιοι.
sixty and three-hundred [360] stadia.

Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο σκότος, Μιλτοκύδης μὲν
Thence, when it-became dark, Miltocythes —

ὁ Θράξ ἡντομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα, ἔχων τε
the Thracian deserted to (tho) king, having not only

τούς ἰππείας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς
the horsemen — (those) with him to-the-number-of

τετταράκοντα καὶ ὡς τριακοσίου τῶν Θρακῶν
forty, but-also about three-hundred of-the Thracian

πεζῶν. Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ἄλλοις
foot-soldiers. But Clearchus lead-the-way for-the res

κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα,
 according | to-the things-which-had-been-directed, [in the prescribed order]
 δ' οἱ εἶποντο, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον
 and — (they) followed, and arrived at the first
 σταδμόν, παρὰ Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν στρατιά
 station, to (where) Ariæus, and the army
 ἐκείνου, ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ
 of-himself (were), about mid night; and (when they arrived)
 θέμενοι ἐν τάξει τὰ ὅπλα οἱ
 having-been-placed in order (of battle) — (under) arms, the
 στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ξυνῆλθον
 generals and captains of-the Greeks went-together
 παρὰ Ἀριαῖον· καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος,
 to Ariæus; and not-only the Greeks but-also Ariæus,
 καὶ οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ὤμοσαν, μήτε
 and the principal-men of — (those) with him took-an-oath, not
 προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, τε ἔσεσθαι σύμμαχοι· οἱ
 to-betray one-another, but to-be-hereafter allies; the
 βάρβαροι δὲ προσώμοσαν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι
 barbarians indeed swore-in-addition also to-lead-the-way
 ἀδόλως. Δ' ὤμοσαν ταῦτα, σφάξαντες
 without-treachery. And they-swore these (things), killing
 ταῦρον, καὶ λύκον, καὶ κάπρον, καὶ
 (in sacrificing) (a) bull, and wolf, and boar, and
 κριόν, εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες
 ram, (receiving the blood) in (a) shield, the — Greeks
 βάπτοντες ξίφος, δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι λόγχην.
 dipping (a) sword, and the barbarians (a) lance, (into the
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο
 blood). When indeed — (these) pledges-of-fidelity had-taken-place
 ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπείπερ
 — Clearchus said: Come then, O Ariæus, since-then
 ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπέ τίνα
 the same route is to-you and to-us, tell-us what
 γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας. πότερον
 opinion (or plan) you-have respecting the march, whether

ἀπιμεν, ἥνπερ ἤλθομεν ἢ
 shall) we-return, (by the same route) which we-came or
 δοκεῖς ἐννεονηκέναί τινα ἄλλην κρείττω
 do-you-think to-have-thought-of (or devised) any other better
 ὁδόν; Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀπιόντες μὲν ἦν
 road? — (He) — replied: Returning — (by the way) which
 ἤλθομεν. ἂν παντελῶς ἀπολοίμεθα ὑπὸ
 we-came, 'we would 'be entirely 'destroyed by
 λιμοῦ· γὰρ ὑπάρχει ἡμῖν νῦν οὐδὲν τῶν
 famine; for there-is to-us now no (supply) of —
 ἐπιτηδείων· γὰρ οὐδὲ τῶν ἐγγυτάτω
 provisions; for neither (during) the nearest (or last)
 ἑπτακαίδεκα σταδμῶν ἰόντες δεῦρο, εἵχομεν
 seventeen days'-march coming hither, | we-having
 λαμβάνειν οὐδὲν ἐκ τῆς χώρας.
 to-take nothing from the country [we could procure nothing
 Δ' εἴτι ἦν ἐνθα, ἡμεῖς
 from the country]. But any-thing (that) was there, we
 διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. Δὲ νῦν ἐπυνο-
 passing-through consumed-it. But now we
 οὔμεν πορεύεσθαι μὲν μακροτέραν, δ'
 think to-go — (a) longer (way), but 'we-shall
 οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Δὲ πορευτέον
 not 'want — provisions. But [it-is-to-be-marched
 ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταδμοὺς
 to-us [we must make the march] (on) the first days'-marches
 μακροτάτους ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα, ἵνα ὥς
 the-longest that 'we can 'possibly-make-them, in-order that
 ἀποσπασθῶμεν πλεῖστον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύ-
 we-may-be-removed the-farthest from-the royal ar-
 ματος· γὰρ ἦν ἅπαξ ἀπόσχωμεν ὁδόν δύο ἢ
 my; for if once we-be-distant (a) journey of-two or
 τριῶν ἡμερῶν, βασιλεὺς οὐκέτι μὴ
 three days, (the) king 'would | no-more not [not]
 δύνηται καταλαβεῖν ἡμᾶς. Γὰρ μὲν ὀλίγω
 'be able to-overtake us. For indeed 'with (a) small

στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι. Δ'
 army he-'will not dare to-pursue (us). But
 ἔχων πολὺν στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται πορεύεσθαι
 having (a) large force he-'will not 'be-able to-march
 ταχέως· δὲ καὶ ἴσως σπανιεῖ τῶν
 fast-enough; and also 'will probably 'experience-want of-the
 ἐπιτηδείων. Ἐγώ γε, ἔφη, ἔχω ταύτην τὴν
 necessities-of-life. I-at-least, said-he, hold this —
 γνώμην.
 opinion.

Δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία ἦν δυναμένη οὐδὲν
 But this — plan-of-campaign was equivalent-to nothing
 ἄλλο, ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν, δὲ ἡ τύχη
 else, than to-stealing-away or to-fleeing-openly-away, but — fortune
 ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. Γὰρ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα
 conducted-the-army more-honourably. For when it-became day
 ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον ἐν δεξιᾷ
 they-marched-forth, having the sun on the-right
 λογιζόμενοι ἥξειν ἅμα δύνοντι ἡλίῳ
 expecting to-arrive at-the-same-time 'with (the) 'setting sun
 εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ
 at (some) village-of-the Babylonian territory; and (as respects)
 τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν. Δὲ ἔτι
 this they-'were indeed not 'deceived. And yet
 ἀμφὶ δεῖλῃν ἔδοξαν ὅρᾳν
 about the-fore-part-of-the-afternoon they-thought (that) they-saw (the)
 πολεμίους ἱππέας· καὶ τε οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 enemy's cavalry; and not-only — (those) of-the Greeks
 ἔτυχον μὴ ὄντες ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν,
 (who) happened not being [who were not] in the ranks
 ἔδεον εἰς τὰς τάξεις, καὶ Ἀριαῖος, (γὰρ ἐτύγχανε
 ran to the ranks, but-also Ariæus, (for he-happened
 πορευόμενος ἐφ' ἀμάξης, διότι ἐτέτραπτο,)
 to be) proceeding in (a) wagon, because he-had-been-wounded,)
 καταβάς ἐδωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν
 coming-down did-'put-on (his) 'corsalet. and-also — (those) with

αὐτῷ. Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὥπλί-
 him (did the same). During (the time) in-which — they-were-arm-
 ζοντο οἱ σκοποὶ προπεμφθέντες, ἦκον λέγοντες,
 ing-themselves the scouts sent-out-before, came saying,
 ὅτι εἰσιν οὐχ ἵππεις, ἀλλ' ἵποζύγια
 that they-were not horsemen, but beasts-of-burden (that)
 νέμονται. Καὶ πάντες εὐδὺς ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι
 might-be-pasturing. And all immediately knew, that
 βασιλεύς ἐστρατοπεδεύετο πού ἐγγύς· καὶ
 (the) king was-encamped some-where near; and
 γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω.
 really also smoke appeared in (the) villages not far
 Δὲ Κλέαρχος μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν
 (distant). But Clearchus indeed 'did not 'lead (his forces)
 ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ ᾔδει τοὺς στρατιώτας
 against the enemy; for he-knew (that) the soldiers
 ὄντας καὶ ἀπειρηκότες καὶ ἀσίτους· δὲ καὶ ἦν
 were both fatigued and fasting; and also it-was
 ἤδη ὀψέ· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε,
 now late; | not however [yet however] he-'did not 'decline
 φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη
 (from his route), taking-care (that) 'he-might not 'seem
 φεύγειν, ἀλλ' ἄγων εὐθύρον, ἔχων
 to-flee, but leading (the army) in-a-direct-line, (and) having
 τοὺς πρώτους κατεσκήνωσεν
 (or leading) (himself) the foremost (or advance) he-encamped
 ἅμα τῷ δυομένῳ ἡλίῳ, εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω
 at-the-time-of the setting sun, in the nearest
 κώμας, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
 villages, from which was-taken-away by the royal
 στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ξύλα ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν.
 troops even the wood-work from the houses.
 Οὖν μὲν οἱ πρώτοι ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο
 Therefore indeed the first (or advance) encamped
 ὁμῶς τινὶ τρόπῳ, δὲ οἱ ὕστεροι προσιόντες
 however in-some order, but — (those) following coming-up

σκοταῖοι ἡλίζοντο ὥς ἕκαστοι ἐτύγχανον,
in-the-dark quartered-themselves as 'they severally 'chanced

καὶ ἐποίουν πολλὴν κραυγὴν καλλοῦντες
(to find quarters), and they-made much noise calling

ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν·
to-one-another, so-that even the enemy heard (it);

ὥστε μὲν οἱ ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἔφυγον
so-that indeed the nearest of-the enemy even fled

ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. Δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο δῆλον
from the encampments. And this became apparent

τῇ ὑστερίᾳ· γὰρ οὔτε ἔτι οὐδὲν
on-the following-day; for neither any-longer | 'did no

ὑποζύγιον ἐφάνη, οὔτε
beasts-of-burden 'appear, [did any beasts of burden appear], or

στρατόπεδον, οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. Δὲ
camp, or smoke any-where near. And

ὥς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ
as it-seemed, even (the) king was-alarmed at-the approach

τοῦ στρατεύματος. Δὲ τοῦτο ἐδήλωσε
of-the (Grecian) army. And this was-manifest

οἷς ἐπραττε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ. Μέντοι τῆς ταύτης
by-what he-did on-the following-day. However — this-same

νυκτὸς προϊούσης, φόβος ἐμπίπτει καὶ τοῖς Ἑλλήσι
night advancing, (a) panic fell also on-the Greeks

καὶ ἦν θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος εἰκὸς οἷον
and there-was tumult and noise like as (sudden)

φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίνεσθαι. Δὲ Κλέ-
fear falling-on (one) (causes) to-be. But Cle-

αρχος Τολμίδην Ἠλεῖον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν
archus (ordered) Tolmides (the) Eleian, | whom he-happened

ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ,
having [whom he happened to have] with himself, (and who was)

ἄριστον κήρυκα τῶν τότε, τοῦτον
the-best herald of — (those) then (existing), this-one (then)

ἐκέλευσε ἀνειπεῖν, κατακηρύξαντα σιγὴν,
he-ordered to-proclaim, he-'having (first) 'ordered silence,

ὅτι οἱ ἄρχοντες προαγορεύουσιν, ὃς ἂν
 that the generals publicly-announce, (that he) who might
 μηνύσῃ τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς
 give-information (respecting) the (one) having-let-loose the ass among
 τὰ ὅπλα, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον
 the arms, that he-would-receive (as) reward (a) talen
 ἀργυρίου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, οἱ στρα-
 of-silver. When indeed this was-proclaimed, the sol-
 τιῶται ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι ὁ φόβος εἴη κενός, καὶ
 diers knew, that — (their) fear was groundless, and
 οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. Δὲ ἅμα ὁρδρῶ
 (that) the generals (were) safe. But at-the-time-of day-break
 ὁ Κλέαρχος παρήγγειλε τοὺς Ἕλληνας τίδεσθαι
 — Clearchus ordered the Greeks to-place-themselves
 τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τάξιν ἣπερ εἶχον ὅτε
 — (under) arms in (the) order in-which they-had (themselves) when
 ἡ μάχη ἦν.
 the battle was.

CHAPTER III

Δὲ ὁ δὴ ἔγραψα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη
 But what 'I already 'wrote, that (the) king was-alarmed
 τῇ ἐφόδῳ ἦν δῆλον τῷδε.
 at-the approach (of the Greeks) was evident by-this (that follows).
 Γὰρ μὲν τῇ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων
 For indeed on-the preceding day sending (to the Greeks)
 ἰκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ τότε
 he-ordered (them) to-give-up — (their) arms, but afterwards
 ἅμα ἀνατέλλοντι ἡλίῳ ἐπεμψε
 at-the-same-time 'with (the) 'rising sun he-sent
 κήρικας περὶ σπονδῶν. Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ
 heralds about (a) truce. But — (these heralds), when
 ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρ-
 they-went to the outposts, inquired-for the com-

χοντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ προφύλακες
 manders. When indeed the guards (at the outpost,
 ἀπήγγελλον, Κλέαρχος, τυχὼν τότε ἐπισκοπῶν
 reported-this, Clearchus, happening then to-be-inspecting
 τὰς τάξεις, εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν
 the troops-drawn-up-in-order, told the guards to-request
 τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ
 the heralds to-remain till 'he might 'be-at-leisure
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὥστε ἔχειν
 When — he-had-arranged the army so-as to-have
 καλῶς ὁρᾶσθαι πάντη φάλαγγα
 (itself) beautifully to-be-seen on-all (sides), (the) phalanx
 πυκνήν, δὲ μηδένα τῶν ἀόπλων
 (being) in-close-order, but not-one of-the unarmed (men)
 καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ
 appeared to-be (there), he-called-for the messengers, and
 αὐτός τε προῆλθε ἔχων τε τοὺς εὖοπλοτάτους
 he-himself — advanced having — the best-armed
 καὶ εὖειδεστάτους τῶν στρατιωτῶν αὐτοῦ
 and the-handsomest of-the soldiers of-himself (there about
 καὶ ἔφρασε τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς
 him), and he-told the other commanders (to do the)
 ταῦτα. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις
 same (thing). When indeed he-was near the messengers
 ἀνθρώπα τί βούλονται. Οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον, ὅτι
 he-demanded what they-wished. — (They) indeed replied, that
 ἦκοιεν ἄνδρες περὶ σπονδῶν, οἵτινες
 they-came (as) men respecting (a) truce, (and) who
 ἔσονται ἱκανοὶ τε ὁπαγγεῖλαι τὰ
 would-be competent (and empowered) not-only to-announce —
 παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἕλλησι,
 (any communication) from (the) king to-the Greeks,
 καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ.
 out-also — (those) from the Greeks 'to (the) 'king.
 Δὲ ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν
 But — (he, Clearchus,) replied : Announce therefore

αὐτῷ, ὅτι πρῶτον δεῖ μάχης, γὰρ
 to-him (the king), that first there-is-need 'of (a) 'battle, for
 ἔστιν οὐκ ἄριστον, οἷδὲ ὁ τολμῆ-
 there is no breakfast (for us), nor (is there any one) who will-be-
 σια· λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν τοῖς Ἑλλήσι,
 da-z g (enough) to-speak about (a) truce to-the Greeks,
 μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. Οἱ ἄγγελλοι ἀκού-
 not having-provided (them) breakfast. The messengers hear-
 σαντες ταῦτα ἀπήλυνον, καὶ ταχύ ἦκον·
 ing these (things) departed, and soon came
 καὶ ᾧ ἦν δῆλον ὅτι βασιλεὺς
 (back); and to-whom [Clearchus] it-was manifest that (the) king
 ἦν που ἐγγυς, ἢ τις ἄλλος, ᾧ
 was some-where near, or some (persons) else, to-whom
 ἐπετέτακτο πράττειν ταῦτα· ἔλεγον δὲ
 it-was-commanded to-transact these (affairs); they-said indeed
 ὅτι λέγειν δοκοῖεν βασιλεῖ εἰκότα,
 that (the things) they-reported seemed 'to (the) 'king reasonable,
 καὶ ἦκοιεν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας, οἱ, ἐὰν
 and they-came (back) having guides, who, if (the)
 σπονδαὶ γένωται, ἄξουσιν αὐτοὺς ἐνδεῖν ἔξουσι
 truce should-take-place, would-conduct them to-where they-would-have
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ὁ δὲ ἥρῳτα, εἰ
 the necessaries-of-life. — But 'he (Clearchus) 'inquired, if
 σπένδοιτο αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι ἰοῦσι
 a-truce-would-be-made (only) for-those — men going-to
 καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἢ ἔσοιντο σπονδαί
 and returning-from (the king), or (if) there-would-be (a) truce
 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. Δὲ οἱ ἔφασαν ἅπασιν,
 also 'for (all) 'the others. But — (they) said for-all,
 μέχρι τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν ἂν διαγγελθῇ
 until the (things) from you may be-communicated to (the)
 βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπον ταῦτα, μεταστη-
 'king. When indeed they-said these (things), having-dis-
 σάμενος αὐτοὺς, ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο.
 missed these (messengers), — Clearchus consulted , with

Καὶ ἐδόκει τὰς σπονδὰς
his officers). And it-seemed (to them) (that) the truce
ποιεῖσθαι ταχύ, καὶ ἐλθεῖν τε καὶ ἡσυχίαν
was-to-be-made speedily, and to-go not-only at (their) leisure
ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ λαβεῖν. Ὅ
after the necessaries-of-life, but-also to-take [them as required]. —

δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μὲν καὶ μοι ταῦτα·
But Clearchus said: | It-seems indeed also-to-me the-same;

οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε
[I am of the same opinion]; I-'will not however immediately indeed
ἀπαγγεῖλω, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἕστ' οἱ
'announce (our determination), but will-delay until the
ἄγγελοι ἂν ὀκνήσωσι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ
messengers might be-apprehensive (that) it-'might not 'seem

ἡμῖν ποιήσασθαι τὰς σπονδὰς·
(proper) to-us to-have-made-for-ourselves the truce; 'I

μέντοι γε οἶμαι, ἔφη, τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον
however certainly 'think, said-he, (that) the same fear

παρέσεσθαι, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις.
'will-be-present, even — to-our-own soldiers.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι καιρὸς ἀπήγγελλεν
When indeed he-thought (it) to-be the-proper-time he-announced

ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ ἐκέλευε
(to the messengers) that he-would-make-the-truce, and requested

ἡγεῖσθαι εὐθὺς πρὸς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
(them) to-conduct (them) immediately to the-provisions.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο· Κλέαρχος
And the (messengers then) indeed led-the-way; Clearchus

μὲν μέντοι ἐπορεύετο ποιησόμενος τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς,
indeed however proceeded about-making the — truce,

δὲ ἔχων τὸ στράτευμα ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς
but having the army in order (of battle), and he-himself

ὤπισθοφυλάκει. Καὶ ἐνετίγχανον τάφρους καὶ
brought-up-the-rear. And they-met-with ditches and

αὐλῶσι πλήρῃσιν ὕδατος ὥς μὴ δύνασθαι
canals (so) full of-water as not to-be-able

διαβαίνειν ἀνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο δια-
 to-cross (them) without bridges; but they-made cross-
 βάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες,
 ings out-of the palm-trees which had fallen-down,
 δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐξέκοπτον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν
 and also of — (those) they-cut-down. And here was
 καταμαθεῖν Κλέαρχον ὥς ἐπεστάτει,
 (an opportunity) to-observe Clearchus how he-exercised-command,
 ἔχων μὲν ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ, δὲ
 having indeed in — (his) left hand the spear, but
 ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις
 in — (his) right (hand a) truncheon; and if any-one
 δοκοίη αὐτῷ τῶν τεταγμένων πρὸς τοῦτο
 might-seem to-him of — (those) appointed to this (work)
 βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον
 to-loiter, selecting — (a) fit (person) 'he
 ἂν ἔπαισε, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς ἐμβαίμων
 would 'beat (him), and at-the-same-time he leaping
 εἰς τὸν πηλὸν προσελάμβανεν· ὥστε
 into the mud took-part (in the work); so-that
 αἰσχύνῃν εἶναι πᾶσιν μὴ οὐ συσπουδάζειν.
 shame was to-all — not to-simulate (him in
 Καὶ οἱ γεγονότες τριῶντα
 expediting the work). And — (those) being thirty
 ἔτη ἐτάχθησαν μὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ.
 years (of age) were-appointed — by him (for this work);
 ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρων Κλέαρχον σπου-
 after indeed also the older persons) saw Clearchus hasten-
 δάζοντα, καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι προσελάμβανον.
 ing (the work), even the older-men took-part
 Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδε πολὺ μᾶλλον,
 (in it). But — Clearchus hastened (the work) much more
 ὑποπτεῖν τὰς τάφρους εἶναι μὴ αἰεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις
 suspecting the ditches to-be not always so full
 ὕδατος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ ὥρα οἷα ἄρδεν το
 of-water; for it-was not (the) season proper to-water the

πεδῖον· ἀλλ' ὑπώπτευε βασιλέα ἀφεικέναι
 ground; but suspected (that the) king had-sent-out
 τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπὶ τὸ πεδῖον ἔνεκα τούτου, ἵνα ἤδη
 the water on the plain by-reason-of this, that already
 πολλὰ δεινὰ προφαίνοντο τοῖς Ἑλλήσι εἰς τῇ
 many difficulties might-appear to-the Greeks in the
 πορείαν.
 march.

Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας, ὅθεν
 And proceeding they-arrived at (the) villages, from-which
 οἱ ἡγεμόνες ἀπέδειξαν λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτή-
 the guides signified (to them) to-take the provi-
 δεια. Ἐνῇν δὲ πολὺς σίτος, καὶ
 sions. There-was-in (these villages) indeed much corn, and
 οἶνος φοινίκων, καὶ ὄξος ἐψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν
 wine of-date-palms, and (an) acid-wine cooked from —
 αὐτῶν. Δὲ αἱ αὐταὶ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων,
 them. But the same dates of-the palmae
 οἷας μὲν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν
 such-as indeed are | to-see [to be seen] in — Greece
 ἀπέκειντο τοῖς οἰκέταις, δὲ αἱ ἀποκείμεναι
 are-put-by for-the servants, but — (those) put-away
 τοῖς δεσπόταις ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσιαι τὸ
 for-the masters were choice-ones, admirable for —
 κάλλος καὶ τὸ μέγεθος, δὲ ἡ ὄψις
 (their) beauty and — size, and — (their) appearance
 διέφερε οὐδὲν ἡλέκτρον. Δὲ ξηραίνοντες τὰς
 differed nothing from-amber. And drying —
 τινὰς ἀπετίδесαν τραγήματα. Καὶ
 some (of these) they-'put (them) 'up for-sweetmeats. And
 ἦν καὶ ἡδὺ μὲν παρὰ πότον, δὲ κεφαλαλγές.
 (they) were also pleasant indeed with drink, but causing-headache
 Ἐἵταῦδα καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται πρῶτον ἔφαγον τὸν
 Here also the soldiers first eat | the
 ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ
 brains of-the palm-tree, [the cabbage of the palm-tree], and

οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τε τὸ εἶδος καὶ
 the multitude were-astonished not-only — 'at (its) 'appearance but-also
 τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. Καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ἦν
 at-the peculiarity — 'of (its) sweetness. And this also was
 σφόδρα κεφαλαλγές. Δὲ ὁ φοῖνιξ ὄθεν
 exceedingly (apt at) causing-headache. But the palm-tree whence
 ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ἐξαίρεθείη αἰαίνεται ὅλος.
 the cabbage may-have-been-taken, withered entirely.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ Τισσαφέρνης
 Here they-remained three days; and Tissaphernes

ἦκε παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως, καὶ ὁ ἀδελφός
 came from (the) great king, and the brother

τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως, καὶ τρεῖς ἄλλοι
 of-the wife 'of (the) 'king, and (also) three other

Πέρσαι, δὲ πολλοὶ δοῦλοι εἶποντο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
 Persians, and many slaves attended. After indeed the

στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀπῆντησαν αὐτοῖς,
 generals of-the Greeks went-to-meet them,

Τισσαφέρνης ἔλεγε πρῶτος δι' ἑρμηνέως τοιάδε·
 Tissaphernes spoke first through (an) interpreter thus :

Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες, οἰκῶ γείτων τῇ Ἑλλάδι,
 I, O Grecian men, dwell neighbouring — Greece,

καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ὑμᾶς ἐμπεπτωκότας εἰς πολλὰ
 and when I-saw you having-fallen into many

κακὰ, καὶ ἀμήχανα, ἐποίησάμην
 evils, and inextricably-great (difficulties), | I-made-it-for-myself

εὖρημα
 a-piece-of-good-luck [I considered it a most fortunate affair for me]

εἰ πως δυναίμην αἰτήσασθαι
 if I-'were in-any-manner 'able to-entreat (and obtain)

παρὰ βασιλέως δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι
 from (the) king to-have-given me (permission) to-save

ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Γὰρ οἶμαι
 you (and restore you) to — Greece. For I-think

ἂν οὐκ ἔξειν ἀχαρίστως μοι
 [(that) 'it would not 'have (itself) ungrateful to-me [that there

οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν, οὔτε
 will be no want of gratitude towards me] either from you, or
 πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. Δὲ γνούς ταῦτα
 from — all Greece. And knowing these (things)
 ἤτοῦμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ, ὅτι
 I-made-my-request 'to (the) 'king, saying to-him, that
 ἂν δικάως χαρίζοιτο μοι, ὅτι τε πρῶτος
 he might justly 'gratify me, (as) that 'I not-only first
 ἤγγειλα αὐτῷ Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα,
 'announced to-him (that) Cyrus was-marching-against (him),
 καὶ ἀφικόμην ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ ἔχων
 but-also I-came at-the-same-time with-the message having
 βοήθειαν, καὶ μόνος τῶν τεταγ-
 assistance (in auxiliary troops), and 'I alone of — (those) having-
 μένων κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας οὐκ ἔφυγον,
 been-drawn-up against the Greeks 'did not 'flee,
 ἀλλὰ διήλασα, καὶ συνέμιξα
 but charged (through their ranks), and joined (the)
 βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ, ἔνθα
 king in — your-own camp, whither (the)
 βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτεινε Κῦρον, καὶ
 king came after he-had-killed Cyrus, and
 ἐδίωξα τοὺς βαρβάρους ξὺν Κύρῳ σὺν τοῖςδε
 I-pursued — (those) barbarians with Cyrus with these,
 τοῖς νῦν παροῦσι μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ εἰς
 (namely) these now present with us, who are
 πιστότατοι αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν ὑπέσχετό
 the-most faithful to-him. And indeed 'he [the king] 'promised
 μοι βουλεύσασθαι περὶ τούτων, δὲ ἐκέλευσε
 me to-deliberate about these (affairs), and commanded
 με ἐλθόντα ἔρρωσθαι ὑμᾶς ἕνεκεν τίνος ἐστρατεύσατε
 me having-gone to-ask you by-reason of-what you-took-the-field
 ἐπ' αὐτόν. Καὶ συμβουλευῶ ὑμῖν ἀποκρίνασθαι
 against him. And I-counsel you to-reply
 μετρίως, ἵνα ἢ εὐπρακτότερον μοι, εἰάν
 moderately, that it-may-be easier for-me, if

δύνομαι διαπράξασθαι τι ἀγαθόν ἔνιν
 I-am-able to-effect any-thing good (or advantageous) for-you
 παρ' αὐτοῦ.
 with him.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες μεταστάντες ἐβουλεύ-
 At this the Greeks withdrawing delibe-
 οντο, καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο· Κλέαρχος δ'
 rated, and 'gave (their) 'answer; Clearchus indeed
 ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλδομεν ὥς
 spoke (for them): We neither assembled-together for-the-purpose-of
 πολεμήσοντες βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐπορευόμεθα
 hereafter-making-war 'against (the) 'king nor did-we-set-out
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ Κῦρος εὗρισκε πολλάς
 against (the) king, but Cyrus invented many
 προφάσεις, καὶ ὥς σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα τε
 pretexts, and as you well know, that not-only
 λάβοι ὑμᾶς ἀπαρασκευάστους, καὶ ἀναγάγοι
 he-might-take you unprepared, but-also lead
 ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε. Ἦδη μέντοι ἐπεὶ ἑωρῶμεν αὐτόν
 us thither. Now however when we-saw him
 ὄντα ἐν δεινῷ ἥσυχνῆν καὶ θεοὺς
 being in danger we-were-made-to-be-ashamed both (before) gods
 καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν, παρέχοντες
 and men to-have-betrayed him, we-allowing (him)
 ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ποιεῖν εὖ
 in the former time | to-do well 'to [to confer favours
 ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν,
 on] 'us ourselves. Since indeed Cyrus is-dead, 'we
 οὔτε ἀντιποιούμεθα βασιλεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς,
 neither 'contend 'with (the) 'king for-the kingdom,
 οὔτ' ἔστιν ἕνεκα οὗτου ἃν βουλοίμεθα
 nor is-there (any thing) on-account-of which 'we might 'desire
 ποιεῖν κακῶς τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, οὐδ'
 to-do harm (to) the country 'of (the) 'king, nor
 ἃν ἐδέλομεν ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτόν, δ' ἃν
 would we-wish to-kill him, but we would

πορευοίμεθα οἰκαδε, εἴ τις μὴ λυπείῃ ἡμᾶς·
'proceed homeward, if any-one 'would not 'molest us;

μέντοι ἀδικοῦντα πειρασόμεθα σὺν
'those however 'injuring (us) we-will-endeavour with (the aid of)

τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· εἰάν μέντοι τις
the gods to-avenge (ourselves on); if however any-one

καὶ ὑπάρχη ποιῶν εὖ ἡμᾶς, καὶ τούτου
even begin doing good to-us, and-even to-this-one we 'will

οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα ποιῶντες εὖ γε εἰς
not 'be-inferior doing good at-least to (the best of our)

δύναμιν. Οὕτως μὲν ὁ εἶπεν.
power. Thus indeed 'did — (Clearchus) 'speak.

Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης ἔφη· Ταῦτα
Hearing (this) — — Tissaphernes said: These (things)

ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ, καὶ πάλιν
I will-announce 'to (the) 'king, and (will bring) back

ὑμῖν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· δὲ μέχρι
to-you | the (things) from him; [his answer]; and until

ἐγὼ ἂν ἤκω αἱ σπονδαὶ μενόντων, δὲ
I may come 'let the truce 'remain-in-force, and

ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν ἀγορὰν. Καὶ μὲν εἰς τὴν
we will-provide (a) market (for you.) And indeed on the

ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἦκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
following-day he-'did not 'come; so-that the Greeks

ἐφρόντιζον. Δὲ τῇ τρίτῃ ἡκων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι
began-to-be-anxious. But on-the third (day) coming he-said, that

ἦκοι διαπεπραγμένος παρὰ βασιλέως δοδῆναι
he-came having-obtained from (the) king to-be-allowed

αὐτῷ σώζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πᾶν πολλῶν
to-himself to-save the Greeks, although a-great many

ἀντιλεγόντων, ὥς οὐκ εἴη ἄξιον
speaking-against (and opposing it), so-that it-'might not 'be becoming

βασιλεῖ ἰφείναι τοὺς στρατευσαμένους
'for (the) 'king to-let-go — (those) making-war

ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν. Δὲ τέλος εἶπε· καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν
against himself. And in-conclusion he-said: and now it-is-allowed

ὑμῖν λαβεῖν πιστὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, ἣ μὴν τὴν χώραν
you to-take assurances from us, that truly the country

παρέξειν φιλίαν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν
will-be-kept friendly to-you, and without-treachery hereafter-to-lead

εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, παρέχοντας
'(you) 'back to — Greece, (you) obtaining (a)

ἀγοράν· δ' ὅπου ἂν ἧ μὴ
market (for provisions); but where (indeed there) may be not (any

πρίασθαι ἐάσομεν ὑμᾶς λαμβάνειν τὰ
thing) to-purchase we-will-allow you to-take the

ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Δ' αὖ
necessaries (of life) from the country. But on-the-other-hand

δεήσει ὑμᾶς ὁμόσαι ἡμῖν, ἣ μὴν πορεύεσθαι
it-will-be-necessary for-you to-swear to-us, truly to-march

ὥς διὰ φιλίας ἀσινῶς, λαμβάνοντας
as through (a) friendly (country) without-doing-harm, taking

σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ, ὅποτε μὴ παρέχωνεν
provisions and drink, whenever we-'do not 'provide (a)

ἀγοράν· ἣν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγοράν,
market (for you); if indeed we-provide (you a) market,

ὠνούμενους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ταῦτα
you-purchasing will-have the necessaries-of-life. These (things)

ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ Τισ-
seemed (good, and were assented to), and they-took-the-oaths, and Tis-

σαφέρηνς καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς
saphernes, and the brother of-the wife 'of (the)

βασιλέως ἔδωκεν δεξιὰς τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ
'king gave (their) right-hands to-the generals and

λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ ἔλαβον
captains of-the Greeks, and took (the same)

παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα Τισσα-
from the Greeks. And after this Tissa-

φέρηνς εἶπε· Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὥς
phernes said: Now ir-deed — 'I (will) 'go-back to (the)

βασιλέα· ἐπειδὴν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ θέλωμαι,
king; after indeed I-shall-accomplish (that) which I-desire,

συσκευασάμενος, ἤξω ὥς
 having-collected-and-packed-up-my-baggage, I-will-return as (about)
 ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ αὐτός
 'leading you 'back to — Greece, and myself
 ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἑμαυτοῦ.
 'returning to | the government of-myself [my own government].

CHAPTER IV.

Μετὰ ταῦτα τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ
 AFTER these (things) not-only the Greeks but-also
 Ἀριαῖος ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων
 Ariæus being-encamped near to-one-another
 περιέμενον Τισσαφέρην πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν ἡμέρας.
 waited for-Tissaphernes more than thirty days.
 Ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον
 During — these (days) there-came to Ariæus
 καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι,
 as-well — (his) brother as — (his) other relations,
 καὶ τινες Περσῶν πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ,
 and some Persians to those (men) with him,
 τε παρεδάρσυνον, καὶ ἔφερον δεξιὰς
 'they not-only 'encouraged (them), but-also brought | right-hands
 ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως, βασιλέα
 [assurances] to-some from (the) king, (that the) king
 μὴ μνησικακήσειν τῆς ἐπιστρατείας
 'would not 'remember-in-evil (the injuries) of-the expeditions
 σὺν Κύρῳ αὐτοῖς, μηδὲ μηδενὸς ἄλλου
 under Cyrus (received) from-them, | neither no other [or
 τῶν παρωχημένων. Δὲ τούτων
 any thing else] of-the (affairs) gone-by. But these
 γιγνομένων, οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον
 (things while) occurring, | the about Ariæus [the followers
 ἦσαν ἐνδηλοὶ προσέχοντες
 of Ariæus] were evidently (not so attentive to, and) applying

τὸν νοῦν ἥττον τοῖς Ἑλλησι· ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
 the mind less to-the Greeks; so-that also through this
 μὲν τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον,
 indeed — many of-the Greeks 'were not 'pleased,
 ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
 but going-to — Clearchus and the other
 στρατηγοῖς ἔλεγον· Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ
 generals they-said: Why do-we-remain? or 'do-we not
 ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἂν ποιήσαιτο περὶ
 'believe, | that (the) king would make-it-to-himself above
 παντὸς ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς,
 all-things to-destroy us, [the king would above all things wish
 ἵνα καὶ εἴη φόβος τοῖς ἄλλοις
 to destroy us], in-order-that also there-might-be fear to-the other
 Ἑλλησι στρατεύειν ἐπὶ μέγαν βασιλέα; καὶ
 Greeks to-war against (the) great king? and
 νῦν μὲν ὑπάγεται ἡμᾶς μένειν, διὰ τὸ
 now indeed he-deceitfully-leads us to-stay, | on-account-of the
 διεσπάρδαι αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα·
 to-have-dispersed to-him the army; [on account of the dis-
 δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ πάλιν
 persed state of his army]; | but (when) the army again
 ἐπὶν ἁλισθῆναι αὐτῷ,
 was-there (and) may-have-been-taken (or re-assembled) by-him, [but when
 οὐκ ἔστιν
 his army is again collected together by him], it-'will not 'be
 ὥπως οὐκ ἐπιδήσεται ἡμῖν. Ἴσως δὲ
 that he-'will not 'attack us. Perhaps indeed he-'is
 ἢ ἀποσκάπτει τι, ἢ ἀποτειχίζει,
 either 'digging-out some (trench), or building-a-wall-against (us),
 ὥς ἡ ὁδὸς ἢ ἄπορος. Γὰρ οὐκ ἐκὼν
 so-that the road may-be impassable. For he-'will not willingly
 γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλδόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
 at-least 'consent for-us going-back to -- Greece
 ἀπαγγεῖλαι, ὥς ἡμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοῖδε, ἐνικῶμεν
 to-relate, that we, being so-few, | defeated

τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ, [defeated the
 the king at the gates of-him,
 king at his palace], καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπῆλ-
 and having-laughed-at-him we de-
 δομεν.
 parted (home).

Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λε-
 But Clearchus replied to — (those) thus ad-
 γουσιν· Ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ ἐνδυμοῖμαι πάντα
 dressing (him): I indeed also am-thinking-about all
 ταῦτα· δ' ἐννοῶ, ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἀπιμεν δόξομεν
 this; but I-think, that if 'we now 'go-away we-will-seem
 ἀπιέναι ἐπὶ πολέμῳ, καὶ ποιεῖν παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς.
 to-go-away for war, and to-act contrary to-the truce.
 Ἐπειτα πρώτων μὲν οὔδεις παρέξει ἡμῖν ἀγοράν,
 Next-then first indeed no-one will-provide us (a) market,
 οὔδ' ὅθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αἰδῖς
 nor (will there be a place) whence we-would-procure-provisions; again
 δὲ ἔσται οὔδεις ὁ ἡγησόμενος·
 in the second place) — | there-will-be no-one — hereafter-guiding-us;
 καὶ ἅμα ἡμῶν ποιούντων
 [we will have no guides]; and at-the-same-time we are-doing
 ταῦτα Ἀριαῖος εὐθὺς ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε
 this Ariæus 'will immediately 'separate (from us); so-that
 οὔδεις λελείψεται φίλος ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ
 no-one will-be-left (a) friend to-us, but also — (those)
 πρόσθεν ὄντες ἔσονται πολέμοι ἡμῖν. Δ'
 formerly being (our friends) will-become hostile to-us. But
 ἄρα μὲν εἰ ἔστι τις ἄλλος ποταμὸς καὶ
 whether indeed — there-is any other river also
 διαβατέος ἡμῖν, οἶδα οὐκ· δ' οὖν ἴσμεν
 necessary-to-pass-over by-us, I-know not: but therefore-then we-know
 ὅτι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ἀδύνατον πολεμίων
 that to-have-crossed the Euphrates (is) impossible (the) enemy
 κωλύοντων. Δὴ μὲν ἂν οὐ δέη γε
 prohibiting (us). Truly indeed 'it might not 'be-proper (for us) at-least

μάχεσθαι, ξύμμαχοι ἵππεις εἰσιν ἡμῖν.
 to-fight, (for) auxiliary cavalry is to-us (nowhere)
 δὲ ἵππεις τῶν πολεμίων εἰσιν οἱ πλείστοι καὶ
 but (the) cavalry of-the enemy is — numerous and
 ἄξιοι πλείστον· ὥστε νικῶντες τίνα μὲν
 |worthy of-much; [efficient]; so-that conquering how-many indeed
 ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; δὲ ἡττωμένων οἶόν τε
 might we-kill? but being-defeated (it would be) possible
 σωθῆναι οὐδένα. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν
 to-save none. I indeed therefore (as respects the)
 βασιλέα ᾧ ἐστὶ οὕτω πολλά τὰ σύμμαχα,
 king to-whom there-are so many — auxiliaries,
 εἵπερ προθυμεῖται ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς, οὐκ
 if he-desires to-destroy us, 'I (I say) 'do not
 οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὀμόσαι, καὶ δοῦνα
 'know what need (there was that) he swore, and gave
 δεξιάν, καὶ ἐπιorkῆσαι θεοὺς, καὶ
 (the) right-hand, and perjured-himself 'before (the) 'gods, and
 ποιῆσαι τὰ πιστὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἄπιστα τε
 made the pledges of-himself faithless (even) not-only
 Ἕλλησι καὶ βαρβάροις. Ἐλεγε πολλὰ
 'to (the) 'Greeks but-also 'to (the) 'barbarians. He-said much
 τοιαῦτα.
 thus.

Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ Τισσαφέρνης ἦκε, ἔχων τὴν
 But during this (time) Tissaphernes came, | having the
 δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ, ὡς ἀπιὼν οἶκον,
 forces of-himself, [having his army with him], as-if returning home,
 καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ.
 and-also Orontas (came having) the forces of-himself;
 ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα βασιλέως
 'he (Orontas) 'brought — also the daughter 'of (the) 'king
 τὴν ἐπὶ γάμῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν ἡδὴ δὲ ἐπο-
 the (one) on marriage. Hence 'they now indeed 'pro-
 ρεύοντο Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου
 seeded (on their march), Tissaphernes guiding (them),

καὶ παρέχοντος ἄγορὰν Δὲ καὶ
 and providing (them a) market (for provisions). And also
 Ἀριαῖος ἔχων τὸ βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα
 Ariæus having (and commanding) the barbarian army
 Κύρου ἐπορεύετο, ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντα,
 of-Cyrus marched, together-with Tissaphernes and Orontæ,
 καὶ ξυνεστρατοποδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις. Δὲ οἱ
 and-also he-encamped-together with them. But the
 Ἕλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους, αὐτοὶ
 Greeks suspecting these-men, they [the Greeks]
 ἐχώρουν ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας.
 went by themselves having guides (of their own).
 Δὲ ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλή-
 And they-encamped each-time being-distant from-one-
 λων παρασάγγην καὶ μείον. Δὲ ἀμφοτέροι
 another (a) parasang (or) even less. But both
 ἐφυλάττοντο ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους,
 (parties) guarded-themselves as-if enemies to-one-another
 καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο παρείχεν ὑποψίαν.
 and immediately this excited (and increased) mistrust (and
 Ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ
 suspicion). Sometimes — also (when) gathering-wood from the
 αὐτοῦ, καὶ ξυλλέγοντες χόρτον καὶ
 same (place), and 'were (also) 'collecting grass and
 ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐνέτεινον πληγὰς ἀλλήλοις.
 other such (things), | they-stretched-out blows to-one-another;
 ὥστε
 [they stretched out their arms threatening, or giving blows]; so-that
 τοῦτο καὶ παρείχε ἔχθραν. Δὲ διελ-
 this also caused-more animosity (between them). And having-
 δόντες τρεῖς σταδμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος
 gone-through three days'-march they-arrived at the wall
 καλούμενον Μηδίας, καὶ παρῆλθον εἰς
 called (the wall of) Media, and they-passed-through within
 αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἦν ὠποδομημένον ὀπταῖς
 it. And (this wall) was built-of burnt

πλίνδοις, κειμέναις ἀσφάλτῳ, εὖρος
 bricks, laid in-bitumen, (the) breadth (of this wall was)
 εἴκοσι ποδῶν, δὲ ὕψος ἑκατὸν· δὲ μῆκος
 twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred-feet; and (the) length
 ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· δὲ οὐ
 was-said to-be twenty parasangs; and it-'was not
 πολὺ ἀπέχει Βαβυλῶνος. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
 much 'distant from-Babylon. Hence — they-proceeded
 δύο σταδμοὺς ὁκτώ παρασάγγας, καὶ διέ-
 two days'-march (making) eight parasangs, and they-
 βησαν δύο διώρυχας, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ
 crossed two canals, the (one) indeed on (a permanent)
 γεφύρας, δὲ τὴν
 bridge, but the (other they crossed on a temporary bridge) 'having
 ἐξευγμένην ἐπτά πλοίοις· δ' αὐταὶ
 (its banks) 'joined-together by-seven boats; and these (canals)
 ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ καὶ
 were (conducted) from the river Tigris; and also
 τάφροι κατετέτμηντο ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν,
 litches had-been-cut from them over the country,
 αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, δ' ἔπειτα ἐλάττους,
 which indeed first (were) large, but afterwards less,
 δὲ καὶ τέλος μικροὶ ὀχετοὶ ὥσπερ ἐπὶ
 and also at-last (only) small drains (or streams) as in
 τὰς μελίνας ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται
 the panie (fields) in — Greece. And (then) they-arrived
 ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα· πρὸς ᾧ ἦν
 at the river Tigris; near to-which there-was (a)
 μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος πόλις ὄνομα ἣ
 large and populous city (the) name to-which
 Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ πεντεκαίδεκα
 (was) Sittace, being-distant from-the river fifteen
 σταδίου. Οὖν μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν παρ'
 stadia. Therefore indeed the Greeks encamped near
 αὐτήν, ἐγγὺς μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ παραδείσου·
 it (and) close to (a) large and beautiful park

καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρην· δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι,
 and thick with-all-kind of-trees; but the barbarians,
 διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα· ἦσαν οὐ μέντοι
 having-crossed the (river) Tigris; they-were not however
 καταφανεῖς.
 isible.

Μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν
 After — — supper Proxenus and Xenophon
 ἔτυχον ὄντες ἐν περιπάτῳ πρό
 [happened being in walking [happened to be walking] before
 τῶν ὀπλῶν· καὶ τις ἄνθρωπος προσελθὼν
 the (place) of-arms; and a man approaching
 ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον
 inquired of-the sentinels where 'he might 'see Proxenus
 ἢ Κλέαρχον· δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτει Μένωνα, καὶ
 or Clearchus; but he-'did not 'inquire for-Menon, and
 ταῦτα ὦν παρ' Ἀριαίου, τοῦ ξένου Μένωνος.
 this being from Ariæus, the guest-friend of-Menon.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι εἰμι αὐτός ὃν ζητεῖς,
 Then indeed Proxenus said (that) I-am he whom you-seek
 ὁ ἄνθρωπος εἶπε τάδε· Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος
 the man (then) spoke thus: Ariæus and Artæozus
 ὄντες πιστοὶ Κύρῳ καὶ εὖνοι ὑμῖν,
 being faithful (friends) to-Cyrus and well-disposed towards-you
 καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι
 — exhort-you to-be-on-your-guard, lest the barbarians
 ἐπιδῶνται τῆς νυκτός· δὲ ἔστι πολὺ στράτευμα
 fall-upon-you in-the night; for there-is (a) numerous army
 ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. Καὶ κελεύουσι
 in the neighbouring park. 'They also 'request-you
 πέμψαι φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 ro-send (a) guard to the bridge of-the river
 Τίγρητος, ὥς Τισσαφέρνης διανοεῖται λῦσαι αὐτὴν
 Tigris, as Tissaphernes designed to-'break it
 τῆς νυκτός, εἰ δύνηται, ὥς μὴ
 lown in-the night, if he-can, so-that you-'can not

διαβῆτε, ἀλλ' ἀποληφθῆτε ἐν μέσῳ
'cross, but (will be) intercepted in middle (space between)

τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. Ἀκούσαντες
the river and the canal. Hearing

ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον,
these (things) they-lead him to — Clearchus,

καὶ φράζουσιν αὐτῷ λέγει. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος
and told (him) what he-said. But — Clearchus

ἀκούσας σφόδρα ἐταράχθη καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο.
hearing (this) 'was greatly 'agitated and alarmed.

Δέ τις νεανίσκος τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας
But a-certain young-man of-those present having-reflected (thereon)

εἶπεν, ὥς τε τὸ ἐπιδήσεσθαι, καὶ τὸ λύσειν
said, that not-only the making-an-attack, but-also the breaking

τὴν γέφυραν εἶη οὐκ ἀκόλουθα. Γὰρ δῆλον
the bridge were not consistent. For (it is) evident

ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους δεήσει ἢ νικᾶν ἢ
that attacking (us) it-will-be-necessary either to-conquer or

ἠττᾶσθαι. Ἐὰν οὖν μὲν νικῶσι, τί
to-be-conquered. If therefore indeed they-should-conquer, what

δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν γέφυραν; γάρ οὐδὲ
is-the-necessity for-them to-break-down the bridge? for neither

ἂν ὦσιν πολλαὶ γέφυραι, ἂν ἔχοιμεν ὅποι
if there-were many bridges, would we-have where

φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθεῖμεν. Δὲ ἐὰν ἡμεῖς
fleeing we might-save (ourselves). But if we

νικῶμεν τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης οὐχ
conquer the bridge having-been-destroyed, they-'would not

ἔξουσιν ὅποι ἐκεῖνοι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὲν
'have where they might-flee; | neither indeed [nor]

οὐδεῖς

πέραν

| 'will none [will any] (of their friends) on-the-other-side (of the river)

δυντῶν πολλῶν δυνήσεται βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς
being (ever so) many 'be-able to-assist them

τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης.
the bridge being-destroyed.

Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἤρετο
 — Clearchus having-heard — these (things) asked
 τὸν ἄγγελον τις πόση εἴη χώρα ἥ
 the messenger how much might-be (the) country (in extent) which
 ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς
 (is situated) (in the-middle) (between) the Tigris and the
 δώρυχος. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι πολλή,
 canal. And who said, that (it was) great (in extent),
 καὶ ἐνείσι κῶμαι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ
 and there-were-in-it villages and towns many and
 μεγάλαι. Καὶ τότε δὴ ἐγνώσθη, ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι
 large. And then truly they-perceived, that the barbarians
 ὑποπέμψαιεν τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὀκνοῦντες, μὴ οἱ
 covertly-sent — (this) man fearing, lest the
 Ἕλληνες, διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν, μένοιεν ἐν τῇ
 Greeks, taking-to-pieces the bridge, might-remain in the
 νήσῳ ἔχοντες ἐρύματα ἐνδεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα,
 island having as-defences on-this (side) indeed the Tigris,
 δὲ ἐνδεν τὴν δώρυχα, δ' ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτή-
 out on-the-other the canal, and they-might-have the necessa-
 ρεία ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐν μέσῳ,
 ries-of-life from the country | in (the) middle, [from the coun-
 οὔσης πολλῆς
 intervening between the river and canal], being great (in extent)
 καὶ ἀγαθῆς, καὶ ἐνόντων τῶν
 and of-good (quality of soil), and there-being-on-it — (those)
 ἐργασομένων. δὲ καὶ εἶτα γένοιτο ἀπο-
 capable-of-cultivating-it; and also afterwards might-become (a) place-
 στροφῇ, εἴ τις βούλοιτο ποιεῖν κακῶς
 of-refuge, if any-one might-wish to-do evil 'to (the)
 βασιλέα. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· μεντοὶ
 king. After this they-went-to-rest; however they
 ὁμοῦς ἐπέμψαν φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν· καὶ
 likewise 'sent (a) guard to the bridge; and
 οὔτε οὐδεὶς ἐπέδετο οὐδαμῶθεν, οὔτε
 neither 'did (no-one) (any one) 'attack-them from-any-quarter, nor

οὐδείς τῶν πολεμίων ἦλθε πρὸς τὴν
 no — (any one) of-the enemy 'go to the

γέφυραν, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον.
 bridge, as — (those) guarding-it reported

Δὲ ἐπειδὴ ἐγένετο ἕως, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν,
 And when it-became day-light, they-crossed the bridge,

ἔζευγμένην τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ πλοίοις,
 joined-together by (or formed of) thirty and seven boats,

ὡς πεφυλαγμένως οἶόν τε μάλιστα.

(as cautiously as indeed most (could be); [with

τὴν μέγιστον ἐπίφυλιν]; γὰρ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ
 the greatest caution]; for some of-the Greeks from

Τισσαφέρνους ἐξήγγελλον, ὡς μέλλοιεν
 Tissaphernes announced, that 'they (the enemy) 'intended

ἐπιδήσασθαι διαβαινόντων. Ἀλλὰ μὲν
 o-attack (them) crossing (the bridge). But even

ταῦτα ἦν ψευδῆ· διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς
 'his was false; crossing-over however — Glus

ἐπεφάνη· μετ' ἄλλων, σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνουεν
 appeared with others, observing if they-crossed

τὸν ποταμόν· δὲ ἐπειδὴ εἶδεν, ἀπελαύνων
 the river; but when he-saw (that they did) riding-away

ᾧ ἤσπετο.

he-hastened.

Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας
 From — the Tigris they-proceeded four

σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν
 days'-march, (making) twenty parasangs, to the

ποταμόν Φύσκον, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου·
 river Physcus, the breadth (thereof being) a-plethrum;

ἐπὶ ἧν δὲ γέφυρα. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
 'on (which) 'there-was — (a) bridge. And here

ᾧ ἔκειτο μεγάλη πόλις, ἣ ὄνομα Ὀπίς·
 was-situated (a) large town, to-which (the) name (was) Opis;

πρὸς ἣν νόθος ἀδελφὸς Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου,
 near which (a) natural brother of-Cyrus and Artaxerxes.

ὁ ἄγων πολλὴν στρατιὰν ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ
 who was-leading (a) numerous army from Susa and
 Ἐκβατάνων, ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ, ἀπήντησε
 Ecbatana, as assisting (the) king, met
 τοῖς Ἑλλησι· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ σπράτευμα
 the Greeks; and having-halted | the army
 ἑαυτοῦ ἐδεώρει τοὺς Ἕλληνας παρέρχομένους
 of-himself[his army] he-viewed the Greeks passing-by
 Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο μὲν εἰς δύο,
 — But Clearchus led — (his men) by two (abreast)
 δὲ ἄλλοτε ἐπορεύετο καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος.
 but at-one-time he-marched-forward and at-another halting.
 Δὲ ὅσον χρόνον ἐπιστήσειε τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ
 And as-long (a) time (as) he-might-halt the van of-the
 στρατεύματος, τοσοῦτον χρόνον ἦν ἀνάγκη
 army, so-long (a) time it-was necessarily
 τὴν ἐπίστασι· γίνεσθαι δι' ὅλου τοῦ
 (that a) — halt should-take-place through the-whole of-the
 στρατεύματος· ὥστε τὸ σπράτευμα καὶ τοῖς
 army; so-that the army even to-the
 Ἑλλησι αὐτοῖς δόξαι εἶναι πάμπολυ, καὶ τον
 Greeks themselves seemed to-be very-large, and the
 Πέρσῃ θεωροῦντα ἐκπεπληχθαι.
 Persian (general) viewing (them) was-amazed.
 Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας ἕξ
 Hence — they-proceeded through — Media | six
 ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς,
 desert stations, [six days' march through a desert], (making,
 τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς τὰς κώμας Παρυ-
 thirty parasang°, to the villages of-Pary-
 σάτιδος, τῆς μητρὸς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως.
 satis, the mother of-Cyrus and 'of (the) 'king.
 Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεγγελῶν Κύρῳ ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς
 Tissaphernes (as) insulting Cyrus permitted the
 Ἑλλησι διαρπάσαι ταύτας, πλὴν
 Greeks to-plunder these (villages), except (the)

ἀνδραπόδων. Ἐνῇν δὲ πολὺς σίτος, καὶ
 slaves. There-was-in-them indeed much corn, also
 πρόβατα, καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. Ἐντεῦδε δ'
 sheep, and other things. Hence —
 ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς,
 they-proceeded | four desert stations, [four days'
 march in the desert], (making) twenty parasangs, having
 τὸν ποταμὸν Τίγρητα ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Ἐν
 the river Tigris on (their) left. In (the
 δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταδμῷ, πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
 end of) — the first days'-march, beyond the river,
 ὥκειτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων πόλις,
 there-was-situated (a) large and opulent town, (the,
 ὀνομαζομένη) Καίναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι
 name (of which was) Cænæ, from which the barbarians
 διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαῖς διφθερίναις ἄρτους,
 brought-over, on rafts (made of) skins, bread.
 τυροὺς, οἶνον.
 cheese, wine.

CHAPTER V.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
 AFTER these (things) they-arrived at the river
 Ζάπατον, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων.
 Zapata, (it having) the breadth of-four plethra.
 Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν δὲ
 And here they-remained three days; during —
 αὗται ἦσαν μὲν ὑποψαίαι, δὲ
 these (days) there-were indeed (the same) suspicions, but
 οὐδεμία φανερά ἐπιβουλὴ ἐφαίνετο. Ἐδοξεῖν
 no manifest plot appeared. It-seemed
 οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ συγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσα-
 therefore (good) — to-Clearchus to-have-a-conference — with-Tissa-

φέρνει, καὶ εἴ πως δύναιτο, παῦσαι τὰς
 phernes, and if in-any-manner he-could, to-put-an-end to — (these,
 ὑποψίας, πρὶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι ἐξ αὐτῶν· καὶ
 suspicions, before war should-arise from them; and
 ἐπεμψέ τινα ἐροῦντα, ὅτι χρήζοι ξυγγενέσθαι
 he-sent some-one saying, that he-desired to-confer
 αὐτῷ. Δὲ ὁ ἐτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἥκειν. Ἐπειδὴ
 with-him. And who promptly requested (him) to-come. When
 δὲ ξυνῆλθον, ὁ Κλέαρχος λέγει τάδε· Ἐγώ, ὦ
 indeed they-met, — Clearchus spoke thus: I, O
 Τισσαφέρην, οἶδα μὲν ὅρκους γεγενημένους
 Tissaphernes, know indeed (that) oaths have-been-taken
 ἡμῖν, καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας, μὴ ἀδικήσῃν
 between-us, and right-hands given, not to-injure
 ἀλλήλους· δὲ ὁρῶ σέ τε φυλαττόμενον ὥς
 one-another; but I-see you not-only guarding-yourself as-if
 ἡμᾶς πολεμίους, καὶ ἡμεῖς, ὁρῶντες ταῦτα,
 we (were) enemies, but-also we, perceiving these
 ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. Ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν
 (things), are-on-our-guard-against (you). After indeed considering
 οὐ δύναμαι αἰσθεσθαι οὔτε σέ
 (attentively), I-'am not 'able to-perceive (neither) you
 πειρώμενον ποιεῖν ἡμᾶς κακῶς, ἐγώ τε σαφῶς
 striving to-do us ill, I indeed clearly
 οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδ' ἐπινοοῦμεν οὐδέν
 know that we at-least neither intend (nothing) (any thing)
 τοιοῦτον, ἔδοξέ μοι ἔλθειν εἰς λόγους
 of-this-sort (toward you), it-seemed to-me (best) to-come to (a) conference
 σοι, ὅπως εἰ δυναίμεθα ἐξέλκοιμεν τὴν ἀπιστίαν
 with-you, so-that if we-can we-may-remove the mistrust
 ἀλλήλων. Γὰρ καὶ ἤδη οἶδα ἀνδρώπους,
 of-one-another. For indeed 'I now 'know men,
 τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς, δὲ καὶ τοὺς
 — (some) indeed from direct-accusation, but also — (others)
 ξ' ὑποψίας, οἱ φοβήδεντες ἀλλήλους βουλόμενοι,
 from suspicion, who having-feared one-another (and) wishing

φθάσαι πρὶν παθεῖν
 to-have-anticipated (in inflicting injury) before suffering (any)
 ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλ-
 have-done irremediable evils to — (those) neither intend.
 λοντας οὐτ' αὖ βουλομένους οὐδέν
 ing nor moreover wishing (nothing) (anything) 'of (the)
 τοιοῦτον. Νομίζων οὖν τὰς τοιαύτας
 'kind. Thinking therefore (that) — such-kinds-of
 ἀγνωμοσύνας ἂν παύεσθαι μάλιστα συνουσίαις,
 misunderstandings may be-made-to-cessate most-of-all by-meeting-together,
 ἦκω, καὶ βούλομαι διδάσκειν σε, ὥς σὺ
 I-come (then), and am-desirous to-inform you, that you 'do
 οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον καὶ
 not rightly 'mistrust us. For indeed first and
 μέγιστον, οἱ ὅρκοι θεῶν κολύουσι
 principally, the oaths (taken in the name) 'of (the) 'gods forbid
 ἡμᾶς εἶναι πολεμίους ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων
 us to-be enemies to-one-another; whoever indeed of-these
 σύννοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς, τοῦτον
 is-conscious to-himself (of) having-disregarded (these things), this-one
 ἐγὼ ἂν οὐποτ' εὐδαιμονίσαιμι. Γὰρ τὸν
 I could never (esteem) happy. For (from) the
 πόλεμον θεῶν οἶδα οὐκ, οὐτ' ἀπὸ ποίου
 hostility 'of (the) 'gods I-know not, neither | from [with] what-degree
 ἂν τάχους οὔτε ὅποι τις φεύγων ἂν ἀποφύγοι,
 — of-speed nor where any-one fleeing may escape,
 οὐτ' εἰς ποῖον σκότος ἂν ἀποδραῖν, οὐδ' ὅπως
 neither into what darkness 'he might 'flee-away, nor how
 ἂν ἀποσταίῃ εἰς ἐχυρὸν χωρίον,
 he could 'retreat into (a) fortified place (and escape from
 γὰρ πάντα πάντα ὑποχα τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ
 them), for everywhere all (is) subject to-the gods, and
 οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι πανταχῇ πάντων ἴσον. Οὕτω
 the gods rule everywhere over-all-things alike. Thus
 γινώσκω δὴ μὲν περὶ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ
 do-I-think truly indeed respecting the gods, and also

τῶν ὀρκων, παρ' οἷς ἡμεῖς, συνδέμενοι,
 — (r specting) oaths, with whom we, having-concurred
 κατεδέμεδα τὴν φιλίαν· δὲ τῶν
 (with one another), have-deposited — (our) friendship; but —
 ἀνθρωπίνων ἐγὼ νομίζω σὲ ἐν τῷ παρόντι
 of-all-human-things I consider you at the present (time)
 εἶναι μέγιστον ἀγαθὸν ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν σὺν σοὶ
 to-be the-greatest good to-us. For indeed with you
 πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὐπορος, δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς
 every — road (is) easy, and every river
 διαβατός, οὐκ ἀπορία τε τῶν ἐπιτηδείων·
 passable, (there is) no want indeed of-the necessaries-of-life;
 δὲ ἄνευ σοῦ πᾶσα ἡ ὁδὸς μὲν διὰ σκότους
 but without you (our) entire — route — (will be) through darkness
 (γὰρ ἐπιστάμεδα οὐδὲν αὐτῆς), δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς
 'for we-know nothing of-it), and every river
 δύσπορος, δὲ πᾶς ὄχλος
 (would be) difficult-in-crossing, also every multitude-of-men (would be)
 φοβερός, δὲ ἐρημία φοβερώτατον· γὰρ
 terrible, but solitude (would be) the-most-terrible (thing); for
 ἐστὶ μεστὴ πολλῆς ἀπορίας. Δὲ εἰ
 it-is full of-every want (and difficulty). But if
 δὴ καὶ μανέντες κατακτείναιμεν σε, ἂν ᾗ
 truly 'having even 'become-mad we-should-kill you, would
 τι ἄλλο κατακτείναντες τὸν εἴερ
 any-thing else (happen) having-slain — (our) bene-
 γέτην ἀγωνιζοίμεδα πρὸς βασιλέα
 factor, (but that) we-should-have-to-contend with (the) king
 τὸν μέγιστον ἑφεδρον; ὅσων καὶ δὲ δὴ οἶων
 the greatest avenger? of-how-many, and indeed truly how-great
 ἐλπίδων ἂν στερήσαιμι ἑμαυτὸν, εἰ ἐπιχειρήσαιμι
 expectations 'I should 'deprive myself, if I-should-attempt
 ποιεῖν σέ τι κακόν, ταῦτα λέξω. Ἐγὼ
 to-do you any harm, this I-will-tell (you). I
 γὰρ ἐπεθύμησά Κῦρον γενέσθαι φίλον μοι
 therefore desired Cyrus to-become (a) friend to-me

νομίζων τῶν τότε εἶναι ἱκανώτατον
 thinking (him) of-the (men) at-that-time to-be the-most-apt
 ποιεῖν εἴ ὃν βούλοιτο· δὲ νῦν ὁρῶ
 to-do good to-whom he-wished (to do so); but 'I now see
 σὲ ἔχοντα τε τὴν δύναμιν καὶ χώραν Κύρου,
 you having not-only the power and territory of-Cyrus,
 καὶ σῶζοντα τὴν ἀρχὴν σεαυτοῦ, δὲ τὴν
 but-also retaining the government of-yourself. but the
 δυνάμιν βασιλέως, ἣ Κῦρος ἐχρῆτο
 power 'of (the) 'king, which Cyrus experienced (as)
 πολεμία, ταύτην οὔσαν ξύμμαχον σοί.
 hostile, this (power) being (now an) ally to-you.
 Δὲ τούτων ὄντων τοιούτων, τίς
 But these (things) being in-this-manner, (is there) any-one (who)
 οὕτω μαίνεται, ὅστις οὐ βούλεται εἶναι
 is so 'mad, who 'would not 'wish to-be (a)
 φίλος σοι; Ἀλλὰ μὴν (γὰρ ἐρῶ καὶ ταῦτα
 friend to-you? But truly (for I-will-mention also those
 ἐξ ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας, καὶ σε βουλή-
 (things) from which I-have hopes, (that) even you will-
 σεσθαι εἶναι φίλον ἡμῖν), γὰρ μὲν οἶδα
 desire to-be (a) friend of-us), for indeed I-know 'of (the)
 Μυσοὺς ὄντας λυπηροὺς ὑμῖν, οὓς νομίζω
 'Mysians being troublesome to-you, whom, I-am-of-opinion (that)
 σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ἂν παρασχεῖν
 with the present (Grecian) force, 'I could 'render
 ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν· δὲ καὶ οἶδα Πισίδας·
 submissive to-you; so also I-know (that the) Pisidians (annoy
 δὲ καὶ ἀκοίω εἶναι πολλὰ ἄλλα ἔθνη
 you); and also I-hear (that) there-are many other nations
 τοιαῦτα ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἀεὶ
 like-these (two mentioned) whom I-think (that) 'I might 'prevent ever
 ἐνοχλοῦντα τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Δὲ
 disturbing — your happiness. But (as respects the)
 Αἰγυπτίους, οἷς νῦν γιγνώσκω ὑμᾶς
 Egyptians, against-whom 'I now 'know (that) you

μάλιστα τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ ποῖα
have-'been very-much excited, I-'do not 'see what

συμμάχῳ δυνάμει) μάλλον χρησάμενοι
auxiliary force (which) having-'been rather 'used,

ἂν κολάσεσθε τῆς
'you might 'punish (them better than) — (with the force)

οὔσης νῦν σὺν ἐμοί. Ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐν τοῖς γε
being now with me. But truly among — (those) at-least

οἰκοῦσι περίξ σύ, εἰ μὲν βούλοιο εἶναι
(who) dwell round-about you, if indeed you-desired to-be (a)

φίλος τῷ, ὥς ἂν εἴης μέγιστος.
friend — (to-any), that 'you might 'be (the) greatest (possible)

δὲ εἰ τις λυτοίη σε, ἀναστρέφοιο ὥς
but if any-one offend you, you-might-deal (with them) as (a)

δεσπότης, ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἳ δὲ
master, having us for-assistants, — (for) 'we would

ὑπηρετοῖμεν σοι οὐκ ἔνεκα τοῦ μισθοῦ
'serve you not on-account-of — (our) pay

μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἧς,
alone, but also (on account of) the gratitude, which,

σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἂν δικαίως ἔχομεν σοι
having-been-saved by you, 'we might justly 'have to-you.

Ἐμοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐνδυμουμένῳ πάντα ταῦτα
I indeed — considering all these (things),

τὸ σὲ ἀπιστεῖν ἡμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι.
[the you to-distrust us [your distrusting us] seems to-be

οὕτω θαυμαστόν, ὥστε ἂν ἡδιστ' καὶ ἀκούσαιμι
so wonderful, that 'I would most-gladly even 'have-heard

τὸ ὄνομα τίς ἐστὶ οὕτω δεινὸς λέγειν,
the name (of him) — [who] is so skilled to-speak,

ὥστε λέγων πείσαι σε ὥς ἡμεῖς ἐπιβουλεύομεν
that speaking to-have-persuaded you that we are-conspiring

σοι. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν εἶπε τοσαῦτα.
against-you. Clearchus indeed therefore spoke in-this-manner.

Ἡ Τισσαφέρνης ἀπημείφθη ὧδε.
at Tissaphernes replied thus (as follows):

Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἡδομαι ἀκούων
 But indeed, O Clearchus, I-am-delighted hearing (the)
 φρονίμους λόγους σου· γὰρ γινώσκων ταῦτα,
 judicious discourse of-you; for knowing these
 εἰ βουλεύοις τι κακὸν ἐμοί,
 (your sentiments), if you-were-to-plan any-thing evil against-me,
 ἅμα ἂν δοκεῖς μοι καὶ εἶναι κακόνους
 at-the-same-time 'you would 'appear to-me even to-be evil-minded
 σαυτῷ. Δ' ὥς ἂν μάθῃς, ὅτι ὑμεῖς ἂν οὐδὲ
 to-yourself. But that 'you may 'learn, that you 'do not
 δικαίως ἀπιστοίητε οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοί,
 justly 'mistrust either (the) king or me,
 ἀντάκουσον. Γὰρ εἰ ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς
 listen-in-turn. For if we-wished to-destroy you
 πότερα δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν πλήθους ἱππέων
 whether do-we-seem to-you to-want (the) multitude of-cavalry,
 ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὀπλίσεως ἐν ᾗ ἂν εἴημεν ἱκανοί.
 or of-infantry or warlike-equipments by which 'we might 'be able
 μὲν βλάπτειν ὑμᾶς, δὲ οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος
 indeed to-injure you, and (there would be) no danger
 ἀντιπάσχειν; Ἀλλὰ ἂν δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν
 to-undergo-in-return? But might we-seem to-you (as) wanting
 χωρίων ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιτίδεςσαι ὑμῖν; μὲν
 places suitable to-attack you? (are there not) indeed
 τοσαῦτα πεδία ἃ οὐ ὄντα φίλια ὑμεῖς διαπορεύεσθε
 so-many plains, which not being friendly you pass-through
 σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ, δὲ ὁρᾶτε τοσαῦτα
 with much labour (and difficulty) and do-you-see the-many
 ὄρη ὄντα πορευτέα ὑμῖν,
 mountains | being to-be-crossed by-you, [that are to be crossed by you],
 ἃ ἔξεστι ἡμῖν προκαταλαβοῦσι
 which it-is-allowed us after-having-previously-taken-possession (of them)
 παρέχειν ἀπορα ὑμῖν, δ' εἰσὶ τοσοῦτοι ποταμοί.
 to-render impassable to-you, and are-there (not) so-many rivers
 ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι
 at which it-is-allowed us to-regulate (and determine)

ὅπ' ἄν ποτε ἕμεν ἂν βουλώμεθα μάχεσθαι; δὲ
with-how-many of-you 'we might 'wish to-fight? and

εἰσὶ αὐτῶν οὓς ἂν οὐδὲ διαβαίητε
are-there (not some) of-these (rivers) which 'you could not 'cross

παντάπασιν, εἰ ἡμεῖς μὴ διαπορεύοιμεν ἡμᾶς.
at-all, if we 'did not 'cross you 'over

Δ' εἰ ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττώμεθα, ἀλλὰ
But if in all these (things) we-should-fail, but (then)

γέ τοι τό πῦρ ἐστὶ κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ.
at-least — — | fire is better (than) the fruit

κατα-
(of the earth); [fire is master over the produce of the soil]; (for) burn-

καύσαντες ὃν ἡμεῖς ἂν δυναίμεθ' ἀντιτάξαι λιμὸν
ing which we would be-able to-oppose famine

ὑμῖν, ᾧ ὑμεῖς, οὐδ' εἰ εἴητε πάνν ἀγαδοί,
to-you, against-which you, neither if you-were ever-so brave,

ἂν δύνασθε μάχεσθαι. Πῶς οὖν ἂν, ἔχοντες
could you-be-able to-contend. How-then therefore if, having

τοσούτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν ὑμῖν
so-many means | for the to-wage-war with-you, [for

καὶ μηδένα τούτων ἐπικίνδυνον
waging war with you], and none of-these dangerous

ἡμῖν, ἔπειτα ἂν ἐκ παντὸς τούτων ἐξελοίμεθα
to-us, now-that 'we should of all these 'select

τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον, ὃς μὲν μόνος ἀσεβής
this — manner, which indeed alone (is) impious

πρὸς θεῶν, δὲ μόνος αἰσχρὸς πρὸς ἀνθρώπων;
before (the) gods, and alone (is) disgraceful before men?

Δὲ ἐστὶ παντάπασιν ἀπὸράν
But it-is altogether (the part of men) perplexed-by-difficulties,

καὶ ἀμυγνάνων καὶ ἐχομένων ἀνάγκη, καὶ
and destitute-of-means, and held by-necessity, and

τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐδέλονται
these (being) wicked (by nature), who desire

πράττειν τι τε δι' ἐπιπορείας πρὸς θεούς,
to-effect any-thing no only by perjury to (the) gods.

καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνδρώπους. Ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε,
but-also perfidy to men. We, O Clearchus,

ἐσμέν οὐχ οὔτε οὕτως ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἡλίθιοι.
are not (neither) (either) so inconsiderate (nor) (or) foolish.

Αλλὰ τί δὴ, ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς,
But why truly, it-being-allowed (us) to-have-destroyed you, | did-'we

οὐκ ἤλδομεν ἐπὶ τοῦτο: ἴσδι
not 'go to this? [why did we not attempt it]? know

εὖ, ὅτι ὁ αἴτιος τούτου ἐμὸς ἔρως, ἐμέ
well, that the cause of-this (was) my desire, | me

τὸ γενέσθαι πιστὸν τοῖς Ἑλλησι,
the to-become [for becoming] (a) faithful (friend) to-the Greeks

καὶ ᾧ ξενικῷ Κῦρος ἀνέβη πιστεῖν
and with-which foreign (force) Cyrus went-up trusting (them)

διὰ μισθοδοσίας, τούτῳ
on-account-of (the) pay-given (them), with-this (force) (it is for)

ἐμὲ καταβῆαι ἰσχυρόν δι' εὐεργεσίας.
me to-go-down strengthen on-account-of benefits (bestowed

Δὲ ὅσα ὑμεῖς ἔστε
on them). But (as respects) how-many-things (in which) you are

χρήσιμοι μοι σὺ μὲν καὶ εἶπας τὰ,
useful to-me you 'have indeed even 'mentioned — (some of them),

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· γὰρ μὲν ἔξεστι
but the greatest (of all) I-myself know; for indeed it-is-allowed

μόνῳ βασιλεῖ ἔχειν τὴν τιάραν ὀρθὴν ἐπὶ
alone 'to (the) 'king to-have the tiara upright on

τῇ κεφαλῇ, δ' ἴσως, τὴν ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ,
the head, but perhaps, — (that) on the heart,

ὑμῶν παρόντων, καὶ ἕτερος ἂν εὐπετῶς
you being-present (and assisting), even another may easily

ἔχοι.
have (so.)

Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ λέγειν
Saying these (things) he-seemed to — Clearchus to-speak

ἀληθῆ· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν, ἔφη,
the-truth; and he-said· (Are) not (those) therefore, he-said

οἵτινες, τοιούτων εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων
 who, such-great (inducements) to friendship existing
 ἡμῖν, διαβάλλοντες πειρῶνται ποιῆσαι ἡμᾶς πολε-
 to-us, calumniating endeavour to-make us ini-
 μίους εἰσι ἄξιοι παθεῖν τὰ
 mical (to one another) are (they not) worthy to-suffer the
 ἔσχατα; Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε ἔφη ὁ
 extreme (of punishment)? And I indeed at-least said —
 Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ
 Tissaphernes, if 'you as-also the generals and the
 λοχαγοὶ βούλεσθε ἔλθειν μοι ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ,
 captains 'will come to-me in — (a) public
 λέξω τοὺς λέγοντας πρὸς ἐμέ, ὥς
 (manner), I-will-mention — (those) telling — me, that
 σὺ ἐπιβουλεύεις ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ σὺν ἐμοί.
 you are-conspiring-against me, and the army with me.
 Δὲ ἐγὼ, ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἄξω πάντας,
 And I, said — Clearchus, will-bring (them) all,
 καὶ αὖ δηλώσω σοι, ὅθεν ἐγὼ ἀκούω
 and 'I in-return 'will-declare to-you, whence I hear (reports)
 περὶ σοῦ. Ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσα-
 about you. After these — — speeches — Tissa-
 φέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε τε
 phernes treating-him-in-a-friendly-and-courteous-manner, then not-only
 μὲν ἐκέλευσε αὐτὸν μένειν, καὶ ἐποιήσατο
 indeed requested him to-remain, but-also made-him (a)
 σύνδειπνον. Δὲ τῇ ἰστερίᾳ ὁ Κλέαρχος,
 companion-at-supper. But on-the following-day — Clearchus,
 ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἦν δῆλός τ'
 going to the camp, was evidently not-only
 οἶόμενος τὸν Τισσαφέρνην ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς
 thinking (that) — Tissaphernes was very kindly
 διακεῖσθαι, καὶ ἀπήγγελλεν ἃ ἐκεῖνος
 affected (towards him), but-also announced what he
 ἔλεγεν· ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ
 'had-mentioned; he-said (that) not-only (those) ought to-go to

Τισσαφέρην, οὓς ἐκέλευσε, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 Tissaphernes, whom he-called, but-also (those) of-the Greeks,
οἱ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες,
 who might be-convicted (as) calumniating (their countrymen),
αὐτοὺς τιμωρηθῆναι ὥς ὄντας προδότας καὶ
 (that) those are-to-be-punished as being traitors and
κακόνους τοῖς Ἑλλησι. Δὲ ὑπώπτευε Μένωνα
 evil-disposed to-the Greeks. For he-suspected (that) Menon
εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα, καὶ εἰδὼς αὐτὸν
 was the calumniator, even having-known him (as)
συγγεγεννημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου,
 having-been-with Tissaphernes (in company) with Ariæus,
καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντα,
 both (as) forming-a-party against-himself, and (as) intriguing,
ὅπως λαβὼν τὸ ἅπαν στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
 so-that having-secured the entire army for himself
ἢ φίλος Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Κλέ-
 he-might-be (a) friend to-Tissaphernes. But also — Cle-
αρχος ἐβούλετο τὸ ἅπαν στράτευμα ἔχειν τὴν
 archus wished the entire army to-have —
γνώμην πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, καὶ τοὺς παραλυ-
 (their) minds for him, and — (those) molest-
ποῦντας εἶναι ἐκποδὼν. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 ing to-be removed-away. But some of-the soldiers
ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ, πάντας τοὺς λοχα-
 spoke-in-opposition to-him, [Clearchus], (that) all the cap-
γούς καὶ στρατηγούς μὴ ἰέναι, μηδὲ
 tains and generals 'should not 'go, (and that) neither
πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος κατέτεινεν
 should-'they-trust Tissaphernes. But — Clearchus contended
ἰσχυρῶς ἕστε διεπράξατο μὲν πέντε στρατηγούς
 vehemently until he-obtained indeed five generals
δὲ εἴκοσι λοχαγούς ἰέναι. δὲ καὶ τῶν
 and twenty captains do-go (with him); and also (some) of-the

ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὥς διακόσιοι συνηκολούθησαν
 other soldiers about two-hundred followed

ὥς εἰς ἀγορὰν.
 as-if (going) to market.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσα-
 When indeed they-were at the gates of — Tissa-

φέρνους, οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν παρεκλήθησαν εἰσω,
 phernes, the generals indeed were-invited within,

Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος, Μένων Θετταλός,
 (these were) Proxenus (the) Boeotian, Menon (the) Thessalian,

Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σω-
 Agias (the) Arcadian, Clearchus (the) Lacedæmonian, (and) So-

κράτης Ἀχαιός· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐπὶ
 crates (the) Achæan; but the captains remained at

ταῖς θύραις. Οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον, ἀπὸ τοῦ
 the gates. Not long indeed after, at the

αὐτοῦ σημείου, τ' οἱ ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο
 same signal, not-only — (those) within were-seized,

καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα
 out-also — (those) without were-killed. And after this

τινὲς τῶν ἱππέων βαρβάρων, ἐλαύνοντες διὰ
 some of-the cavalry 'of (the) 'barbarians, riding through

τοῦ πεδίου· ὅτινι Ἑλληνι ἐντυγχάνοιεν, ἢ
 the plain; whatever Greek they-might-meet, either

δούλῳ ἢ ἐλευθέρῳ ἔκτεινον πάντας. Δὲ οἱ
 slave or freeman they-killed (them) all. But the

Ἕλληνες ὁρῶντες ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τὴν
 Greeks observing from the camp — (this)

ἵππασίαν αὐτῶν τε ἐθαύμαζον, καὶ ἡμφιγνόουν
 riding-about of-them 'were not-only 'astonished, but-also doubted

ὅ τι ἐποίουν, πρὶν Νικάρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων,
 what they-were-doing, until Nicarchus (an) Arcadian came fleeing.

τετραμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ ἔχων τὰ
 being-pierced in the belly, | and having the

ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ,
 intestines in — (his) hands, [and holding back the intestines with his

καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. Ἐκ τοῦτο
 [ands], and related all — (that) had-occurred. Upon this
 δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα πάντες
 indeed the Greeks ran to — (their) arms all
 ἐκπεπληγμένοι, καὶ νομίζοντες
 being-struck (with consternation), and thinking (that)
 αὐτοὺς αὐτίκα ἥξειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
 they 'will immediately 'come against the camp
 Οἱ πάντες δὲ οὐκ ἦλθον, δὲ Ἀριαῖος καὶ
 — All indeed 'did not 'go, but (only) Ariæus and
 Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν πιστότατοι.
 Artaozus and Mithradates, who were the-most-faithful
 Κύρῳ· δὲ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔφη καὶ
 to-Cyrus; but the interpreter of-the Greeks said (that) also
 ὅραν τὸν ἀδελφὸν Τισσαφέρνους σὺν αὐτοῖς,
 he-saw the brother of-Tissaphernes with them,
 καὶ γινώσκειν· δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν
 and (that) he-knew (him); and also others 'of (the) 'Persians
 εἰς τριακοσίους τεθωραχισμένοι ξυνηκο-
 to-the-number-of three-hundred equipped-with-corselets accom-
 λούδουν. Οὗτοι, ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευον, εἰ
 panied-them. These, when they-were near, requested, if
 εἴη ἢ τις στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγὸς τῶν
 there-were either any general or captain of-the
 Ἑλλήνων, προσελθεῖν, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλῃσι
 Greeks, (them) to-come-forth, that they-may-deliver-a-message
 τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. Μετὰ ταῦτα στρατηγοὶ
 — from (the) king. After this (the) generals
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ
 of-the Greeks, namely Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and
 Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ἐξῆλθον φυλαττόμενοι,
 Sophænetus (the) Stymphalian, went-forth guarded
 Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος δὲ ξὺν
 (and with precaution), Xenophon (the) Athenian (went) also with
 αὐτοῖς, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου·
 them, that he-might-learn — (something) about Proxenus

(Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν ἐν τινι
[Cheirisophus — | happened being-absent [was absent] at a

κώμη ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζόμενος.) Δὲ ἐπεὶ
village with others seeking-for-provisions.) But when

ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, Ἀριαῖος εἶπε τάδε·
they-stood in hearing (distance) Ariaeus spoke thus:

Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ τε
Clearchus indeed, O men Greeks, since 'he not-only

ἐφάνη ἐπιορκῶν, καὶ λίων τὰς σπονδὰς
'appeared committing-perjury, but-also breaking the truce,

ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε· δὲ
has-received — (his) just-punishment, and died; but

Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν τὴν
Proxenus and Menon, because they-denounced the

ἐπιβουλήν, εἰσιν ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς
plot, are in great honour. And the king

ἀπαιτεῖ ὑμᾶς τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ φησὶν εἶναι
demands of-you — (your) arms; for says-he | to-be

αὐτοῦ ἐπεὶπερ ἦσαν Κύρου
of-him [they are his] | because they-were of-Cyrus [because they be

τοῦ δούλου ἐκείνου.
longed to Cyrus] the slave (and subject) of-himself.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπεκρίναντο (δὲ
To this the Greeks answer (for

Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγε). Ὡς Ἀριαῖε
Cleanor the Orchomenian spoke) (for them): O Ariaeus,

κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε φίλοι
most-wicked of-men, and the others as-many-as were friends

Κύρου οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς
of-Cyrus, do-'you not 'respect (neither) (either) (the) gods

οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὁμόσαντες νομιεῖν τοὺς
(nor) (or) men, who having-sworn to-consider —

αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς ἡμῖν,
those friends and enemies to-us (to be the same to you),

προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἀδυνάτω
betraying us with Tissaphernes the most-godless

τε καὶ παιουργοτάτῳ, ἀπολωλέκατε τε τοὺς
 and also most-crafty, you-have-destroyed not-only the
 αὐτοὺς ἀνδρας, οἷς ὤμνυτε, καὶ προέδω-
 very-same men, to-whom you-swore, but-also deserting-and-be-
 κότες ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔρχεσθε
 traying | us the other [us, who are left] have-come
 ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις; Δὲ ὁ Ἀριαῖος
 against us with — (our) enemies? But — Ariæus
 εἶπε· Γὰρ Κλέαρχος φανερὸς ἐγένετο πρόσθεν
 said. For Clearchus evidently was before
 ἐπιβουλείων Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα καὶ
 plotting-against Tissaphernes and also Orontes and
 ἡμῖν πᾶσιν ξὺν τοῖς τούτοις. Ἐπὶ τοίτοις
 against-us all with — these. After this
 Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε· Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν, εἰ
 Xenophon spoke thus: Clearchus indeed therefore, if
 ἔλυσεν τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔχει
 he-has-broken the truce contrary to — (his) oaths he-has
 τὴν δίκην· γὰρ δίκαιον ἀπόλλυσθαι
 — (his) just-punishment; for it-is-just to-destroy
 τοὺς ἐπιορκοῦντας· δὲ Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων
 — (those) perjuring-themselves; but Proxenus and-also Menon
 ἐπεὶ περ εἰσὶν μὲν ὑμέτεροι εὐεργέται, δὲ ἡμέτεροι
 since they-are indeed your benefactors, and our
 στρατηγοὶ, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· γὰρ δῆλον,
 generals, send them hither; for (it is) clear,
 ὅτι, ὄντες γε φίλοι ἀμφοτέροις, πειράσονται
 that, being at-least friends to-both (parties), they-will-endeavour
 συμβουλεύειν τὰ βέλτιστα καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν.
 to-advise the best both for-you and for-us
 Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι διαλεχθέντες πολὺν
 After this the barbarians, having-conversed for-a-long
 χρόνον ἀλλήλοις ἀπῆλθον ἀποκρινάμενοι οὐδέν.
 time with-one-another, departed, having-answered nothing.

CHAPTER VI.

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν δὴ, οὕτω ληφθέντες,
 THE generals indeed, thus taken (prisoners),
 ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα, καὶ τὰς
 were-taken-up to (the) king, and 'having — (their)
 κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες ἐτελεύτησαν· εἷς μὲν
 heads 'cut-off died; one indeed
 αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν
 of-them Clearchus by-general-account of all —
 ἔχοντων ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ, δόξας
 (those) having experimentally (a knowledge) of-him, | having-appeared
 γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ ἐσχάτως πολεμικὸς
 to-be [seemed to be] (a) man both extremely addicted-to-war
 καὶ φιλοπόλεμος. Γὰρ καὶ δὴ
 and fond-of-military (affairs and enterprises). For also truly
 ἕως μὲν ἦν πόλεμος τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις
 as-long-as indeed there-was war with-the Lacedæmonians
 πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενε.
 against the Athenians, he-r-remained (with the Lacedæmonians).
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο πείσας τὴν πόλιν
 But when peace took-place | having-persuaded the city
 αὐτοῦ ὡς οἱ Θράκες
 of-himself [having persuaded Sparta, his city,] that the Thracians
 ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ διαπραξάμενος
 were-committing-injuries on-the Greeks, and having-obtained
 ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν Ἐφόρων
 as-well-as he-could from the Ephori (the means to carry
 ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμήσων τοῖς Θραξίν
 on the war) he-sailed as about-making-war against-the Thracians
 ὑπὲρ Χερρόνησου καὶ Περίνδου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ
 above (the) Chersonesus and Perinthus. But when the
 Ἐφοροὶ πῶς μεταγνόντες, αὐτοῦ ὄντος
 Ephori 'having some-how 'changed-their-minds, he being

ἤδη ἔξω, ἐπειρῶντο ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν
 now without (their jurisdiction), they-endeavoured to-'turn him
 ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείδεται,
 back from (the) Isthmus, there he-'did not-any-longer 'obey,
 ἀλλ' πλέων ὥχετο εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον
 but sailing (away) he-proceeded to (the) Hellespont.
 Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδανατῶσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν τελεῶν
 And for this he-was-condemned-to-death by the magistrates
 ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ, ὡς ἀπειδῶν. Δὲ ὧν ἤδη
 in — Sparta, as being-disobedient. But being now (an)
 φυγάς, ἔρχεται πρὸς Κύρον, καὶ μὲν ὁποίοις
 exile, he-goes to Cyrus, and indeed by-whatever
 λόγοις ἐπεισε Κύρον γέγραπται
 discourses (and means) he-persuaded Cyrus has-been-written
 ἀλλῃ· δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσι αὐτῷ μυρίους
 in-another-place; and Cyrus gave him ten-thousand
 δαρεικούς. Δὲ ὁ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐτράπετο
 darics. And who taking (this sum) 'did not 'turn-himself
 ἐπὶ ῥαθυμίαν, ἀλλ' συλλέξας στρατεύμα ἀπὸ
 to idleness, but having-collected (an) army with
 τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί,
 this-same — money, he-made-war with-the Thracians,
 καὶ τε ἐνίκησε μάχῃ, καὶ δὴ ἔφερε καὶ
 and not-only conquered (them) in-battle, but-also — took-away and
 ἤγε ἀπὸ τούτου τούτους, καὶ διεγένετο
 led-away from this (country) all-things, and he-continued
 πολεμῶν, μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος·
 fighting, until Cyrus needed — (his) army;
 δὲ τότε ἀπῆλθεν ὥς αὐτὸν πολε-
 and then departed (to go to him) that (he might be) again making-
 μῆσων ξὺν ἐκείνῳ.
 war with him.

Δοκεῖ μοι ταῦτα οἶν εἶναι ἔργα
 It-seems to-me (that) these therefore were (the) occupations
 φιλοπολέμου, ὅστις ἐξὸν μὲν ἔχει
 of-one-fond-of-war, who when-it-was-allowed-him indeed to-have

εἰρήνην ἀνευ αἰσχύνῃς καὶ βλάβῃς, αἵρεται
peace without shame and detriment, he-chose

πολεμεῖν, δὲ ἐξὸν ῥαθυμεῖν,
to-make-war, and when-it-was-allowed-him to-lead-a-life-of-indolence,

βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν,
he-wished to-undergo-severe-labour so-as to-be-engaged-in-war (with its

δὲ ἐξὸν ἔχειν χρήματα
toils and adventures), und when-it-was-allowed-him to-have riches

ἀκινδύνως, αἵρεται πολεμῶν ποιεῖν ταῦτα
without-danger, he-chose making-war to-make these (riches)

μείονα. Δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον
less. But he desired to-spend-his-money in war

ὥσπερ εἰς παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς τινὰ
as (he might have spent it) on (a) beloved-object, or on any

ἄλλην ἡδονήν· οὕτω μὲν ἦν φιλοπόλεμος.
other pleasure; so 'fond indeed was-he 'of-war.

Δὲ αὖ ἐδόκει εἶναι πολεμικός ταύτῃ, ὅτι
And again he-appeared to-be fitted-for-war in-this, that

τε ἦν φιλοκίνδυνος, καὶ ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς
not-only he-was fond-of-danger, | but-also marching against the

πολεμίους,
enemy, [but was always ready to lead his army against the enemy],

καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτός, καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
both by-day and night, and in — danger (was)

φρόνιμος, ὥς οἱ παρόντες
prudent-and-self-possessed, as — (those) being-present (with him)

πανταχοῦ πάντες ὡμολόγουν. Καὶ δ' ἐλεγέτο
in-any-place all confessed. And also he-was-said

εἶναι ἀρχικός ὥς δυνατόν ἐκ τοῦ
to-be qualified-for-commanding in-as-much-as he-could-be from —

τοιούτου τρόπου, οἷον καὶ ἐκεῖνος εἶχεν. Γὰρ
such (a) disposition, as even-he had. For

μὲν ἦν ἱκανός, ὥς καὶ τις ἄλλος, φροντίζειν,
indeed he-was capable, (more) than even any other, to-take-care

ὅπως ἡ στρατιὰ ἔξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αὐτῷ, καὶ
how the army would have provisions for-itself, and

παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα· δὲ καὶ ἱκανὸς ἐμποι-
to-procure the-same; and also (he was) capable to-im-

ῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν, ὡς Κλεάρχῳ εἶη πειστέον.
press on — (those) present, that Clearchus was to-be-obeyed

Δὲ τοῦτο ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ εἶναι χαλεπὸς·
And | this he-effected from — (that) to-be severe;

γὰρ καὶ ὁρᾷν ἦν
[this he effected by his severity]; for even to-look-at he-was

στυγνός, καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχὺς· τε
gloomy-and-stern, and in — (his) voice harsh; 'he not-only

ἀεὶ ἐκόλαζε ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ἐνίοτε ὀργῇ, ὡς
always punished severely, but-also sometimes in-anger, so (that)

καὶ ἔσθ' ὅτε μεταμέλειν αὐτῷ. Καὶ δ' ἐκόλαζε
even 'he sometimes 'repented himself. And also he-punished

Γνώμη· γὰρ ἠγείτο ἀκολάστου
according-to-rule (or on principle); for he-thought an-undisciplined

στρατεύματος εἶναι οὐδὲν ἄφελος. Ἀλλὰ καὶ
army to-be (of) no use. But even

ἔφασαν αὐτὸν λέγειν, ὡς δεοὶ τὸν
they-said (that) he (used) to-say, that it-becomes the

στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι τὸν ἄρχοντα μᾶλλον
soldier to-fear — (his) commander more

ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλάξειν
than the enemy, if he-'would either 'keep

φυλακὰς, ἢ ἀφέξεσθαι φίλων, ἢ
guard 'well, or abstain-from (doing injury to) friends, or

ἰέναι ἀπροφασίστως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. Μὲν
go without-hesitation against the enemy. Indeed

οὖν ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
therefore in — dangerous-and-frightful-circumstances (the soldiers)

σφόδρα ἠδελον ἀκούειν αὐτοῦ, καὶ
'were exceedingly 'willing to-listen-to (and obey) him, and

οἱ στρατιῶται οἷκ ἤροῦντο ἄλλον·
the soldiers 'did not 'wish-for another (commander),

γὰρ καὶ ἔφασαν τότε τὸ στυγνὸν ἐν τοῖς
for indeed they-said (that) then the gloomy-sternness in the

προσώποις αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι φαιδρὸν, καὶ
 countenance of-him appeared cheerful-and-animated, and
 τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐρρωμένον πρὸς
 — (his) severity seemed to-be what-was-strong-in-courage against
 τοὺς πολεμίους· ὥστε ἐφαίνετο
 the enemy so-that (his countenance) appeared (indicative of)
 σωτήριον, καὶ οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν. Δ' ὅτε
 saving-and-protecting, and no-longer severe. But when
 γένοιτο ἐξὼ τοῦ δεινοῦ, καὶ ἐξείη
 they-were out-of — danger, and it-might-be-allowed-them
 ἀπιέναι πρὸς ἄλλους ἀρχομένους
 to-go to others | as-persons-having-been-commanded, [as
 πολλοὶ ἀπέλειπον αὐτὸν· γὰρ εἶχεν οὐκ
 soldiers], many left him; for he-had no
 τὸ ἐπίχαρι, ἀλλ' ἦν αἰεὶ χαλεπὸς
 agreeableness (or manners), but he-was always stern
 καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε οἱ στρατιῶται διέκειντο πρὸς
 and unfeeling; so-that the soldiers were-affected towards
 αὐτὸν ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. Καὶ
 him as boys towards (their) teacher. And
 γὰρ οὖν οὐδέποτε εἶχεν ἐπομένους
 — therefore 'he never 'had (those) following (him)
 φιλία καὶ μὲν εὐνοία· δὲ
 through-friendship (or) even indeed being-well-disposed-towards-him; but
 οἵτινες ἢ τεταγμένοι ὑπὸ πόλεως,
 those-who either had-been-ordered (to the service) by (the) state,
 ἢ κατεχόμενοι ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι, ἢ τινὶ ἄλλῃ
 or being-compelled by — want, or any other
 ἀνάγκη παρείησαν αὐτῷ ἐχρῆτο
 necessity, might-be-with him, he-made-use-of (as) 'being
 σφόδρα πειδομένοις. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο νικᾶν
 extremely 'obedient. And when they-began to-conquer
 ζὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη ἦν τὰ ποιοῦντα
 under him the enemy, | now were the doings
 μεγάλα τοὺς στρατιώτας
 great [the opportunities were then great] 'for the 'soldiers

συν αὐτῷ εἶναι χρησίμους· γὰρ τε τὸ ἔχειν
 with him to-be useful-and-good; | for not-only the to-have
 θαρραλέως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους παρῆν,
 confidently against the enemy was-present (to them),

[for they had a perfect feeling of confidence, in their minds, against the

καὶ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι τὴν τιμωρίαν
 enemy], but-also | the to-fear [the fear of] — punishment
 παρ' ἐκείνου ἐποίει αὐτοὺς εὐτάκτους. Τοιοῦτος
 from him made them well-disciplined. Such
 μὲν δὴ ἦν ἄρχων· δὲ ἐλέγετο οὐκ ἐδέλειν
 truly — was-he commanding; but he-was-said not to-wish
 μάλα ἄρχεσθαι ἄλλων. Δὲ ἦν, ὅτε ἔτε-
 much to-be-commanded by-others. And he-was, when he
 λεύτα, ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.
 died, about — fifty (years of) age.

Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιώτιος ὢν εὐδὺς μὲν

Proxenus indeed the Boeotian (when) being just indeed (only a)

μεῖράκιον, ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ ἱκανός
 youth, desired to-become (a) man capable
 πράττειν τὰ μεγάλα· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν
 to-perform — great-thing; and through this-same —
 ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε ἀργύριον Γοργία τῷ Λεοντίνῳ.
 desire he-gave money to-Gorgias the Leontinian

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ,

(for instruction). When indeed he-had-been-with him (some time),

νομίσας εἶναι ἤδη ἱκανός καὶ ἄρχειν,
 having-thought (himself) to-be now qualified both to-command,
 καὶ ὢν φίλος τοῖς πρώτοις
 and, being (a) friend to-the first (or chief men, that) he-'might
 μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς
 not 'be-inferior in-conferring-benefits, he-went on these-same —

πράξεις σὺν Κύρῳ· καὶ ᾧ τω κτήσεσθαι.
 doings (expeditions) with Cyrus; and thought to-acquire

ἐκ τούτων μέγα ὄνομα, καὶ μεγάλην δύναμιν,
 from this (a) great name, and great power,

καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα. Δ' ἐπιθυμῶν τούτων
 and much money. But desiring these-same (things)
 σφόδρα, καὶ αὖ εἶχεν ἐνδηλον, ὅτι
 vehemently, 'he also on-the-other-hand 'had (this) evident, that 'he
 ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι οὐδὲν τούτων μετὰ ἀδικίας,
 might 'wish to-acquire nothing of-these (things) by unjust-means,
 ἀλλὰ ᾤετο τούτων δεῖν τυγχάνειν σὺν
 but he-thought (that) such-things ought to-be-acquired by
 τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ, δὲ ἄνευ τούτων
 — just and honourable (means), but without these
 μὴ. Ἦν δὲ δυνατὸς ἀρχειν καλῶν μὲν
 not (at all). He-was indeed competent to-command orderly —
 καὶ ἀγαθῶν· μέντοι οὐχ ἱκανὸς ἐμπειῆσαι τοῖς
 and good (men); however not capable to-impress the
 στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὐτ' αἰδῶ οὔτε
 soldiers of-himself (neither) (either) with-respect (nor) (or)
 φόβον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον ἡσχύνεται τοὺς
 fear, but he-'was even more 'in-awe (of) — (his)
 στρατιώτας, ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι
 soldiers, than those 'under (his) 'command (were of)
 ἐκείνον· καὶ ἦν φανερόν μᾶλλον φοβούμενος
 him; and he-was evidently more fearing
 τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις,
 [the to-be-hated — (by his) soldiers, [the hatred
 ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ.
 of his soldiers], [than the soldiers the to-disobey him
 Δὲ ᾤετο ἀρκεῖν
 [than his soldiers were to disobey him]. And he-thought (it) to-be-sufficient
 πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν καὶ δοκεῖν εἶναι ἐπαινεῖν
 for — commanding, and to-seem to-be (so) to-praise
 μὲν τὸν ποιοῦντα καλῶς, δὲ μὴ ἐπαινεῖν
 indeed — (him) acting well, but not to-praise
 τὸν ἀδικοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν μὲν τῶν
 — (him) acting-improperly. Therefore indeed of — (those)
 συνόντων οἱ μὲν καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν
 with-him — (such) indeed (as were) orderly and also-good were

εἴνοι αὐτῷ, δὲ οἱ ἄδικοι ἐπεβούλευον
 attached to-him, but — (such as were) wicked plotted-against (him)
 ὡς ὄντι εὐμεταχειρίστῳ. Δὲ ὅτε ἀπέθνησκεν ἦν
 as being easily-managed. And when he-died he-was
 ὥς τριάκοντα ἐτῶν.
 about thirty years (of age).

Δὲ Μένων ὁ Θεσσαλὸς ἦν δῆλος μὲν ἐπιθυμῶν
 But Menon the Thessalian was evidently indeed desiring
 ἰσχυρῶς πλουτεῖν, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν ἄρχειν ὅπως
 vehemently to-become-rich, and desiring to-command so-that
 λαμβάνει πλείω, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν τιμᾶσθαι ἵνα
 he-might-take more, and desiring to-be-honoured in-order-that
 κερδαίνει πλείω· ἐβούλετο τε μέγιστα εἶναι φίλος
 he-might-gain more; he-wished — most-of-all to-be (a) friend
 τοῖς δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ
 to-the powerful, in-order-that acting-unjustly | he-'might not
 δίδοι δίκην. Ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ
 'give justice [he might not be punished]. | Towards indeed the
 κατεργάζεσθαι ὃν ἐπιθυμοῖ, ᾧ οὖτο
 to-accomplish [for accomplishing] of-what he-might-desire, he-thought
 συντομωτάτην ὁδὸν εἶναι τε διὰ τοῦ ἐπιπορκεῖν,
 the-shortest way to-be not-only through | the to-perjure,
 καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν.
 [perjury], but-also | to-lie [falsehood] and | to-deceive [deceit],
 δ' ἐνόμιζε τὸ ἀπλοῦν καὶ τὸ ἀληθές εἶναι τὸ
 but he-considered — sincerity and — truth to-be the
 αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιδίῳ. Δὲ μὲν ἦν φανερός στέργων
 same with — folly. And indeed he-was evidently having-affection
 οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίνει εἶναι φίλος, τούτῳ
 for-no-one, to-whom indeed he-seemed to-be (a) friend, against-this-one
 ἐγίγνετο ἐνδηλὸς ἐπιβουλείων. Καὶ μὲν
 he-was evident (as) plotting (mischief). And indeed
 κατεγέλα οὐδενὸς πολεμίῳ, δὲ αἰεὶ διελέγετο
 he-derided no enemy, but 'he always 'conversed
 τῶν πάντων συνόντων ὥς κατα-
 — with-all (those) | being-about-him [his associates] as-if ridi-

γελῶν. Καὶ μὲν τοῖς κτήμασιν τῶν
 culing (them). And indeed against-the property of — (h^h₄
 πολεμίων οὐκ ἐπεδούλευε, γὰρ ᾤετο
 enemies he-'formed no 'designs, for he-thought (it)
 εἶναι χαλεπὸν λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν φυλατ-
 to-be difficult to-take the (property) of — (those) guard-
 τομένων· δὲ μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι ὄν
 ing (it); | but (he) alone he-thought to-know (it) being
 ῥᾶστον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἀφύλακτα.
 easy to-take the unguarded [but he thought that

he alone knew that it was easy to take the unguarded property of friends].

Καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσδάνοιτο ἐπιόρχους καὶ ἀδίκους
 And as-many-as indeed he-might-perceive perjured and unjust:
 ἐφοβεῖτο ὡς εὖ ὥπλισμένους, δὲ τοῖς
 he-feared as well armed (against him), but the
 ὁσίοις καὶ ἀσχοῦσιν ἀλήθειαν ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι
 pious and those-practising truth he-endeavoured to-make-use-of
 ὡς ἀνάνδροις. Δὲ ὥςπερ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ
 as weak-persons. And as any-one prides-himself on
 θεοσεβείᾳ, καὶ ἀληθείᾳ, καὶ δικαιοσύνῃ, οὕτως
 religion, and truth, and justice, so
 Μένων ἠγάλλετο δύνασθαι τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν, τῷ
 Menon prided-himself to-be-able — to-deceive, —
 πλάσασθαι ψευδῆ, τῷ διαγελαῖν φίλους· δὲ
 to-devise falsehoods, — to-sneer-at friends; and (that)
 τὸν μὴ πανοῦργον
 — (he who was) not ready-to-do-any-thing (of a villanous nature for him

own advantage) 'he always 'considered to-be of-the un-

δεύτων. Καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχειρεῖ
 taught (and ignorant). And with whom indeed he-endeavoured
 πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ, τούτους ᾤετο
 to-have-the-first-place 'in (their) 'friendship, these-same he-thought
 δεῖν κτήσασθαι διαβάλλων τοὺς
 't to-become-him to-gain-over (through) plotting-against —

πρώτους. Δὲ τὸ παρέ-
(those who had been) first (in their favour). And | the to.

χεσθαι τοὺς στρατιώτας πειδομένους
keep [the keeping of] — (his) soldiers obedient

ἐμνηχανᾶτο ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς.
he-effected | from the to-do-wrong with-them [by participating

Δὲ ἥξιον τιμᾶσθαι καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι,
in their evil deeds]. Also he-claimed to-be-honoured and courted,

ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι ἂν δύναιτο καὶ ἐδελε.
showing that 'he might 'be-able and might-wish

ἀδικεῖν πλεῖστα. Δὲ κατέλεγεν εὐεργεσίαν,
to-injure the-most. And he-called-it (a) favour

ὁπότε τις ἀφίστατο αὐτοῦ, ὅτι χρώ-
(on his part), when any-one deserted him, that (while) making-
μενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν.
use of-him he-'did not 'destroy him.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ ἔξεστι περὶ τὰ
And indeed truly (were) it-allowed (to speak) respecting the
ἄφανῇ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, δὲ ἃ
private (affairs) of-him one-might-say-what-is-not-true, but what
πάντες ἴσασι ἐστὶ τὰδ'. Ὡν ἔτι ὥрайος
all know is this. Being yet in-the-prime-of-youth

διεπράζατο παρὰ Ἀριστίππῳ μὲν στρατηγεῖν
he-obtained from Aristippus — to-command (of,

τῶν ξένων· δὲ ἐγένετο, ὧν ἔτι ὥрайος,
the foreign-mercenaries; and he-became, being yet in-the-bloom-of-youth,

οἰκειότατος Ἀριαίῳ, ὄντι βαρβάρῳ, ὅτι
most-intimate with-Aræus, he-being (a) barbarian, for 'he

ἡδετο καλοῖς μεираκίοις· δὲ αὐτὸς εἶχε
(Aræus) 'delighted in-beautiful youths; and he-himself had

Θαρίπαν παιδικὰ, ἀγένειος ὧν
Tharypas (a) favourite, (a) beardless-youth — (having one)

γενεῶντα. Δὲ τῶν συστρατηγῶν ἀποδησ-
having-a-beard. But — (his) fellow-officers being-put-

κόντων, ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν
to-death, because they-fought against (the) king with

Κύρῳ πεποιηκὼς ταῦτ' αὖ οὐκ ἀπέθανε·
 Cyrus (though) he-having-done the-same 'did not 'die,
 δὲ μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν
 but after the death of-the other generals
 τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ
 having-been-punished by (the) king he-died, no
 ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ
 like Clearchus, and the other generals, 'having
 τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες, (ὥσπερ δοκεῖ εἶναι
 — (their) heads 'cut-off, 'which seems to-be
 τάχιστος θάνατος,) ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς
 (the) speediest death,) but living having-been-tortured
 ἐνιαυτὸν ὥς πονηρὸς, λέγεται
 (during a) year as (a) malefactor, he-is-said 'to (have)
 τυχεῖν τῆς τελευτῆς.
 met — (with his) end.
 Δὲ Ἀγίας ὁ Ἀρκάς, καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς,
 But Agias the Arcadian, and Socrates the Achæan,
 καὶ τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην. Δὲ οὐτ' οὐδεὶς
 also these-two died. But neither 'did (no-one) (any-one)
 κατεγέλα τούτων ὥς κακῶν ἐν πολέμῳ, οὐτ'
 'deride these as cowards in battle, or
 ἐμέμφετο αὐτοὺς εἰς φιλίαν. Δὲ ἄμφω
 reproached them (in regard) to friendship. And both
 ἦσθη ἀμφὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα τὰ ἔτη
 were about five and thirty — years
 ἰπὸ γενεᾶς.
 from (their) birth.

BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπραξαν, ἐν τῇ
 WHAT indeed truly, the Greeks did, in —
 ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
 (their) upward-march — with Cyrus until the battle
 καὶ ὅσα ἐγένετο ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε, τῶν
 and what took-place after Cyrus died, the
 Ἑλλήνων, ἀπίοντων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει, ἐν
 Greeks, departing with Tissaphernes, (confiding) in
 ταῖς σπονδαῖς, δεδήλωται, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
 the truce, has-been-shown, in the preceding discourse.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν,
 After indeed not-only the generals had-been-seized,
 καὶ οἱ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 but-also — (those) of-the captains and of-the soldiers
 συνεπόμενοι ἀπολώλεσαν, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν
 accompanying (them) had-perished, the Greeks were
 δὴ ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ, ἐννοοῦμενοι μὲν, ὅτι
 truly in much perplexity, reflecting indeed, that
 ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις βασιλέως, δὲ κύκλῳ
 they-were at the gates 'of (the) 'king, and 'in (a) 'circle
 αὐτοῖς ἦσαν πάντα πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη
 (around) them there-were everywhere (a great) many both nations
 καὶ πόλεις πολέμιαι, δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἐμελλε
 and towns hostile (to them), and no-one hereafter would
 παρέξειν ἀγορὰν, δὲ ἀπείχον τῆς
 provide (a) market (for them), and they-were-distant from —
 Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, δ'
 Greece not less than ten-thousand stadia, and

ἦν οὐδεὶς ἡγεμὼν τῆς ὁδοῦ, δ' ἀδιάβατοι
 there-was no guide (for) the road, and impassable
 ποταμοὶ διεῖργον ἐν μέσῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ οἰκαδε,
 rivers intervened in (the) midst of — (their) road homeward,
 δὲ καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ προῦδε-
 and also the barbarians having-come-up with Cyrus had-aban-
 δώκεσαν αὐτοὺς, δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν μόνοι,
 doned them, and they-were-left alone,
 οὐδὲ ἔχοντες οὐδένα ἱππέα σύμμαχον·
 (nor-indeed) (and indeed) having no cavalry (as) auxiliary;
 ὥστε ἦν εὐδηλον, ὅτι νικῶντες ἄν
 so-that it-was very-evident, that defeating (the enemy) 'they would
 μὲν κατακάνοιεν οὐδένα, δὲ αὐτῶν ἡττηθέντων
 indeed 'kill no-one, but they being-defeated
 οὐδεὶς ἄν λειφθεῖη. Ἐννοούμενοι
 not-one (of their number) would be-left (alive). Reflecting
 ταῦτα, καὶ ἔχοντες ἄδύμως,
 on-these (things), | and having (themselves) dejectedly, [and be-
 ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐγεύσαντο σίτου
 ing disheartened], few indeed of-them tasted food
 εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν, δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀνέκαυσαν
 — (for) — (that) evening, and few kindled (a)
 πῦρ, δὲ πολλοὶ οἶκ ἧλθον ἐπὶ τὰ
 fire, and many 'did not 'go to the (place of)
 ἥπλα ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἀνεπαύοντο
 arms (during) that-same — night, and they-went-to-rest
 ὅπου ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανεν, οὐ δυνάμενοι κα-
 where each happened (to be), not being-able to-
 δεύειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόδου πατρίδων.
 sleep for sorrow and (the) desire (for) country,
 γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς ἐνόμιζον οὐ ποτ'
 parents, wives, children, whom they-thought never
 δεσδαῖ ἔτι. Οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες
 to-see more. Thus indeed — disposed 'they all
 ἀνεπαύοντο.
 'went'-to-rest.

Ἦν δὲ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ τις Ξενοφῶν
 There-was — in the army a-certain Xenophon (an
 Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὦν οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λο-
 Athenian, who being neither (a) general nor (a) cap-
 χαγὸς, οὔτε στρατιώτης, συνηκολούδει,
 tain, nor (a private) soldier, accompanied (the
 ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος μετεπέμψατο αὐτὸν
 expedition), but Proxenus sent-for him
 οἰκοδεν, ὦν ἀρχαῖος ξένος· δὲ ὑπισχνεῖτο
 from-home, he-being (an) old guest-friend; and he-promised
 αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, ποιήσιν αὐτὸν φίλον Κύρῳ,
 him, if he-should-come, to-make him (a) friend to-Cyrus,
 ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη νομίζειν κρεῖττω ἑαυτῷ
 whom he said (that) he-considered better to-himself (than)
 τῆς πατρίδος. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἀναγνοῖς
 — (his) country. — Xenophon indeed having-read
 τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθη-
 the letter, consults Socrates the Athe-
 ναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπ-
 nian about the journey. And — Socrates having-
 τεύσας μὴ οἱ ἐπαίτιον τι
 feared lest — 'they (might) 'criminate (him) in-some (manner)
 πρὸς τῆς πόλεως εἴη γενέσθαι φίλον
 with — (his) government if-he-were to-become (a) friend
 Κύρῳ, ὅτι ὁ Κύρος ἐδόκει προθύμως συμπολεμῆσαι
 to-Cyrus, because— Cyrus seemed zealously to-have-assisted
 τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, συμβουλεύει
 the Lacedæmonians against the Athenians, he-advised
 τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, ἔλδόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς, ἀνακοι-
 — Xenophon, (that) having-gone to Delphos, to-con-
 νῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 sult the gods about the journey. And — Xenophon
 ἔλδων ἐπῆρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω, τίνι θεῶν
 going inquired-of — Apollo, to-which 'of (the) 'gods
 θύει καὶ εἰχόμενος
 |sacrificing and praying [he should sacrifice and pray] |(that) 'he

ἀν ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδόν, ἥ
might 'go the road, [that he might perform the journey], which

ἐπινοεῖ, κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα, καὶ πράξας
he-intends, most-honourably and most-successfully, and having-performed

καλῶς σωδείη. Καὶ
(it) successfully | might-be-saved [might return in safety]. And

ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ θύειν
— Apollo | unfolded to-him [answered him] to-sacrifice 'to (the)

θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθε πάλιν,
gods to-whom it-was-proper. When indeed he-had-gone back

λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. Δ'
'to Athens), he-tells the oracle to — Socrates. And

ὁ ἀκούσας ἡτιᾶτο αὐτόν, ὅτι οὐ πρῶτον
who hearing (it) blamed him, that he-'did not first

ἠρώτα τοῦτο, πότερον εἴη λῶον αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι
'inquire this, whether it-were better for-him to-go-forth

ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας εἶναι ἰτέον,
or to-remain, but himself having-decided | (that) it-is to-be-gone,

ἐπυνθάνετο τοῦτ' ὅπως ἂν
[that he would go], he-inquired this how 'he might

πορευθεῖν κάλλιστα. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη,
'proceed to-the-best-advantage. Since however, said-he,

ἤρου οὕτως, χρὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτ'
you-have-inquired thus, it-becomes (you) to-do those (things)

ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσε. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ
as the god directed (you). — Xenophon indeed —

οὕτω, θυσάμενος οἷς ὁ θεὸς ἀνεῖλεν,
therefore, having-sacrificed (to the gods) that the god told-him-in-reply,

ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει Πρόξενον καὶ Κύρου
set-sail, and finds Proxenus and Cyrus

ἐν Σάρδεσι, ἥδη μέλλοντας ὁρμᾶν τὴν ὁδόν
in Sardis, 'being now 'about starting on-the way

ἄνω, καὶ συνεστάδῃ Κύρῳ. Δὲ τοῦ Προξένου
upward, and he-was-presented to-Cyrus. And — Proxenus

προθυμουμένου, καὶ ὁ Κύρος συμπροῦθυμεῖτο αὐτόν
ing-very-desirous, and — Cyrus joined-in the-desire for-him

μῆναι. Δὲ εἶπε ὅτι, ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία
to-remain. And he-said that, as-soon as the expedition

λήξῃ εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψειν αὐτόν.
may-be-ended (that) he-'would directly 'send him 'back.

Δὲ ἐλέγετο ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς
It also was-said (that) the expedition (was intended) to-be against (the)

Πισίδας.
Pisidians.

Μὲν δὴ ἐστρατεύετο οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεῖς
'He indeed truly 'joined-the-expedition 'being thus 'deceived,

οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου (γὰρ οὐ ᾔδει τὴν
not by Proxenus (for he-'did not 'know, (that) the

ὀρμὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδὲ ἄλλος
movement (was) against (the) king, nor (any) other

οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου): ἐπεὶ
(no-one) (one) of-the Greeks except Clearchus); when

μέντοι ἦλθον εἰς Κιλικίαν, ἐδόκει ἤδη εἶναι
however they-had-gone to Cilicia, it-seemed now to-be

σαφές πᾶσιν, ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
manifest to-all, that the expedition was against (the) king.

Δὲ φοβούμενοι τὴν ὁδόν, καὶ ὁμῶς
But fearing the (length of the) road, and likewise

ἄκοντες οἱ πολλοὶ δι'
unwilling (to proceed farther, yet) the greater-part (of them) through

αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνη-
shame both (as respects) one-another and Cyrus accom-

κολούθησαν· καὶ εἰς ὃν Ξενοφῶν ἦν.
panied (him); and one of-whom Xenophon was.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἀπορία, ἐλυπεῖτο
But when (all) was perplexity-and-anxiety, he-was-troubled-and-grieved

μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο
indeed with the rest, and he-'was not 'able

καθεύδειν· δὲ λαχὼν μικρὸν ὕπνου εἶδεν
to-sleep; but having-got (a) little sleep | he-saw (a)

ὄναρ. Ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ, βροντῆς
vision [he had a dream]. It-seemed to-him, (a) thunder (storm)

γενομένης, σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πα-
 having-occurred, (that a) thunder-bolt fell on — (his) pa-
 τρώαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου πᾶσαν λάμ-
 ternal house, and from this it-'was all 'lighted-
 πεσσαι. Δὲ περίφοβος εὐδὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ
 up. And frightened 'he immediately 'awoke, and
 τὸ ὄναρ μὲν ἔκρινε πῇ ἀγαθόν, (ὅτι ὢν ἐν
 the dream indeed he-judged somewhat favourable, (because being in
 πόνοις καὶ κινδύνοις, ἔδοξε ἰδεῖν μέγα
 trouble and danger, he-seemed to-have-seen (a) great
 φῶς ἐκ Διός). δὲ καὶ πῇ ἐφοβεῖτο (ὅτι
 light from Jupiter); but also he-'was somewhat 'alarmed (because
 τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπὸ Διός μὲν
 the dream appeared to-him to-be from Jupiter (who was) indeed
 βασιλέως, δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐδόκει λάμπειν κύκλῳ,) (a)
 king, and the fire seemed to-shine all-around,) μὴ
 οὐ δύναίτο ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας
 lest he-'should not 'be-able to-depart from the territory
 τῆς βασιλείας, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπὸ
 of-the king, but should-be-hemmed-in on-all-sides by
 τινῶν ἀποριῶν.
 some (great) difficulties.

Ὅποῖόν τι ἐστὶ μέντοι ἰδεῖν τὸ τοιοῦτον
 What-kind-of thing it-is indeed to-see — such (a)
 ὄναρ, ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων
 dream, it-is-allowed to-perceive from the (things) occurring
 μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ. Γὰρ γίγνεται τάδε. Εὐδὺς
 after the dream. For it-happened thus. Immediately
 ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη ἔννοια πρῶτον μὲν ἐμπίπτει
 after he-was-aroused (this) thought first indeed occurs
 αὐτῷ· τί κατὰκειμαι; ἡ νύξ δὲ προβαίνει·
 to-him: why am-I-lying-down? the night indeed is-passing-away;
 δὲ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκός
 and at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day (it is) probable (that)
 τοὺς πολεμίους ᾗξειν. Εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα
 the enemy will-come. If indeed we-shall'-get

ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οἴχι
into (the power of the) king, | what prevents lest no.

ἀποδανεῖν ἱβριζομένους,
to-die [what prevents us to die] being-treated-insultingly (and

ἐπιδόντας μὲν πάντα τὰ χαλεπώτατα,
ignominiously), after-beholding indeed all the most-grievous-things,

δὲ παθόντας πάντα τὰ δεινότατα; Δ' ὅπως
and suffering all the most-dreadful-things? But how

ἀμυνούμεθα οἷδεῖς παρασκευάζεται οἷδε ἐπιμε-
we-shall-defend-ourselves no-one provides nor takes-

λεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν ἄγειν
care, but we-repose as-if it-were-allowed-us | to-act

ἡσυχίαν. Οἷν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως ἐγώ
[to enjoy] tranquillity. Therefore from what city 'do I

προσδοκῶ τὸν στρατηγὸν πράξειν ταῦτα; δὲ
'expect the general to-do these-things? and

ποῖαν ἡλικίαν ἀναμένω ἐλθεῖν ἐμαυτῷ; γὰρ
what age am-I-waiting-for to-come to-myself? for

ἐγώ οὐκ ἔσομαι ἔτι πρεσβύτερος, εἰάν τήμερον
I-at-least 'will not 'be yet older, if to-day

προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. Ἐκ τούτου
I-give myself 'up to-the enemy. After this

ἀνίσταται, καὶ πρῶτον συγκαλεῖ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
he-arose, and first called-together the captains

Προξένου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ
of-Proxenus. And when they-assembled, he-said; I, O

ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε δύναμαι καθεύδειν (ὥσπερ
men captains, 'am neither 'able to-sleep (as

οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς), οὔτε ἔτι κατακείσθαι, ὁρῶν
I-think neither (are) you), nor yet to-be-still, seeing

ἐν οἷς ἐσμέν. Γὰρ μὲν δῆλον ὅτι
in what (circumstances) we-are. For indeed (it is) plain that

οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ πρότερον ἐξέφηναν τὸν πόλεμον
the enemy 'did not first 'declare the war

πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν ἐνόμισαν παρασκευάσασθαι
against us, before they-thought (that) they had-arranged

τὰ ἑαυτῶν καλῶς· δ' οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν οὐδὲν
the (things) of-themselves well: but no-one of-us 'takes (not)

ἀντεπιμελεῖται, ὅπως ἀγωνιούμεδα ὥς
(any) 'heed-in-return, how we-may-contend (with them) | as

κάλλιστα. Καὶ εἰ μὲν
most-beautiful [in the best possible manner]. And if indeed

ὑφесόμεδα, καὶ γενησόμεδα ἐπὶ
we-shall-be-remiss, and shall-get into (the power of the)

βασίλει, τί οἴομεδα πείσεσθαι;
king, what 'may-we (not) 'expect to-suffer (from him)?

ὃς ἀποτεμὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀδελφοῦ,
who cutting-off the head and the hand of-his-brother,

καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου καὶ ὁμοπατρίου, καὶ ἤδη
both of-the same-mother and of-the-same-father, and (he) already

τεθνηκότος, ἀνεσταύρωσε· δὲ ἡμᾶς, οἷς
dead, fixed-them-on-a-stake; but (as respects) us, to-whom

μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστι κηδεμῶν,
indeed (there is) no-one present (as a) protector (and supporter),

δὲ ἐστρατεύσαμεν ἐπ' αὐτόν, ὥς ποιήσοντες
and (who) had-marched against him, as (if) making

δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως,
(a subject and) slave (of him, who) before (was a) king,

καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεδα, τί
and 'putting (him) 'to-death, if we-were-able, what

οἴομεδα ἂν παθεῖν; Ἄρ' ἂν οὐκ ἔλθοι
do-we-think (that) 'we might 'suffer? Would 'he not 'resort

ἐπὶ πᾶν, ὥς αἰκισάμενος ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα
to every-thing, that having-punished us to-the utmost

παράσχοι πᾶσιν ἀνδράποισι φόβον
(of severity) he-might-inspire all men (with) fear

ποτε τοῦ στρατεῦσαι ἐπ' αὐτόν; Ἀλλὰ
of-ever | of-the to-have-marched [marching] against him? But

πάντα ποιητέον ὅπως τοι μὴ γενησόμεδα
every-thing is-to-be-done that — we-'may not 'get

ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν, ἔστε μὲν
into his (power). I indeed therefore, as-long-as indeed

αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὐπώτε ἐπανόμεν μὲν
the truce was (in existence) never ceased —
οἰκτεῖρων ἡμᾶς, δὲ μακαρίζων βασιλέα καὶ
pitying ourselves, but considering-as-happy (the) king and
τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, διαδεώμενος μὲν ὄσσην
— (those) with him, having-gone-through indeed so-great (a)
χώραν αὐτῶν, καὶ οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὥς δὲ τὰ
territory of-them, and what they-might-have, as indeed the
ἄφθονα ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας,
copious provisions, so-great (a number) indeed (of) servants,
δὲ ὅσα κτήνη, δὲ χρυσόν, δὲ
and how-great (a number of) cattle, and (quantity of) gold, and (of)
ἔσθῃτα. Δὲ αὖ ὅποτε ἐνδυμοίμην τὰ
raiments. But on-the-other-hand when I-reflect on-ῑe
τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὅτι μετεῖη ἡμῖν
(condition) of-the soldiers, that there-was-a-share to-us
μὲν οὐδενὸς πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν, εἰ
indeed of-nothing of-all — (these) good (things), —
μὴ πριαίμεδα, δ' ἥδιν ὀλίγους
unless we-bought (them), and (when that) I-knew (only) few
ἔχοντας ἔτι οὗτου ὠνησόμεδα, δὲ
(of us) having yet wherewith we-might-buy, and (that our)
ὄρκους ἤδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι τὰ
oaths now restraining us to-procure —
ἐπιτήδεια ἄλλως πῶς ἢ ὠνούμενους· οὖν
provisions (in) any-other manner than buying; therefore
λογιζόμενος ταῦτ', ἐνίοτε ἐφοβούμην τὰς
considering these (things), 'I sometimes 'feared the
σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον.
truce more than (I) now (do) the war.
Ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκεῖνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδὰς, δοκεῖ
Since however they have-broken the truce, it-seems
μοι καὶ ἡ ὕβρις ἐκείνων καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα
to-me (that) both the insolence of-themselves and — our
ὑποψία λελῦσθαι. Γὰρ ἐν μέσῳ κεῖται
mi-trust is-ended. | For in (the) middle [for between us] lie

ἤδη ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ, ἄδλα,
 now those — good-things (I have mentioned), (as) prizes,
 ὅποτεροι ἡμῶν ἂν ὦσιν ἀμείνονες ἄνδρες· δ'
 (for) whoever of-us may be the-better men; and
 οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν ἀγωνοθέται, οἷ, ὥς τὸ εἰκός,
 the gods are judges-of-the-contest, who, as (is) — proper (and just)
 ἔσονται· σὺν ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν οὗτοι
 will-be with us. For indeed these (our enemies)
 ἐπιωρκήκασιν αὐτοὺς· δὲ ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες
 have-committed-perjury against-them (the gods); and we seeing
 πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ, στερβῶς ἀπειχόμεθα αὐτῶν,
 many good (things), firmly abstained from-them,
 διὰ τοὺς ὅρκους τῶν θεῶν· ὥστε δοκεῖ
 on-account-of — (our) oath (to) the gods; so-that it-seems
 μοι ἐξεῖναι ἵεναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα σὺν
 to-me (that) it-has-been-allowed-us to-go to the contest with
 πολὺ μείζονι φρονήματι ἢ τούτοις. Δ' ἔτι
 much greater confidence than these. And moreover
 ἔχομεν σώματα ἱκανώτερα τούτων φέρειν καὶ
 we-have bodies better-able (than) theirs to-bear —
 ψύχη, καὶ θάληπην, καὶ πόνοους· δὲ καὶ ἔχομεν
 cold, and heat, and labour; and also we-have
 σὶν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας ψυχὰς· δὲ
 with (the help of) the gods better minds; and
 οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ μᾶλλον τρατοὶ καὶ θιη-
 — (these) men (being) both more vulnerable and exposed-
 τοὶ ἡμῶν ἢν οἱ θεοί, ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν,
 to-death (than) we (are) if the gods, as — before,
 διδῶσιν ἡμῖν νίκην. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἄλλοι καὶ
 should-grant us victory. But therefore others even
 ἴσως ἐνδυμοῦνται ταῦτα, πρὸς τῶν
 perhaps meditate-on these-same (things), for (the sake) of-the
 θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐλθεῖν ἐφ'
 gods 'let-us not 'wait (for) others to-come to
 ἡμᾶς, παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα,
 us exhorting (us to — (these) most-noble deeds

ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἀρξώμεν τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ
 but we will-begin | the to-impel [to excite] even
 τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν. Φάνητε ἀριστοὶ
 — others to — valour. Show-yourselfes the-best
 τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν
 (and bravest) of-the captains, and of-the commanders
 ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι. Δὲ καὶ γὰρ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς
 the-most-worthy-to-command. And also-I, if indeed you
 ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, βούλομαι
 will give-the-start to these (things), am-willing
 ἔπεσθαι ὑμῖν· δ' εἰ ὑμεῖς τάττετέ με ἡγεῖσθαι,
 to-follow you; but if you appoint me to-lead,
 οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ
 'I (will) not 'give-as-an-excuse — (my) age, but
 καὶ ἡγοῦμαι ἀκμάζειν ἐρύκειν τὰ κακὰ ἀπ'
 even think-myself to-be-of-sufficient-age to-keep-off — harm from
 ἑμαυτοῦ.
 myself.

Ταῦτα μὲν ὁ ἔλεξε· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ
 These (things) indeed — (Xenophon) spoke; but the captains,
 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πάντες ἐκέλευον
 hearing these (things), all requested (him)
 ἡγεῖσθαι· πλὴν ἦν τις Ἀπολλωνίδης,
 to-be-their-commander; except there-was a-certain Apollonides,
 τῇ φωνῇ Βοιωτιάζων· δ' οὗτος εἶπεν,
 in — (his) speech resembling-a-Bæotian; and this (person) said,
 ὅτι φλυαροίη, ὅστις λέγει ἂν τυχεῖν
 that he-speaks-nonsense, who says (that) 'he might 'obtain
 σωτηρίας ἄλλως πως, ἢ πείσας
 safety by-any-other means, than having-persuaded (the)
 βασιλέα, εἰ δύνατο· καὶ ἅμα ἤρχετο
 king, if he could, (to grant it); and at-the-same-time he-begat
 λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἵπο
 to-talk (of) the difficulties. Xenophon however having
 λαβὼν μεταξὺ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ὡ θαν
 tak-n-him-up in-the-midst (of his speech) spoke thn · O most

μασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σὺ δέ γε οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γιγνώ
 wonderful man, you indeed — neither seeing under
 σκεις, οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. Μέντοι γε ἥσδα
 stand, nor hearing have-remembered. However at-least you were
 ἐν ταύτῳ τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς,
 in the-same (place) with-these (here present), when (the) king,
 ὅπει Κῦρος ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ
 after Cyrus died, 'being greatly 'elevated-in-mind at
 τούτῳ, πέμπων ἐκέλευε τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι.
 this, sending he-ordered the arms to-be-given-up.
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι,
 But when we not giving-them-up, but being-armed,
 ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ
 going-forth encamped-opposite him, what did-'he not
 ἐποίησε, πέμπων πρέσβεις, καὶ αἰτῶν σπονδάς,
 'do, sending ambassadors, and requesting (a) truce,
 καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἕστε ἔτυχεν σπονδῶν;
 and supplying the provisions, until he-obtained (a) truce?
 Δ' ἐπεὶ αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί,
 And when on-the-other-hand the generals and captains,
 ὥςπερ σὺ δὴ κελεύεις, ἦλθον εἰς λόγους
 as you indeed (now) advise, went to (a) conference
 αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὅπλων, πιστεύσαντες ταῖς
 with-them without (their) arms, trusting to-the
 σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι,
 truce, 'are not now they 'beaten. goaded,
 ὑβρίζομενοι, οὐδὲ δύνανται οἱ τλήμονες ἀποθανεῖν,
 insulted, not able the wretched-men to-die,
 καὶ οἶμαι μάλ' ἐρῶντες τούτου; Πάντα ἃ σὺ
 and I-think greatly desiring it? All which you
 εἰδὼς φῆς τοὺς μὲν κελεύοντας
 having-known (yet) you-say (that) — (those) indeed exhorting (us)
 ἀμύνεσθαι φλυαρεῖν, δὲ κελεύεις ἰόντας
 to-defend-ourselves talk-foolishly, and do-you-request (us) going
 πάλιν πείδειν; Ἐμοὶ δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ
 again to-try-persuasion? To-me indeed, O men, it-seems

μήτε προσέειπαι τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον
 (that we ought) neither to-admit this — man
 εἰς ταῦτό ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, τε ἀφαιλομένους
 into the-same (place) with-us ourselves, but taking-from (him,
 τὴν λοχαγίαν, ἀναθέντας σκεύη, χρῆσθαι
 — (his) captaincy (and) lying-on (him) baggage, use-him
 ὥς τοιοῦτω. Γὰρ οὗτος καταισχύνει καὶ τὴν
 as such. For this-man disgraces both — (his)
 πατρίδα, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι ὢν Ἕλληνας,
 country, and all — Greece, that being (a) Greek,
 ἐστὶ τοιοῦτος.
 he-is such (a character).

Ἐντεῦθεν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος ὑπολαβὼν
 Thence Agasias (the) Stymphalian having-taken-up
 εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὐδὲν παν-
 (the discourse) said: But to-this-man at-least nothing at-
 ῥάπαντι προσήκει οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας, οὔτε τῆς
 all belongs either of — Boeotia, or of —
 Ἑλλάδος, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ εἶδον τὰ ὦτα
 Greece, since I perceived (that) — (his) ears
 τετρυπημένον ὥσπερ Λυδόν. Καὶ εἶχεν
 were-bored as (a) Lydian. | And it-had (itself)
 οὕτως Οὖν μὲν ἀπήλασαν τοῦτον.
 so [and it was so]. Therefore indeed they-'drove him 'away.
 Δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἰόντες παρὰ τὰς τάξεις,
 But the others going to the (different) ranks (and
 ὅπου μὲν εἴη στρατηγὸς
 divisions of the army), where indeed there-might-be (a) general
 σώος, παρεκάλουν τὸν στρατηγόν· δὲ ὁπόθεν
 saved, they-called-up the general; but where
 οἰχοίτο, τὸν ὑποστρατηγόν· δ' ὅπου αὖ
 he-had-perished, the lieutenant-general; but where again
 εἴη λοχαγός, τὸν λοχαγόν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 there-might-be (a) captain, the captain. When indeed
 πάντες συνῆλθον ἐκαδέζοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν
 all came-together they-seated-themselves in the front

τῶν ὀπλων· καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λεχαγοὶ
 of-the (place) of-arms; and the generals and captains
 συνελθόντες ἐγένοντο τοῖς ἀμφὶ ἐκιντόν.
 assembling were — (in all) about a-hundred.

Ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, ἦσαν σχεδὸν
 |When indeed this was, [when this occurred], it-was near
 μέσαι νύκτες. Ἐνταῦθα Ἱερώνυμος Ἡλείος,
 mid night. There Hieronymus (the) Elian,

ὦν πρεσβύτατος τῶν λοχαγῶν Προξένου, ἤρχετο
 being the-oldest of-the captains of-Proxenus, commenced
 λέγειν ὧδε· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί,
 to-speak thus: O men generals and captains,

ἔδοξε ἡμῖν ὁρῶσι τὰ παρόντα
 it-seemed (proper) to-us seeing the present (state of our affairs),
 καὶ συνελθεῖν αὐτοῖς, καὶ παρακαλέσαι ἡμᾶς,
 both to-assemble-together ourselves, and to-call-on y^{us}

ὅπως βουλευσάμεθα εἰ δυναίμεθα
 (to join us) in-order-that we-may-determine if we-ca-
 τι ἀγαθόν. Δ', ἔφη,
 on-something good (and advantageous to ourselves). But, said-he

σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, λέξον ἅπερ καὶ
 'do you, O Xenophon, 'relate what (you have) even (said
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς.
 to us.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν λέγει τάδε· Ἀλλὰ δὴ
 On this Xenophon speaks thus: But truly,
 μὲν πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ταῦτα, ὅτι βασιλεῖν
 indeed 'we all 'know this, that (the) king,
 καὶ Τισσαφέρνης συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν οὓς μὲν
 and Tissaphernes have-seized-upon (all) of-us whom indee-
 ἐδυνήθησαν· δὲ δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσιν
 they-could; and (it is) evident that they-are-plotting
 τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὥς ἀπολέσωσιν, ἣν δύνονται
 against-the rest (of us), that they-may-put-us-to-death, if they-can
 Δὲ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ἡμῖν, ὥς
 But at-least I-think every (thing) is-to-be-done by-us, that we-may

μήποτε γενώμεθα ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις,
never 'got into (the power of) the barbarians,

ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκείνοι, ἢν δυνώμεθα
but rather (that) they, if we-are-able (to accomplish it)

ἐφ' ἡμῖν. Ἐπίστασθε
[(may fall) into us [may fall into our hands]. Know

εἰ τοίνυν, ὅτι ὑμεῖς, ὄντες τοσούτοι ὅσοι νῦν
well therefore, that you, being so-many as now

συνεληλύδατε, ἔχετε μέγιστον καιρόν.
have-come-together (of you), have the-greatest opportunity

Γὰρ πάντες οἱ οὗτοι στρα-
[of distinguishing yourselves). For all — these sol-

τῶνται βλέπουσι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶν μὲν ὁρῶσιν
diers look to you, and-if indeed they-see

ὑμᾶς ἀδύμος, πάντες ἔσονται κακοὶ· δὲ εἰ τε
you dispirited, all will-be cowards; but if not-only

ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ φανεροὶ παρασκευαζόμενοι ἢτε ἐπὶ
you yourselves appearing prepared go against

τοὺς πολεμίους, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε τοὺς ἄλλους
the enemy, and-also exhort the others

ἵστε εὖ ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν, καὶ πειρά-
(to the same) know well that they-will-follow you, and will-en-

σονται μιμεῖσθαι. Δὲ τοι ἴσως ἐστὶ καὶ
deavour to-imitate (you). And — perhaps it-is even

δίκαιον ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων.
right (that) we should-differ somewhat from-these (soldiers).

Γὰρ ὑμεῖς ἐστέ στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι
For you are generals, you (are) taxiarchs

καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε
and captains; and when peace was, you had-a-greater-portion

τούτων καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς· καὶ νῦν
(than) these both of-riches and honours; and now

τοίνυν, ἐπεὶ ἐστὶ πόλεμος, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀξιοῦν
therefore, when there-is war, it-is-proper (that) you exce.

αὐτοῖς εἶναι ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους,
these, (and that you) be superior not-only to-the multitude

καὶ προβουλεύειν καὶ προπονεῖν τοῦτ'·
 but-also to-plan-and-devise and to-labour-and-exert-yourself for-these,
 ἢν που δέη. Καὶ νῦν μὲν πρῶτον
 if any-where it-may-be-needed. And now indeed in-the-first (place)
 οἶμαι ὑμᾶς ἂν μέγα ὠνήσαι τὸ στράτευμα,
 I-think (that) you may greatly benefit the army,
 ἰ ἐπιμεληθεῖντε, ὅπως στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
 if you-take-care, that generals and captains
 ἀντικατασταθῶσιν ὥς τάχιστα ἀντὶ τῶν
 be-chosen as speedily-as-possible in-place-of — (those)
 ἀπολωλότων. Γὰρ ἄνευ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν οὔτε
 we-are-deprived-of. For without commanders nothing either
 καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν ἂν γένοιτο, ὥς μὲν εἰπεῖν
 honourable or good can happen, as indeed to-speak
 συνελόντι, οὐδαμοῦ, δὲ δὴ ἐν τοῖς πολε-
 in-comprehensive (language), no-where, but truly in — warlike-
 μικοῖς παντάπασιν. Γὰρ μὲν ἡ εὐταξία δοκεῖ
 affairs not-at-all. For indeed — order appears
 σῶζειν, δὲ ἡ ἀταξία ἤδη ἀπολώλεκε
 to-preserve (armies), but — want-of-order 'has already 'destroyed
 πολλοὺς. Δὲ ἐπειδὴν καταστήσῃσθε τοὺς ἄρ-
 many. And after you-have-appointed the com-
 χοντας, ὅσους δεῖ, καὶ ἢν συλλέγητε
 manders, as-many-as it-is-proper (to appoint), and if you-assembled
 καὶ παραδαρβύνητε τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας, οἶμαι
 and encouraged the other soldiers, I-think
 ἂν ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι πάννυ ἐν καιρῷ. Γὰρ
 that you will-have-acted very-much in season-and-to-the-purpose. For
 νῦν μὲν ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε, ὥς ἀδύμως
 now indeed likewise even you perceive, how dispiritedly
 μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ ἀδύμως
 indeed they-went to the (place of) arms, and (also how) dejectedly
 πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς, ὥστε, ἐχόντων
 (they went, on — guard, | so-that, having (themselves)
 οὕτω γ', οὐκ οἶδα
 so at-least, [while they are in this state of mind], I-'do not 'know

ὅ τι τις ἂν χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, τι
 for what any-one might use them, 'should any-thing
 δέοι εἴτε νυκτὸς εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. Δὲ ἦν
 'be-required either by-night or even by-day. But if
 τις τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας αὐτῶν, ὥς μὴ
 any-one should-turn the thoughts of-them, that they-'may not
 μόνον ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί
 alone 'contemplate, what they-will-suffer, but also what
 ποιήσουσι, ἔσονται πολὺ εὐδυσμότεροι. Γὰρ δὴ
 they-will-do, they-will-be much more-inspirited. For truly
 ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι ἐστὶν οὔτε πλῆθος οὔτε ἰσχὺς
 you-are-aware, that it-is neither multitude nor strength
 ἣ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ποιοῦσα νίκας.
 which in — war | are-making victories; [produce victories];
 ἀλλ' ὅποτεροι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἂν
 but which-ever, with the (assistance of the) gods being
 ἐρρωμενέστεροι ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς
 more-resolute — in-mind may-go against the
 πολεμίους, ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἐναντίοι
 enemy, (as) for the most-part the adverse (enemy)
 οὐδέχονται τούτους.
 | 'can not 'receive them [can not sustain their attack].
 Δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐντεδύμηναι, καὶ τοῦτο,
 But I-at-least, O men, have-considered, also this,
 ὅτι ὅποσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου
 that those-who indeed desire to-live | by all means
 ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὗτοι μὲν ὥς ἐπὶ
 [at any rate] in — warlike-affairs, these indeed (as) for
 τὸ πολὺ ἀποδνήσκουσι κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς
 the most-part die wretchedly and also dishonourably
 δὲ ὅποσοι μὲν ἐγνώκασιν θάνατον εἶναι κοινὸν
 but those-who indeed have-known death to-be common
 πᾶσι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνδράποιν, ἀγωνίζονται δὲ
 to-all, and inevitable to-men, contend-in-battle —
 περὶ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποδνήσκειν,
 'for the honourably to-die, [for an honourable death]

ὁρῶ τούτους μᾶλλον πως ἀφικνουμένους εἰς τὸ
I-perceive these rather somehow arriving at —

γῆρας, καὶ, ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν διάγοντας
old-age, and, as-long-as 'they may 'live passing (their time)

ὑδαιμονέστερον. Καὶ ἃ καταμαθόντας
more-happily. And which (things) having-understood

νῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς (γὰρ ἐσμεν ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ)
it now 'becomes us (as we-are in such (a) state)

εἶναι τε ἀγαθούς ἀνδρας αὐτοὺς καὶ
(that) we-be not-only brave men ourselves but-also

παρακαλεῖν τοὺς ἄλλους. Ὁ μὲν εἰπὼν
exhort the others (to be so). Who indeed saying

ταὐτ' ἐπαύσατο.
this ceased (speaking).

Δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Ἀλλὰ μὲν,
But after this Cheirisophus said: But indeed,

ὦ Ξενοφῶν, πρόσθεν ἐγὶ γνωσκον σε μόνον
O Xenophon, before-this I-knew you only

τοσοῦτον, ὅσον ἤκουον εἶναι Ἀθηναῖον· δὲ
so-much, as-that I-heard you-were (an) Athenian; but

νῦν καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε τε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις καὶ
now 'I even 'praise you not-only for what you-say but-also

πράτεις, καὶ ἂν βουλοίμην ὅτι εἶναι
(for what) you-perform, and could wish that there-were

πλείστοις τοιούτους· γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ κοινὸν
many such; for 'it would 'be — (a) general

ἀγαθόν. Καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ
good. And now, said-he, let-'us not 'delay, O

ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντες ἀπελθόντες
men, but — (those) wanting commanders having-retired

ἤδη αἰρεῖσθε, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἤκετε
now to-choose (them), and having-elected (them) 'let (them) 'come

εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου, καὶ ἄγετε τοὺς
to the middle of-the camp, and bring —

αἰρεθέντας· ἔπειτα συγκαλοῦμεν ἐκεῖ τοὺς
(those) chosen; afterwards we-will-cal'-together there the

ἄλλους στρατιώτας. Δ', ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ
 other soldiers. But, said-he, 'let also Tolmides the
 κῆρυξ παρέστω ἡμῖν. Καὶ ἅμα εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
 herald 'be-present with-us. And at-the-time he-was-saying this
 ἀνέστη, ὥς τὰ δέοντα μὴ μέλλοιτο,
 he-rose-up, that the (things) necessary 'might not 'be-delayed,
 ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο. Ἐκ τούτου ἡρέθησαν ἄρχον-
 but be-executed. On this they-chose (as) comman-
 τες, ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς,
 lers, in-place-of — Klearchus Timasion (the) Dardanian,
 δὲ ἀντὶ Σωκράτους Ξαντικλῆς Ἀχαιός, δὲ
 and in-place-of Socrates Xanticles (the) Achæian, and
 ἀντὶ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἀντὶ
 in-place-of Agias Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and in-place-of
 Μένωνος Φιλήσιος Ἀχαιός, δὲ ἀντὶ Πωοξένου
 Menon Philesius (the) Achæian, and in-place-of Proxenus
 Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.
 Xenophon (the) Athenian.

CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, τε ἡμέρα
 WHEN indeed (the officers) were-chosen, not-only 'was (the) day
 σχεδὸν ἰπέφαινε, καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες ἦκον εἰς τὸ
 just 'dawning, but-also the commanders had-come to the
 μέσον, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς, προφύ-
 middle (of the camp), and it-seemed (necessary) to-them, senti-
 λακας καταστήσαντας, συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρα-
 nels being-placed, to-call-together the sol-
 τιώτας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
 diers. When indeed also the other soldiers
 συνῆλθον, Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος πρῶτον
 came-together, Cheirisophus the Lacedæmonian first
 μὲν ἀνέστη, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· ὦ ἄνδρες στρα-
 indeed rose-up, and spoke thus: O men sol

τῶται, τα παρόντα μὲν χαλεπὰ,
 diers, — (our) present-affairs indeed are-fraught-with-difficulties,
 ὅποτε στερόμεθα τοιούτω ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν,
 since we-are-deprived of-such men (our) generals,
 καὶ λοχαγῶν, καὶ στρατιωτῶν· δὲ καὶ
 and (also) 'of (our) 'captains, and soldiers; and also
 πρὸς ἐτι οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον, οἱ
 of (those) moreover (namely) — (those) with Ariæus, who
 ἔντες πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι, προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς.
 being formerly (our) allies, have-deserted us.
 Δὲ ὁμῶς δεῖ τε ἐλθεῖν ἐκ τῶν παρόν-
 But likewise it-becomes (us) not-only to-get-out of — (our) pre-
 των ἀγαθούς ἀνδρας, καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσ-
 sent (difficulties) (like) brave men, but-also not to-give-
 δαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἣν μὲν δυνώμεθα,
 sp. but to-endeavour that, if indeed we-can,
 νικῶντες καλῶς, σωζώμεθα· δὲ εἰ μὴ,
 conquering honourably, we-may-save-ourselves; but if not,
 ἀλλὰ γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν καλῶς, δὲ μηδέποτε
 yet at-least let-us-die honourably, and never
 γενώμεθα ζῶντες ὑποχείριοι
 | we-being living [while we live] putting-ourselves-in-the-hands-of
 τοῖς πολεμίοις. Γὰρ οἶομαι ἂν ἡμᾶς παθεῖν
 the enemy. For I-think that we would-suffer
 τοιαῦτα, οἷα οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν τοὺς
 such-things, as 'may the gods 'do to — (our)
 ἐχθρούς. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος
 enemies. After this-one Cleanor (the) Orchomenian
 ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 rose-up and spoke as-follows: But indeed, O men,
 ὁρᾶτε τὴν ἐπιουρκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν βασιλέως,
 you-see the perjury and impiety 'of (the) 'king,
 δὲ ὁρᾶτε τὴν ἀπιστίαν Τισσαφέρνους, ὅστις λέγων
 and you-see the faithlessness of-Tissaphernes, who saying
 ὡς εἶη τε γείτων τῆς Ἑλλάδος, καὶ ἂν
 that he-was not-only (a) neighbour of-the Greeks, but-also would

ποιήσaiτο περι πλείστου σῶσαι ἡμας, και
 make-it of much (account) to-have-saved us, and
 αὐτὸς ὀμόσας ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς
 he-himself having-sworn to these (things) to-us, he
 δούς δεξιᾶς, αὐτὸς ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε
 having-given (the) right-hand, he having-deceived (us) took
 τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ ἠδέσθη
 ('prisoners) — (our) generals, and neither has-he-respected
 Δία ξένιον, ἀλλὰ γενόμενος καὶ
 Jupiter (the god of) hospitality, but having-become also (a)
 ὁμοτράπεζος Κλεάρχῳ, αὐτοῖς τούτοις
 table-companion to-Clearchus, by-these same (means)
 ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. Ἀριαῖος
 having-deceived — men he-destroyed (them). Ariæus
 δὲ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠδέλομεν καδιστάναι βασιλέα, και
 also, whom we wished to-have-constituted king, and
 ἐδώκαμεν και ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν
 we-gave and received pledges not to-betray
 ἑλληλους, και οὗτος, οὔτε δείσας τοὺς θεοὺς
 one-another, (yet) even this-one, neither having-feared the gods
 οὔτε αἰδεσθεῖς τεθνηκότα Κύρον, τιμώμενος
 or having-respected (the) departed Cyrus, (though) honoured
 μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν
 in-the-highest-degree by Cyrus (while) living, 'having now
 ἀποστὰς πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθίστους ἐκείνου,
 'gone-over to the bitterest-enemies 'of (Cyrus) 'himself,
 πειρᾶται ποιεῖν κακῶς ἡμᾶς τοὺς φίλους Κύρου.
 he-endeavours to-do ill to-us the friends of-Cyrus.
 Ἀλλὰ μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσaiντο τούτους.
 But indeed 'may the gods 'repay these (men);
 δὲ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ὁρῶντας ταῦτα μήποτε ἔτ
 but it-becomes us seeing these (things) never more
 ἐξαπατηθῆναι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ, μαχομένους
 to-be-deceived by these (men), but, fighting

κράτιστα ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα, πάσχειν
in-the-bravest (manner) that 'we may 'be-able, to-bear

τοῦτο δ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς.
that which may seem (proper) to-the gods.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται, ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ
After this Xenophon stood-up, equipped fo:

πόλεμον ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο, νομίζων, εἴτε
war as handsomely (as) he-was-able, thinking, that-if

οἱ θεοὶ διδοῖεν νίκην τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον
the gods should-grant victory (that) the most-beautiful ornaments

πρέπειν τῷ νικᾶν, εἴτε δέοι
became | to-the to-conquer [victory], (or) that-if it-might-be-so (that he

τελευτᾶν, ἔχειν ὀρθῶς,
was) to-die, | to-have (itself) properly, [it would be well] (that

ἐαυτὸν ἀξιώσαντα τῶν καλλίστων
he should think) himself as-having-been-worthy of-the most-beautiful

ἐν τούτοις τυγχάνειν τῆς τελευτῆς
(equipments, and) in these to-meet — (his) end

δὲ τοῦ λόγου ἤρχετο ὧδε· Μὲν τε τὴν ἐπωροκίαν
but — (his) speech he-began thus: Indeed not-only the perjury

καὶ ἀπιστίαν τῶν βαρβάρων Κλεάνωρ μὲν
but-also (the) perfidy of-the barbarians Cleanor indeed

λέγει, δὲ οἶμαι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐπίστασθε
'has (just now) 'mentioned, and I-think you also are-aware-of-it

Εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλευόμεθα πάλιν ἵέναι διὰ
If indeed therefore we-deliberate | again to-go through

φιλίας αὐτοῖς
friendship with-them [of again coming to terms of friendship with them]

ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς ἔχειν πολλὴν ἀδυσμίαν,
(it is of) necessity (that) we (must) have much mistrust,

καὶ ὀρῶντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἷα
'having also 'seen — (our) generals, what (they)

πεπόνθασιν, οἱ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς
suffered, who through faith in-them 'put themselves

ἐν χειρὶς· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς
'int'-their-hands; if however we-intend with — (our)

ὅπλοις τε ἐπιθεῖναι δίκην αὐτοῖς ~~τοῖς~~ αὐτούς.
 arms not-only | to-impose justice on-them [to inflict them

ὄν πεποιήκασι, καὶ τοῖς τῶν
 ment on them] (for that) which they-have-done, but-also (for-as-many of-the
 ἵεναι διὰ παντός πολέμου αὐτοῖς, σὺν ~~μαίῳ~~
 to-go through all (kinds) of-warfare with-them, with (the help of)

τοῖς θεοῖς εἰσὶ πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐπίδες σωτηρίας.
 the gods there-are many and fair hopes of-safety.

Δὲ αὐτοῦ λέγοντος τοῦτο τις πτάρνυται· δ'
 But he having this some-one sneezes; and

οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες πάντες μιᾷ ὁρμῇ
 the soldiers hearing (it) all with-one impulse

προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν· καὶ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
 worshipped the god; and Xenophon said: (As)

Ἐπεὶ ἡμῶν λεγόντων περὶ σωτηρίας, οἶωνός
 while we were-speaking about safety, (an) omen

τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 of — Jupiter the Preserver appeared, it-seems to-me, O men,

εὐξασθαι τῷ τούτῳ θεῷ θύσειν σωτή-
 (that) we-vow to — that god to-sacrifice (the) offerings-of-

ρια, ὅπου πρῶτον ἀφικώμεθα εἰς φιλίαν χῶραν,
 safety, when first we-arrive in (a) friendly country,

δὲ καὶ συνεπύξασθαι θύσειν τοῖς ἄλλοις
 and also (that) we-vow-together to-sacrifice-hereafter to-the other

θεοῖς κατὰ δύναμιν. Καὶ ἔφη, ὅτι
 gods according-to (our) ability. And he-said, to-whomsoever

ταῦτα δοκεῖ ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Καὶ
 this seems (right) hold-up — (your) hand. And

ἅπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Ἐκ τούτου εὐξάντο
 all held-up (their hands). Upon this they-'made

καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ τὰ
 (their) 'vows and sang-a-pean. | And when the (things)

τῶν θεῶν εἶχεν καλῶς,
 of-the gods had (themselves) well, [and when the religious

ἤρχετο πάλιν ὧδε·
 ceremonies were duly performed], he-commenced again thus:

κράτιστα, ~~ὅσον~~ λέγων ὅτι εἶεν πολλαὶ καὶ
in-the-by-happening (to be) saying that there-were many and

τοῦτο ἵπιδες ἡμῖν σωτηρίας. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν
that whences to-us of-safety. For first indeed

Ἐκ τῶν μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς ὅρκους τῶν θεῶν,
we have truly 'observed | the oaths of-the gods,

δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι τε
[our oaths made to the gods], but the enemy 'have not-only

ἐπωρκήκασι, καὶ λελύκασι τὰς σπονδὰς
'perjured (themselves), but-also have-broken the truce

καὶ τοῖς ὅρκους. Δ' ἐχόντων
and — (their) oaths. But (things) having (themselves,

οὕτω, εἰκὸς μὲν τοὺς θεοὺς εἶναι ἐναντίους
thus, it-is-proper indeed (for) the gods to-be against

τοῖς πολεμίοις, δὲ συμμαχοὺς ἡμῖν, οἵπερ εἰσι
— (our) enemies, but auxiliaries to-us, who are

ἱκανοί, ὅταν βούλωνται καὶ ταχὺ ποιεῖν τοὺς
competent, when they-will both speedily to-make the

μεγάλους μικροὺς, καὶ εὐπετῶς σῶζειν τοὺς μικροὺς,
great little, and easily to-save the little,

κἂν ὥσι ἐν δεινοῖς. Δὲ ἔπειτα,
although they-may-be in dangers. But (next) after (this),

(γὰρ ἀναμνήσω ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς κινδύνους τῶν
(for I-shall-remind you even (of) the dangers of—

ἡμετέρων τῶν προγόνων, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὥς
our — ancestors, in-order-that you-may-perceive that

τε προσήκει ὑμῖν εἶναι ἀγαθοῖς, τε σὺν
— it-becomes you to-be brave, and-that with (the help of)

τοῖς θεοῖς οἱ ἀγαδοὶ σῶζονται καὶ ἐκ πάντων
the gods the brave are-saved even from the-greatest

δεινῶν.) γὰρ μὲν Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν
dangers;) for indeed (the) Persians and — (those) with

αὐτοῖς ἐλδόντων παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ, ὥς
them coming 'with (a) 'numerous host, as 'making

τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀφανιούντων αὐδῖς, Ἀθηναῖοι
— Athens 'disappearing again, (but the) Athenians

τολμήσαντες ὑποστῆναι αὐτοῖς ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς.
daring to-withstand them conquered them

Καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὀπόσους τῶν
And having-vowed to Diana (that) as-many of-the

πολεμίων ἂν κατακάνοιεν τοσαύτος χιμαῖρας
enemy 'as 'they might 'kill so-many she-goats

καταδύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ εἶχον οὐκ
they-would-sacrifice to-the goddess, (but) when | they-had not (a)

ἱκανὰς εὐρεῖν,
sufficient-number to-find, [they could not find a sufficient number],

ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς θύειν πεντακοσίας κατ'
it-seemed (good) to-them to-sacrifice five-hundred every

ἐνιαυτὸν, καὶ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἀποδύουσιν. Ἐπειτα
year, and also even now they-sacrifice (them). (Afterwards,

ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον, ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθ-
when Xerxes after-this, having-collected — (that) innumer-

μητον στρατιάν, ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ
able army, went against the Greeks, and

τότε οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι ἐνίκων τοὺς προγόνους
then — our ancestors conquered the ancestors

τούτων, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
of-these (barbarians), both by land and by sea.

Τεκμήρια μὲν ὧν ἔστι τὰ τρόπαια ὀρᾶν,
(The) proofs indeed of-which are the trophies | to-see,

δὲ μέγιστον μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν
[to be seen], but the-greatest witness (is) the liberty of-the

πόλεων, ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε
states, in which you were-born and bred

γὰρ προσκυνεῖτε οὐδένα ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην,
for you-worship no man (as) master,

ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς. Τοιούτων προγόνων μὲν
but the gods (only). Of-such ancestors indeed

ἐστε. Μὲν δὴ γε οὐκ ἔρῳ τοῦτο,
are-you. 'I indeed certainly at-least 'will not 'say this,

ὥς ὑμεῖς κατασχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὐπω πολλαί
that you disgrace them; but not-yet many

ἡμέραι, ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξά-
days, | from which [since] having-been-drawn-up-in-order-of-battle.

μενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκγόνοις ἐκείνων,
against these — descendants of-those (barbarians).

ἐνικᾶτε αὐτῶν πολλαπλασίους
you-conquered (a force) of-them many-times-more-numerous (than)

ὑμῶν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ τότε μὲν
yourselves with (the assistance of) the gods. And then --

δὴ ἦτε ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες περὶ τῆς βασιλείας
truly you-were brave men | (contending) about the kingdom

Κύρου· δὲ νῦν, ὅποτε
of-Cyrus; [contending to elevate Cyrus to the throne]; but now, when

ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστὶ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας, δῆπου
the contest is about — your-own safety, 'it certainly

προσῆκει ὑμᾶς πολὺν, καὶ εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ
'becomes you much, both to-be more (brave) and

προθυμοτέρους. Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ νῦν πρόπει
more-daring. But certainly 'it even now 'becomes

εἶναι θαρραλεωτέρους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.
'you) to-be more-confident-and-daring against the enemy

Γὰρ μὲν τότε ὄντες ἄπειροι αὐτῶν, τε ὁρῶντες
For indeed then being inexperienced of-them, and seeing

τὸ ἀμετρον πλῆθος, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ
the immense multitude, however you-dared with the

φρονήματι πατρίῳ ἵεναι εἰς αὐτούς· δὲ
spirit derived-from-your-ancestors to-go against them; but

νῦν, ὅποτε καὶ ἤδη ἔχετε πείραν αὐτῶν, ὅτι
now, when 'you even already 'have experience of-them, that

θέλουσι καὶ ὄντες πολλαπλάσιοι
they-wish even (though) being many-times (more numerous

μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι
than you) not to-receive you (attacking them), how then

προσῆκει ὑμῖν φοβεῖσθαι τούτους; Μηδὲ μέντοι
does-it-become you to-fear these (men)? | Nor indeed

δόξητε ἔχειν τοῦτο μείον,
think to-have this less, [nor think this to be a disadvantage].

οἱ Κυρεῖοι, πρόσθεν ταπτόμενοι σὺν ἡμῖν,
 the followers-of-Cyrus, formerly drawn-up with us,

νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν. Γὰρ ἔτι οὗτοι εἰσι
 (have) now deserted (us). For also these (men) are

καχίονες τῶν ἡττημένων ὑφ' ἡμῶν.
 more-cowardly (than) — (those) defeated by us.

Γοῦν ἔφειγον πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς.
 For-indeed they-fled to them deserting us.

Δὲ πολὺ κρεῖττον ὄραν τοὺς θέλοντας
 And (it is) much better to-see — (those) wishing

ἄρχειν φυγῆς ταπτομένους σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις,
 to-commence flight arranged with the enemy,

ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει. Δὲ εἰ τις ὑμῶν
 than in — our ranks. But if any-one of-you

ἀδυσμεῖ, ὅτι μὲν εἰσὶν οὐκ ἵππεις ἡμῖν,
 is-disheartened, that indeed there-are no horsemen to-us, [that

δὲ πολλοὶ πάρεσι τοῖς πολεμίοις,
 we have no cavalry], [but (that) many are-present to-the enemy,

ἐνδυμήδητε ὅτι
 [but that the enemy have a large force of cavalry], consider that

οἱ μύριοι ἵππεις εἰσὶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι
 — ten-thousand horsemen are nothing else than ten-thousand

ἄνθρωποι· γὰρ μὲν οὐδεὶς πώποτε ἀπέθανεν ἐν
 men; for indeed no-one ever died in

μάχῃ οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ὑπὸ
 battle (neither) (either) bitten — (or) kicked by

ἵππου, δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅτι
 (a) horse, but the men are (those) who do whatever

ἂν γίγνηται ἐν ταῖς μάχαις. Οὐκοῦν ἡμεῖς ἐσμεν
 may happen in — battles. Therefore we are

ἐπ' πολὺ ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματος γε τῶν ἱππέων·
 on (a) much safer vehicle (than) at-least the cavalry;

γὰρ μὲν οἱ κρέμονται ἐφ' ἵππων, φοβούμενοι
 for indeed — (those) hang on horses, fearing

οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν·
 not as alone, but also [the to-have-fallen; [falling]

δ' ἡμεῖς βεβηκότες ἐπὶ γῆς
 [but we having-gone on (the) ground [but we marching on the
 ground] παίσομεν μὲν πολὺ ἰσχυρότερον ἢν τις
 shall-strike indeed much more-violently if any-one
 προσίῃ, δὲ πολὺ μᾶλλον τευξόμεθα οὗτου βουλῶ-
 approach, and much more shall-we-attain-the-aim which we-de-
 μεθα. Δὲ ἐνὶ μόνῳ οἱ ἵππεις προέχουσιν
 sired. But in-one (thing) alone the cavalry have-the-advantage-of
 ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν ἐστὶν ἀσφαλέστερον αὐτοῖς ἢ ἡμῖν.
 us: to- flee is safer for-them than for-us.
 Εἰ δὲ δὴ θαρρῆϊτε μὲν τὰς μάχας,
 If indeed truly you-are-confident-and-courageous — for — battle,
 δὲ ἄχθεσθε τοῦτο, ὅτι Τισσαφέρνης οὐκέτι
 but you-are-troubled at-this, that Tissaphernes 'will no-longer
 ἡγήσεται ὑμῖν, οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς παρέξει
 'guide you, nor 'will (the) king 'provide (you a)
 ἀγορὰν, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον ἔχειν Τισσα-
 market consider whether (it is) better to-have Tissa-
 φέρνην ἡγεμόνα, ὃς ἐστὶ φανερός ἐπιβουλεύων
 phernes (as) guide, who is evidently plotting-against
 ἡμῖν, ἢ ἀνδρας οὓς ἡμεῖς λαβόντες ἂν
 us, or (the) men whom, we having-seized-them, may
 κελεύωμεν ἡγεῖσθαι, οἳ εἰσονται ὅτι, ἢν ἅμαρ-
 order to-guide (us), who will-know that, if they
 τάνωσι περὶ ἡμᾶς, ἁμαρτάνουσι περὶ τὰς
 err with-respect-to us, they-err with-respect-to the
 ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ τὰ
 lives and bodies of-themselves. But (as respects) —
 ἐπιτήδεια πότερον κρεῖττον ὠνεῖσθαι ἐκ τῆς
 provisions whether (it is) better to-purchase from the
 ἀγορᾶς, ἣς οὗτοι παρῆχον, μικρὰ μέτρα
 market, which these (people) provide, small measures
 πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ ἔτι ἔχοντας τοῦτο,
 for-much money, neither yet having this (money),
 ἢ, ἢνπερ κρατῶμεν, λαμβάνειν αὐτοὺς, χρωμένους
 or, if we-are-victorious, to-take them, using

ἡπόσῳ μέτρῳ ἕκαστος ἂν βούληται. Εἰ δὲ
such measure (as) each might wish. If however

μὲν γινώσκετε ταῦτα
indeed you-know these (things respecting guides and provisions)

ὅτι κρείττονα, δὲ νομίζετε τοὺς ποταμοὺς
that (it would now be) better, but think the rivers

εἶναι ἄπορον, καὶ ἡγείσθε
to-be (a thing) impassable, and think (yourselves) to-be

μεγάλως ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε
greatly 'mised crossing (them), consider

εἰ ἄρα οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ πεποιήκασι
whether the barbarians 'have (not) even 'done (a)

μωρότατον. Γὰρ μὲν πάντες οἱ ποταμοί,
most-foolish (thing). For indeed all the rivers,

εἰ καὶ ὥσι ἄποροι πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν,
if even they-may-be impassable at-a-distance-from — (their) sources,

προιοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς γίνονται διαβατοί,
(but) going to the sources they-become passable,

οὐδὲ βρέχοντες τὸ γόνυ. Εἰ δὲ μήδ' οἱ ποταμοὶ
not-even wetting the knee. If indeed neither the rivers

διοίσουσι, τε μεδεῖς ἡγεμῶν φανείται
should-differ (in their breadth), and no guide appear

ἡμῖν, οὐδ' ὥς ἀδυμητέον ἡμῖν γε. Γὰρ
to-us, nor thus is-there-to-be-discouragement to-us at-least. For

ἐπιστάμεθα Μυσοῦς, οὓς ἂν οὐκ φαίημεν
we-know (that the) Mysians, whom 'we should not 'assert

εἶναι βελτίους ἡμῶν, οἱ, βασιλέως
to-be braver (than) ourselves, who, (the) king (being)

ἄκοντος, οἰκοῦσι πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ
unwilling, inhabit many also both rich and

μεγάλας πόλεις ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ βασιλέως.
large cities in the country 'of (the) 'king.

ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὥσαντίως.
we-know also (that the) Pisidians (have acted) in-like-manner

δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν Λυκάονας, ὅτι
and also we-'have ourselves 'seen (the) Lyceonians, that

καταλαβόντες τὰ ἐριμνὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις καρ-
 seizing the fortified-places in the plains they-en-
 ποῦνται τὴν χώραν τούτου. Καὶ ἅ
 joy-the-fruits (in) the territory of-this (king). And indeed
 ὡςγε ἂν ἔφην ἡμᾶς χρῆναι μήπω εἶναι
 -at-least would have-said (that) we ought not-yet to-be
 φανεροῦς ὠρμημένους οἴκαδε, ἀλλὰ κατασκευ-
 appearing (as) having-started for-home, but to-be-getting-
 ἄξεσσαι ὥς οἰκῆσοντας που αὐτοῦ.
 ourselves-ready as (if) about-taking-up-our-abode some-where here.
 Γὰρ οἶδα ὅτι καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἂν δοίῃ πολλοὺς
 for I-know that even (the) king indeed would give many
 ἡγεμόνας Μυσοῖς, δ' ἂν πολλοὺς ὁμήρους
 guides 'to (the) 'Mysians, and would (give) many hostages
 τοῦ ἐκπέμψειν ἀδόλως καὶ
 (to them) | of-the to-send-away [to send them away] without-treachery and
 γ' ἂν ὁδοποιήσειε αὐτοῖς, καὶ εἰ βούλοιντο
 also would make-roads for-them, even if they-wished
 ἀπιέναι σὺν τεθρίπποις. Καὶ οἶδ' ὅτι γ' ἂν
 to-depart with four-horse-chariots. And I-know that 'he also would
 ἐποίει ταῦτα τριδάσμενος ἡμῖν, εἰ ἑώρα
 'do these (things) most-willingly for-us, if he-saw
 ἡμᾶς παρασκευαζομένους μένειν. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
 us making-preparations to-remain. But (not so) for
 δέδοικα, μὴ, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ζῆν ἀργοί,
 I-fear, lest 'we may once 'have-learned to-live idle,
 καὶ βιοτεύειν ἐν ἀφθόνοις, καὶ ὁμιλεῖν
 and to-pass-our-lives in plenty, and to-associate 'with (the)
 καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναῖξιν καὶ παρθένοις
 'handsome and large women and virgins 'of (the)
 Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν, μὴ, ὥςπερ, οἱ
 Medes and also 'of (the) 'Persians, (that) lest, like the
 λωτοφάγοι, ἐπιλαδώμεθα τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε. Δοκεῖ
 lotus-eaters, we-might-forget the road homewards. It-seems
 οὖν μοι εἶναι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον πρῶτον
 there-fore to-me to-be proper and just first

πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς
to-attempt to-return to — Greece and to

τοῖς οἰκείους, καὶ ἐπιδείξαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν,
the members-of-our-families, and to-show the Greeks,

ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν
that voluntarily they-are-poor, when-it-is-allowed them to-see

κομισαμένους ἐνθάδε πλουσίους, τοὺς
those) having-come hither rich, (but) — (those)

νῦν οἶκοι πολιτεύοντας ἐκεῖ σκληρῶς. Ἀλλὰ,
now at-home living there with-difficulty. But (why

γὰρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐστὶ δῆλον ὅτι, πάντα ταῦτα
more), for, O men, it-is evident that, all these

τάγαδ' αὖ τῶν κρατούντων. Δὴ
good (things belong to) the conquerors. 'It certainly

δεῖ λέγειν ταῦτο, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθα τε
'is-proper to-mention this, how 'we may 'proceed not-only

ὥς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ δέοι μάχεσθαι, ὥς
as safely-as-possible, but-also if it-be-necessary to-fight, that

μαχοίμεθα κράτιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν,
we-may-fight (to the) best-advantage. First indeed therefore,

ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξιας,
said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-burn the carriages,

ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν μὴ
which we-have, in-order-that the cattle of-us 'may not

στρατηγῇ,
'be-the-leader-of-the-army, [in order that our baggage may not influence

ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ὅπη
the movements of our army], but (that) we-may-march whithersoever

ἂν συμφέρῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἔπειτα καὶ
'it may 'be-convenient for-the army (to march); afterwards also

συγκατακαῦσαι τὰς σκηνάς. Γὰρ αὗται
to-burn the tents 'with (them). For these

αὖ μὲν παρέχουσιν ὄχλον ἄγειν, δὲ συνωφε-
(tents) again — give trouble to-carry, and contri-

βοῦσι οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι
sade nothing — (either) to the to-fight [and are of no

καταλαβόντες τὰ ἐριμνὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις καρ
seizing the fortified-places in the plains they-en-

ποῦνται τὴν χώραν τούτου. Καὶ ἄ
joy-the-fruits (in) the territory of-this (king). And indeed

ἴγωγε ἂν ἔφην ἡμᾶς χρῆναι μήπω εἶναι
-at-least would have-said (that) we ought not-yet to-be

φανερούς ὡρμημένους οἴκαδε, ἀλλὰ κατασκευ-
appearing (as) having-started for-home, but to-be-getting-

άζεσθαι ὥς οἰκῆσοντας που αὐτοῦ.
ourselves-ready as (if) about-taking-up-our-abode some-where here.

Γὰρ οἶδα ὅτι καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἂν δοίῃ πολλοὺς
for I-know that even (the) king indeed would give many

ἡγεμόνας Μυσοῖς, δ' ἂν πολλοὺς ὀμήρους
guides 'to (the) 'Mysians, and would (give) many hostages

τοῦ ἐκπέμψειν ἀδόλως καὶ
(to them) | of-the to-send-away [to send them away] without-treachery and

γ' ἂν ὁδοποιήσειε αὐτοῖς, καὶ εἰ βούλονται
also would make-roads for-them, even if they-wished

ἀπιέναι σὺν τεδρίπποις. Καὶ οἶδ' ὅτι γ' ἂν
to-depart with four-horse-chariots. And I-know that 'he also would

ἐποίει ταῦτα τριτάσμενος ἡμῖν, εἰ ἑώρα
'do these (things) most-willingly for-us, if he-saw

ἡμᾶς παρασκευαζομένους μένειν. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
us making-preparations to-remain. But (not so) for

δέδοικα, μὴ, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ζῆν ἄργοι,
I-fear, lest 'we may once 'have-learned to-live idle,

καὶ βιοτεύειν ἐν ἀφθόνοις, καὶ ὀμιλεῖν
and to-pass-our-lives in plenty, and to-associate 'with (the)

καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις
'handsome and large women and virgins 'of (the)

Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν, μὴ, ὥς περ οἱ
Medes and also 'of (the) 'Persians, (that) lest, like the

λωτοφάγοι, ἐπιλαδόμεθα τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε. Δοκεῖ
lotus-eaters, we-might-forget the road homewards. It-seems

οὖν μοι εἶναι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον πρῶτον
therefore to-me to-be proper and just first

πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς
to-attempt to-return to — Greece and to

τοῖς οἰκείους, καὶ ἐπιδείξαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν,
the members-of-our-families, and to-show the Greeks,

ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν
that voluntarily they-are-poor, when-it-is-allowed them to-see

κομισαμένους ἐνθάδε πλουσίους, τοὺς
those) having-come hither rich, (but) — (those)

νῦν οἴκοι πολιτεύοντας ἐκεῖ σκληρῶς. Ἀλλὰ,
now at-home living there with-difficulty. But (why

γὰρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐστὶ δῆλον ὅτι, πάντα ταῦτα
more), for, O men, it-is evident that, all these

τάγαδ' αὖ τῶν κρατούντων. Δὴ
good (things belong to) the conquerors. 'It certainly

δεῖ λέγειν ταῦτο, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθα τε
'is-proper to-mention this, how 'we may 'proceed not-only

ὥς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ δέοι μάχεσθαι, ὥς
as safely-as-possible, but-also if it-be-necessary to-fight, that

μαχοίμεθα κράτιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν τοίῃν,
we-may-fight (to the) best-advantage. First indeed therefore

ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας,
said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-burn the carriages,

ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν μὴ
which we-have, in-order-that the cattle of-us 'may not

στρατηγῇ,
'be-the-leader-of-the-army, [in order that our baggage may not influence

ἀλλὰ πορευόμεθα ὅπη
the movements of our army], but (that) we-may-march whithersoever

ἂν συμφέρη τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἔπειτα καὶ
'it may 'be-convenient for-the army (to march); afterwards also

συγκατακαῦσαι τὰς σκηνάς. Γὰρ αὗται
to-'burn the tents 'with (them). For these

αὖ μὲν παρέχουσιν ὄχλον ἄγειν, δὲ συνωφε-
(tents) again — give trouble to-carry, |and contr-

λοῦσι οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι
save nothing — (either) to the to-fight [and are of ~

οὐτ' εἰς τὸ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
 use in battle] | or to the to-have — provisions [or in pro-
 ousing provisions]. Moreover — also let-us-get-rid-of the
 περιττὰ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν, πλὴν ὅσα
 superfluous (things) of — (our) other furniture, except what
 ἔχομεν ἐνεκεν πολέμου, ἢ σίτον ἢ ποτῶν, ἵνα
 we-have for-the-purpose of-war, or of-food, or of-drink, in-order-that
 ὥς πλείστοι ἡμῶν ὧσιν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις δὲ ὥς
 as many-as-possible of-us may-be under — arms and as
 ἐλάχιστα σκευοφορῶσι. Γὰρ μὲν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι
 few-as-possible may-carry-baggage. For indeed you-know that
 πάντα κρατουμένων ἀλλότρια.
 all (things) 'of (the) 'conquered (become the) property-of-others;
 δὲ ἢν κρατῶμεν δεῖ νομίζειν καὶ τοὺς
 and if we-conquer it-becomes (you) to-think (that) even the
 πολεμίους ἡμετέρους σκευοφόρους. Λοιπὸν
 enemy (are to be) our baggage-carriers. (It) remains
 μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ νομίζω εἶναι μέγιστον.
 for-me to-mention what 'I even 'consider to-be (of the) greatest
 Γὰρ ὁρᾶτε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅτι
 (importance). For you-see even the enemy, that
 οὐ ἐτόλμησαν πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν
 'they-did not 'dare first to-bring-on (the)
 πόλεμον πρὸς ἡμᾶς, πρὶν συνέλαβον τοὺς στρα-
 war against us, before they-had-seized the gene-
 τηγοὺς ἡμῶν, νομίζοντες μὲν ὄντων
 rals of-us, thinking (that) 'we indeed ('being) (having)
 τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ ἡμῶν πειδομένων
 — commanders, and we being-obedient (to them, that)
 ἡμᾶς εἶναι ἱκανοὺς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ.
 we were competent to-conquer in — battle;
 δε λαβόντες τοὺς ἀρχοντας ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς
 but taking — (our) commanders they-thought (that) we
 ἂν ἀπολέσθαι ἀναρχία καὶ ἀταξία. Οὐν
 would perish in-anarchy and confusion. Therefore

δεῖ μὲν τοὺς ἀρχοντας τοὺς νῦν
 it-is-proper — (that) the commanders — (our) present (commanders)
 γενέσθαι πολὺ ἐπιμελεστέρους τῶν
 so much more-vigilant (than) — (those who)
 πρόσθεν, δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους
 before (were commanders), and (that) the commanded (should be)
 πολὺ μᾶλλον εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειδομένους τοῖς
 much more orderly and obedient to-the
 ἀρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν. Δὲ ἥν τις ἀπει-
 commanders now than formerly. And if any-one might-be-disobe-
 δῇ, ἥν ψηφίσῃσθε τὸν ὑμῶν ἀεὶ ἐντυχ-
 dient, if you-decree (that) — (he) of-you at-any-time meet-
 χάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἀρχοντι κολάζειν,
 ing (such a one, is to assist) with the commander to-punish
 οὕτως οἱ πολέμοι ἔσονται πλεῖστον ἐψευς-
 (him), thus the enemy will-be very-much de-
 μένοι· γὰρ τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὄψονται
 ceived (in what they expected); for in-that — day they-will-see
 μυρίου Κλεάρχους ἀνδ' ἐνός, τοὺς ἐπιτρέ-
 ten-thousand Clearchuses in-place-of one, — (who) will-per-
 ψοντας οὐδενὶ εἶναι κακῶ. Ἀλλὰ
 mit no-one to-be bad (disobedient or cowardly). But
 γὰρ καὶ ἤδη ὧρα περαίνειν· γὰρ οἱ
 (enough), for (it is) even now time to-finish; for the
 πολέμοι ἴσως αὐτίκα παρέσονται. Ὅτι
 enemy 'will perhaps immediately 'be-present. To-whom
 οὖν δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἔχειν
 therefore it-may-seem | (that) these (things) hold (themselves)
 καλῶς ἐπικυρωσάτω
 well [that what I have said is just and reasonable] let-them-approve
 ὥς τάχιστα, ἵνα περαίνῃτα
 (them) as speedily-as-possible, in-order-that they-may-be-accomplishe
 ἔργω. Δὲ εἰ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτη.
 in-fact. But if any-thing else (is) better than this,
 καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης τολμάτω
 let-him (thought) even — (a) private (soldier) 'be-bold (enough)

διδάσκειν· γὰρ πάντες δεόμεθα κοινῆς
to-instruct (us); for 'we all 'seek (a) common
σωτηρίας.
safety.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν
After this Cheirisophus said: But if indeed

δεῖ τινος ἄλλου πρὸς τούτοις, οἷς
it-is-needed of-any-thing else for these (affairs), which

Ξενοφῶν λέγει, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται ποιεῖν·
Xenophon mentions, it-'will even speedily 'be-allowed-us to-do (it);

δὲ ἃ νῦν εἶρηκε, δοκεῖ μοι
and what he-'has now 'said, it-seems to-me (that we ought)

ψηφίσασθαι ὥς τάχιστα εἶναι ἄριστον· καὶ
to-vote as speedily-as-possible to-be the-best; and

δτῷ δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἀνατεινάτω τὴν
to-whom it-seems these (things to be right) let-him-hold-up —

χεῖρα. Ἄπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Δέ
(his) hand. All held-up (their hands). But

Ξενοφῶν πάλιν ἀναστὰς εἶπε· ὦ ἄνδρες,
Xenophon again rising said: O men,

ἀκούσατε ὧν δοκεῖ μοι πρὸς-
hear (me respecting that) which seems to-me to-be-necessary-

δεῖν. Δῆλον ὅτι δεῖ ἡμᾶς πορεῖν·
in-addition. (It is) evident that it-is-proper (that) we march-

εσθαι ὅπου ἐξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ ἀκούω
to where we-shall-have — provisions; and I-hear (that)

εἶναι καλὰς κώμας, οὐ πλεῖον
there-are (some) considerable villages, 'being not more (than)

εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. Ἄν οἶκ οἷν δαυ-
twenty stadia 'distant. 'I would not therefore 'won-

μάζοιμι, εἰ οἱ πολέμοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες,
der, if the enemy, like — cowardly dogs,

μὲν τε διώκουσι τοὺς παριόντας καὶ
indeed not-only follow — (those) passing-by but-also

δᾶκνουνσι, ἣν δύνωνται, δὲ φεύγουσι τοὺς
bite (them), if they-can, but flee-from — (those)

δύσκοντας, και εἰ αἱτοί
following (them), and (I would not be surprised) if they

ἐπακολουθοῦεν ἡμῖν ἀπιοῦσιν. Ἴσως οὖν
follow us departing. Perhaps therefore (it will be)

ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι ποιησαμένους
safer for-us to-march-forth having-formed (a hollow)

πλαίσιον τῶν ὀπλων, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα
square of-the heavy-armed-men, in-order-that the baggage,

καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος εἴη ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ.
and the many camp-followers may-be in the-greatest-safety (within it).

Εἰ νῦν οὖν ἀποδειχθεῖη, τίνα χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι
If now therefore it-should-be-designated, whom it-becomes to-lead

τοῦ πλαισίου, καὶ κοσμεῖν τὰ πρόσθεν,
the square, and to-regulate-and-arrange the front,

καὶ τίνας εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἐκατέρων πλευρῶν,
and who (are) to-be on — each flank,

δὲ τίνας ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν, ἂν οὐ δέοι,
and who are-to-take-charge-of-the-rear, 'it may not 'be-necessary, (that)

ἡμᾶς βουλευέσθαι ὅποτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν,
we deliberate (about this) when the enemy may-come,

ἀλλὰ ἂν εὐδὺς χρώμεθα τοῖς τεταγ-
but 'we might immediately 'make-use-of the (things) ar-

μένοις. Εἰ οὖν μὲν τις ἄλλος ὀρᾷ
ranged. If therefore indeed any-one else sees (something)

βέλτιον, ἐχέτω ἄλλως. Δὲ
better, | let-it-have-itself otherwise [let it be arranged otherwise]. But

εἰ μὴ, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείσθω, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐστὶ
if not, 'let Cheirisophus indeed 'lead, since also he-is

Λακεδαιμόνιος· δὲ δύο στρατηγῶ τῶν πρεσ-
(a) Lacedæmonian; but 'let two generals of-the old-

βυτάτων ἐπιμελείσθω ἐκατέρων τῶν πλευρῶν·
est (generals) 'take-charge of-each of-the flanks,

δὲ ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτεροι, τε ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίων,
and 'let us the younger, namely I and Timasias,

ὀπισθοφυλακῶμεν, τὸ νῦν εἶναι. Δὲ
'take-command-of-the-rear, | the now to-be [for the present]. And (for)

τὸ λοιπὸν, πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως, ἀεὶ
 the rest, having-tryed this — arrangement, always

βουλευσόμεθα ὅτι ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι
 (or at any time) we-can-consider what may seem to-be (the)

κράτιστον. Εἰ δὲ τις ὅρᾳ ἄλλο
 best. If indeed any-one perceives (any thing) else

βέλτιον, λεξάτω. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,
 better, let-him-mention (it). But when no-one objected,

εἶπε· Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνα-
 he-said: To-whom it-seems (that) these (things are right), let-him-

τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν
 hold-up — (his) hand. He-approved these (things). Now

τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπιόντας δεῖ ποιεῖν τὰ
 therefore, said-he, departing it-becomes (you) to-perform — (things

δεδογμένα· καὶ ὅστις τε
 that) have-seemed-good (and been determined on); and whoever --

ὑμῶν ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν τοὺς οἰκείους, μεμ-
 of-you desires to-see — (their) homes-and-families, let-him-

νήσδω εἶναι ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ· γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ τυχεῖν
 remember to-be (a) brave man; for it-is not to-obtain

τούτου ἄλλως·
 of-this otherwise; [for in no other manner can this be obtained];

ὅστις τε ἐπιθυμεῖ ζῆν, πειράσδω νικᾶν· γὰρ μὲν
 whoever — desires to-live, let-him-strive to-conquer; for indeed

τὸ κατακαίνειν ἐστὶ τῶν νικῶντων, δὲ
 the to-kill [killing] is (the part) of-the conquering, but

τὸ ἀποδνήσκειν τῶν ἡττωμένων· δὲ
 the to-die [dying] (is the part) of-the conquered; and

καὶ εἰ τις ἐπιθυμεῖ χρημάτων πειράσδω κρατεῖν·
 also if any-one desires property let-him-strive to-vanquish;

γὰρ ἐστὶ τῶν νικῶντων καὶ σώζειν
 for it-is (the part) of — (those) conquering also to-save

τὰ ἑαυτῶν, καὶ λαμβάνειν τὰ
 the (property belonging) to-themselves, and to-take the (property)

τῶν ἡττωμένων.
 of-the conquered.

CHAPTER III.

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
 THESE (things) having-been-spoken they-rose-up, and
 ἰπελδόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ἁμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς·
 departing they-burned the carriages and the tents;
 δὲ μὲν τῶν περιττῶν οὗτου τις δέοιτο,
 and indeed of-the superfluous-things of-which any-one might-want,
 μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, δὲ τὰ ἄλλα ἐρρίπτουν
 they-distributed-among one-another, but the rest they-threw
 εἰς τὸ πῦρ. Ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἡρίστοποι-
 into the fire. Having-done these (things) they-break-
 οὔντο. Δὲ ἀριστοποιουμένων Μιθραδάτης
 fasted. But (while) breakfasting Mithradates
 ἔρχεται σὺν ὡς τριάκοντα ἵππεῦσι, καὶ καλε-
 came with about thirty horsemen, and having-
 σάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει
 called the generals to (a) place-of-hearing he-speaks
 ὧδε· Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες, ἦν καὶ πιστὸς
 thus: I, O Grecian men, was even faithful
 Κύρῳ, ὅς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ νῦν εὖνους
 to-Cyrus, as you know, and (am) now well-disposed
 ὑμῖν· καὶ εἰμὶ ἐνθάδε διάγων σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ.
 to-you; and I-am here living with much fear.
 Εἰ οὖν ὁρώην ὑμᾶς βουλευομένους τι
 If therefore I-perceive (that) you are-concerting any-thing
 σωτήριον, ἂν ἔλθοιμι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ἔχων
 salutary, 'I might 'go to you, having (with me)
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς θεράποντας. Οὖν λέξατε
 also all — (my) followers. Therefore tell
 με τί ἔχετε ἐν νῷ ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνουν
 me what you-have in minⁱ as 'to (a) 'friend and also well-disposed

καὶ βουλόμενον ποιῆσαι τὸν στόλον
 (to you), and wishing to-make the march
 κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευομένοις
 in-common with you. The generals consulting-together
 ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ Χειρίσοφος
 it-seemed (best) to-have-answered thus; and Cheirisophus
 ἔλεγε· Δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, εἰ τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι
 spoke: It-seems (good) to-us, if any-one allows us to-depart
 οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χῶραν ὡς ἀσινέστατα
 for-home, to-proceed-through the country as harmlessly-as
 ἂν δυνώμεθα· δὲ ἥν τις ἀποκωλύῃ ἡμᾶς
 'we may 'be-able; but if any-one prohibit us
 τῆς ὁδοῦ, διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ ὡς
 the road, to-'fight (our way) 'against this-one as
 κράτιστα ἂν δυνώμεθα. Ἐκ τούτου Μιθραδάτης
 bravely-as 'we may 'be-able. On this Mithradates
 ἐπειρᾶτο διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἶη σωθῆναι
 endeavoured to-instruct (them) how impossible it-would-be to-be-saved
 βασιλέως ἀκοντος. Ἐνθα δὲ ἐγίγ-
 (the) king (being) unwilling. Hereupon indeed it-was-
 κώσκετο ὅτι εἶη ὑπόπεμπτos· γὰρ καὶ τις
 perceived that he-might-be insidiously-sent; for also some-one
 τῶν οἰκείων Τισσαφέρνους παρηκολούδει ἕνεκα
 of-the followers of-Tissaphernes attended for-the-sake-of
 πίστεως. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἔδοκει τοῖς
 (securing his) fidelity. And from this it-seemed to-the
 στρατηγοῖς εἶναι βέλτιον ποιήσασθαι δόγμα,
 commanders to-be best to-make (a) decree, (that)
 ἕστ' εἰεν ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ τὸν
 as-long-as they-might-be in the territory-of-the-enemy, (that) the
 πόλεμον εἶναι ἀκήρυκτον. Γὰρ προς-
 war (was) to-be without-heralds (and implacable). For coming-
 ὄντες διέφθειρον τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ
 to (them) they-were-corrupting the soldiers, and
 διέφθειραν γε ἓνα λοχαγόν Νίκαρχον
 they-corrupted at-least one captain (namely) Nicarchus (the)

Αρκάδα· καὶ ὤχρετο ἀπιὼν νυκτὸς
 Arcadian; | and he-went-away departing [and he went off] by-night
 σὺν ὡς εἴκοσι ἀνδράποισι.
 with about thirty men.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες, καὶ διαβάντες
 After this having-taken-their-first-meal, and having-crossed
 τὸν ποταμὸν Ζαπάταν, ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι
 the river Zapata, they-marched-forth drawn-up-in-order,
 ἔχοντες τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ.
 having the baggage-cattle and the camp-followers in (the) middle

Δὲ αὐτῶν οὐ προεληλυθότων πολὺ,
 (of the square). But they not having-gone far,
 ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν ἐπιφαίνεται ἔχων ὡς δια-
 — Mithradates again appeared having about two-
 κοσίους ἰππείας, καὶ ὡς τετρακοσίους τοξότας καὶ
 hundred horsemen, and about four-hundred archers and
 σφενδονήτας, μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους· καὶ
 slingers, very light and active; and
 προσήει μὲν ὡς ὢν φίλος πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλληνας.
 approached indeed as being (a) friend to the Greeks.

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, ἑξαπίνης οἱ μὲν
 But when he-was near, suddenly — (those) indeed
 αὐτῶν καὶ ἰππεῖς καὶ πεζοὶ ἐτόξευον,
 of-them both horse and foot commenced-discharging-arrows,

δ' οἱ ἐσφενδόνων, καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. Δὲ
 and — (others) slinging-stones, and wounded (our men). But

οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπασχον μὲν
 the rear-guard of-the Greeks suffered indeed

κακῶς, δ' ἀντεποιοῦν οὐδέν. Γὰρ
 badly, and could-'do nothing 'against (the enemy). For

τε οἱ Κρήτες ἐτόξευον βραχύτερα
 not-only 'did the Cretans 'shoot (their) 'arrows a-shorter-distance

τῶν Περσῶν, καὶ ἅμα ὄντες φιλοὶ
 (than) the Persians, but-also at-the-same-time being light-armed

κατεκέκλειντο εἰσὼ τῶν θπλων· οἱ ἀκοντισταὶ
 they-were-included within the heavy-armed-men; the javelin-men

τε ἡκόντιζον βραχύτερα ἢ ὥς ἐξικνεῖσθαι.
 indeed 'threw (their) 'javelins shorter than so-as to-reach
 τῶν σφενδονητῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει Ξενοφῶντι
 the slingers. Upon this it-seemed to-Xenophon
 εἶναι διωκτέον· καὶ οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν
 to-be necessary-to-pursue; and —(those)of-the heavy-armed-men
 καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν ἔτιχον σὺν αὐτῷ
 and of-the targeteers (who) happened (to be) with him
 ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες ἐδίωκον· δὲ διώκοντες κατε-
 guarding-the-rear pursued; but pursuing they-
 λάμβανον οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων. Γὰρ οὔτε ἦσαν
 overtook no-one of-the enemy. For neither were-there
 ἵππεις τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, οὔτε ἐδύναντο οἱ πεζοὶ
 horsemen to-the Greeks, nor could — (our) infantry
 καταλαμβάνειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ, τοὺς πεζοὺς
 overtake, in (a) small space, the infantry
 φεύγοντας ἐκ πολλοῦ· γὰρ
 (of the enemy) fleeing from (a) (much) (distance); for
 ἦν οὐχ οἷόν τε διώκειν πολὺ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου
 it-was not possible to-follow far from the rest (of the)
 στρατεύματος. Δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι ἵππεις καὶ ἅμα
 army. And the barbarian cavalry even while
 φεύγοντες ἐτίτρωσκον τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ
 fleeing wounded (our men) shooting-their-arrows from
 τῶν ἵππων εἰς τοῦπισθεν· δὲ ὅποσον οἱ Ἕλληνες
 the horses backwards; and as-much-as the Greeks
 προδιώξαιαν τοσοῦτον ἔδει πάλιν ἐπαναχω-
 advanced-in-pursuit so-much it-was-necessary again to-re-
 ρεῖν μαχομένους. Ὡστε τῆς ὅλης ἡμέρας
 treat fighting. So-that (during) the entire day
 οὐ διῆλθον πλεον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι
 they-'did not 'pass-through more (than) five and twenty
 σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δείλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς
 stadia, but late-in-the-afternoon they-arrived at the
 κώμας. Ἐνθα δὴ ἦν πάλιν ἀθυμία. Καὶ
 villages. Here truly there-was again dejection-of-mind. And

Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν
Cheirisophus and the oldest of-the generals

ἠτιῶντο Ξενοφῶντα, ὅτι ἐδίωκεν
blamed Xenophon, that he-pursued (the enemy), (departing)

ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ τε αὐτός ἐκινδύνευε
from the phalanx, and so-indeed he endangered

καὶ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατα βλάπτειν
(himself) and 'was none the-more 'able to-injure

τοὺς πολεμίους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ἔλεγεν
the enemy. But Xenophon having-heard (this) said

ὅτι ἠτιῶντο ὀρθῶς, καὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτὸ
that they-blamed (him) justly, and (that) the act itself

μαρτυροίη αὐτοῖς. Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη,
(in its results) bore-testimony for-them. But I, said-he,

ἀναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἑώραν ἡμᾶς μὲν
was-forced to-pursue, after I-saw (that) we indeec

ἐν τῷ μένειν πᾶσ-
|in the to-remain [in keeping our stations in the hollow square] were-

χοντας κακῶς, δὲ οὐ δυναμένους ἀντιποιεῖν. Δὲ
suffering badly, and not being-able to-retaliate. But

ἐπειδὴ ἐδίωκομεν, ἔφη, ἀληθῆ ὑμεῖς
when we-pursued, said-he, (the things were) true (as) you

λέγετε· γὰρ μὲν ἐδυνάμεθα ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον
say; for indeed we-were-able to-do not-any more

κακῶς τοὺς πολεμίους, δὲ ἀνεχωροῦμεν πάνυ
injury (to) the enemy, but we-returned very

χαλεπῶς. Χάρις οὖν τοῖς θεοῖς ὅτι οὐκ
difficulty. Thanks therefore to-the gods, that they-'did not

ἦλθον σὺν πολλῇ βῶμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις,
'come with (a) great force but (only) with (a) few

ὥστε μὲν μὴ βλάψαι μεγάλα, δὲ
(troops), so-as indeed not to-have-injured (us) much, and (yet;

δηλῶσαι ὧν δεόμεθα. Γὰρ νῦν μὲν οἱ
to-have-shown (us) what we-needed. For now indeed the

πολέμοι τοξέουσιν καὶ σφενδονῶσιν
enemy 'shoot (their) 'arrows and sling-stones

ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρηῖτες δύνανται ἀντιτοξεύειν,
 'so (far) 'as (that) neither the Cretans are-able to-shoot-back,
 οὔτε οἱ βάλλοντες ἐκ χειρὸς ἐξικνεῖσθαι,
 nor — (those) throwing from (the) hand (are able) to-reach,
 δὲ ὅταν διώκωμεν αὐτούς, μὲν οὐχ οἷόν τε
 and when we-pursue them, (it is) indeed not proper —
 διώκειν πολὺ χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος,
 to-follow (a) great distance from the army,
 δὲ οἷδ' ἐν ὀλίγῳ, εἰ ταχύς πεζὸς
 but neither in (a) small (space), if (ever so) swift (the) foot-soldier
 εἴη, ἂν διώκων καταλάβοι πεζὸν
 might-be, could 'he pursuing 'overtake (a) foot-soldier | (he be-
 ἐκ ῥύματος τόξον.
 ing distant) from (the) drawing 'of (a) 'bow [starting from the
 Εἰ οὖν ἡμεῖς μέλλομεν
 distance of a bow-shot from him]. If therefore we intend
 εἰργεῖν τούτους, ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι
 to-keep-off these (our enemies), so-as not to-be-able
 βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, δεῖ τὴν τα-
 to-hurt us marching-forth, it-is-necessary — as-
 χίστην τε σφενδονητῶν καὶ ἱππέων.
 speedily-as-possible (to procure) not-only slingers but-also cavalry.
 Ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν
 I-hear indeed (that) there-are in the army of-us
 Ῥοδίους, φασιν τοὺς πολλοὺς ὧν ἐπίστασθαι
 Rhodians, they-say (that) the great-part-of-them know
 σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ
 (how) to-use-the-sling, and (that) the weapon of-them also
 φέρεσθαι διπλάσιον τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν.
 carries double (the distance) of-the Persian slings.
 Γὰρ ἐκεῖναι διὰ σφενδονᾶν τοῖς λίθοις
 For these (Persian slings) on-account-of slinging — stones
 χειροπληθέσι ἐξικνοῦνται ἐπὶ βραχὺ·
 filling-the-hands reach (only) to (a) short (distance);
 δὲ γε οἱ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ἐπιστανται χρῆσθαι
 but — the Rhodians even know (how) to-use

μολυβδίσιν. Ἦν οὖν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες αὐτῶν
 leaden-bullets. If then we-ascertain which-ones of-them
 πέπαινται σφενδόνας, καὶ μὲν δῶμεν ἀργύριον
 have-acquired slings, and (that) indeed we-give money
 τούτῳ αὐτῶν, δὲ τῷ ἐθέλοντι πλέκειν
 to-that-one for-them, and — (to him) willing to-plot
 ἄλλας τελῶμεν ἄλλο ἀργύριον, καὶ τῷ
 other (slings) we-might-give other money, and — (for him)
 ἐθέλοντι σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ
 willing to-use-the-sling in the rank-or-place-assigned-to (him)
 εὑρίσκωμεν τινὰ ἄλλην ἀτέλειαν, ἴσως τινὲς
 we-may-find some other privileges, probably some
 ἱκανοὶ ὠφελεῖν ἡμᾶς φανοῦνται.
 capable to-aid us will-appear (and offer their services).
 Δὲ καὶ ὁρῶ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι,
 And also I-see horses (being) in the army,
 τοὺς τινὰς μὲν παρ' ἐμοί δὲ τοὺς
 — some indeed (are) with me and — (others)
 καταλελειμμένους τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, δὲ καὶ πολλοὺς
 left by — Clearchus, and also many
 ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. Ἄν
 others taken-from-the-enemy (used in) carrying-baggage. If
 οὖν ἐκλέξαντες πάντας τούτους, μὲν
 therefore, collecting all these (horses), 'we indeed
 ἀντιδῶμεν σκευοφόρα, δὲ κατασκευάσωμεν
 'give-in-place (of them) ordinary-baggage-cattle, and equip
 τοὺς ἵππους εἰς ἱππέας, ἴσως καὶ οὗτοι ἀνιάσουσι
 the horses for cavalry, perhaps even these will-annoy
 τι τοὺς φεύγοντας. Ταῦτα
 somewhat the (enemy) fleeing. | (Respecting) these (things)
 ἔδοξε. Καὶ τῆς ταύτης
 it-seemed-right. [These things were approved of.] And the same
 νικτὸς μὲν ἐγένοντο σφενδονῆται εἰς
 night indeed there-became slingers to (the number of)
 διακοσίους, δὲ καὶ τῇ ἰστεραία ἵπποι δὲ καὶ
 two-hundred, and also on-the next-day horses and also

ἵππεις εἰς πεντήκοντα ἐδοκιμίσθησαν,
 horsemen to (the number of) fifty were-judged-fit
 καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες ἐπορίσθησαν
 (for service), and leathern-jackets and breastplates were-provided
 αὐτοῖς· καὶ Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος
 for-them and Lycius the son-of-Polystратus (the) Athenian
 δε ἐπεστάδῃ ἵππαρχος.
 'was also 'appointed (their) commander.

CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ μείναντες τὴν ταύτην ἡμέραν, τῇ αὐτῇ
 AND halting for — that-same day, on-the next
 ἀναστάντες πρωϊαίτερον ἐπορεύοντο·
 (day) rising-up earlier-in-the-morning (than usual) they-marched-forth;
 γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι χάρα-
 for it-was-necessary (that) they should-cross (a) ravine-formed-
 δραν, ἐφ' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι
 by-a torrent, at which they-were-afraid lest the enemy
 ἐπιδοῖντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσι. Δὲ αὐτοῖς διαβε-
 might-attack them crossing-over. But they having-
 βηκόσιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν φαίνεται ἔχων
 crossed-over — Mithradates again appeared having (a)
 χιλίους ἵππείας δὲ καὶ τοξότας σφενδονήτας
 thousand horsemen and also archers (and) slingers
 εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· γὰρ ἤτησε Τισσα-
 to (the number of) four-thousand; for he-solicited Tissa-
 φέρνην τοσούτους, καὶ ἔλαβεν, ὑποσχόμενος
 phernes (for) so-many, and obtained (them), promising
 ἂν λάβῃ τούτους, παραδώσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
 if-'he should 'receive these, to-deliver the Greeks
 αὐτῷ, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι, ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν
 to-him, having-despised (them), because, in the former
 προσβολῇ ἔχων ὀλίγους ἔπαδε μὲν οὐδέν,
 attack having (only) few (men) he-suffered indeed no (loss).

δὲ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι πολλὰ κακὰ
 and thought (that) he-had-occasioned (them) much annoyance
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες
 When indeed the Greeks 'having (now) 'crossed (the ra-
 vine, and) were-distant from-the ravine about eight sta-
 δίους, καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης διέβαινεν ἔχων τὴν
 dia, also — Mithradates crossed-over having the
 δύναμιν. Δὲ παρήγγελο τε
 force (above mentioned). And instructions-had-been-given not-only
 τῶν πελταστῶν, καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν,
 (to those) of-the targeteers, but-also (to those) of-the heavy-armed-men,
 οὓς ἔδει διώκειν, καὶ εἶρητο τοῖς ἵππευσι
 whom it-became to-pursue, and-also it-was-told to-the horsemen
 διώκειν θάρροῦσι, ὥς ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως ἔφε-
 to-pursue being-confident-and-bold, as (a) sufficient force would
 ψομένης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατεῖλήφει.
 be-following (them). When indeed — Mithradates had-overtaken
 καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα
 (them), and already (the) slings and arrows
 ἐξικοῦντο ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι
 began-to-reach (them) (then) the-signal-was-given to-the Greeks
 τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθὺς, οἷς εἶρητο,
 with-the trumpet, and directly 'they, of-whom it-was-requested,
 ἔδεον ὁμοσε, καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἤλαυνον.
 'ran there (to meet the enemy), and the cavalry charged;
 δὲ οἱ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο ἀλλ' ἔφευγον
 but the (enemy) 'did not 'receive (them) but fled
 ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. Ἐν τῇ ταύτῃ διώξει τε
 to the ravine. In — this pursuit not-only
 πολλοὶ τῶν πεζῶν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀπέθανον,
 many of-the foot-soldiers (of) the barbarians died,
 καὶ ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ἐλήφθησαν ζωὴ εἰς
 but-also in the ravine were-taken alive to (the number of)
 ὀκτωκαίδεκα τῶν ἵππέων. Οἱ Ἕλληνες δὲ
 eig-teen of-the horsemen. The Greeks indee-

αὐτοκέλευστοι ἤκισαντο τοὺς ἀποδανόντας, ὡς
of-their-own-accord mutilated the dying, so

ὅτι εἴη φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄραν.
that it-might-be most-frightful for-the enemy to-see.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμοι πράξαντες οὕτω ἀπῆλθον·
And indeed the enemy having-fared thus departed;

δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πορευόμενοι ἀσφαλῶς τὸ λοιπὸν
but the Greeks proceeding safely (for) the rest

τῆς ἡμέρας, ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Τίγρητα.
of-the day, arrived at the river Tigris.

Εἰταῦδα ἦν μεγάλη ἐρήμη πόλις, δ'
Here there-was (a) large deserted city, and (the)

ὄνομα αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισσα· δὲ Μῆδοι τὸ παλαιὸν
name to-it was Larissa; and (the) Medes — formerly

ῥοκουν αὐτήν. Τὸ εὖρος δὲ τοῦ τείχους αὐτῆς
inhabited it. The breadth indeed of-the wall of-it

ἦν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, δ' ὕψος ἑκατόν·
was five and twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred;

ἡ περίοδος δὲ τοῦ κύκλου δύο παρασάγγαι·
the circuit indeed of-the enclosure (was) two parasangs;

ῥοκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνδοις κεραμίαις· δ' ὑπῆν
it-was-built — of-bricks made-of-clay; and there-was-under (it)

λιθίνη κρηπίς τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν.
(a) stone foundation the height (of it being) twenty feet.

Ὁ βασιλεὺς Περσῶν, ὅτε Πέρσαι ἐλάμβανον
The king 'of (the) 'Persians, when (the) Persians were-wresting

τὴν ἀρχὴν παρὰ Μήδων, πολιορκῶν ταύτην,
the empire from (the) Medes, besieging this (city),

ἐδύνατο οὐδενὶ πρόπῳ ἐλεῖν· δὲ νεφέλη
could in-no manner take (it); but (a) cloud

προκαλίψασα ἥλιον ἠφάνισε, μέχρι οἱ ἄνθρωποι
having-covered (the) sun made-it-disappear, until the people

ἐξέλιπον, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. Παρὰ ταύτην
deserted (it), and so it-was-taken. Near this

τὴν πόλιν ἦν λιθίνη πυραμὶς, τὸ εὖρος
— city there-was (a) stone pyramid, the breadth

μεν ἑνὸς πλέθρου, δὲ τὸ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων.
indeed (of it was) of-one plethra, and the height of-two plethra.

Ἐπὶ ταύτης ἦσαν πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων
On this (pyramid) there were many of-the barbarians
ἀποπεφευγότες ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν πλησίον. Ἐντεῦθεν
having-fled from the villages near. Hence

ἐπορεύθησαν ἓνα σταδμόν, ἕξ παρασάγγας,
they-proceeded one day's-march, (making) six parasanga,

πρὸς μέγα ἔρημον τεῖχος, κείμενον πρὸς τῇ
to (a) large deserted fortress, situated near — (a)

πόλει· δὲ ὄνομα τῇ πόλει ἦν Μέσπιλα·
city; and (the) name (to-the) (of the) city was Mespila;

δὲ Μῆδοι ποτε ὥκουν αὐτήν. Δὲ ἡ κρητὶς
and (the) Medes formerly inhabited it. And the foundation

μὲν ἦν ξεστοῦ λίθου κονχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος
indeed was of-polished stone (full of) shells, the breadth

πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ ὕψος
(thereof was) fifty feet, and the height

πεντήκοντα. Ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπωκοδόμητο
fifty (feet). On — this was-constructed (a)

πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ εὖρος μὲν πενήκοντα
brick wall, the breadth indeed (thereof being) fifty

ποδῶν, δὲ τὸ ὕψος ἑκατόν· δὲ ἡ περίοδος τοῦ
feet, and the height a-hundred; and the circuit of-the

κύκλου ἕξ παρασάγγαι. Ἐν τῷδ' αὖ Μηδία
enclosure (was) six parasangs. Here Media (the)

γυνὴ βασιλέως ἐλέγετο καταφυγόντων δὲ Μῆδοι
wife 'of (the) 'king it-is-said took-refuge when (the) Medes

ἀπώλεσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν. Δὲ ὁ
were-deprived (of) the empire by (the) Persia. But the

βασιλεὺς Περσῶν πολιορκῶν ταύτην πόλιν
king 'of (the) 'Persians besieging this city 'was

οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν οὔτε χρόνῳ, οὔτε βίᾳ·
not 'able to-take (it) either by-length-of-time, or by-force

ὃς Ζεὺς ποιεῖ τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἐμβροντήτους,
 but Jupiter made the inhabitants (as it were) thunder-struck,
 καὶ οὕτως ἔάλω.
 and so (the place) was-taken.

*Εντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἓνα σταδμόν,
 Hence — they-proceeded one day's-march, (making
 τέτταρας παρασάγγας. Εἰς δὲ τοῦτον τὸν
 four parasangs. In — this —

σταδμόν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνε, ἔχων τε
 day's-march Tissaphernes appeared, having not-only (the,
 ἰππίας οὓς αὐτὸς ἦλθε, καὶ τὴν δύναμιν
 cavalry (with) which he came, but-also the force

*Ορόντου τοῦ ἔχοντος τὴν θυγατέρα
 of-Orontes — (he) having (with him) the daughter

βασιλέως, καὶ ἔχων βαρβάρους
 'of (the) 'king (in marriage), and having (the) barbarians

οὓς Κῦρος ἀνέβη, καὶ ἔχων οὓς ὁ
 whom Cyrus went-up (with), and having (the troops) which the

ἀδελφὸς βασιλέως ἐβοήθει βασιλεῖ, καί,
 brother 'of (the) 'king assisted (the) king (with), and,

πρὸς τούτοις, ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ.
 besides these, as-many-as (the) king had-given him;

ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα ἐφάνη πάμπολυ. Δ'
 so-that the army appeared exceeding y (large). But

ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, μὲν καταστήσας τὰς
 when he-came near, (then) indeed having-placed — (some)

τῶν τάξεων ὀπισθεν εἶχε, δὲ παρα-
 of — (his) ranks in-the-rear he-kept (them there), but lead-

γαγὼν τὰς ἐμβάλλειν εἰς τὰ
 ing — (others) (obliquely) to-throw (them) to the

πλάγια, μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ'
 flanks, (though) indeed he-'did not 'dare (to attack) nor

ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεῖν. δὲ παρήγγειλε
 did-he-wish to-risk (any thing); but he-ordered

σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
 (his men) to-use-their-slings and bows. When indeed the

Ῥόδιοι διαταχθέντες ἐσφενδόνησαν, καὶ οἱ Σκύ-
 Rhodians dispersed-along-the-ranks used-their-slings, and the Sey-
 θαι τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν
 thian archers used-their-bows, | and no-one failed 'of (a)
 ἀνδρός, (γὰρ οὐδὲ εἰ
 'man, [no one failed to hit a man], (for neither if he 'had
 πάνυ προθυμοῖτο ἦν ῥάδιον,) καὶ ὁ Τις
 very-much 'desired (to do so) was-it easy,) and — Tis-
 σαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἀπεχώρει ἔξω βελῶν,
 saphernes very speedily retreated beyond (the) missiles,
 καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν.
 and the other divisions (of the Persians) (also) retreated.
 Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύ-
 And the rest of-the day the (Greeks) indeed continued
 οντο, δ' οἱ εἶποντο· καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι
 their-march, and the (enemy) followed; and the barbarians
 οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο τότε τῇ ἀκροβολίσει·
 no-longer harassed (them) then with — (their) skirmishing
 γὰρ οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνων μακρότερον τῶν
 for the Rhodians threw-stones farther (than) the
 Περσῶν καὶ πλείστων τοξοτῶν. Δὲ καὶ τὰ
 Persians, and the-most of-the-bowmen. And also the
 τόξα, τὰ Περσικά, ἐστί μεγάλα· ὥστε ὅποσα
 bows, (namely) the Persian, are large; so-that as-many
 τῶν τοξευμάτων ἀλίσκοιτο ἦν χρήσιμα τοῖς
 of-the arrows as-were-taken (up) were useful to-the
 Κρηδοί· καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τοξεύμασι
 Cretans, and they-continued using the arrows
 τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες
 of-the enemy, | and they-practised shooting upwards going
 μακράν.
 far [and they practised shooting these arrows high into the air]
 Δὲ καὶ εὗρίσκετο πολλὰ νεῦρα ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,
 And also they-found many bow-strings in the villages
 καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας.
 also 'lead, so-as to-be-used for the slings.

Καὶ μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 And indeed on-that — day, when the Greeks
 ἐπιτυχόντες κώμαις κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο, οἱ
 arriving 'at (the) 'villages encamped, the
 βάρβαροι ἀπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τότε μείον ἐν τῇ
 barbarians departed, having then the-worst in the
 ἀκροβολίσσει· δὲ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν οἱ Ἕλληνες
 skirmish; but on-the following day the Greeks
 ἔμειναν, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· γὰρ ἦν πολὺς σίτος
 remained, and collected-provisions; for there-was much corn
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο
 in the villages. But on-the next-day they-marched
 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνας εἶπετο ἀκροβο-
 through the plain, and Tissaphernes followed throwing-
 λίζομενος. Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν,
 at-them-from-a-distance. Here indeed the Greek perceived,
 ὅτι πλαισίον ἰσόπλευρον εἴη πονηρὰ τάξις,
 that (a) column of-equal-sides was (a) bad arrangement,
 πολεμίων ἐπομένων. Γὰρ ἦν μὲν τὰ κέρατα
 the) enemy following. For if indeed the wings
 τοῦ πλαισίου συγκύπτῃ, ἢ ὁδοῦ οὔσης
 (or flanks) of-the square close-together, or (the) road being
 στενωτέρας, ἢ ὀρέων ἀναγκαζόντων, ἢ γεφύρας,
 narrow, or mountains forcing, or (a) bridge
 ἔοτιν ἀνάγκη τοῦς ὀπλίτας
 to be passed), it is a-necessity (that) the heavy-armed-men
 ἐκθλίβεσθαι, καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως,
 be-pushed-out-of-these places, and march with-difficulty,
 ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, δὲ καὶ ἅμα
 at-the-same-time indeed (being) pressed-upon, and also at-the-same-time
 παραττομένους· ὥστε ἐνάγκη εἶναι
 thrown-into-confusion; so-that (from) necessity (they were) to-be
 δυσχρήστους, ὃντας ἀτάκτους. Δ' αὖ ὅταν τὰ
 useless, being in-confusion. And again when the
 κέρατα διασχῇ, ἀνάγκη τότε τοῦς ἐκθλι-
 wings divide, it-is-necessary then (that) — (those) pushed

βομένους διασπᾶσθαι, καὶ τὸ μέσον
 out-of-their-places 'be (now) 'drawn-asunder, and the middle
 τῶν κεράτων γίνεσθαι κενόν, καὶ τοὺς
 (between) the wings becomes empty, and —
 ταῦτα πάσχοντας ἄδυμειν, τῶν
 (those) 'being thus 'affected must-become-dispirited, the
 πολεμίων ἐπομένων. Καὶ ὅποτε δέοι
 enemy following (them). And whenever it-might-be-necessary
 διαβαίνειν γέφυραν ἢ τινὰ ἄλλην διάβασιν,
 to-go-over (a) bridge or any other crossing-place,
 ἕκαστος ἔσπευδε βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος·
 each-one hastened desiring to-have-arrived the-first;
 καὶ ἦν ἐνταῦθα εὐεπίδετον τοῖς πολεμίοις.
 and there-was here a-fine-opportunity-of-attack for-the enemy.
 Δ' ἐπεὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔγνωσαν ταῦτα, ἐποίησαν
 But when the generals knew this, they-formed
 ἕξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ ἐπέστησαν
 six companies each-of a-hundred men, and they-appointed
 λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἄλλους πεντη-
 captains (over these) and (they appointed) others command-
 κοντῆρας, καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχας.
 ing-fifty (men), and others commanding-five-and-twenty (men).
 Οὗτοι λοχαγοὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι,
 These captains indeed (with their companies) on-the-march,
 ὅποτε μὲν τὰ κέρατα συγκύπτει,
 whenever indeed the wings (or flanks of the square) closed,
 ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι, ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι,
 remained behind, so-as not to-disturb the flanks,
 δὲ τότε παρῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων.
 and then | they-led-on [defiled] outside the flanks.
 Δὲ ὅποτε αἱ πλευраὶ τοῦ πλαισίου διάσχοιεν
 But whenever the flanks of-the square might-open
 ἀνεξέπιμπλασαν τὸ μέσον, εἰ μὲν τὸ διέχον εἴη
 they-filled-up the middle, if indeed the separating was
 στενότερον κατὰ λόχους· δὲ εἰ πλατύτερον κατὰ
 narrow by companies; but if somewhat-wide by

πεντηκοστῷ, δὲ εἰ πάλιν πλατὺ κατ' ἐνωμοτίας
 fifties, and if very wide by twenty-fives.
 ὥστε τὸ μέσον αἰεὶ εἶναι ἑκπλεων. Εἰ δὲ καὶ
 so-as (for) the middle always to-be full. If indeed also
 δέοι διαβαίνειν τινὰ διάβασιν ἢ
 it-might-be-necessary to-go-through any passage-or-crossing or (over a)
 ἑφύραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ
 bridge, they-'were not 'thrown-into-confusion, but the captains
 διέβαινον ἐν τῷ μέρει· καὶ εἰ
 (with their companies) went-over in — succession; and if
 τι δέοι που τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗτοι
 any-thing was-wanted any-where (in) the phalanx, these
 ἐπιπαρήσαν. Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν
 were-at-hand. In-this — order they-proceeded
 τέτταρας σταδμοῦς. Δὲ ἥνικα ἐπορεύοντο τοῖ·
 four days'-march. But when they-were-proceeding on-the
 πέμπτον, εἶδον τι βασίλειον, καὶ περὶ
 fifth (day's march), they-saw a-kind-of palace, and around
 αὐτὸ πολλάς κώμας, δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν πρὸς
 it (there were) many villages, and the road to
 τὸ τοῦτο χωρίον γιγνομένην διὰ ὑψηλῶν γηλόφων,
 — this place lying over high hills,
 οἱ καθήκον ἀπὸ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ
 which reached-down from (a) mountain at (the foot of) which was the
 κώμη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἄσμενοι εἶδον τοὺς
 village. And indeed the Greeks rejoicing saw the
 γηλόφους, ὥς εἰκός, τῶν πολεμίων
 hills, as (was) natural, (the forces) of-the enemy
 ὄντων ἱππέων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ
 being cavalry. When indeed proceeding from the
 πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν τρῶτον γήλοφον, καὶ
 plain they-ascended on-to the first hill, and (then)
 κατέβαινον ὥς ἀναβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον.
 they-commenced-descending so-as to-ascend on-to the next
 Ἐνταῦθα οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπίγιγονται, καὶ ἀπὸ
 Here the barbarians came-upon (them), and from

τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ ἔβαλλον εἰς τὸ πμνές,
 the high (ground) they-threw to the places-below, (and)
 ἐσφενδύκων ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων. Καὶ
 used-their-slings (and) shot-their-arrows, under (the) lash. And
 ἐτίτρωσκον πολλοὺς καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν γυμ-
 they-wounded many, and they-had-the-advantage-of-the light-
 νήτων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἰσω
 armed Greeks, and 'shut them 'up within
 τῶν ὀπλων, ὥστε ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ
 the heavy-armed-men, so-that on-that — (same) day both
 οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἦσαν παντάπασι
 the slingers and the archers were entirely
 ἄχρηστοι, ὄντες ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ. Δέ
 useless, being among the crowd (of camp-followers). But
 ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες πιεζόμενοι ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν
 when the Greeks hard-pressed attempted to-pursue
 μὲν ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον σχολῇ, ὄντες
 indeed they-arrived at the summit (but) slowly, being
 ὀπλῖται, δὲ οἱ πολέμοιοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. Δέ
 heavy-armed, but the enemy speedily sprang-down. And
 πάλιν, ὅποτε ἠτίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα,
 again, when they-went-back to the rest (of the) army,
 ἔπασχον ταῦτά· καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου
 they-suffered the-same; and at the second hill
 ταῦτά ἐγίνετο· ὥστε ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ
 the-same-things occurred, so-that it-seemed (proper) to-them not
 κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου,
 to-move the soldiers from the third hill.
 πρὶν ἀνήγαγον πελταστάς ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς
 before they-had-led-up targeteers from the right flank
 τοῦ πλαισίου πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι
 of-the square on-to the mountain. When indeed these
 ἰγείντο ἵπερ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οἱ πολέμοιοι
 had-got above the pursuing enemy, the enemy
 οὐκέτι ἐτετίδεντο τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδο-
 no-longer attacked the (Greeks) descending, having

κότες μὴ ἀποτμηθεῖσαν, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
 feared lest they-might-be-cut-off, and the enemy [the Greeks]
 γένοιτο αὐτῶν ἀμφοιέρωθεν. Πορευ-
 might-be-on them [the Persians] from-both-sides. March-
 ὄμενοι οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας, οἱ μὲν
 ng thus for-the rest of-the day, — (some) indeed
 τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ
 on-the road over the hills, — (others) however
 ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὸ ὄρος, ἀφίκοντο εἰς
 marching-along (them) over the mountain, they-arrived at
 τὰς κώμας, καὶ κατέστησαν ὀκτὼ ἰατροὺς· γὰρ
 the villages, and they-appointed eight surgeons; for
 ἦσαν πολλοὶ τετρωμένοι.
 there-were many wounded.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἔνεκα
 Here they-remained three days, both on-account
 τῶν τετρωμένων, καὶ εἶχον ἅμα
 of-the wounded, and (because) they-had at-the-same-time
 πολλὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, καὶ πολλὰς
 much provisions, (namely) wheat-flour, wine, and much
 κριθὰς συμβεβλημένας ἵπποις. Δὲ ταῦτα
 barley having-been-laid-up for-horses. For this (barley)
 ἦν συνενηνεγμένα τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς
 was collected for-the (person) being-satrap of-the
 χώρας. Δὲ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταβαίνουσιν εἰς
 country. But on-the-fourth day they-went-down to
 τὸ πεδίον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης κατέλαβεν
 the plain. When however Tissaphernes overtook
 αὐτοὺς σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἡ ἀνάγκη ἐδίδαξεν
 them with — (his) force, — necessity taught
 αὐτοὺς κατασκηνῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην,
 them to-encamp where first they-saw (a) village,
 καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· γὰρ ἦσαν
 and not to-march-on still fighting; for there-were
 πολλοὶ ἀπόμαχοι, οἱ τετρωμένοι, καὶ
 many unfit-for-action, (namely) — (those) wounded, and

οἱ φέροντες ἐκείνους καὶ οἱ δεξά-
 — (those) carrying those (wounded), and — (those) having-re-
 μενοι τα ὅπλα τῶν φερόντων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 received the arms of — (those) carrying. When indeed
 κατεσκήνησαν, καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι προσιόντες πρὸς
 they-encamped, and the barbarians coming-up to
 τὴν κώμην ἐπεχείρησαν ἀκροβολίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,
 the village attempted to-skirmish with-them,
 οἱ Ἕλληνες πολὺ περιῆσαν· γὰρ διέφερε
 the Greeks 'had greatly 'the-advantage; for it-differed
 πολὺ ὀρμῶντες ἐκ χώρας ἀλέξασθαι,
 much (that) rushing from (their own) ground they-repelled
 ἢ πορευόμενοι μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολε-
 (an attack), or (that) marching-along they-fought the ene-
 μίοις ἐπιούσι. Ἠνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δει-
 my coming-upon (them). When indeed it-was now late-in-the
 λη, ἦν ὥρα τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπιέναι· γὰρ οἱ
 afternoon, it-was time for-the enemy to-depart; for the
 βάρβαροι οὐποτε ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο μείων
 barbarians never encamped at-a-less (distance
 τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβοῦ-
 from-the Grecian (camp) (than) sixty stadia, fear-
 μενοι μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδῶνται αὐτοῖς τῆς
 ing lest the Greeks might-attack them (in) the
 νυκτός. Γὰρ Περσικόν στράτευμα ἐστὶ πονηρὸν
 night. For (a) Persian army is (a) miserable
 νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς
 (thing) at-night; for not-only 'are — (their) horses —
 δέδενται, καὶ ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι
 'tied, but-also (as) for the most (part) have-been-tied-by-
 εἰς ἐνεκα τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν
 the-feet | on-account the not to-run-away [to prevent them -unning
 εἰ λυθείσαν· εἰάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται,
 away] if they-were-let-loose, if also any alarm should-occur,
 δεῖ Πέρση ἀνδρὶ ἐπισάξαι
 it-becomes-necessary 'for (the) 'Persian man to-put-the-housings

τὸν ἵππὸν, καὶ δεῖ χαλινῶσαι, καὶ
on-the horse, and it-is-necessary to-bridle (him), and
θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Δὲ
having-put-on-armor to-mount on the horse. But

πάντα ταῦτα χαλεπὰ ποιεῖν νύκτωρ,
all these (things) (are) difficult to-perform by-night,
καὶ δυντος θορύβου. Ὕνεκα
[and there-being (an) alarm [when there is an alarm]. On-account

τούτου ἀπεσκήνουν πόρρω τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
of-this they-encamped-at-a-distance far-from the Greeks.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγίνωσκον αὐτοὺς
But when the Greeks knew (that) they

βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους,
were-desiring to-depart and announcing (the same),

ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι, τῶν
it-was-proclaimed to-the Greeks to-collect-their-baggage, the

πολεμίων ἀκουόντων. Καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν
enemy hearing (it). And the barbarians indeed

τινα χρόνον ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας· δὲ ἐπειδὴ
for-some time retarded the march; but when

ἐγίνετο ὅψ' ἀπήεσαν. Γὰρ οὐκ ἐδόκει
it-became late they-went-away. For it-'did not 'seem

λυσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι, καὶ κατάγεσθαι
to-be-expedient to-them to-march, and arrive

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτός. Ὕπειδ' δὲ οἱ
at the camp by-night. When indeed the

Ἕλληνες ἤδη ἑώραν σαφῶς ἀπιόντας, καὶ
Greeks now saw (them) evidently departing, also

αὐτοὶ ἀναξεύξαντες, καὶ διήλδον ὅσοι
they-themselves having-decamped, even passed-over as-much-as

ἑξήκοντα σταδίους. Καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον
sixty stadia. And there-became such (an)

μεταξύ τῶν στρατευμάτων, ὥστε τῇ ἑσπε-
interval (between) the armies, that on-the next

ραία οἱ πολέμοι οὐκ ἐφάνησαν, οὐδὲ τῇ
day the enemy 'did not 'appear, nor on-the

τρίτη· δὲ τῇ τετάρτῃ οἱ βάρβαροι προελθόντες
 third; but on-the fourth the barbarians having-gone-forward
 νυκτὸς καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον,
 in-the-night occupied (a) place above-on-the-right,
 ἣ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔμελλον παριέναι ἀκρωνυχίον
 by-which the Greeks had to-pass on-the-brow
 ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἦν ἡ κατάβασις εἰς
 'of (the) 'mountain, beneath which was the descent to
 τὸ πεδίον. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ Χειρίσοφος ἑώρα τὴν
 the plain. But when Cheirisophus saw the
 ἀκρωνυχίαν προκατειλημμένην, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα
 eminence pre-occupied, he-calls-for Xenophon
 ἀπὸ τῆς οἰράς, καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς
 from the rear, and orders (him that) taking the
 πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. Ὁ δὲ
 targeteers to-advance to the front. — But
 Ξενοφῶν μὲν οὐκ ἤγε τοὺς πελταστὰς, (γὰρ
 Xenophon indeed 'did not 'bring the targeteers, (for
 ἑώρα Τισσαφέρνην ἐπιφαινόμενον, καὶ πᾶν τὸ
 he-saw Tissaphernes appearing, and all — (his)
 στράτευμα,) αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἡρώτα· Τί
 army,) he-himself indeed having-ridden-up inquired: Why
 καλεῖς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει αὐτῷ· Ἐξεστίν
 do-you-call (me)? But — (Cheirisophus) said to-him: You-may
 ὁρᾶν· γὰρ ὁ λόφος ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως προκα-
 see; for the eminence above the descent has-been-
 τείληπται ἡμῖν, καὶ ἔστι οὐ παρελθεῖν,
 pre-occupied against-us, and it-is not (possible) to-pass ('t),
 εἰ μὴ ἀποκόψομεν τούτους Ἀλλὰ τί
 — unless we-cut-off those (on it). But why did-'you
 οὐκ ἤγες τοὺς πελταστὰς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει,
 not 'bring the targeteers? But — (Xenophon) replies,
 ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν
 that it-'did not 'seem-right to-him to-leave the rear
 ἔρημα, πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἀλλὰ
 destitute (of defence), (the) enemy appearing. But

μεν ἔφη ὧρα γε βουλευέσθαι πῶς τις
indeed said-he (it is) time at-least to-consider how some

ἀπελαῖ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου
(of us) will-drive — (these) men from the hill.

Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τὴν κορυφὴν τοῦ
Here Xenophon perceives the summit of-the

ὄρους οὕσαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος
mountain (as) being above the army (of the Per-

εἰ αὐτῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον
in as) themselves, and from this (place) (there was) (an) approach

ἐν τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν, καὶ λέγει·
to the hill, where the enemy were, and he-says:

Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἵεσθαι ὥς
(It is) best, O Cheirisophus, for-us to-go as

τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· γὰρ ἦν
quick-est-possible on-to the summit (of the mountain); for if

λάβωμεν τοῦτο, οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ οὐ
we-take this, — (those) above the road 'will not

δυνήσονται μένειν. Ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ
'be-able to-remain. But, if you-wish, remain with

τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐδέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ
the army, I indeed wish to-go-forward; if

δέ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, δὲ ἐγὼ
indeed you-want-it, proceed on-to the mountain, and I

μενῶ αὐτοῦ. Ἀλλὰ δίδωμι σοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρί-
will-remain here. But I-allow you, said — Cheiri-

σοφης, ἐλέσθαι ὁπότερον βούλει. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
sophus, to-choose which-of-the-two you-wish. — Xenophon

εἰπὼν ὅτι ἐστὶν νεώτερος αἰρεῖται πορεύεσθαι,
replying that (as) he-is the-younger it-becomes (him) to-proceed,

δὲ κελεύει συμπέμψαι οἱ ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ
and he-requests to-have-sent (with himself) — men from the

στόματος· γὰρ ἦν μακρὸν λαβεῖν ἀπὸ
front; for it-was (a) long (way) to-take (them) from

τῆς οἰράς. Καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς
the rear. And — Cheirisophus sends-with (him) the

πελταστάς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος· ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς
 targeteers from the front; he-took also the

κατὰ μέσον τοῦ πλαισίου. Δ' ἐκέλευσε
 (targeteers) in (the) middle of-the square. And he-ordered

καὶ συνέπεσσαι αὐτῷ τοὺς τριακοσίους, οὓς
 also to-follow him the three hundred, (men) whom

αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ
 he-himself had of-the picked-men in the front of-the

πλαισίου
 square.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύναντο.
 Hence they-marched-forward as speedily-as they-could.

Δ' οἱ πολέμοι ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου, ὡς ἐνόησαν τὴν
 But the enemy on the eminence, when they-perceived the

πορείαν αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐδὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ
 march of-these towards the summit, directly also they

ὤρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
 rushed to-contend for the summit. And here

ἦν μὲν πολλὴ κραυγὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύ-
 was indeed (a) great shout from-the Grecian ar-

ματος, διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, δὲ
 my, cheering-on — (those) of-their-men, and

πολλὴ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην
 much shouting | from — (those) about Tissaphernes [from the

army of Tissaphernes] διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν.
 army of Tissaphernes] cheering-on — (those) of-their-men.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρε-
 But Xenophon riding-along on — (a) horse on-

κελεύετο· Νομίζετε, Ἄνδρες, νῦν
 encouraged (his men): Consider, O men, (that) now (you are)

ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς
 to-contend for — Greece, now for — (your)

παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν πονήσαντες
 children and — (your) wives, now having-laboured

ὀλίγον πορευσόμεθα τὴν λοιπὴν ἡμαχίαν.
 a-little we-shall-march the rest (of the way) without-fighting

Δέ Σωτηρίδης ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Ἐσμέν οὐκ ἴσους,
 But Soterides the Sicyonian said: We are not an-equality, O Xenophon; for you indeed are-carried on (a)
 ἵππου, ἐγὼ δὲ κάμνω χαλεπῶς, φέρων τὴν
 horse, I however labour grievously, carrying — (my)
 ἀσπίδα. Καὶ ὅς, ἀκούσας ταῦτα, καταπηδήσας
 shield. And who, hearing this, having-leaped
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὠδεῖται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως,
 from — (his) horse, pushed him from the ranks,
 καὶ ἀφελόμενος τὴν ἀσπίδα, ἐπορεύετο ἔχων
 and taking — (his) shield, he-proceeded, having (it),
 ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύνατο. Ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ ἔχων
 as speedily-as he-was-able. He-happened — also having (a)
 θώρακα τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστε
 corselet (on) (namely, that peculiar to) the cavalry; so-that
 ἐπιέζετο. Καὶ μὲν παρεκελεύετο τοῖς
 he-was-oppressed. Yet however he-continued-to-exhort — (those)
 ἐμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν, δὲ τοῖς ὀπισθεν, ἐπο-
 in-front to-lead-on-gently, and — (those) in-the-rear, fol-
 μένοις μόλις παριέναι. Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
 lowing with-difficulty to-come-up. But the other soldiers
 παίουσι, καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτη-
 beat, and throw-at and revile — Sote-
 ρίδην, ἕστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα
 rides, until they-obliged (him) taking — (his) shield
 πορεύεσθαι. Δὲ ὁ ἀναβάς ἕως
 to-march-forward. But — (Xenophon) having-remounted as-long-as
 μὲν ἦν βάσιμα ἤγεν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου,
 indeed it-was passable (for a horse) led-the-way on horse-back,
 δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἀβατα, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον
 but when it-was impassable, leaving — (his) horse
 ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. Καὶ γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ
 he-hastened-along on-foot. And having-got on to-the summit
 φθάνουσι τοὺς πολεμίους.
 they-occupy (it) (before) the enemy.

CHAPTER V.

Ἐνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφειγον
 THEN truly indeed the barbarians having-turned fled
 ἢ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
 (by the way) which each-one could, and the Greeks
 εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισ-
 held the summit. | — (Those) indeed about [the armies of] Tis-
 σαφέρην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ὥχοντο
 saphernes and Arisæus having-turned-aside went-off
 ἄλλην ὁδόν. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον κατα-
 another way. — (Those) indeed about Cheirisophus de-
 βάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ
 ascending encamped in (a) village filled (with)
 πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν ἄλλαι
 many good (things). And also there-were other
 κῶμαι, ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν·
 villages in this — plain along the river
 Τίγρητα, πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δ' ἥνικα
 Tigris, full of-many good (things). But, when
 ἦν δείλη οἱ πολέμοι ἐξατίνης ἐπιφαί-
 it-was late-in-the-afternoon, the enemy suddenly ap-
 νονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν
 pear in the plain, and cut-off some of-the
 Ἑλλήνων ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἄρπα-
 Greeks dispersed in the plain for plan-
 γήν· γὰρ καὶ πολλαὶ νομαὶ βοσκημάτων
 der; for also many herds of-cattle
 κατελήφθησαν διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ
 were-seized (that were about) to-have-been-transported to the
 πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. Ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρης
 opposite-side of-the river. Here Tissaphernes

καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπεχείρησαν καίειν τὰς
and — (those) with him attempted to-burn the

κώμας. Καὶ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠδύ-
villages. And some of-the Greeks 'were much 'dis

μησαν, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ, εἰ καίοιεν
heartened, being-apprehensive lest, if they-burned (the villages) they-

οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν τὰ
'would not 'have (a place) whence they-might-procure —

ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον
provisions. | And — (those) indeed about Cheirisophus

ἀπήσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας
[Cheirisophus and his men] returned from (giving) — assistance;

ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς
but Xenophon, when he-came-down, riding-past the

τάξεις, ἥνικα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπήντησαν ἀπὸ
ranks, when the Greeks came-back from (giving)

τῆς βοηθείας, ἔλεγεν· Ὁρᾶτε, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες,
— assistance, said: You-see, O Grecian men,

ὑφιέντας τὴν χώραν εἶναι ἤδη
(the enemy) conceding (that) the country is now

ἡμετέραν· γὰρ ᾧ, ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο, διεπράτ-
ours; for that-which, when they-made-the-truce, they-stipu-

τοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, νῦν
lated-for, not to-burn the country 'of (the) 'king. now

αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὥς ἀλλοτρίαν.
they-themselves burn (it) as (if it belonged to) another.

Ἄλλ' ἐάν γε που καταλίπωσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
But if at-least any-where they-leave — provisions

ἑαυτοῖς ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς πορευομένους ἐνταῦθα.
for-themselves they-will-see even us proceeding thither

Ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι
But O Cheirisophus, said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought;

βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας, ὥς ὑπὲρ τῆς
to-give-assistance against — (those) burning, as for — (our)

ἡμετέρας. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν
own-country. — But Cheirisophus said. It-'does not therefore

δοκε ἔμοιγε · ἀλλὰ, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς καίωμεν,
 seem (so) to-me-at-least; but, said-he, 'let us 'burn,

καὶ οὕτω θᾶπτον παύσονται.
 and so they-'will the-sooner 'cease.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς οἱ
 But when they-went-away to — (their) tents the

ἄλλοι ἦσαν μὲν
 rest (of the army, being the private soldiers,) were indeed (occupied)

περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
 about the provisions, but (the) generals and (the) captains

συνῆλθον. Καὶ ἦν πολλὴ ἀπορία
 convened-together (in council). And there-was much perplexity

ἐνταῦθα. Γὰρ μὲν ἔνθεν ἦν ὄρη ὑπερί-
 here. For indeed from-here there-were mountains exceeding-

ψηλα, δὲ ἔνθεν ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος τὸ
 high, but from-there — (a) river (having) so-great — (a)

βάθος, ὥς μὴδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν
 depth, so-that not-even the spears were-above (the water)

πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάρους. Δὲ τις ἀνὴρ
 (to those) making-trial of-the depth. But a-certain man

Ῥόδιος προσελθὼν αὐτοῖς ἀπορουμένοις εἶπεν·
 (a) Rhodian coming-to them (thus) perplexed said:

Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ
 I will, O men, have-'crossed you 'over 'by

τετρακισχιλίουσ' ὀπλίτας, ἂν ὑπηρετήσητε
 four-thousand heavy-armed-men 'at-a-time, if you-will-supply

ἐμοὶ ὧν δέομαι, καὶ πορίσητε τάλαντον
 me with-what I-want, and will-furnish (me) (a) talent (as a)

μισθόν. Δὲ ἐρωτώμενος οὗτου δέοιτο· Δεήσομαι,
 recompense. But being-asked what he-might-require: I-shall-want,

ἔφη, διςχιλίων ἀσκῶν· δ' ὁρῶ πολλὰ πρόβατα
 said-he, two-thousand hides-for-bags; and I-see many shee-

καὶ αἰγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, αἵ, ἀποδαρέντα
 and goats and oxen and asses, which, having-been-skinned

καὶ φυσηθέντα, ἂν ῥαδίως παρέχοι τὴν
 and blown-out, might easily furnish the (means of)

διάβασιν. Δὲ καὶ δεήσομαι τῶν δεσμῶν, οἷς
 crossing. And also I-shall-want the cords, which
 χρησθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς
 you-use about the baggage-cattle; with-these having-joined the
 ἄσκους πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὀρμίσας ἕκαστον ἄσκον
 bags to one-another, having-stretched each bag,
 ἰδίου ἀρτήσας, καὶ ἀφείς
 stones (having-been-suspended (from it), and having-'let (them) 'down
 ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγὼν
 like anchors into the water, having-'extended (the bags) 'across
 καὶ δῆσας ἀμφοτέρωθεν, ἐπιβαλὼν
 and having-secured (them) to-both (banks), I-will-'put
 ὕλην, καὶ ἐπιφορήσω γῆν. Ὅτι
 wood 'on (them), and will-'throw earth 'over (the wood). That
 οὖν μὲν οὐ καταδύσεσθε, μάλα
 therefore indeed you-'will not 'be-sunk, | (as) you-'will much
 αὐτίκα εἴσεσθε· γὰρ πᾶς
 immediately 'see; [as you will at once perceive;] for every
 ἄσχος ἔξει δύο ἄνδρας τοῦ μὴ καταδύναι·
 skin | will-keep two men from-the not to-be-sunk; [will
 δὲ ἢ ὕλη καὶ ἢ γῆ
 keep two men from sinking;] and the wood and the earth
 σχήσει ὥστε μὴ ὀλισθάνειν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,
 will-keep (them) so-as not to-fall-off. To-the generals,
 ἀκούσασι ταῦτα, τὸ ἐνδύμημα μὲν ἐδόκει εἶναι
 having-heard this, the contrivance indeed seemed to-be
 χάριεν, δὲ τὸ ἔργον ἀδύνατον· γὰρ ἦσαν πέ-
 ingenious, but the execution impossible; for there-were on-the-
 ραν πολλοὶ ἵππεις οἱ καλύσοντες,
 other-side many horsemen — (those) would-be-disputing (their pas-
 οἱ εὐδὺς ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τοῖς πρώτοις
 age), (and) who immediately would permit the first (as
 ποιεῖν οὐδὲν τούτων. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν
 (foremost) to-do none of-these (things). Thence indeed
 τὴν ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν.
 on-the next-day they-slowly-began-to-retreat — back-again

τῇ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα, εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους
 by-the (road) towards Babylon, to the unburnt
 κώμας, κατακαύσαντες ἐνθεν ἐξήεσαν· ὥστε
 villages, having-burnt (those) whence they-departed; so-that
 οἱ πολέμοι οὐ προσέλαινον, ἀλλὰ ἐδε-
 the enemy 'did not 'come-up (to them), but continued-
 ῶντο, καὶ ἦσαν ὅμοιοι θαυμάζειν
 observing (them), and they-were like to-wonder [and they won-
 δροι ποτὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πρέπονται, καὶ
 dered] where at-any-time the Greeks would-turn-themselves, and
 τί ἔχοιεν ἐν νῷ. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι
 what they-might-have in (their) mind. There indeed the rest
 στρατιῶται ἦσαν ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτηδεῖα·
 (of the) soldiers were (occupied) about — provisions;
 δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πάλιν συνήλδον,
 but the generals and the captains again assembled
 καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας,
 (in council), and having-brought-together — (those) taken-prisoners,
 ἤλεγχον πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν κύκλῳ,
 they-questioned (them about) all the country in-a-circle (round
 τίς ἐκάστη εἶη. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον,
 about them) that each (part) might-be. And — (they) said,
 ὅτι τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν εἶη τῆς
 that the (parts) indeed towards (the) south were — (those)
 ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα καὶ Μηδίαν δι' ἧς περ
 towards Babylon and Media through which 'they (the Greeks)
 ἦκοιεν· δὲ ἡ πρὸς ἑὼ φέροι ἐπὶ Σοῦσάν
 'had-come; and — (that) towards (the) east led to Susa
 τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα ἐνθα βασιλεὺς λέγεται
 — and Ecbatana where (the) king is-said
 θερίζειν καὶ ἐαρίζειν· δὲ ἡ διαβάντι τὸν
 to-spend-the summer and spring; and the (road) going-across the
 ποταμόν πρὸς ἐσπέραν φέροι ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ
 river towards (the) west led to Lydia and
 Ἰωνίαν· δὲ ὅτι ἡ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ τετραμμένη
 Ionia; and that the (road) ever the mountains and winding

πρὸς ἄρκτον ἄγοι εἰς Καρδούχους. Δὲ ἔφασαν
to (the) north might-lead to (the) Carduchi. And they-said

τούτους οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη,
(that) these (people) dwell (scattered) over the mountains,

καὶ εἶναι πολεμικούς, καὶ οὐκ ἀκούειν
and are warlike, and 'do not 'obey (the)

βασιλέως· ἀλλὰ καὶ ποτε βασιλικήν
king; but (that) even once (a) royal

στρατιάν, δώδεκα μυριάδας, ἐμβαλεῖν
army, (of) twelve ten-thousand [120,000] (men), attacked

εἰς αὐτούς· δὲ οὐδένα τούτων ἀπονοστῆσαι
— them; but (that) not-one of-them returned

διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. Ὅποτε μέντοι
on-account-of the difficulties-of-the-country. When however

σπείσαιντο πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν ἐν
they-made-a-treaty with the satrap — (he who dwelt) in

τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ σφῶν ἐπιμιγνύναι
the plain, (that) also some-of-those (of the plain) had-intercourse

τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων
— with those (mountaineers) and some-of-these (mountaineers)

πρὸς ἑαυτούς.
with those (of the plain).

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκάθισαν
The generals having-heard these (things) placed

χωρὶς τοὺς φάσκοντας εἰδέναι
apart — (those) saying (that) they-knew (the road)

ἐκασταχόσε, ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν δῆλον, ὅποι ἐμελλόν
in-each-direction, making no-one certain, whither they-intended

πορεύεσθαι. Ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι
to-proceed. It-seemed however to-the generals to-be

ἀναγκαῖον ἐμβάλλειν διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς
Necessary to-force-their-way over the mountains into (the coun-

Καρδούχους· γὰρ ἔφασαν διελθόντας
try of the) Carduchi; for they-said (that) having-passed-through

τούτους ἥξειν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν πολλῆς
these (that) they-would-come into Armenia (it being) large

και εὐδαίμονος, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἤρχε. Δ' ἐντεῦθεν
 and rich, (and) which Orontes governed. And whence
 ἔφασαν εἶναι εὐπορον πορεύεσθαι
 they-said (that it would) be an-easy-thing (for-them) to-proceed
 τις ὅποι ἐδέλοι Ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐδύ-
 any where they-might-wish. With-reference to-these (things) they-
 σαντο, ὅπως ὅπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς
 sacrificed, in-order-that when it-'might even 'seem (to be) the
 ὥρας ποιοῖντο τὴν πορείαν (γὰρ
 time they-'might (begin to) 'make the march (for
 ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὀρέων
 they-feared lest the passage-over the mountains
 προκαταληφθεῖν) καὶ παρήγγειλαν
 might-be-pre-occupied) (by the enemy); and they-announced (that)
 ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν πάντας συνεσκευ-
 when (the soldiers) had-suppered (that) all having-packed-
 ασμένους ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἔπεσθαι
 up-their-baggage are-to-go-to-rest, and to-follow 'their leaders]
 ἥνίκα τις ἂν παραγγείλῃ.
 when any 'signal might be-given.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐγένετο ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει
 WHAT indeed really happened in the expedition-up-the-country
 μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην
 till the battle, and what (occurred) after the battle
 ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἃς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 during the truce, which (the) king and the Greeks
 ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα,
 going-up with Cyrus made, and what, (the)
 βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους παραβάντος τὰς
 king and Tissaphernes having-broken the
 σπονδὰς, ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, τοῦ
 truce, war-was-waged against the Greeks, the
 Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπακολουθοῦντος
 Persian army pursuing (them),
 δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
 has-been-related in the preceding discourse.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο, ἔνθα μὲν ὁ ποταμὸς Τίγρης
 But when they-arrived, where indeed the river Tigris
 ἦν παντάπασιν ἀπορος διὰ τὸ βάθος
 is altogether impassable on-account-of — (its great) depth
 καὶ μέγεθος, δὲ ἦν οὐ πάροδος
 and size, and there-was no passage (along the banks),
 ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη ἐκρέματο ἀπότομα
 as-indeed the Carduchian mountains hung steep
 ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς
 over this — river, it-seemed truly (therefore) to-the

στρατηγοῖς εἶναι πορευτέον διὰ τῶν ὄρέων.
generals to-be necessary-to-march over the mountains.

Γὰρ ἤκουον τῶν ἀλισκομένων, ὅτι, εἰ
For they-had-heard — (from those) made-prisoners, that, if

διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη, διαβήσονται τὰς
they-should-cross the Carduchian mountains, they-might-ford the

πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ,
sources of-the river Tigris in — Armenia,

ἣν μὲν βούλωνται, δὲ ἣν βούλωνται μὴ,
if indeed they-wished (to do so), but if they-wished not

περίασι. Καὶ τε ἐλέγετο
(to do so), 'they (might) 'go-round (them). And also it-was-said

τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Εὐφράτου εἶναι οὐ πρόσω
(that) the sources of-the Euphrates were not far

τοῦ Τίγρητος, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον.
from-the Tigris, | and it-is so having [and it is

Δὲ ποιοῦνται ἐμβολὴν εἰς τοὺς
really so]. And they-make (the) irruption into the (terri-

Καρδούχους ὧδε, πειρώμενοι ἅμα
tory of the) Carduchi in-this-manner, endeavouring at-the-same-time

μὲν λαθεῖν δὲ ἅμα φθά-
indeed to-have-concealed (their march) and-also at-the-same-time to-anti-

σαι τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν καταλαβεῖν τὰ
cipate the enemy before (that) they-have-occupied the

ἄκρα. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν
heights. When indeed it-was about the last

φυλακὴν, καὶ ἐλείπετο ὅσον τῆς νυκτὸς
watch, and there-was-left as-much of-the night (as)

διελθεῖν τὸ πεδῖον σκοταίου, τὴνικαῦτα ἀναστάν-
to-pass-over the plain in-the-dark, then rising-

τες, ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικ-
up, (and) at the-word-of-command marching-forth they

νοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς
arrived at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day as

τὸ ὄρος.
the mountain.

Ἐνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγεῖτο τοῦ
 Here indeed Cheirisophus — took-the-lead of-the
 στρατεύματος, λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτόν
 army, taking (with him) — (those) about him
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς γυμνήτας. δὲ Ξενοφῶν
 and all the light-armed-men; but Xenophon
 εἶπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις ὀπισθοφύλαξιν, ἔχων
 followed with the heavy-armed rear-guard, having
 οὐδένα γυμνήτα· γὰρ ἐδόκει εἶναι οὐδεὶς
 not-one light-armed-man; for there-seemed to-be no
 κίνδυνος, μή τις ἐπισποιτο ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν,
 fear, lest any-one might-pursue from — behind,
 πορευομένων ἄνω. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν
 (they) marching upwards. And Cheirisophus indeed
 ἀναβαίνει ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, πρὶν τινὰ τῶν
 went-up on-to the summit, before (that) any-one of-the
 πολεμίων αἰσδέσθαι. Δ' ἔπειτα ἡφηγεῖτο·
 enemy perceived (him). But then led-forward-slowly:
 δὲ τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἀεὶ ὑπερ-
 and the (part) of-the army from-time-to-time passing-
 βάλλον ἐφείπετο, εἰς τὰς κώμας
 over (the summit) continued-following (him), into the villages
 τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγχεσι τε καὶ μυχοῖς
 (namely) — (those) in the narrow-valleys and also 'in (the) 'recesses
 τῶν ὄρεων.
 of-the mountains.

Ἐνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ἐκλιπόντες τὰς
 Then truly indeed the Carduchi, having-left —
 οἰκίας, καὶ ἔχοντες γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας,
 (their) dwellings, and having (their) wives and children,
 ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. Ἦν δὲ πολλὰ τὰ
 fled on to the mountains. There-was indeed much —
 ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνειν· δὲ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι ἦσαν
 provisions to-take; and also — (their) dwellings were
 κατεσκευασμένοι παμπόλλοις χαλκώμασι, ὧν οἱ
 furnished with-a-great-many brazen-utensils, of-which the

Ἕλληνες ἔφερον οὐδέν, οὐδὲ ἐδίωκον τοὺς
 Greeks took-away none, nor did-they-pursue the
 ἀνδρώπους, ὑπορειδόμενοι, εἰ οἱ
 people, sparing (them), as-if (to try whether) the
 Καρδοῦχοι ἐδελήσειαν πως αὐτοὺς διέναι
 Carduchi 'would by-any-means 'let them pass-through
 ὥς διὰ τῆς φιλίας χώρας ἐπέιπερ ἦσαν
 as through — (a) friendly country in-as-much-as they-were
 πολέμοι βασιλεῖ. Μέντοι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
 enemies 'to (the) 'king. However the provisions,
 ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυχάνοι,
 | to-which any-one might-arrive, [which any one might obtain,]
 ἐλάμβανον· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη. Δὲ οἱ
 they-took; for it-was (a) necessity (to do so). But the
 Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε ὑπήκουον, καλούντων, οὔτε ἐποί-
 Carduchi neither listened, being-called-on, nor did-they-
 ουν οὐδὲν ἄλλο φιλικόν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ
 make any-one other friendly (demonstration). But when the
 τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας
 rear of-the Greeks were-descending into the villages
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι (γὰρ διὰ
 from the eminence (it being) now somewhat-dark (for on-account-of
 τὴν ὁδὸν τὸ εἶναι στενὴν ἢ ἀνάβασις καὶ κατάβασις
 the road — being narrow, the ascent and descent
 εἰς τὰς κώμας ἐγένετο αὐτοῖς
 to the villages happened for-them (to be the occupation of)
 τὴν ὅλην ἡμέραν)· τότε δὴ τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων
 the entire day), then indeed some of-the Carduchi
 συλλεγέντες ἐπέδεντο τοῖς τελευταίοις, καὶ
 collecting-together attacked the hindmost, and
 ἀπέκτεινάν τινας, καὶ κατέτρωσαν λίδοις
 they-killed some, and worried (them with) stones
 καὶ τοξεύμασι, ὄντες ὀλίγοι, γὰρ
 and arrows, (they, the Carduchi,) being few, for
 τὸ Ἑλληνικόν· ἐπέπεσε ἐξ ἀπροσδοκῆτοι.
 the Grecian (army) had-come-on (them) — suddenly

Εἰ μέντοι τότε συνελέγησαν πλείους
 If however then they-had-assembled more (numerously) (a)
 πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν
 great (part) of-the army would-have-been-in-danger —
 διαφθαῖναι. Καὶ οὕτω μὲν τὴν νύκτα
 to-have-been-destroyed And so indeed — (that) night
 ἡγίλισθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· δὲ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι
 they-lodged in the villages; and the Carduchi
 ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὄρεων, καὶ
 burned many fires in-a-circle on the mountains, and
 συνεώρων ἀλλήλους. Ἐνθα δὲ
 observed (the position of) one-another. At-the-same-time indeed
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ
 with-the (break of) day it-seemed (best) to-the generals and
 λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνελδοῦσι,
 captains of-the Greeks having-assembled-in-council,
 πορεύεσθαι ἔχοντας τε τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ
 to-march-forth having also (only) the necessary and
 δυνατώτατα τῶν ὑποζυγίων, καταλιπόντας τὰλλα,
 strongest of-the baggage-cattle, leaving-behind the-rest,
 καὶ ὅποσα ἀνδράποδα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα
 and as-many slaves (as) were recently captured,
 ἀφεῖναι πάντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. Γὰρ τὰ
 to-dismiss all (these) in the army. For the
 ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα ὄντα πολλὰ
 baggage-cattle and — (those) captured being many
 ἐποίουν τὴν πορείαν σχολαίαν· δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ
 made the march slow; and the many (men)
 ὄντες ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι, ἔδει
 being (in charge) over these were unfit-for-action, it-was-necessary
 τε διπλάσια ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι
 also (that) double (the quantity of) provisions be-procured
 καὶ φέρεσθαι, τῶν ἀνδρῶπων ὄντων πολλῶν. Δι'
 and carried, the men being many. And
 δόξαν ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν ποιεῖν οὕτω.
 they-approved these (things), (and) proclaimed to-do so

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο,
 When indeed having-breakfasted they-proceeded (on their march),
 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ,
 the generals standing-secretly in — (a) narrow (part of the
 εἰ εὗρίσκοιεν τι τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ
 road) if they-found any-thing of-the (things) mentioned not
 ἄφεμένον, ἀφηροῦντο· οἱ δὲ
 left, they-'took (them) 'away; the (men) indeed
 ἐπείδοντο, πλὴν εἰ τις ἐκλεψε τι, οἷον ἢ
 obeyed, unless if any-one was-smitten-with any-thing, as if
 ἐπιθυμήσας παιδὸς ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐτρεπῶν.
 having-desired (a) boy or woman of-the handsome-ones.
 Καὶ μὲν ἐπορεύθησαν οὕτω ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν,
 And indeed they-proceeded thus that — day,
 τὰ μὲν μαχόμενοι τι, δὲ καὶ τὰ
 — (sometimes) indeed fighting somewhat, and also — (sometimes)
 ἀναπαύομενοι. Δὲ εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν πολὺς
 resting. But on the next-day (a) great
 χειμὼν γίγνεται, δ' ἦν ἀναγκαῖον πορεύεσθαι·
 storm happened, but (yet) it-was necessary to-proceed;
 γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν οὐ ἱκανὰ. Καὶ μὲν
 for the provisions were not sufficient. And indeed
 Χειρίσοφος ἡγεῖτο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὠπισθοφυλάκει.
 Cheirisophus continued-to-lead and Xenophon brought-up-the-rear.
 Καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἐπετίθεντο ἰσχυρῶς καὶ
 And the enemy 'pressed greatly 'on (them) and
 τῶν χωρίων ὄντων στενῶν, προσιώντες
 the places being narrow, (the enemy) coming-up
 ἐγγὺς ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόων· ὥστε οἱ Ἕλληνες
 near they-shot-arrows and slung-stones; so-that the Greeks
 ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες ἠναγκάζοντο
 pursuing and again retreating were-compelled
 πορεύεσθαι σχολῇ· καὶ θαμινὰ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 to-march slowly; and frequently — Xenophon
 παρήγγελλεν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμοι ἐπιχέοιντο
 passed-the-word to-halt, when the enemy might-'press

ἰσχυρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ὅτι
hard 'on (them). Then — Cheirisophus when

παρεγγυῶτο ἄλλοτε μὲν ὑπέμενε, δὲ τότε
the-word-was-passed at-other-times indeed halted, but once he-'did

οὐκ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἤγε ταχέως, καὶ παραγγία
not 'halt, but led-on rapidly, and ordered

ἐπεσθαι· ὥστε ἦν δῆλον ὅτι εἶη τι
(them) to-follow; so-that it-was evident that there-was some

πρᾶγμα· δ' ἦν οὐκ σχολή
thing (to do); but there-was not leisure 'for (a person)

παρελθόντι ἰδεῖν τὸ αἴτιον τῆς
moving-along (to the front) to-have-ascertained the cause of-the

σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ἐγίνετο ὁμοία φυγῇ
haste; so-that the march became like 'to (a) 'flight

τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ
for-the rear-guard. And here (a) brave man

Κλεώνυμος Λακωνικὸς ἀποδνήσκει, τοξευθεὶς
Cleonymus (a) Lacedæmonian died, being-shot-with-an-arrow

διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς στολάδος εἰς τὰς
through the shield and the corselet on the

πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκάς διαμπερές εἰς
side, and-also Basias (an) Arcadian (shot) right-through —

τὴν κεφαλὴν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταδμόν,
the head. When indeed they-arrived at (the) station

ὁ Ξενοφῶν εὐθὺς ἐλθὼν ὥςπερ
(or place of encampment) — Xenophon immediately having-gone | as

εἶχε πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον
he-had (himself) [just as he was] to — Cheirisophus

ῥητιᾶτο αὐτὸν, ὅτι οὐκ ὑπέμενεν ἀλλ'
he-blamed him, that he-'did not 'halt but (that)

φεύγοντες ἠναγκάζοντο ἅμα μάχεσθαι.
fleeing they-were-compelled at-the-same-time to-fight

Καὶ νῦν δύο καλὴ τε καὶ ἀγαθὴ ἄνδρες τέδιαιτον,
And now two honourable and also-brave men have-died,

καὶ ἐδυνάμεθα οὔτε ἀνελεῖσθαι οὔτε
and we-could neither carry-away (their bodies) nor

θάψαι. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀποκρίνεται πρὸς ταῦτα·
bury (them). — Cheirisophus answered to these

Βλέπον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, καὶ ἰδι
(things), Look, said-he, at — (these) mountains, and see

ὥς ἀβατα πάντα ἐστί· δὲ αὕτη μία ὁδός,
how impassable (they) all are; and this one (only) road

ἣν ὁράς, ὀρδία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἐξεστί σοι
which you-see, (is) steep, and on this it-is-allowed to-you

ὁρᾶν τοσοῦτον ὄχλον ἀνδρώπων οἱ κατει-
to-see how-great (a) multitude of-men (there are) who having-

ληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἐκβασιν. Ταῦτ'
occupied guard the pass. For-these (reasons)

ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐχ ὑπέμενον
I hastened-on, and for this I-did not 'wait-for

σε, εἰ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι τὴν
you, (but strove) if by-chance I-could reach the

ἱπερβολὴν πρὶν κατεिल्ῆθαι.
passage-over (the mountain) before it-had-been-occupied (by the enemy);

δ' οἱ ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν, φασιν εἶναι οὐκ
for the guides whom we-have, say (that) there-is no

ἄλλην ὁδόν. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
other road. — But Xenophon says: But I

ἔχω δύο ἀνδρας. Γὰρ ἐπεὶ παρεῖχον
have two men. | For when (the enemy) presented

πράγματα ἡμῖν, ἐνηδρεύ-
things to-us, [for when the enemy annoyed us,] we-placed-an-

σαμεν, (ὅπερ καὶ ἐποίησε ἡμᾶς ἀναπνεῦσαι),
ambush, | (which also made us breathe,) [and

καὶ ἀπεκτείναμέν τινας
which gave us time to breathe,] and we-killed some

αὐτῶν, καὶ προὔθυμήδημεν λαβεῖν ζῶντας,
of-them, and we-were-eager to-take (them) alive,

ἐνεκεν αὐτοῦ τούτου ὅπως χρῆσαιμεθα
on-account-of this very-same (thing) that we-might-use (them as)

ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν.
guides knowing the country.

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνδράποους, διαλα
 And immediately leading-forward the men, having-
 βόντες ἤλεγχον, εἰ εἶδεῖεν τινα
 taken (them) 'apart they-questioned (them), if they-knew any
 ἄλλων ὁδοὶ ἢ τὴν φανεράν. Ὁ
 other road than the (one) apparent (before them). The (one)
 μὲν οὖν ἔφη οὐκ ἕτερος, καὶ μάλα
 indeed — said (that there was) not another, and very
 πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἔλεγεν
 many fearful-threats were-brought-forward; but when he-said
 οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον, κατεσφάγη, τοῦ ἑτέρου ὁρῶντος.
 nothing useful he-was-put-to-death, the other-one seeing (it).
 Δὲ ὁ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οἷτος μὲν
 But the (one) remaining said that this (other one) indeed 'would
 οὐ φαίη εἶδέναι διὰ ταῦτα
 not 'say (any thing about another road) | to-appear through this
 ὅτι θυγάτηρ τυγχάνει αὐτῷ
 [for the reason] that (a) daughter happens (to be) to-him
 ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· δ'
 there with (a) man having-been-given (to him in marriage); but
 αὐτὸς ἔφη ἡγήσεσθαι ὁδὸν δυνατὴν
 he said (that) he-would-lead (them) 'by (a) 'road possible
 πορεύεσθαι καὶ ὑποζυγίοις. Δ' ἐρωτώμενος, εἰ
 to-be-passed-through even by-beasts-of-burden. But being-asked, if
 εἴη τι χωρίον ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον, ἔφη
 there-were any place in it difficult-to-pass, he-said (that)
 εἶναι ἄκρον, ὃ εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψοιτο
 there-was (a) height, which — unless some-one should-'take-possession-of
 ἔσεσθαι ἀδύνατοι παρελθεῖν Ἐνταῦθα
 (it) 'beforehand it-would-be impossible to-pass-over (it). Then
 ἔδοκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς καὶ
 it-seemed-proper having-called-together (the) captains (being) also
 πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, τε λέγειν
 targeteers, and (those) of-the heavy-armed-men, | and to-tell
 τα παρόντα,
 (them) the (things) being-present, [and inform them of the state of affairs,]

καὶ ἐρωτᾷν εἰ ἔστι τις αὐτῶν, ὅστις ἂν ἐδέλοι
and to-inquire if there-is any-one of-them, who might wish

γενέσθαι ἀγαδὸς ἀνὴρ, καὶ
(to prove himself) to-be (a) courageous man, and

ὑποστὰς πορεύεσθαι
having-engaged (himself) to-go-on (this expedition as a)

ἐδελαιτῆς. Τῶν ὀπλιτῶν μὲν Ἀριστώνυμος
volunteer. Of-the heavy-armed-men indeed Aristonymus (of)

Μεθυδριεὺς Ἀρκὰς ὑφίσταται, καὶ Ἀγασίας
Methydrium (an) Arcadian offered-himself, and (also) Agasias

Στυμφάλιος Ἀρκὰς· δὲ Καλλίμαχος Παρ-
(of) Stymphalus (an) Arcadian; but Callimachus (of) Par

ράσιος, Ἀρκὰς, ἀντιστασιάζων αὐτοῖς,
rhasia, (an) Arcadian, 'contesting (the honour) 'with them,

ἔφη οὗτος ἐδελεῖν πορεύεσθαι προσλωδὼν
said (that) he-himself wished to-go taking (with him)

ἐδελοντάς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος. Γὰρ
volunteers from all the army. For

ἐγὼ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἔψονται,
I, said-he, know that many of-the young-men will-follow,

ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. Ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσι, εἴ τις καὶ
I leading. After this they-inquired, if any also

τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων ἐδέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι.
of-the light-armed taxiarchs might-wish to-go-with

Ἀριστεὰς Χίος ὑφίσταται, ὃς
(the volunteers). Aristeas (of) Chios offers-himself, (a man) who

πολλαχοῦ ἐγένετο ἄξιος πολλοῦ τῇ στρατιᾷ
often had-been worthy of-much in-the army

εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα.
on (occasions) — like-these.

CHAPTER II.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη μεν δείλη, •δ' ci
 AND it-was now indeed late-in-the-afternoon, and the (generals,
 Theirisophus and Xenophon,) ordered them having-eaten-something
 πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ δῆσαντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα παρα-
 to-march-forth. And having-bound the guide they-
 διδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται ἦν
 delivered (him) to-them, and they-arrange-with (them) if
 λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, φυλάττειν τὸ
 they-should-take (possession of) the summit, to-guard the
 χωρίον μὲν τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἅμα τῇ
 place (during) indeed the night, but at-the-same-time with-the
 ἡμέρα σημαίνειν σάλπιγγι· καὶ
 (dawn of) day to-give-the-signal 'with (the) 'trumpet; and (that,
 μὲν τοὺς ὄντας ἄνω ἵέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς
 indeed — (those) being above to-go against — (those)
 κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν ἐκβασιν, δὲ αὐτοὶ
 having-possession-of the apparent egress. and they (the
 ἐκβαίνοντες συμβοηθήσειν ὡς
 generals) coming-forth (from below) altogether-to-assist (them) 'as
 τάχιστα δύνωνται. Συνδέμενοι ταῦτα οἱ
 speedily 'as they-could. They-having-arranged these (things) the
 μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς δις-
 (detachment) indeed proceeded (being a) multitude-of about two-
 χίλιοι· καὶ ἦν πολὺ ὕδωρ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ.
 thousand; | and there-was much water from heaven [and there
 Δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς
 was a heavy rain at the time]. And Xenophon, having the
 ὀπισθοφυλάκας, ἡγεῖτο πρὸς τὴν φανεράν
 war-guard, led (them) to the apparent

ἔκβασιν, ὅπως οἱ πολέμοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν
 egress, so-that the enemy might-direct — (their) mind
 ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ, καὶ ὥς οἱ περιώντες
 to-that — road, and so (that) — (those) going-round-about
 μάλιστα λάδοιεν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
 'might the-best 'escape-notice. But when the rear-guard
 ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ, ἣν ἔδει δια-
 were at (the) ravine, | which it-was-necessary they-having-
 βάντ' ἔκβαινεν πρὸς τὸ ὄρδιον,
 passed through (it) to-come-out on the acclivity, [which they
 τηνικαῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι
 had to cross to ascend the acclivity,] then the barbarians
 ἔκυλινδουν ὀλοιτρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ
 rolled (down) round-stones large-enough-to-load-a-wagon, and
 μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι
 (other stones also) greater and smaller, which being-borne-along
 πταίοντες πρὸς τὰς πέτρας διεσφενδονῶντο·
 (and) striking against the rocks were-slung-about;
 καὶ παντάπασιν ἦν οὐδὲ οἷόν τε πελάσαι
 and altogether it-was not-even possible to-have-approached
 τῇ εἰσόδῳ. Ἐνιοὶ δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν εἰ
 the entrance (of the pass). Some indeed of-the captains, as
 μὴ δύναιτο ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο
 the 'could not 'effect (a passage) in-this (way) endeavoured
 ἄλλῃ· καὶ ἐποίουν ταῦτα μέχρι
 (to approach) in-another; and they-did these (things) until
 ἐγένετο σκότος· δὲ ἐπεὶ ὦντο ἀπιόντες εἶναι
 it-became dark; but when they-thought (that) retiring to-be
 ἀνεῖς, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· καὶ
 unobserved, then they-went-away to — (their) supper; for
 δι' ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἀνάριστοι οἱ
 in need they-happened being dinnerless, — (those, namely,)
 αὐτῶν ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες. Οἱ πολέμοι μέντοι
 of-them guarding-the-rear. The enemy however
 δηλονότι φοβούμενοι, οὐδὲν ἐπαΐσαντο
 evidently fearing (something), 'did not cease

δι' τῆς ὅλης νυκτος κυλινδῶντες τοὺς λίθους
through the whole night rolling (down) — stones.

δ' ἦν τεκμαίρεσθαι τῷ ψόφῳ. Δ' οἱ
as it was (easy) to-be-conjectured by-the noise. But — (those,

ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα περιιόντες κύκλῳ,
having the guide | going-around in-a-circle, [taking a
circuitous route,] surprise the guard sit-

μένους ἀμφὶ πῦρ· καὶ μὲν κατακάνοντες τοὺς,
ting round (a) fire; and indeed having-killed — (some),

δὲ καταδιώξαντες τοὺς, αἱτοὶ
and having-followed-after — (others) (in their flight), they

ἔμενον ἐνταῦδ' ὥς κατέχοντες τὸ ἄκρον. Δ' οἱ
remained there as-if occupying the summit. But —

οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν
they-'did not 'occupy (the summit), but (a) knoll was

ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν, παρ' ὅν ἦν ἡ αὐτὴ στενὴ ὁδός,
above them, by which was the same narrow road,

ἐφ' ἣ ἡ οἱ φύλακες ἐκάδηντο. Μέντοι ἦν
at which the guard were-seated. However there was (an)

ἐφοδος αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οἱ
approach thence to the enemy, — (those namely)

ἐκάδηντο ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ.
stationed on the open way.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα· δὲ
And here indeed they-passed the night; but

ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπέβαινε συντεταγμένοι
when (the) day was-beginning-to-dawn (they) drawn-up-in-order

ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ καὶ
proceeded in-silence against the enemy; for —

ἔγενετο ὁμίχλη, ὥστε προσελθόντες ἐγγὺς
there was (a) mist, so-that advancing near

ἔλαδον. Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, καὶ
they-escaped-observation. But when they-saw one-another, and

τε ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐπεφθέγγετο, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
.. the trumpet sounded-the-attack, and the Greeks

ἠλαλάξαντες ἔιντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδράπους, δὲ οἱ
raising-the-shout-of-battle rushed against the men, out the

οὐκ ἀδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν
(enemy) 'did not 'receive (them), but leaving the

ὁδόν, ὀλίγοι φεύγοντες ἀπέδνησκον· γὰρ
road, (a) few (only) fleeing died; | for

ἦσαν εὐζωνοί. Δὲ
they-were well-girt [for they were active in their movements]. But

οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος,
— (those) with Cheirisophus, hearing the trumpet,

εὐθὺς ἔιντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανεράν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι
immediately rushed up along the open road; others

δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ
indeed of-the generals (with their men) proceeded by

ἀτρίβεις ὁδοὺς ἧ ἕκαστοι ἔτυχον ὄντες, καὶ
untrodden paths wherever each happened (as) being, and

ἀναβάντες ὥς ἐδύναντο, ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους
ascending as (well as) they-could, drew-up one-another

τοῖς δόρασι. Καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμιξαν
with — (their) spears. And these first-ones joined

τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν
— (those) having-secured the place. But Xenophon

ἔχων τοὺς ἡμίσεις τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, ἐπορεύετο
having the half of-the rear-guard, proceeded

ἧ οἱ ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα·
(by the road) in-which — (those) having the guide (did);

(γὰρ ἦν εὐδοωτάτη τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις·) δὲ τοὺς
(for it-was the-most-practicable for-the baggage-cattle;) but the

ἡμίσεις ἔταξε ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑπο-
(other) half he-ordered (to be stationed) behind the baggage-

ζυγίων. Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ
cattle. And proceeding-forward they-happened-to-find (a) hill

ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν
(hanging) over the road occupied by the

πολεμίων, οὓς ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ ἀποκόψαι ἢ
enemy, whom it-was (a) necessity either to-have-dislodged or

διεξεῦχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ
to-have-been-separated from the other Greeks. And

αὐτοὶ μὲν ἄν ἐπορεύθησαν
(the men) themselves indeed might have-proceeded (in the same

ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἢ οὐκ
road) in-which the others (did), but (for) the baggage-cattle it-was not

ἐκβῆναι ἄλλῃ ἢ ταύτῃ.
(possible) to-go-from (the valley) in-any-other (way) than this

Ἐνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοισι, προσβάλ-
Then indeed having-encouraged one-another, they-make-an-

λουσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον τοῖς ὀρθοῖς λόχοις,
attack against the hill | in-the straight companies, [in

οἱ κύκλῳ, ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες
columns of companies,] not 'in (a) 'circle, but leaving

ἀφοδὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλονται φεύγειν.
(a) way-of-escape for-the enemy, if they-wished to-flee.

Καὶ τέως μὲν, αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπῃ
And for-a-while indeed, they ascending in-whatever-manner

ἕκαστος ἐδύναντο, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ
each could, the barbarians shot-arrows and

ἔβαλλον, δ' οὐκ ἐπρόκειντο ἐγγύς, ἀλλὰ
threw-stones, but they-'did not 'let-them-come near, but

φυγῇ λείπουσιν τὸ χωρίον. Καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες
in-flight they-leave the place. And — the Greeks

παρεληλύθεσαν τοῦτον, καὶ ὁρῶσιν ἕτερον
having-passed-over this (hill), — they-see another

λόφον ἔμπροσθεν κατεχόμενον.
hill before (them) occupied (by the enemy)

Ἐδόκει αὖτις πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῦτον.
It-seemed (necessary) again to-proceed against this.

Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐννοήσας, μή, εἰ κατα-
But — Xenophon having-been-apprehensive, lest, if he-should.

λείποι τὸν ἡλωκότα λόφον ἔρημον, καὶ
leave the captured hill destitute (of troops), and

οἱ πολέμιοι πάλιν λαβόντες ἐπιδοῖντο τοῖς
the enemy again taking (it) might-attack the

ἱποζυγίοις παριοῦσι, (δὲ τὰ ἱποζύγια ἦν ἐπὶ πολὺ
baggage-cattle passing-by, (for the baggage-cattle | wore on much

ἅτε πορευόμενα διὰ τῆς στενῆς
[formed a long train] as-when proceeding through the narrow

ὁδοῦ,) καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου
(defiles 'of (the) 'road,) he-leaves on the hill (the)

λοχαγοὺς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος,
captains Cephisodorus (the son) of-Cephisophon, 'an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου,
Athenian, and Amphicrates (the son) of-Amphidemus, (an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν, φυγάδα Ἀργεῖον.
Athenian, and Archagoras, (an) exile (from) Argos;

αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν
himself indeed with the rest marched against the

δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ αἰροῦσι τοῦτον καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ
second hill, and they-capture this-one even in-the same

τρόπῳ. Ἔτι δ' ἦν τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς
manner. Still however there-was (a) third hill remaining

αὐτοῖς, πολὺ ὀρδιώτατος, ὃ ὑπὲρ τῆς φυλακῆς
for-them, much the-steepest, that above (where) the guard

ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθεῖσης τῆς νυκτὸς
at the fire was-taken (by surprise) — at-night

ὑπὸ τῶν ἐδελοντῶν. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
by the volunteers. When indeed the Greeks

ἐγένοντο ἐγγὺς οἱ βάρβαροι λείπουνσι τὸν μαστόν
got near the barbarians leave the hill

ἄμαχητὶ, ὥστε γενέσθαι θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι, καὶ
without-fighting, so-as to-be wonderful to-all, and

ἰψώπτευν δέισαντες αὐτοὺς ἀπολιπεῖν,
they-suspected (that) having-been-in-fear (that) they left

μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῖντο. Δ' ἄρα
(the place), lest being-surrounded they-might-be-besieged. But indeed

οἱ καθορῶντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου τὰ
— (they) looking-down from the height (upon) the (things)

γίγνομενα ὀπισθεν, πάντες ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ τοὺς
 occurring behind, all went-off against the
 ὀπισθοφυλάκας.
 rear-guard.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν
 And Xenophon indeed with the youngest-men ascended
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν,
 on-to the summit, and the rest he-ordered to-march-slowly,
 ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμίξειαν καὶ
 so-that the rear companies might-come-up-with (them) and
 εἶπε προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν θέσθαι
 he-told (them) having-advanced along the road to-halt
 τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ. Καὶ ἐν τῷ τούτῳ
 under-arms on the level (ground). And at the same
 χρόνῳ Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος ἦλθε πεφειγώς,
 time Archagoras the Argive came having-fled,
 καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου λόφου,
 and says that they-had-been-cut-off from the first hill,
 καὶ ὅτι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης τεθναῖσι,
 and that Cephisodorus and Amphicrates were-dead,
 καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι μὴ ἀλλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς
 and-also how-many others (who) not having-leaped down the
 πέτρας ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφυλάκας
 rocks (and) arrived at the rear-guard
 Οἱ βάρβαροι δὲ διαπραξάμενοι ταῦτα
 The barbarians indeed having-accomplished these (things,
 ἦκον ἐπὶ λόφον ἀντίπορον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ
 came on (a) hill opposite the knoll; and
 Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως
 Xenophon commenced-treating with-them through (an) interpreter
 περὶ σπονδῶν, καὶ ἀπῆτει τοὺς νεκροὺς. Οἱ
 about (a) truce, and demanded the dead. — (They)
 δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ
 indeed said (that) they-would-give-them-up on — (this con-
 δiction), (that) he-'would not 'burn the villages. Ὁ —

Ξενοφῶν συγκαμολόγει ταῦτα. Δὲ ἐν ᾧ
 Xenophon agreed-to this. | But in which [but while]

μὲν τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα παρῆει,
 indeed the remaining (part of the) army was-passing-along,

δὲ οἱ διελέγοντο ταῦτα, πάντες οἱ
 and — they-were-discussing these (things), all — (those)

ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνεβόησαν. Ἐνταῦθα
 from that (part of) the country flocked-together. There

οἱ πολέμοι ἴσταντο· καὶ ἐπεὶ
 the enemy made-a-stand; and when 'they (the Greeks with

ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ
 Xenophon) 'began to-descend from the knoll

πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειντο,
 towards the others, | where the arms lay, [where

οἱ πολέμοι δὴ ἵεντο
 the heavy armed men were drawn up,] the enemy truly hurried-on

πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ
 in-great multitude and 'with (much) 'noise-and-tumult; and

ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ, ἀφ'
 when they-got on the vertex of-the knoll, from

οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρας·
 which Xenophon was-descending, they-commenced-rolling (down) stones;

καὶ μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος ἑνός, δὲ ὁ
 and indeed broke the leg of-one (man), and the

ἵπασπιστής ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπε
 shield-bearer having the shield (of Xenophon) deserted

Ξενοφῶντα· δὲ Εὐρύλοχος Ἀρκὰς Λουσιεὺς
 Xenophon; but Eurylochus (an) Arcadian of-Lusia (a)

ὀπλίτης προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ, καὶ προβέβλημένος
 heavy-armed-soldier ran-to him, and having-thrown

πρὸ ἀμφοῖν ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον
 before both (his shield) they-departed, and the others went

πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους.
 to — (those) drawn-up (on the level ground).

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ τὸ πᾶν Ἑλληνικόν ἐγένετο
 From this indeed the entire Grecian (force) got

ὁμοῦ, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῖς
 alike-together (on the level ground), and they-encamped there
 ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ δασιλέσι
 among many and fine houses and abundant
 ἐπιτηδεύουσιν· γὰρ καὶ ἦν πολὺς οἶνος, ὥστε
 provisions; for also there-was much wine, so-that
 εἶχον ἐν κονιατοῖς λάκκοις. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ
 they-kept (it) in plastered cisterns. Xenophon and also
 Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο, ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς
 Cheirisophus effected (this), that having-taken the
 νεκροὺς ἀπέδωκεν τὸν ἡγεμόνα·
 dead (from the enemy) they-would-deliver-up the guide;
 καὶ ἐποίησαν πάντα ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν
 and they-performed all (things) in — (their) power
 τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν, ὥστε νομίζεται ἀγαθοῖς
 for — (those) having-died, such-as-is-usual-and-appropriate for-brave
 ἀνδράσι. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο ἀνευ
 men. And on-the next-day they-proceeded without (a)
 ἡγεμόνος· δ' οἱ πολέμοιοι μαχόμενοι, καὶ ὅπη
 guide; but the enemy fighting, and where
 εἶη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες
 there-might-be (a) narrow place pre-occupying (it)
 ἐκάλυον τὰς παρόδους. Ὅποτε οὖν μὲν κωλύ-
 obstructed the passes. When therefore indeed they-im-
 οιεῖ τοὺς πρώτους, Ξενοφῶν ἐκβαίνων
 peded | — (those) first, [the front,] Xenophon going-from
 ὀπισθεν πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, ἔλυνε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς
 behind to the mountain, opened the obstructions of-the
 παρόδου τοῖς πρώτοις πειρώμενος γίνεσθαι
 passes for-the front endeavouring to-get
 ἐνωτέρω τῶν κωλύοντων· δὲ ὅποτε ἐπι-
 higher (than) — (those) obstructing; but when they-
 δοῖντο τοῖς ὀπισθεν, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων
 attacked — (those) behind, Cheirisophus departing
 καὶ πειρώμενος γίνεσθαι ἀνωτέρω
 (from his place) and endeavouring to-get higher (than)

ἔων **καλύνοντων,** ἔλυσεν τὴν ἀποφραξιν τῆς
 — (those) obstructing, opened the obstruction of-the
 παρόδου τοῖς ὀπισθεν· καὶ οὕτως αἰεὶ ἐβοήθουν
 passes for — (those) behind; and thus always they-assisted
 ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἐπεμέλυντο ἀλλήλων. Δὲ
 each-other, and strenuously took-care of-each-other. And
 καὶ ὁπότε ἦν οἱ βάρβαροι παρείχον πολλὰ
 also sometimes it-was (that) the barbarians | exhibited many
 πράγματα τοῖς ἀναβαῖσι
 things to — (those) [annoyed very much those] having-ascended
 πάλιν καταβαίνουσι· γὰρ ἦσαν ἐλαφροὶ
 (when) again descending; for they-were nimble
 ὥστε ἀποφεύγειν καὶ φεύγοντες ἐγγύθεν, γὰρ
 so-as to-escape even fleeing from-near, for
 εἶχον οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. Δὲ
 they-had nothing else than bows and slings. And
 καὶ ἦσαν ἀριστοὶ τοξόται· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς
 also they-were the-best archers; they-had indeed bows nearly
 τριπλήχη, δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπλήχη·
 three-cubits (long), and the arrows more than two-cubits;
 εἶλκον δὲ τὰς νευράς, ὁπότε τοξεύοιεν προβαί-
 they-drew indeed the strings, when they-shot stepping-
 νοντες τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ
 forward with-the left foot against the lower (part) of-the
 τόξου. Δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν
 bow. And the arrows went through the
 ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες,
 shields and through the corselets. But the Greeks,
 ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς ἀκοντίοις,
 after they-took (them up), made-use-of them for-javelins,
 ἐναγκυλῶντες. Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς
 having-fitted-a-poise-to-the-middle-like-a-javelin. In these —
 χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες ἐγένοντο χρησιμώτατοι. Δὲ
 places the Cretans were the-most-useful. And
 Στρατοκλῆς Κρής ἤρχε αὐτῶν.
 Stratocles (a) Cretan commanded them.

ἵπο βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνηους.
 (perceived) from (the) king and Tissaphernes (would

᾽Ως οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων
 equal them). So-that therefore freed from-these (dangers)

ἠδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.
 'they gladly 'were-made-to-take-repose.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρῶσιν
 At-the-same-time indeed with-the (break of) day they-perceive

ἔξωπλισμένους ἰππείας πού πέραν τοῦ
 completely-armed horsemen some-where on-the-other-side of-the

ποταμοῦ, ὥς κωλύσοντας διαβαί-
 river, so-as (that) they-would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-

νειν, δὲ πεζοὺς παρατεταγμένους
 over, and (also they perceived) foot-soldiers drawn-up-in-order-of-battle

ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις ἄνω τῶν ἰππέων, ὥς κωλύ-
 on the high-banks above the horsemen, so-as (that) they-

σοντας ἐκβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν.
 would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-over into — Armenia.

Δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι
 And these were Armenians and Mardians and Chaldeans

μισθοφόροι Ὀρόντου καὶ Ἀρτούχου. Δὲ οἱ Χαλ-
 mercenaries of-Orontes and Artuchus. And the Chal-

δαῖοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἀλκιμοί·
 deans were-said to-be (a) free and also (a) brave

δ' εἶχον ὅπλα μακρὰ γέρρα καὶ
 (people); and they-had (for) arms long shields and

λόγχας. Δὲ αἱ αὐταὶ ὄχθαι, ἐφ' ὧν οὗτοι
 spears. But the same elevated-banks, on which these

ἦσαν παρατεταγμένοι, ἀπείχον ἀπὸ
 (foot-soldiers) were drawn-up-in-order-of-battle, were-distant from

τοῖ ποταμοῦ τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα·
 the river three or four plethra (the plethra

δὲ μία ὁδὸς ἡ ὁρώμενη
 being about a hundred feet); and (the) one (only) road which was-visible

ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω, ὥςπερ χειροποίητος· οἱ Ἕλληνες
 was (one) leading upwards, as-if made-by-hand; the Greeks

ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν ταύτην. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ
 endeavoured to-cross in-this (place). When indeed the
 τε ὕδωρ ἐφαίνετο ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν πειρωμένοις
 — water appeared above the breasts to-those-making-trial
 καὶ ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν τραχὺς μεγάλοις
 (to cross over) and the river was rough with-large
 καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς λίθοις, καὶ οὐτ' ἦν ἔχειν
 and slippery rocks, and neither was-it (possible) to-have
 τὰ ὄπλα ἐν τῷ ὕδατι· δὲ εἰ μὴ ὁ ποταμὸς
 — (their) arms in the water; | but if not [or else] the river
 ἤρπαζεν· εἴ τις φέροι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπὶ
 'swept (them) 'away; if any-one carried — (his) arms on
 τε τῆς κεφαλῆς ἐγίγνοντο γυμνοὶ πρὸς τὰ
 — — (his) head he-became bare-and-exposed to the
 τοξεύματα καὶ τὰλλα βέλη· οὖν
 arrows and the-other missiles (of the enemy); therefore
 ἀνεχώρησαν, καὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο αὐτοῦ παρὰ
 they-retreated, and encamped there along
 τὸν ποταμόν. Ἐνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν
 the river. There indeed (where) they-themselves had-been
 τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα, ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους, ἑώρων τοὺς
 on-the previous night, on the mountain, they-saw the
 Καρδούχους συνειλεγμένους πολλοὺς ἐν τοῖς
 Carduchi assembled-together (in) great-numbers in —
 ὄπλοις. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν πολλὴ ἀδυναμία τοῖς
 arms. Here truly there-was great despondency to-the
 Ἕλλησιν ὁρῶσι μὲν τὴν δυσπορίαν τοῦ
 Greeks (as) they-perceive indeed the difficult-passage of-the
 ποταμοῦ, δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς
 river, and (as) they-perceive — (those on the other side of the
 κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς
 (river) opposed to-crossing-over, and (as) they-perceive the
 Καρδούχους ἐπικεισομένους ὀπισθεν τοῖς
 Carduchi hanging-on (the) rear (of) — (those,
 διαβαίνουσιν. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ
 crossing-over. Therefore indeed on-that-same — day and

τὴν νύκτα ἔμειναν ὄντες ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ. Δὲ
— night they-remained, being in great perplexity. | But

Ξενοφῶν εἶδεν ὄναρ. ἔδοξε
Xenophon saw (a) dream [but Xenophon had a dream]: he-seemed

δεδέσθαι ἐν πέδαις, δὲ αὐταὶ περιῤῥυ-
to-have-been-bound in fetters, but these (seemed) to-have-

ῆναι αὐτῷ αὐτόματα, ὥστε λυθῆ-
dropped-off from-him of-their-ownaccord, so-that (he seemed) to-have-

ναι, καὶ διαβαίνειν, ὅπόσον ἐβούλετο.
been-loosened, and (able) to-stride-about, as-much-as he-pleased.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὄρθρος, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρί-
But when it-was near-the-dawn-of-day, he-went to — Cheiri-

σοφον, καὶ λέγει, ὅτι ἔχει ἐλπίδας ἔσεσθαι
sophus, and says, that he-has hopes (that all) will-be

καλῶς, καὶ διηγείται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. Ὁ
well, and relates to-him — (his) dream. — (He)

δὲ ἡδετό τε, καὶ ὥς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέ-
indeed was-delighted, — and, as speedily-as (the) dawn began-

φαίνε πάντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ πορόντες ἐδύνοντο.
to-appear, all the generals being-present sacrificed;

καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν καλὰ εὐδὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου.
and the victims were favourable immediately from the first.

Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν
And the generals and captains going-away from the

ἱερῶν παρήγγελον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστο-
sacrifices gave-orders in-the army (for the troops) to-break-

ποιεῖσθαι. Καὶ δύο νεανίσκω προσέτρεχον τῷ
fast. And two young-men came-running to —

Ξενοφῶντι ἀριστῶντι· γὰρ πάντες ἤδεσαν
Xenophon (while) breakfasting; for all knew

ὅτι ἐξεῖν προσελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ
that it-might-be-allowed (to them) to-approach him even

ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι, καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι,
breakfasting and supping, and (also) if he-were-asleep,

ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τις ἔχοι τι
having-been-awakened to-speak (to him), if any-one might-have any-thing

τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον.
of — (these things) (relating) to the war (to say)

Καὶ τότε ἔλεγον, ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν συλλέγοντες
And then they-said, | that they-might-happen gathering

φρίγανα ὥς ἐπὶ πῦρ,
sticks as for (the) fire, [that as they were gathering stick

καίπετα κατίδοιεν, ἐν τῷ πέραν
for the fire,] (and then) they-saw, on the other-side (of the river)

ἐν πέτραις καδηκούσαις ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν
on (the) rocks reaching-down to the river

αὐτὸν, γέροντά τε καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παιδίσκας,
itself, an-old-man and also women and girls,

ὥςπερ κατατιθεμένους μαρσίπους ἱματίων ἐν
as-if depositing bags of-clothes in (a,

ἀντρώδει πέτρᾳ. Δὲ δόξαι σφισι ἰδοῦσι
cavernous rock. And (that) it-appeared to-them seeing

εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διαβῆναι· γὰρ οὐδὲ εἶναι
(this) to-be safe to-cross-over; for (that) neither was-it

πρόσβατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἵππεῦσι κατὰ τοῦτο.
accessible for-the hostile cavalry at this (place)

Δ' ἔφασαν ἐκδύντες ἔχοντες τὰ
And they-said, (that) having-undressed (and) having — (their)

ἐγχειρίδια διαβαίνειν γυμνοὶ ὥς νευσούμενοι, δὲ
daggers they-crossed-over naked as being-about-to-swim, and

πορευόμενοι πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν
proceeding forwards (that) they-crossed-over before (that)

βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα, καὶ διαβάντες καὶ λαβόντες
they-wetted the middle, and crossing-over and taking

τὰ ἱμάτια ἤκειν πάλιν.
the clothes (that) they-came (back) again.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτός οὖν τε εἰδὺς
— Xenophon himself therefore not-only immediately

ἔσπενδε καὶ ἐκέλευε τοῖς νεανίσκοις
'made (a) 'libation, but-also ordered the young-men

ἐγγεῖν, καὶ
to-pour-in (wine into the cups to make a libation themselves), and

εὐχῆσθαι τοῖς θεοῖς φήνασι τε τὰ ὀνείρατα
to-pray to-the gods having-shown not-only the dreams

καὶ τὸν πόρον, καὶ ἐπιτελέσαι τὰ ἀγαθὰ
but-also the passage, even (that) they-would-complete the good-things

λοιπὰ. Δὲ σπείσας εὐδὺς ἤγε τοὺς
remaining. And (the) libations-made 'he immediately 'led the

νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦντα
young-men to — Cheirisophus, and relates

ταῦτα. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀκούσας
these-same (things). And also — Cheirisophus having-heard (them)

ἐποίει σπονδὰς. Δὲ μὲν σπείσαντες
made (a) libation. And indeed having-made-the-libations

παρήγγελλον ἄλλοις σύσκευάζεσθαι.
they-ordered | the-others [the soldiers] to-collect-their-baggage-together;

αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγούς
they-themselves indeed calling-together the generals

ἐβουλεύοντο ὧπως ἂν διαβαίεν
consulted-with (them) how 'they might 'cross (the river)

κάλλιστα, καὶ τε νικῶεν τοὺς
to-the-best-advantage, and not-only (that) they-might-conquer —

ἐμπροσθεν, καὶ πάσχοιεν μηδὲν κακόν
(those) in-front-of (them), but-also suffer no evil

ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν. Καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς
from — (those) 'in (their) 'rear. And it-seemed to-them

Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι, καὶ διαβαί-
'good) (that) Cheirisophus indeed should-take-the-lead, and to-cross-

νειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ
ever having the half of-the army, and

ἔτι τὸ ἥμισυ ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενο-
moreover (that) the (other) half should-remain-behind with Xeno-

φώντι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον
phon, and (that) the baggage-cattle and the crowd (of camp-

διαβαίνειν ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.
(followers) to-cross-over in (the) middle of-these (two divisions).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶχε καλῶς,
When indeed these (things) had (themselves) well

ἐπορεύοντο· δ' οἱ νεανίσκω.
 (and in good order), they-proceeded-forward; and the young-men
 ἡγούντο ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ
 guided (them) having the river on (the) left,
 δὲ ὁδὸς ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ἦν ὥς τέτταρες
 and (the) way to the ford was about four
 στάδιοι. Δὲ, αὐτῶν πορευομένων, αἱ τάξεις τῶν
 stadia. But, they proceeding, the lines of-the
 ἱππέων ἀντιπαρήεσαν. Δὲ
 cavalry passed-along-opposite (them, on the other side of the river). And
 ἐπειδὴ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὀχθὰς
 when they-were at the ford and the shores
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔδεντο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ Χειρίσοφος
 of-the river, they-stacked — (their) arms, and Cheirisophus
 αὐτὸς πρῶτος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδύς
 himself first having-crowned-himself and taking-off-his-clothes
 ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ παρήγγελλε πᾶσι
 he-took — (his) arms, and he-ordered all
 τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
 the rest (to do the same), and he-ordered the captains
 ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρδίους, τοὺς μὲν
 to-lead the companies drawn-up-in-columns, — (some) indeed
 ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, δὲ τοὺς
 (of these columns being) on (the) left-hand, and — (others)
 ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. Καὶ οἱ μάντις μὲν ἐσφα-
 on (the) right-hand of-himself. And the augurs indeed sacri-
 γιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ
 ficed-victims (so that the blood flowed) into the river; the
 πολέμιοι δὲ ἐτόξευον τε καὶ
 enemy indeed (at the same time) kept-shooting-arrows and also
 ἐσφειδόνων· ἀλλ' οὕτω ἐξικνοῦντο.
 kept-slinging-stones; but they-'did (not) as-yet 'reach (the Greeks).
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ σφάγια ἦν καλὰ πάντες οἱ στρα-
 When indeed the victims were favourable all the sol-
 τῶνται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, δὲ καὶ ἅπασιν αἱ γυναῖκες
 diers even raised-the-war-cry, and also all the women

συνωλόλιζον. Γὰρ ἦσαν πολλαὶ ἑταῖραι
 cried-out-and-shouted-with (them). For there-were many mistresses
 ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε
 in the army. And Cheirisophus indeed entered
 καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 (the river), and — (those) with him (also); but — Xenophon,
 λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων,
 taking the most-active of-the rear-guard,
 ἔδει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον
 ran at (the) utmost (speed) back to the ford,
 τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἑκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ
 — (to that) opposite the outlet — (that led) to the
 ὄρη τῶν Ἀρμενίων, προσποιούμενος διαβάς
 mountains of — Armenia, making-a-feint (as) crossing
 ταύτη ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς ἵππεις παρὰ τὸν
 in-that (place) to-cut-off the cavalry along the
 ποταμόν. Δ' οἱ πολέμοι μὲν ὁρῶντες τοὺς
 river. But the enemy indeed seeing — (those)
 ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς περῶντας τὸ ὕδωρ,
 with Cheirisophus easily crossing-over the water,
 ὁρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας
 seeing likewise — (those) with Xenophon | running
 εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δέισαντες μὴ ἀποκλεισθεῖν
 to the-contrary [running back,] fearing lest they-might-be-in-
 ἦσαν, φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὥς πρὸς
 accepted, they-flee at (their utmost) power as-if to
 τὴν ἑκβασιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 the outlet from the river upwards. When indeed
 ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς
 they-got to the road (or outlet) they-stretched upwards to
 τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δὲ, ὁ ἔχων τὴν
 the mountain. Lycius indeed, who having (the command of) the
 τάξιν τῶν ἱππέων, καὶ Αἰσχίνης, ὁ ἔχων
 body of — cavalry, and Æschines, who having (the
 τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν
 command of) the body of — targeteers (name'y) — (those)

ἰμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἑώραν, φεύγοντας
with Cheirisophus, when they-saw (the enemy) fleeing

ἀνὰ κράτος εἶποντο· οἱ στρατιῶται
at (their utmost) power commenced-pursuing; the soldiers

δὲ ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ
also called-out (that they should) not be-left-behind, but

συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Δ'
to-go-through-with (the pursuing cavalry) to the mountain. But

αὖ Χειρίσοφος ἐπεὶ διέβη, οὐ μὲν
on-the-contrary Cheirisophus when he-crossed-over, 'did not indeed

ἐδίωκε τοὺς ἰππείας, δε εὐθὺς ἐξέβαινεν ἐπὶ
'follow the cavalry, but immediately went-forth against

τοὺς πολεμίους ἄνω κατὰ τὰς ὄχθας προ-
the enemy above (stationed) along the banks extend-

ηκούσας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. Δὲ οἱ ἄνω
ing-down to the river. But — (those) above (on these

ὄρῳντες μὲν τοὺς ἰππείας ἑαυτῶν φεύγοντας,
high banks) seeing indeed the cavalry of-themselves fleeing,

δ' ὄρῳντες ὀπλίτας ἐπιόντας σφίσιν
and seeing (the) heavy-armed-soldiers advancing-against themselves

ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ἄκρα ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
they-abandon the heights above the river.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τὰ πέραν γιγνώ-
Xenophon indeed when he-saw (things) on-the other-side be-

μενα καλῶς ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην
coming prosperous-and-well departed (with) the greatest-speed

πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· (γὰρ καὶ οἱ Καρ-
to the crossing army; (for also the Car-

δοῦχοι ἦσαν ἤδη φανεροὶ καταβαίνοντες εἰς τὸ
duchi were now evidently descending to the

πεδῖον ὥς ἐπιδησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις.)
plain as-if about-attacking — (those) behind.)

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν κατεῖχε τὰ ἄνω,
And Cheirisophus indeed (now) occupied the (place) above,

δὲ Λύκιος, σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπι-
and Lycius, with (his) few (men) having-undertaken to

διώξαι, ἔλαβε τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα τῶν σκευο-
 pursue, captured the (portions) left-behind of-the bag-
 φόρων, καὶ μετὰ τούτων τε καλὴν ἐσθῆτα
 gage, and among these not-only fine garments
 καὶ ἐκπώματα. Καὶ μὲν τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν
 but-also drinking-cups. And — the baggage of-the
 Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέ-
 Greeks and the crowd (of camp-followers) 'were yet 'pass-
 βαινε, δὲ Ξενοφῶν στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχοις,
 ing, and Xenophon having-turned towards the Carduchi,
 ἔδετο ἀντία τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ παρήγγειλε
 halted over-against (them) under-arms; and he-ordered
 τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν λόχον
 the captains to-form each — company
 ἑαυτοῦ κατ' ἐνωμοτίας, παραγαγόντας
 of-theirs into divisions-of-five-and-twenty-men, having-wheeled
 τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν παρ' ἀσπίδας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος·
 the division-of-twenty-five-men by the-left into line
 καὶ μὲν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἐνωμοτάρχας
 and (he ordered) — the captains and (the) commanders-'of
 ἵέναι πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων, δὲ
 (these) 'divisions to-go against the Carduchi, and (the)
 οὐραγοὺς καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
 commanders-of-the-rear to-halt at the river.
 Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ὥς ἑώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας
 But the Carduchi, as they-perceived the rear-guard
 τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους, καὶ ἤδη φαινου-
 of-the crowd (of camp-followers) diminished, and now ap-
 μένους ὀλίγους, δὴ ἐπήεσαν θάπτον ἄδοντες
 peared few, 'they indeed 'advanced more-quickly singing
 τινὰς ᾠδας. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος δὲ, ἐπεὶ εἶχε τὰ
 certain songs. — Cheirisophus indeed, when he-had the
 παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς, πέμπει τοὺς πελταστὰς
 (things) about himself safe, sends the targeteers
 καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα,
 and slinger and archers to Xenophon

καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ
and he-commanded (them) to-do whatever 'he might 'order

Δ' ὁ Ξενοχῶν ἰδὼν αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας πέμψας
But — Xenophon having-seen them crossing having-sent:

ἄγγελον κελεύει μείναι αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ
a) messenger to-request (them) to-remain there at the
ποταμοῦ, μὴ διαβάοντας. Ὅταν δ' αὐτοὶ
river, not having-crossed. When indeed they [Xenophon

ἄρξονται διαβαίνειν ἐμβαίνειν
and his men] begin to-cross (that they should) enter

ἐναντίους ἔνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν σφῶν ὥς
(the river) opposite on-this-side and on-that-side of-them as-if

διαβησομένους, τοὺς ἀκοντιστάς διηγκυλωμέ-
about-to-cross, the javelin-men holding-the-javelin-by-the-

νοὺς, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβεβλημένους.
poise, and the archers having-'placed (their) 'arrows-on-

δὲ μὴ προβαίνειν πρόσω τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
the-string; but not to-advance far-into the river.

Παρήγγειλε δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἑαυτῷ
[He-ordered — — (those) about himself [he ordered his

ἐπειδὰν σφενδόνη ἐξικιῇται,
own men] (that) when (a stone from a) sling shall-reach

καὶ ἀσπίς ψοφῇ παιανίσαντας
(them), and (a) shield resounded (that) having-sung-the-psalm

θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· δὲ ἐπειδὰν οἱ
they-should-rush on the enemy; and when the

πολέμοι ἀναστρέψωσι, καὶ ὁ σαλπιγκτὴς σημή-
enemy should-turn-to-fee, and the trumpeter should-sound-the-

νῆ τὸ πολεμικόν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τοὺς
signal the warlike-one (of attack) from the river, (that) the

οὐραγούς μὲν ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρον
leaders-of-the-rear — having-turned to (the) right

ἡγεῖσθαι, δὲ πάντας θεῖν, καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι
to-take-the-lead, and all to-run, and to-cross-over as

τάχιστα, ἧ ἕκαστος εἶχεν τὴν τάξιν,
fast-as-possible. where each-one had — (his) file

ὥς μὴ ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἔσοιτο
 so-as not to-impede one-another; (and) that that-one would-be
 ἄριστος ὃς ἂν πρῶτος γένηται ἐν τῷ
 the-best (man) who might first get on the
 πέραν.
 other-side.

Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ὁρῶντες τοὺς λοιποὺς
 But the Carduchi seeing — (those) remaining
 ἤδη ὀλίγους, (γὰρ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τεταγμένων
 now few, (for also many of — (those) ordered
 μένειν ὥχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ὑποζυ-
 to-remain departed taking-care, — (some indeed of-the-baggage-
 γίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, δ' οἱ
 saddle, — (some) also 'of (their) 'utensils (and baggage), and — (others)
 ἑταιρῶν,) ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως,
 of (their) 'mistresses,) here indeed 'pressed boldly 'on,

καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν.
 and began to-'use (their) 'slings and bows.

Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὤρμησαν δρόμῳ
 But the Greeks having-sung-the-pæan started-forward 'in (a) 'run
 ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο·
 'pon them; — 'they indeed 'did not 'receive (the 'charge

γὰρ καὶ ἦσαν ὀπλισμένοι, ὥς μὲν ἐν
 of the Greeks); for though they-were armed, as indeed in
 τοῖς ὄρεσιν, ἱκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ
 — (their) mountains, fit for — attacking and
 φεύγειν, δὲ πρὸς δέχεσθαι τὸ εἰς χεῖρας
 fleeing, but for receiving (any enemy) | the to hand

οὐκ ἱκανῶς. Ἐν τούτῳ
 [hand to hand] (they were) not fit. At this (time)

ὁ σαλπιγκτής σημαίνει· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι
 the trumpeter sounds; and the — enemy

ἔφευγον ἔτι πολὺ θάπτον, δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες στρέ-
 fled yet much faster, but the Greeks having

ψαντες τὰναντία ἔφευγον ὅτι τάχιστα διὰ τοῦ
 turned to-the-contrary fled as fast-as-possible over the

ποταμοῦ Οἱ τινες δὲ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων, αἰσδο-
 river. — Some however of-the enemy, per-
 μενοι ἔδραμον πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν, καὶ
 ceiving (this) ran back to the river, and
 τοξεύοντες ἔτρωσαν ὀλίγους,
 'using (their) 'bows wounded (a) few (of our men,
 δ' οἱ πολλοί, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὄντων
 but the greater (number of them), even the Greeks being
 πέραν, ἔτι ἦσαν φανεροὶ φεύγοντες. Δ' οἱ
 on-the-other-side, yet were evidently fleeing. But —
 ὑπαντήσαντες, ἀνδριζό-
 (those who) had-come-to-meet (them), priding-themselves-on-their-man-
 μενοι καὶ προϊόντες προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ,
 hood-and-courage, and advancing farther (than) — proper,
 πάλιν διέβησαν ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ
 again crossed (the river) behind — (those) with
 Ξενοχῶντος· καὶ ἐτρώθησαν καὶ
 Xenophon; and 'they (the Carduchi) 'wounded even
 τινες τούτων.
 some of-those.

CHAPTER IV

Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξά-
 WHEN indeed they-had-crossed, (and) having-drawn-themselves-up-
 μενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας, ἐπορεύθησαν,
 in-order about (the) middle 'of (the) 'day, they-proceeded,
 οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας, διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας,
 not less than five parasangs, through — Armenia,
 ἅπαν πεδίων καὶ γηλόφους λείους·
 [it being] altogether (a) plain, and (having) hills of-gentle-ascent;
 γὰρ ἦσαν οὐ κῶμαι ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ διὰ
 for there-were not villages near the river on-account-of

τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους
the wars (namely) — (those) with the Carduchi.

Δὲ εἰς ἣν κώμην ἀφίκοντο ἦν τε μεγάλη.
But (the village) at which village they-arrived was not-only large,

καὶ εἶχε βασίλειον τῷ σατραπῇ, καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς
but-also had (a) palace for-the satrap, and on the

πλείσταις οἰκίαις ἐπῆσαν τύρσεις· ἐπιτήδεια δ'
most houses there-were towers; provisions indeed

ἦν δαψιλῇ. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο
were abundant. Thence — they-proceeded two

σταδμὸς, δέκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι ὑπερῆλ-
days'-march, (making) ten parasangs, until they-passed-

δὸν τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος. Ἐντεῦθεν
beyond the sources of-the river Tigris. Thence

δ' ἐπορεύθησαν τρεῖς σταδμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα
— they-proceeded three days'-march (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Τηλεβοάν. Οὗτος
parasangs to the river Teleboas. This

δ' ἦν μὲν καλὸς, δ' οὐ μέγας· δ' ἦσαν
(river) — was indeed beautiful, but not large; and there-were

πολλαὶ κῶμαι περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. Δὲ ὁ οὗτος
many villages along — (this) river. And — this

τόπος ἐκαλεῖτο Ἀρμενία ἣ πρὸς
place was-called Armenia (that namely) which (was) towards (the)

ἐσπέραν. Δ' ὑπαρχος αὐτῆς ἦν Τηρίβαζος,
west. And (the) lieutenant-governor of-it was Teribazus,

ὁ καὶ γενόμενος φίλος βασιλεῖ (καὶ ὅποτε
who even had-become (a) friend 'to (the) 'king (and when

παρεῖη οὐδεὶς ἄλλος ἀνέβαλλε βασιλέα
he-might-be-present no-one else put (the) king

ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Οὗτος προσήλασεν ἔχων
on — (his) horse. This (person) came-forward having

ἱππέας, καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν,
cavalry (with him), and having-sent-forward (an) interpreter to-say,

ὅτι βούλοιο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. Ἐδοξε
that he-wished to-have-spoken-with the commanders. It-seemed

δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀκοῦσαι. Καὶ πρὸς·
indeed (good) to-the generals to-hear (him). And ad-

ελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἤρώτων τί θέλοι.
vancing within hearing (distance) they-inquired what he-might-wish.

Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, ὅτι βούλοιτο σπείσασθαι,
Who — (then) said, that he-desired to-make-a-treaty (with them),

ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς ἀδικεῖν τοὺς
| on which [on the condition] (that) neither he-himself should-injure the

Ἕλληνας, μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς
Greeks, nor (that) they (the Greeks) should-burn the

οἰκίας, τε λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
houses, also (that they might) take — provisions

ὅσων δέοιντο. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε
(of)-as-much-as they-wanted. These (proposals) seemed (good)

τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.
to-the generals, and they-made-a-treaty on these (terms).

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου τρεῖς
Thence indeed they-proceeded through (the) plain three

σταδμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας· καὶ
days'-march (making) fifteen parasangs; and

Τηρίβαζος παρηκολούθει, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ,
Teribazus followed, | having the force of-himself,

ἀπέχων ὥς δέκα σταδίου·
[having his own troops,] (and) being-distant about ten stadia;

καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασίλειαν, καὶ πολλὰς
and they-arrived at (a) palace, (there being) also many

κώμας περίξ μεστὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.
villages round-about (it) filled-with much — provisions

Δ' αὐτῶν στρατοπεδευομένων γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς
But they having-encamped there-happened in-the night

πολλή χιών· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε διασκη-
much snow; and in-the-morning it-seemed-best to-distribute-in-

νῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς
quarters the troops and the generals among the

κώμας· γὰρ οὐκ ἑώραν οὐδένα πολέμιον,
villages; for they-'did not 'see (no) (any) enemy

καὶ ἔδοκει εἶναι ἀσφαλές διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
 and it-seemed to-be safe on-account-of the quantity of —
 χιώνος. Ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν
 snow. Here they-had — provisions such-as are
 ἰγαδά, ἱερεῖα, σίτον, εἰώδεις
 good, (namely) | victims, [animals used for food,] corn, fragrant
 παλαιούς οἶνους, ἀσταφίδας, παντοδαπά δσπρια.
 old wines, dried-grapes, all-kinds (of) pulse.
 Τινὲς δὲ τῶν ἀποσκεδαννυμένων ἀπὸ τοῦ
 Some — of — (those) scattered-about from the
 στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον, ὅτι κατίδοιεν στράτευμα,
 camp said, that they-saw (an) army,
 καὶ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοιτο νύκτωρ. Ἐδόκει
 and (that) many fires appeared during-the-night. It-seemed
 δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ εἶναι ἀσφαλές διασκη-
 indeed to-the generals not to-be safe to-quarter
 νοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν πάλιν τὸ
 dispersed, but (that they ought) to-bring-together again the
 στράτευμα. Ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον· γὰρ ἔδοκει καὶ
 army. Thereupon they-assembled; for it-seemed even
 συναιδριάζειν. Δ' αὐτῶν νυκτερευόντων ἐνταῦθα
 to-be-clearing-up. But they passing-the-night here
 ἄπλετος χιών ἐπιπίπτει, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ
 (a) vast-quantity (of) snow falls, so-that it-covered both
 τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους
 the arms and the men lying
 καὶ ἡ χιών συνεπόδισε τὰ ὑποζύγια·
 (on the ground); and the snow benumbed the baggage-cattle;
 καὶ ἦν πολὺς ὀκνος ἀνίστασθαι· γὰρ ἡ χιών
 and there-was much sluggishness to-rise-up; for the snow
 ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα κατακειμένων ἦν ἄλεινον,
 having-fallen-on (them) lying-down was warm (to them),
 μὴ παραρβρνεῖν ὅτω. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 (provided) it-'did not 'fall-off from-them. When however
 Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε ἀναστὰς γυμνός
 Xenophon | dared having-risen-up naked [dared to rise up

σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἂν καὶ
 [lived of his outer garments] to-split wood, speedily — also
 τις ἄλλος ἀναστὰς ἀφελόμενος ἐκείνου
 some other-one having-risen-up (and) having-taken (the wood) from-him
 ἔσχιζεν. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες
 split (it). After this — also the others having-risen-up
 ἔκαιον πῦρ καὶ ἐχρίοντο. Γὰρ εὑρίσκετο
 lit (the) fire and anointed-themselves. For they-found
 πολὺ χρίσμα ἐνταῦθα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου,
 much ointment there, which they-used in-place-of oil,
 σῦειον, καὶ σησάμινον, καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον
 (it being made of) hog's-lard, and sesame, and almonds
 ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν, καὶ τερεβίνθινον. Δὲ
 of the bitter (kind), and turpentine. And
 ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον
 of the self same (substances) also an-odoriferous-unguent
 εὑρίσκετο.
 was-found.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν εἶναι διασκη-
 After this it-seemed again to-be necessary-to-be-dis-
 νητέον εἰς τὰς κώμας εἰς στέγας. Ἐνθα δὴ
 persed-in-quarters in the villages under shelter. Here indeed
 οἱ στρατιῶται ἦσαν σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ
 the soldiers went with much shouting and
 ἡδονῇ ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
 delight to the shelter-under-roofs, and (to) — provisions;
 δὲ ὅσοι, ὅτε πρότερον ἀπήσαν,
 but as-many-as, when before they-departed (from the villages),
 ἐνέπρησαν τὰς οἰκίας ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας ἐδίδosan
 set-fire-to the houses through folly | gave
 δίκην σκηνοῦντες κακῶς.
 justice [suffered punishment] (by) encamping uncomfortably (in the
 ἔντεῦθεν ἐπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην
 open air). Thence they-sent at-night Democrates (of)
 Τεμενίτην, δόντες ἄνδρας, ἐπὶ τὰ
 Temenos, giving (him a detachment of) men, to the

ὄρη, ἔνθα οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι
 mountains, where — (those) having-straggled 'from the camp;
 ἔφασαν καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· γὰρ οὗτος
 said (that) they-saw the fires; for this (man)
 ἐδόκει καὶ ἤδη πρότερον ἀληθεῦσαι πολλὰ
 seemed also already before to-have-truly-reported many
 τοιαῦτα, τε τὰ ὄντα ὡς ὄντα, καὶ
 such (things), not-only the (things) being as being, but-also
 τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. Δὲ πορευθεὶς,
 the (things) not being as not being. And having-gone-forth,
 ἔφη μὲν οὐκ ἰδεῖν τὰ πυρά, δὲ συλλαβὼν
 he-said (that he) indeed 'did not 'see the fires, but having-captured
 ἄνδρα ἦκεν ἄγων, ἔχοντα Περ-
 (a) man he-came bringing (him), (this man) having (a) Per-
 σικόν τόξον καὶ φαρέτραν, καὶ σάγαριν
 sian bow and quiver, and (a) kind-of-battle-axe
 οἶανπερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. Ἐρωτώμενος δὲ
 such-as the Amazons have. Being-asked —
 ποδαπὸς εἶη, ἔφη μὲν εἶναι Πέρσης,
 of-what-country he-might-be, he-said indeed (that) he-was (a) Persian,
 δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος Τηρι-
 and (that), he-was-proceeding from the army of-Teri-
 βάζου, ὅπως λάβοι ἐπιτήδεια· δ' οἱ ἡρώτων
 bazus, that he-might-procure provisions; and — they-asked
 αὐτόν, τε ὅπόσον τὸ στράτευμα εἶη. καὶ
 him, not-only how-great the army might-be, but-also
 ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι
 for what it-had-been-assembled. And — (he) said, | that
 Τηρίβαζος εἶη ἔχων τε τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ
 Teribazus might-be having not-only the force of-himself,
 καὶ Χάλυβας καὶ
 [that Teribazus had not only his own army,] but-also Chalybian and
 Ταόχους μισθοφόρους· δὲ ἔφη αὐτὸν παρεσκευ-
 Taochan mercenaries; and he-said (that) he was-pre-
 ἄσθαι ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς,
 pared at the crossing of-the mountain, in the narrow

ἥπερ μοναχῇ εἷη πορεία, ὡς ἐνταῦθα
 (parts) by-which alone there-was (a) passage, that there
 ἐπιδησόμενον τοῖς Ἑλλησιν. Ἔδοξε τοῖς
 he-was-about-attacking the Greeks. It-seemed (good) to-the
 στρατηγοῖς ἀκούσασι ταῦτα συναγαγεῖν τὸ
 generals (after) having-heard this to-collect-together the
 στράτευμα· καὶ εὐδὺς καταλιπόντες φύλακας,
 army; and immediately leaving sentinels,
 καὶ Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ
 and Sophraenetes (the) Stymphalian (as) commander over
 τοῖς μένουσι, ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες
 — (those) remaining (behind), they-proceeded, having (a)
 ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἄνδραπον. Ἐπειδὴ
 guide (namely) the captured man. When
 δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προῖ-
 however they-crossed-over the mountains, the targeteers going-
 ὄντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον
 before and having-perceived the camp (of the enemy)
 οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακρα-
 they-'did not 'wait-for the heavy-armed-men, but having-raised
 γόντες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Δ' οἱ βάρβαροι
 a-shout they-ran against the camp. But the barbarians
 ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον, οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ'
 hearing the noise, 'did not 'remain, but
 ἔφειγον· ὁμῶς δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν βαρ-
 fled; likewise — also they-killed some of-the bar-
 βάρων· καὶ ἵπποι ἥλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι, καὶ
 barians; and horses were-taken about twenty (in number), and
 ἡ σκηνὴ ἣ Τηριβάζου ἐάλω, καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ
 the tent — (that) of-Teribazus was-taken, and in it
 εἶναι ἀργυρόποδες κλῖναι καὶ ἐκπώ-
 (there were found) to-be silver-footed couches and drinking-
 ματα, καὶ οἱ φάσκοντες ἄρτοκόποι,
 cups, and — (those) saying (that they were) bakers,
 καὶ οἱ οἶνοχοοί. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
 and — (those) (saying that they were) cup-bearers When indeed

οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα,
 the commanders of-the heavy-armed-men heard these
 ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην
 (things), it-seemed to-them (best) to-depart | the fastest
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις
 [as fast as possible] to — (their own) camp, lest any
 ἐπίδεις γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. Καὶ
 attack might-happen to — (those) having-been-left-behind. And
 εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλ-
 immediately having-recalled (the men) by-the (sound of the) trum-
 πυγῇ ἀπήεσαν, καὶ ἀφίχοντο ἐπὶ τὸ
 pet they-departed, and they-arrived at — (their)
 στρατόπεδον αὐθημερόν.
 camp the-same-day.

CHAPTER V.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδόκει εἶναι πορευτέον,
 But on-the next-day it-was-thought to-be necessary-to-proceed,
 ὅπῃ δύναιτο τάχιστα, πρὶν ἢ τὸ στράτευμα
 in-what-way they-could most-speedily, before that the army
 συλλεγῆναι πάλιν, καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ
 (of the enemy) was-collected again, and to-have-seized the
 στενά. Δ' εὐθὺς συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύ-
 files. And immediately having-collected-their-baggage they-pro-
 οντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος ἔχοντες πολλοὺς
 ceeded through much snow having man,
 ἡγεμόνας καὶ αὐθημερόν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον,
 guides; and on-the-same-day having-passed-over the height,
 ἐφ' ᾧ Τηρίβαζος ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίδεδαι,
 on which Teribazus intended to-attack (them),

κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν
they-encamped. Hence they-proceeded

τρεις σταδμοὺς ἐρήμους πεντεκαίδεκα
three days'-march (in a) desert (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, καὶ
parasangs to the river Euphrates, and

διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν.
they-crossed-over it being-wet to the navel.

Δὲ ἐλέγοντο αἱ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ οὐ εἶναι πρόσω.
And they-say the sources of-it not to-be far.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος καὶ
Hence they-advanced through much snow and

πεδίου τρεῖς σταδμοὺς, πεντεκαίδεκα
(through a) plain three days'-march, (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας. Ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο
parasangs. The — third (day's march) was

χαλεπὸς καὶ βορρᾶς ἄνεμος ἔπνει ἐναν-
difficult-and-severe and (the) north wind blew against-them-

τίος, παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα, καὶ
in-their-faces, entirely parching-up every-thing, and

πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἐνθα δὴ τις τῶν
benumbing the men. Then indeed some-one of-the

μάντεων εἶπε σφαγιασασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ
augurs said (that) it-was-to-be-sacrificed to-the wind, and

σφαγιαζεται· καὶ δὴ ἔδοξε περιφανῶς πᾶσι
it-was-sacrificed; and indeed it-seemed evidently to-all (that)

τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος λῆξαι. Δὲ τὸ βάθος
the violence of-the wind ceased. And the depth

τῆς χιόνος ἦν ὀργυιὰ· ὥστε καὶ πολλὰ τῶν
of-the snow was (a) fathom; so-that even many of-the

ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων ἀπώλετο, καὶ
baggage-cattle and of-the slaves perished, and

τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. Δὲ διεγέγοντο
of-the soldiers about thirty. And they-passed

τὴν νύκτα καίοντες πῦρ· ὃ ἦν πολλὰ ξύλα
the night burning fire; for there-was much wood

ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ· οἱ δὲ προσιώντες ὅψε
in the place-where-they-halted; — (those) indeed coming late

εἶχον οὐ ξύλα. Οἱ οὖν ἥκοντες πάλαι
had no wood. — (Those) therefore coming before

καὶ καίοντες τὸ πῦρ οὐ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας
and burning the fire (would) not (let) — (those) coming-late

προσίσταντο πρὸς τὸ πῦρ, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς
approach to the fire, unless they-shared with-them

πυρὸν, ἢ τι ἄλλο, εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν.
wheat, or any-thing else, if-any-thing they-might-have eatable.

Ἐνθα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὃν ἕκαστοι
So-then indeed they-shared with-one-another what each

εἶχον. Ἐνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἔκαίετο, τῆς χιόνος
had. There-where indeed the fire was-burning, the snow

διατηκομένης, ἐγίγοντο μεγάλοι βόθροι ἕστε
(being) melted, there-became large pits until

ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν
to the ground; where indeed there-was-present (an opportunity)

μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.
to-measure the depth of-the snow.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύοντο τὴν ὅλην ἐπιοῦσαν
Hence — they-proceeded (during) the entire following

ἡμέραν διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνδρώπων
day through snow, and many of-the men

ἐβουλιμίαςαν. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθοφυλακῶν, καὶ
got-the-bulimy. But Xenophon commanding-the-rear, and

καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνδρώπων
finding — (those) fallen-down of-the men

ἠγνόει ὃ τι τὸ πάθος εἴη. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ τις
knew-not what the disease might-be. But when some-one

τῶν ἐμπείρων εἶπε αὐτῷ ὅτι σαφῶς
of — (those) acquainted-with (it) told him that evidently

βουλιμῶσι, καὶ φάγωσι τι, ἀναστήσονται,
they-had-the-bulimy, and-if they-eat something, they-would-get-up,

περιὶ περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἰ πού ὅρῳ τι
going-about among the baggage-cattle, if any-where he-saw any thing

βρωτὸν ἢ ποτόν, διεδίδου, καὶ δίδοντας
 eatable or drinkable, he-distributed (it), and giving : it,

διέπεμπε τοῖς βουλιμῶσι τοὺς δυναμένους
 he sent-about to — (those) having-the-bulimy — (those) being-able

παρατρέχειν. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐμφάγοιεν τι,
 to-run-about. When — they-might-have-eaten any-thing,

ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. Δὲ πορευομένων
 they-stood-up and proceeded-forth. But proceeding (or

Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας ἀφικνεῖται
 their march) Cheirisophus indeed about dark arrives

πρὸς κώμην, καὶ καταλαμβάνει πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ
 at (a) village, and finds at the spring

ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας ἐκ
 in-front of-the rampart women and girls from

τῆς κώμης ὑδροφορούσας. Αὗται ἠρώτων αὐτοὺς
 the village carrying-water. These asked them

τίνες εἶεν. Δ' ὁ ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπε Περσιστί,
 who they-might-be. And the interpreter said 'in (the)' Persian-language,

ὅτι πορεύονται παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς τὸν
 that they-were-proceeding from (the) king to the

σατράπην. Αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι εἴη οἱκ
 satrap. — (they) — replied, that he-was not

ἐνταῦθα, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην.
 there, but was-distant as-much-as (a) parasang.

Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὄψε συνεισέρχονται σὺν ταῖς
 But — (they) because it-was late enter-together with the

ὑδροφόροις εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα πρὸς τὸν κωμάρχην.
 water-carriers into the fort to the head-man-of-the-village.

Ἐηταῦθα οὖν μὲν Χειρίσοφος καὶ ὅσοι τοῦ
 There therefore indeed Cheirisophus and as-many of-the

στρατεύματος ἐδυνήθησαν ἐστρατοπεδεύ-
 army (as) were-enabled (to come up) en-

σαι το· δ' οἱ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν
 camped; and — (those) of-the other soldiers that-were

μὴ δυνάμειν διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν
 not 'able to-have-completed the route passed-the-night

ἄσιτοι καὶ ἀνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες τῶν
fasting and without fire; and there some of-the

στρατιωτῶν ἀπώλοντο. Δὲ τινὲς τῶν πολεμίων
soldiers perished. And some of-the enemy

συνειλεγμένοι ἐφείποντο, καὶ ἥρπαζον τὰ
being-collected-together pursued (the rear), and seized --

τῶν ὑποζυγίων μὴ δυνάμενα, καὶ
(those) of-the baggage-cattle not being-able (to proceed), and

ἐμάχοντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ αὐτῶν. Δὲ καὶ
fought with-one-another for them. And also

εἰλείποντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε οἱ διεφθαρ-
there-were-left-behind of-the soldiers both — (those) having-

μένοι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος,
been-ruined (as respects) the eyes by the snow,

τε οἱ ἀποσσηπότες τοὺς δακτύλους
(and — (those) having-been-mortified (as respects) the fingers

τῶν ποδῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους.
of-the feet by the cold [and those who had their toes

mortified by the cold]. Δὲ μὲν ἦν ἐπικούρημα τοῖς
But indeed it-was (a) defence to-the

ὀφθαλμοῖς τῆς χιόνος, εἴ τις πορεύοιτο
eyes from-the snow, if any-one (when) he-proceeded (on)

ἔχων τι μέλαν πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν,
the march) (having) (had) something black before the eyes,

δὲ τῶν ποδῶν, εἴ τις κινοῖτο, καὶ
and (a defence) of-the feet, if any-one moved-about, and

μηδέποτε ἔχοι ἡσυχίαν, καὶ εἴ τὴν νύκτα
never might-have rest, and if at — night

ὑπολύοιτο. Δὲ ὅσοι ἐκοιμῶντο ὑποδε-
they-loosened-their-sandals. But (as many) as slept having-their-

δεμένοι, οἱ ἱμάντες εἰσεδύνοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας
sandals-on, the straps penetrated into the feet

καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο·
and the soles (of the sandals) were-frozen-about (the feet);

γὰρ καὶ, ἐπειδὴ τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα ἐπήλπιε,
for indeed, when — (their) old sandals failed

πεποιημένοι ἦσαν καρβάτινας ἐκ τῶν
 (them), they-had-made (for themselves) rough-sandals from the
 νεοδάρτων βοῶν. Διὰ τὰς ἀνάγκας οὖν
 raw-hides of-oxen. Through — (such) necessity therefore
 τοιαύτας τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὑπελείποντο· καὶ
 as-these some of-the soldiers were-left-behind; and
 ἰδόντες τι μέλαν χωρίον, διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι
 seeing a black place, on-account-of the to-have disappeared
 αὐτόδι τὴν χιόνα,
 there (as respects) the snow, [on account of the disappear-
 εἶκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ
 ance there of the snow,] they-conjectured (that it) had-melted; and
 ἔτετῆκει διὰ τινὰ κρήνην, ἣ ἦν ἀτμίζουσα
 it-had-melted through some spring, which was smoking
 πλησίον ἐν νάπη. Ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι
 near in (a) woody-vale. There turning-aside
 ἐκάθηντο, καὶ ἔφασαν οὐ πορεύεσθαι.
 they-sat-down, and said (that they would) not proceed.
 Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας,
 — But Xenophon having (the command of) rear-guard,
 ὥς ᾗσδετο ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ
 as he-perceived (this) begged of-them by-every art and
 μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων, ὅτι πολλοὶ
 means not to-be-left-behind, saying, that many (of the)
 πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι ἔπονται, καὶ τελευτῶν
 enemy being-assembled-together pursued (them), and finishing
 ἐχαλέπαινε. Οἱ δὲ ἐκέλευον σχάζειν
 he-grew-angry. — (They) indeed requested (him) to-kill
 γὰρ ἂν οὐ δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι.
 (them); for (that) 'they — 'were not 'able to-proceed.
 Ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτιστον φοβῆσαι
 Then it-seemed (to him) to-be the-best to-have-scared
 τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ
 the pursuing enemy, if any-thing could-be-done, lest
 ἐπιπέσοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. Καὶ μὲν ἦ
 they should-fall-upon — (those) being-exhausted. And indeed it-was

ἤδη σκότος, οἱ δὲ προσήεσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ
 now dark, — 'they indeed 'advanced with-much noise
 διαφερόμενοι ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον. Ἐνθα δὴ
 disputing about what they-had (of the booty). Then truly
 μὲν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἄτε ὑγιαίνον-
 indeed — (those of the) rear-guard as being-in-good-condition-
 τες, ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους·
 and-able, starting-up ran to the enemy;
 δ' οἱ κάμνοντες, ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον μέγιστον
 and the exhausted (men), | having-shouted as-much as-the-greatest
 ἠδύναντο, ἔκρουσαν
 they-could, [having shouted as loud as they possibly could,] struck
 τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα. Οἱ πολέμοι δὲ
 the shields against the spears. The enemy indeed
 δέισαντες, ἤκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος
 having-become-alarmed, threw themselves among the snow
 εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἐφθέγγετο
 into the woody-vale, and no-one (of them) afterwards made-a-noise
 οὐδαμοῦ.
 any-where.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, εἰπόντες
 And Xenophon indeed and — (those) with him, telling
 τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσιν, ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τινες
 — (those) being-weak-and-helpless, that on-the next-day some
 ἥξουσὶ ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι,
 would-come to them, (then) proceeding (on their march, but)
 πρὶν διελθεῖν τέτταρα στάδια ἐτιγχάνουσιν
 before (that) they-had-gone-over four stadia they-found
 ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀναπαινομένοις
 on the road — soldiers resting
 ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ
 on the snow (and) having-been-covered (by it), and neither
 οὐδεμία φυλακὴ καθεστῆκει, καὶ
 had (no) (any) guard 'been-placed-over (them), and
 ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. Δ' οἱ ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ
 they-'roused them 'up. And — they-said that — (those)

ἐμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. Ὁ δε
before 'did not 'make-progress. — (Xenoph.) indeed

παριών, καὶ παραπέμπων τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους τῶν
going-past, and sending-on the strongest of-the

πελταστών, ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη
targeteers, ordered (them) to-see-and-ascertain what might-be

τὸ κωλύον. Οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον, ὅτι τὸ
the hindrance. — 'They indeed 'announced that the

ὅλον στρατεύμα οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο.
whole army might-'be thus (in a manner) 'taking-rest.

Καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐνταῦθα ἡγίσθησαν
And — (those) with Xenophon then took-up-their-quarters

αὐτοῦ ἀνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἀδειπνοί, καταστησάμενοι
there without fire and supperless, stationing

φυλακὰς οἷας ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν
(such) guards as they-were-able. When indeed it-was

πρὸς ἡμέραν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας τοὺς νεω-
towards day, — — Xenophon having-sent the young-

τάτους πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας
est (of his men) to — (those) being-weak-and-sick

ἐκέλευεν ἀναστήσαντας ἀναγκάζειν
ordered (them) having-'roused (them) 'up to-compel (them)

προϊέναι. Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει
to-go-forward. At — this (time) Cheirisophus sends

τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς οἱ
'some) of — (those) from the village | about-seeing how the

τελευταῖοι ἔχοιεν. Δ'
last might-have (themselves) [to see how the rear fared]. But

οἱ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες
— (the young men sent by Xenophon) rejoiced (at) seeing (them)

παρέδωσαν τούτοις ἀσθενοῦντας κομίζειν ἐπὶ
gave-over to-these (the) weak-and-sick to-conduct to

τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ
the camp, they-themselves — proceeded-forward, and

πρὶν διεληλυθέναι εἴκοσι στάδια ἦσαν πρὸς
before (that) they-had-completed twenty stadia they-were at

τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἡυλίζετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 the village where Cheirisophus was-quartered. When indeed
 συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε εἶναι ἀσφαλές
 they-got-together among-one-another, it-seemed to-be safe
 σκηνοῦν τὰς τάξεις κατὰ τὰς κώμας. Καὶ
 to-quarter the troops up-and-down the villages. And
 Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἔμενεν αὐτοῦ, οἱ ἄλλοι
 Cheirisophus indeed remained there (where he was), the others
 δὲ διαλαχόντες κώμας ἃς ἑώραν, ἐπορεύ-
 indeed having-drawn-lots (for the) villages which they-saw, pro-
 νητο, ἕκαστοι ἔχοντες τοὺς ἑαυτῶν.
 ceded, | each having the (men) of-themselves [each hav-

ing their respective command].

Ἐνθα δὴ Πολυβώτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς
 Here indeed Polybotes (an) Athenian captain
 ἐκέλευσεν ἑαυτὸν ἀφιέναι· καὶ
 requested (that) they-would-'allow him 'to-go-away; | and
 λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους,
 taking the well-girt, [and taking with him the most active
 θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην, ἣν Ξενοφῶν
 of his men], running to the village, which Xenophon
 εἰλήχει, καταλαμβάνει πάντας τοὺς κωμή-
 obtained-by-lot, he-surprises all the inhabitants-of-
 τας ἔνδον, καὶ τὸν κωμάρχην, καὶ ἑπτακαίδεκα
 the-village at-home, and the village-chief, and seventeen
 πώλους τρεφομένους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ, καὶ
 colts bred for (a) tribute 'to (the) king, and
 τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωάρχου γεγαμημένην
 the daughter of-the village-chief married (the)
 ἐνάτην ἡμέραν· δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ὤχετο
 ninth day; and the husband of-her had-gone-ou'
 θηράσων λαγῶς, καὶ οὐχ ἥλω ἐν ταῖς κώμαις.
 hunting hares, and 'was not 'found in the villages
 Αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα
 The — houses were under-ground, the — mouth (or

ὥσπερ φρέατος, δὲ κάτω εἰμῆϊαι
 entrance was) like (that) 'of (a) 'well, but below spacious.
 Δὲ αἱ εἰσοδοὶ μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί.
 And the entrances — for-the cattle (were) dug,
 δὲ οἱ ἄνδρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. Ἐν δὲ
 but the men descended on ladders. In —
 ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἰγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες,
 the houses there-were goats, sheep, cows, fowls,
 καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· δὲ πάντα τὰ κτήνη
 and the young of-these; and all the cattle
 ἐτρέφοντο χιλῶ ἔνδον. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
 were-nourished on-hay within (the houses). And also there-was
 πυροί, καὶ κριθαί, καὶ ὄσπρια, καὶ κριθίνος οἶνος
 wheat, and barley, and legumes, and barley wine
 ἐν κρατῆρσι· δὲ καὶ αἱ αὐταὶ κριθαὶ ἐνήσαν
 in large-bowls; and also — (these) same barley-grains floated
 ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο,
 even-with-the-brims (of the vessels), and reeds lay-in (them),
 οἱ μὲν μείζους, δὲ οἱ ἐλάττους, οὐκ
 — (some) indeed larger, but — (others) smaller, (and) not
 ἔχοντες γόνατα· δ' ἔδει ὅποτε τις διψῶη
 having joints; and it-was-proper when any-one might-be-thirsty
 λαβόντα τούτους εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. Καὶ
 having-taken these into — (his) mouth to-suck. And
 ἦν πάνυ ἄκρατος, εἰ μὴ τις ἐπιχέοι
 it-was very strong, | if not [unless] some-one poured-in
 ὕδωρ· καὶ τὸ πόμα ἦν πάνυ ἡδὺν συμμα-
 water; and the drink was very pleasant to-one-accus-
 δόντι.
 tomed-to (it).

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐποίησατο τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς
 — And Xenophon made-for-himself the ruler of —
 ταίτης κώμης σύνδειπνον, καὶ ἐκέλευε αὐτὸν
 this village his-guest-at-supper, and he-exhorted him.
 θαρβεῖν, λέγων, ὅτι οὔτε στερησίοιο
 to-be-of-good-courage, saying, that he-'should not 'be-deprived

τῶν τέκνων, τε ἀπίαςιν ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῇ
 of — (his) children, and (as) they-depart they-would-be-about-filling the
 οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, ἣν φαίνεται
 house of-himself with — provisions, if he-show-himself (as)
 ἐξηγησάμενος τι ἀγαθόν τῷ στρατεύματι,
 having-been-the-leader (in) some good for-the army,
 ἔστ' ἂν γέγωνται ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει. Ὁ δὲ
 until 'they might: 'get with another tribe. — And
 ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ, φιλοφρονούμενος, ἔφρασεν
 this he-promised, and, being-kindly-disposed, he-told
 οἶνον ἔνθα ἦν κατωρυγμένος. Οὖν
 (them respecting) wine where it-was buried. Therefore
 μὲν ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται
 indeed this — (same) night, all the soldiers
 διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως, ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν
 having-been-quartered-dispersedly thus, were-made-to-rest in great
 ἀφθόνοις, ἔχοντες τὸν κωμάρχην ἐν φυλακῇ, καὶ
 abundance, having the village-chief under guard, and
 τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. Δὲ τῇ
 the children of-him likewise under eye. And on-the
 ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κωμάρχην
 next day Xenophon taking the village-chief
 ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Χειρίσοφον· ὅπου δὲ παριοί
 proceeded to Cheirisophus; wherever indeed he-might-pass-by
 κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,
 (a) village, he-turned-aside to — (those) in the villages,
 καὶ πανταχοῦ κατελάμβανε εὐχουμένους καὶ
 and everywhere he-found (them) feasting and
 εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν
 enjoying-themselves, and nowhere did-they-'allow (them) 'to-
 πρὶν παραδεῖναι ἄριστον αὐτοῖς.
 depart before (that) they-had-'placed dinner 'before them.
 Δ' ἦν οὐκ ὅπου οὐ παρετίδεσαν ἐπὶ
 And there-was not anywhere (where) they-'did not 'place on
 τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνια, ἐρίφεια,
 the same table flesh (of) lamb, xi¹

χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις,
pork, veal, fowl, with much bread,

τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις, δὲ τοῖς κριθίνου.
— (that) namely (of) wheat, and — (that of) barley.

Ὅποτε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενος βούλοιο προπιεῖν
Whenever — any-one being-friendly-disposed | wished to-drink-before

τῷ εἶλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα,
to-the [wished to drink to another] he-drew (him) to the large-bowl,

ἐνθεν ἔδει ἐπικύνψαντα βοφούντα πίνειν
there it-was-necessary having-stooped-down sucking to-drink

ὥσπερ βουῖν. Καὶ ἐδίδουσιν τῷ κωμάρχῃ λαμ-
like (an) ox. And they-granted to-the village-chief to-

θάλλειν ὅ τι βούλοιο. Ὁ δὲ ἐδέχετο οὐδὲν
take whatever he-might-wish. Who however accepted nothing

ἄλλο μὲν, ὅπου δὲ ἴδοι τινα τῶν συ-
also indeed, where however he-may-have-seen any of — (his) re-

γενῶν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν.
ations 'he always 'took (them) with him.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατε-
When however they-came to Cheirisophus, they-

λάμβανον καὶ αὐτοὺς σκηνοῦντας,
found also-these (his men feasting) being-in-their-quarters,

ἐστεφανωμένους στεφάνοις τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ,
crowned with-crowns (made) of — dry grass,

καὶ Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς
and Armenian boys — (in) — (their) barbarian

στολαῖς διακονοῦντας. Δὲ ἐδείκνυσαν τοῖς παισὶν
dresses waiting-on-them. And they-showed the boys

ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν.
(by signs) as-if (they were) deaf-and-dumb what they-ought to-do.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἐφιλοφρονήσαντ
When — Cheirisophus and Xenophon had-saluted

ἀλλήλους, κοινῇ δὲ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κωμάρχην,
one-another, in-common — they-questioned the village-chief,

διὰ τοῦ ἑρμηνέως περσίζοντος, τίς ἡ χώρα
through the interpreter speaking-the-Persian-language, what the country

εἶη. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀρμενία. Καὶ
might-be. And who said, that (it was) Armenia. And

πάλιν ἰρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. Δ'
again asking for-whom the horses might-be-bred. And

ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι δασμός βασιλεῖ· ἔφη δέ,
— (he) said, as (a) tribute 'to (the) 'king; he-said also, (that)

τὴν πλησίον χώραν εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ
the neighbouring country was (that of the) Chalybes, | and

ἔφραζεν τὴν ὁδὸν ἣ εἶη.
mentioned the road in-what it-might-be [and he told them the

Καὶ τότε μὲν Ξενοφῶν ὤχετο
direction of the road]. And then indeed Xenophon departed

ἄγων αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτας ἑαυτοῦ,
conducting him to the family of-himself, [to his own family,]

καὶ δίδωσι ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαί-
and he-gave (the) horse which he-had-taken (and which was) rather-

τερον τῷ κωμάρχη ἀναδρέψαντι καταδῦσαι,
old to-the village-chief (he) having-fattened (it) to-offer-it-in-sacrifice,

ὅτι ἤκουσεν αὐτὸν εἶναι ἱερὸν τοῦ Ἡλίου,
because he-had-heard (that) it was (a) victim of-the Sun,

δεδιώς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· γὰρ ἐκεκάκωτο ὑπὸ τῆς
having-feared lest it-might-die; for it-had-been-injured by the

πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ λαμβάνει τῶν πώλων,
journey; 'he indeed 'himself takes (some) of-the colts,

καὶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν
and to-each of-the other generals and captains

ἔδωκε πῶλον. Οἱ δ' ἵπποι ταύτῃ ἦσαν
he-gave (a) colt. The — horses in-this (country) were

μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, δὲ πολὺ
smaller indeed (than those) of-the Persians, but much

θυμοειδέστεροι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα ὁ κωμάρχης
more-spirited. And indeed here the village-chief

διδάσκει περιελεῖν σακία περὶ τοὺς πόδας
instructs (them) to-tie small-bags about the feet

τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων· ὅταν ἄγωσι
of-the horses and of-the cattle; when they-drove (them)

διὰ τῆς χιόνος· γὰρ ἄνευ τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο
 through the snow; for without the little-bags they-came
 μέχρι τῆς γαστροῦ.
 up-to the belly.

CHAPTER VI.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ὀγδόῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦν, μὲν παραδίδωσι
 WHEN — (the) eighth day was, 'he indeed 'delivered-over
 τὸν ἡγεμόνα Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ καταλείπει τοὺς
 the guide to-Cheirisophus, but he-left the
 μέλητας τῷ κωμάρχει, πλὴν τοῦ
 members-'of (his) 'family to-the chief-of-the-village, except — (his)
 υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβασκοντος· δὲ τοῦτον
 son — (who was) just coming-to-age; and him
 παραδίδωσι Ἐπισθένει Ἀμφιπολίτῃ φυλάττειν
 he-gave-over to-Episthenes (of) Amphipolis to-guard
 ὅπως, εἰ ἡγήσοιτο καλῶς. ἀπίοι
 that, if 'he (the father) 'should-guide (them) fairly, he-might-return
 ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον. Καὶ εἰσεφόρησαν εἰς τὴν
 (home) having also this-one. And they-brought to the
 οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ὥς πλεῖστα ἐδύναντο, καὶ ἀνα-
 house of-him as many-things (as) they-could, and having
 ζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. Δ' ὁ κωμάρ-
 broken-up-their-camp they-proceeded-on-their-march. And the village-
 χης λελυμένος ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς διὰ χιόνος·
 chief unbound guided them through (the) snow;
 καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταδμῷ, καὶ
 and now also it-was in the third day's-march, and
 Χειρισόφος ἐχαλεπάνθη αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐκ
 Cheirisophus became-angry with-him that he-'did not

ἤγεεν εἰς κώμας. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἶεν οὐκ
 'lead (them) to villages. But who said that there-was not

ἐν τῷ τούτῳ τόπῳ. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἔπαισε
 (any) in — this region. — And Cheirisophus struck

αὐτὸν μὲν, δ' οὐκ ἔλησε. Δ' ἐκ τούτου
 him indeed, but 'did not 'bind (him). | And from this

ἐκεῖνος ἀποδράς ὥχετο τῆς νυκτός,
 he having-fled went-away (in) the night, [and on this ac-

καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. Τόδε
 count he ran off at night,] leaving-behind — (his) son. This

δὴ ἡ κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια τοῦ
 truly-indeed, (namely) the ill-treatment and neglect of-the

ἡγεμόνος, ἐγένετο μόνον διάφορον Χειρι-
 guide, was (the) only dissension (between) Cheiri-

σόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ. Δὲ Ἐπισ-
 sophus and Xenophon on the route. But Epis-

θένης τε ἠράσθη τοῦ παιδός, καὶ κομίσας
 thenes not-only became-fond of-the boy, but-also having-taker

οἴκαδε ἐχρῆτο πιστοτάτῳ.
 (hu.) home | made-use-of (him as) the-most-faithful [found him very

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ
 much attached to himself]. After this they-proceeded seven

σταδμοὺς, ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας,
 days'-march, always five parasangs the day,

παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν, εὖρος πλε-
 to the river Phasis, (the) breadth (of which is) equal-

δριαῖον. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδμοὺς
 to-a-plethrum. Hence they-proceeded two days'-march

δέκα παρασάγγας· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
 (making) ten parasangs; at — the pass-over

εἰς τὸ πεδῖον Χάλυβες καὶ Ταόχοι,
 (the mountains) on-to the plain (the) Chalybes and (the) Taochi,

καὶ Φασιανοὶ ἀπῆντησαν αὐτοῖς. Χειρί-
 and (the) Phasiani had-come-to-oppose them. Cheiri-

σόφος δ', ἐπεὶ κατεῖδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ
 sophus indeed, when he-saw the enemy on the

ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων
 pass, ceased proceeding (on the march), being-distant
 εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσῃ
 about thirty stadia, that he-'might not 'approach
 τοῖς πολεμίοις ἄγων κατὰ κέρας· δὲ
 the enemy | leading by (a) wing; [in column;] and
 καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς
 also announced to-the other (officers) to-bring-up the
 λόχους, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα γένοιτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος.
 companies, so-that the army might-get into line.
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦλθον, συνεκάλεσε
 And when the rear-guard came, he-called-together
 τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε·
 the generals and captains, and spoke thus:
 Οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι ὥς ὁρᾶτε κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς
 The — enemy as you-see possess the passes
 τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ ὧρα βουλευέσθαι, ὅπως
 of-the mountain, (it is) indeed time to-consider, how
 ἀγωνιούμεθα ὥς κάλιστα. Δοκεῖ
 we-may-encounter (them) to-the-best-advantage-possible. It-seems
 οὖν μὲν ἐμοὶ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις
 therefore indeed to-me to-direct — the soldiers
 ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, δὲ ἡμᾶς βουλευέσθαι, εἴτε
 to-take-their-dinners, and (that) we should-consult, whether
 δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε
 it-seems (best) to-cross-over the mountain either to-day or
 αὔριον. Ἐμοὶ δὲ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ,
 to-morrow. To-me indeed at-least, said — Cleanor, it-seems
 ἐπὰν ἀριστήσωμεν τάχιστα ἐξο-
 (best), after we-have-dined as-speedily-as-possible (and) having-
 πλισαμενους ὥς τάχιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.
 armed-ourselves as speedily-as-possible to-go against the men.
 Γὰρ εἰ διατρίψομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, τε
 For if we-shall-waste the present day, not-only
 οἱ πολέμιοι νῦν ὁρῶντες ἡμᾶς ἔσονται θαρβ-
 the enemy now seeing us will-be more

λεώτεροι, καὶ ἄλλους εἰκός, τούτων θαρ-
 bold, and (that) others as-is-natural, these besomirg-conf.

αἰνούντων, προσγενέσθαι πλείους.
 dent-and-bold, will-join (them in) greater (numbers).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δὲ
 After this-one Xenophon said: I indeed

γιγνώσκω οὕτω· εἰ μὲν ἐστὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι,
 think thus: if indeed it-is necessary to-fight.

τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευασάσθαι ὅπως ὥς μαχούμεθα
 this ought to-be-arranged how — we-may-fight

κράτιστα. Εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὑπερβάλλειν
 to-the-best (advantage). If indeed we-wish to-cross-over

ὥς ῥᾶστα, τοῦτο δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
 (the mountain) as easily-as-possible, this seems to-me to-be

σκεπτέον ὅπως λάβωμεν μὲν ἐλάχιστα
 necessary-to-be-considered how-that we-may-receive — the-fewest

τραύματα, δὲ ὥς ἀποβάλωμεν ἐλάχιστα σώματα
 wounds and so-that we-may-lose the-fewest (bodies)

ἀνδρῶν. Οὖν μὲν τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ
 (of-) men. Therefore indeed the mountain is — (as far as,

ὀρώμενον πλεον ἢ ἑξήκοντα στάδια,
 is-to-be-seen more than (to) sixty stadia (in length),

δ' ἄνδρες φανεροί εἰσιν φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς
 but (the) men manifestly are watching us

οὐδαμοῦ, ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· οὖν
 nowhere, except along this-same — road; therefore (it is)

πολὺ κρεῖττον, καὶ πειρᾶσθαι κλέψαι λαθόντας
 much better, both to-endeavour to-seize, being-concealed.

τι τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους, καὶ εἰ δυνάίμεθα
 some (part) of-the desert mountain, and if we-can

ἄρπάσαι φθάσαντας, μᾶλλον
 to take-forcible-possession, having-occupied (it before the enemy), rather

ἢ μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἰσχυρά χωρία καὶ ἄνδρας
 than. to-fight against strong places and men

παρεσκευασμένους. Γὰρ πολὺ ῥᾶσιν
 prepared (to resist) For (it is) much easier

ἵέναι ὄρδιον ἀμαχί, ἣν ὅμαλες
 to-go (up a) steep (place) without-fighting, than (along) level (roads)
 πολεμίων ὄντων ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν· καὶ νύκτωρ
 (the) enemy being here and there; and at-night
 τις ἂν ὁρώῃ τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν μᾶλλον
 any-one may see — (things) before (his) feet more
 ἀμαχί, ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν
 (distinctly when) not-fighting, than in (the) day (time) (while)
 μαχόμενος· καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα εὐμενεστέρα τοῖς
 fighting; and the rough (road is) kinder to-the
 ποσὶν ἰούσιν ἀμαχί, ἢ ἡ ὁμαλή
 feet to-those-marching without-fighting, than the smooth (one)
 βαλλομένοις τὰς κεφαλὰς. Καὶ οἱ
 to-those-being-struck on-the head (with stones). And it-'does not
 δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀδύνατον κλέψαι ἐξὸν
 'seem to-me to-be impossible to-steal (a march) it-being-allowed
 μὲν ἵέναι νυκτός, ὥς μὴ ὁραῖσθαι, δὲ
 (us) indeed to-go by-night, so-as not to-be-seen, it-'being also
 ἐξὸν ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ παρέχειν
 'allowed (us) to-go-away so-far | as not to-suffer (a)
 αἰσθῆσιν. Δὲ
 being-heard [as to allow no opportunity of being heard or perceived]. And
 μοι ἂν δοκοῦμεν, προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν
 to-me — we-seem-likely, pretending to-attack
 ταύτην ἂν χρῆσθαι τῷ ἅλλῳ ὄρει
 in-this (manner) — to-have the rest (of the) mountain
 ἐρημοτέρῳ· γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι μᾶλλον μένοιεν
 more-deserted; for the enemy 'would rather 'remain
 αὐτοῦ ἀδρόοι. Ἀτὰρ ἐγὼ συμβάλλομαι
 here collected-together. But-why 'should I 'conjecture
 τί περὶ κλοπῆς; γὰρ ἔγωγε, ᾧ Χειρίσοφε,
 any-thing about stealing? for I-at-least, O Cheirisophus,
 ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὅσοι
 hear, (that) you, the Lacedæmonians, as-many (of you as)
 ἐστὲ ὁμοίων, εὐδὺς ἐκ
 are 'of (the class of) 'equals (or higher order). immediately from

πῦδων μελετᾶν κλέπτειν, καὶ εἶναι οὐκ
 boys (commence) to-practice to-steal, and (that) it-is not
 αἰσχρὸν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν, ὅσα
 shameful, but commendable to-steal, as-many-things-as (the,
 νόμος μὴ κωλύει. Δὲ ὅπως κλέπτητε ὥς
 law 'does not 'forbid. And so-that you-may-steal | as
 κράτιστα, καὶ πειρᾶσθε λα-
 best-possible, [as adroitly as possible,] and have-exerted-yourself to-
 δάνειν, ἄρα ἐστὶν νόμιμον ὑμῖν, ἐὰν ληφθῇτε
 conceal (it), now-then it-is lawful for-you, if you-are-caught
 κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. Νῦν οὖν ἐστὶν
 stealing, to-be-scourged. Now therefore (this) is
 μάλα καιρὸς σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν
 (the) very (best) opportunity for-you to-show — (your)
 παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μέντοι, μὴ ληφθῶμεν
 education, and to-guard moreover, lest we-may-be-caught
 κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὥς μὴ λάβωμεν
 stealing the mountain, (and) so-that we-'may not 'receive
 πληγὰς. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, καὶ γὰρ
 stripes. But also, said — Cheirisophus, and-I
 ἰκοῦν ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, εἶναι δεινοὺς
 have-heard (that) you, the Athenians, are clever
 κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα δεινοῦ
 (to-steal) (at stealing) the public-money, and-though very great
 κινδύνου ὄντος τῷ κλέπτουσι, καὶ τοὺς
 danger being to — (him) stealing, and (that) — (your)
 κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ οἱ
 best (men) moreover (steal) the-most, if-indeed the
 κράτιστοι ἀξιοῦνται ἀρχειν ὑμῖν· ὥστε
 best (men) are-thought-worthy to-rule you; so-that (it is)
 ὥρα καὶ σοι ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν.
 time also for-you to-show — (your) education.
 Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰμι ἑτοιμος,
 I indeed therefore, said — Xenophon, am ready,
 ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας, ἐπειδὴν δειπνή-
 having the rear-guard (with me), after we-shall-have-

ὥμεν, ἵεναι καταληψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. Δὲ καὶ
 upped, to-go about-taking-possession (of) the mountain. And also
 ἔχω ἡγεμόνος· γὰρ οἱ γυμνήτες ἐνεδρεύσαιτες
 I-have guides; for the light-armed-men having-laid-in-ambush
 ἔλαβόν τινὰς τῶν κλοπῶν ἐφεπομένων ἡμῖν· καὶ
 took some of-the marauders following us; and
 πυνθάνομαι τούτων, ὅτι τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ οὐκ ἄβατον,
 I-hear from-these, that the mountain is not impassable,
 ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰεὶ καὶ βοσὴν· ὥστε εἰάνπερ
 but (that) it-is-grazed-on by-goats and oxen; so-that if
 ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους ἔσται
 once we-take-possession-of any (part) of-the mountain there-will-be
 βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις. Δὲ ἐλπίζω
 passable (places) even for-the cattle. And I-expect (that)
 τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲ ἔτι μενεῖν ἐπειδὴ
 the enemy 'will not-indeed longer 'remain after
 ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων.
 they-see us on the level (with them) on the heights.
 Γὰρ ἐδέλουσι οὐδὲ νῦν καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον
 For they-will not-indeed now come-down to (an) equality
 ἡμῖν. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σέ
 with-us. — And Cheirisophus said: And why-is-it-proper (that) you
 ἵεναι, καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ
 (should) go, and leave the command-of-the-rear-guard? but
 πέμψον ἄλλους, μὴ ἂν τινες ἐδελοῦσιν φαίνωνται.
 send others, unless that some volunteers may-'make
 Ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυ-
 (their) 'appearance. Upon this Aristonymus (the) Methy-
 δριεύς ἐρχεται, ἔχων ὀπλίτας, καὶ Ἀρις-
 drian came-forward, having (his) heavy-armed-men, and Aris-
 τέας Χίος, γυμνήτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος
 teas (the) Chian, (having his) light-armed-men, and Nicomachus
 Οἰταῖος, γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα
 (the) Œtean, (with his) light-armed-men; and (an) agreement
 ἐποίησαντο, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα
 was-made, (that) when they-might-have-possession-of the heights

καίειν πολλά πυρά. Ταῦτα συνδόμενοι
to-burn many fires. These (things) being-agreed-on

ἡρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου ὁ Χειρίσοφος προ-
they-dined; after — the dinner — Cheirisophus led-

ἡγάγε το πᾶν στράτευμα πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους
forward the whole army against the enemy

ὥς δέκα σταδίους, ὅπως δοκοίη ὥς μάλιστα
about ten stadia, so-that he-might-seem as-much-as-possible

προςάξειν ταύτην.
to-be-about-to-lead-against (them) in-that (direction).

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν, καὶ ἐγένετο νύξ
When indeed they-had-supped, and it-was night

οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ὤχοντο, καὶ
— (those) indeed appointed (for this service) departed, and

καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι
take-possession-of the mountain; and the other (troops)

ἀνεπαύοντο αὐτοῦ. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ,
reposed there (where they were). The enemy indeed,

ὥς ᾗσδοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρεσαν, καὶ
as they-perceived the mountain occupied, kept-watch, and

ἔκαιον πολλά πυρά διὰ νυκτός. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
burned many fires during (the) night. When indeed

ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ᾗγε
it-was day, Cheirisophus — having-offered-sacrifice led

κατα τὴν ὁδόν· οἱ δὲ καταλαβόντες
(the army) along the road; — (those)—having-taken-possession-of

τὸ ὄρος ἐπήεσαν κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ τῶν
the mountain advanced along the heights. But of-the

πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ μὲν ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
enemy the great (part) indeed remained at the pass

τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ μέρος αὐτῶν ἀπῆντα τοῖς
of-the mountain, but (a) part of-them went (against) — (those)

κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ πρὶν τοὺς πολλοὺς,
along the heights. But before (that) | the many, [the

εἶναι ὁμοῦ, οἱ κατὰ τὰ
main bodies of the armies,] were together, — (those) along the

ὥσπερ φρέατος, δὲ κάτω εἰμυῖαι.
 entrance was) like (that) 'of (a) 'well, but below spacious.
 Δὲ αἱ εἰσοδοὶ μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί.
 And the entrances — for-the cattle (were) dug,
 δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. Ἐν δὲ
 but the men descended on ladders. In —
 ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες,
 the houses there-were goats, sheep, cows, fowls,
 καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· δὲ πάντα τὰ κτήνη
 and the young of-these; and all the cattle
 ἐτρέφοντο χιλῶ ἔνδον. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
 were-nourished on-hay within (the houses). And also there-was
 πυροί, καὶ κριθαί, καὶ ὄσπρια, καὶ κριθίνος οἶνος
 wheat, and barley, and legumes, and barley wine
 ἐν κρατῆρσι· δὲ καὶ αἱ αὐταὶ κριθαὶ ἐνήσαν
 in large-bowls; and also — (these) same barley-grains floated
 ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο,
 even-with-the-brims (of the vessels), and reeds lay-in (them),
 οἱ μὲν μείζους, δὲ οἱ ἐλάττους, οὐκ
 — (some) indeed larger, but — (others) smaller, (and) not
 ἔχοντες γόνατα· δ' ἔδει ὅποτε τις διψῶη
 having joints; and it-was-proper when any-one might-be-thirsty
 λαβόντα τούτους εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. Καὶ
 having-taken these into — (his) mouth to-suck. And
 ἦν πάνυ ἄκρατος, εἰ μὴ τις ἐπιχέοι
 it-was very strong, | if not [unless] some-one poured-in
 ὕδωρ· καὶ τὸ πόμα ἦν πάνυ ἡδὺν συμμα-
 water; and the drink was very pleasant to-one-accus-
 δόντι.
 tomed-to (it).

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐποίησατο τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς
 — And Xenophon made-for-himself the ruler of —
 ταίτης κώμης σύνδειπνον, καὶ ἐκέλευε αὐτὸν
 this village his-guest-at-supper, and he-exhorted him.
 θαρρῆν, λέγων, ὅτι οὔτε στερηθήσεται
 to-be-of-good-courage, saying, that he-'should not 'be-deprived

τῶν τέκνων, τε ἀπίαςιν ἀντεμπλήσαντες τὴν
 of — (his) children, and (as) they-depart they-would-be-about-filling the
 οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, ἣν φαίνηται
 house of-himself with — provisions, if he-show-himself (as)
 ἐξηγησάμενος τι ἀγαθόν τῷ στρατεύματι,
 having-been-the-leader (in) some good for-the army,
 ἕστ' ἂν γέγωνται ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει. Ὁ δὲ
 until 'they might: 'get with another tribe. — And
 ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ, φιλοφρονούμενος, ἔφρασεν
 this he-promised, and, being-kindly-disposed, he-told
 οἶνον ἐνθα ἦν κατωρυγμένος. Οὖν
 (them respecting) wine where it-was buried. Therefore
 μὲν ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται
 indeed this — (same) night, all the soldiers
 διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως, ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν
 having-been-quartered-dispersedly thus, were-made-to-rest in great
 ἀφθόνοις, ἔχοντες τὸν κωμάρχην ἐν φυλακῇ, καὶ
 abundance, having the village-chief under guard, and
 τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. Δὲ τῇ
 the children of-him likewise under eye. And on-the
 ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κωμάρχην
 next day Xenophon taking the village-chief
 ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Χειρίσοφον· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι
 proceeded to Cheirisophus; wherever indeed he-might-pass-by
 κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,
 (a) village, he-turned-aside to — (those) in the villages,
 καὶ πανταχοῦ κατελάμβανε εὐωχουμένους καὶ
 and everywhere he-found (them) feasting and
 εὐδυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν
 enjoying-themselves, and nowhere did-they-'allow (them) 'to-
 πρὶν παραδεῖναι ἄριστον αὐτοῖς.
 depart before (that) they-had-'placed dinner 'before them.
 Δ' ἦν οὐκ ὅπου οὐ παρετίδесαν ἐπὶ
 And there-was not anywhere (where) they-'did not 'place on
 τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνεα, ἐρίφεια,
 the same table flesh (of) lamb,

χοίρεια, μὸσχεια, ὀρνίθια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις,
pork, veal, fowl, with much bread,

τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις, δὲ τοῖς κριθίνουις.
— (that) namely (of) wheat, and — (that of) barley.

Ὅποτε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενος βούλοιτο προπιεῖν
Whenever — any-one being-friendly-disposed | wished to-drink-before

τῷ εἶλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα,
to-the [wished to drink to another] he-drew (him) to the large-bowl,

ἐνθεν ἔδει ἐπικύνψαντα βοφοῦντα πίνειν
there it-was-necessary having-stooped-down sucking to-drink

ὥσπερ βούν. Καὶ ἐδίδοσαν τῷ κωμάρχῃ λαμ-
like (an) ox. And they-granted-to-the village-chief to-

βάνειν ὃ τι βούλοιτο. Ὁ δὲ ἐδέχετο οὐδὲν
take whatever he-might-wish. Who however accepted nothing

ἄλλο μὲν, ὅπου δὲ ἴδοι τινα τῶν συγ-
else indeed, where however he-may-have-seen any of — (his) re-

γενῶν ἀεὶ ἐλάμβανεν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν.
ations 'he always 'took (them) with him.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατε-
When however they-came to Cheirisophus, they-

λάμβανον καὶ αὐτοὺς σκηνοῦντας,
found also-these (his men feasting) being-in-their-quarters,

ἐστεφανωμένους στεφάνοις τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ,
crowned with-crowns (made) of — dry grass,

καὶ Ἀρμενίου παιδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς
and Armenian boys — (in) — (their) barbarian

στολαῖς διακονοῦντας. Δὲ ἐδείκνυσαν τοῖς παισὶν
dresses waiting-on-them. And they-showed the boys

ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὃ τι δέοι ποιεῖν.
(by signs) as-if (they were) deaf-and-dumb what they-ought to-do.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἐφιλοφρονήσαντ
When — Cheirisophus and Xenophon had-saluted

ἀλλήλους, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κωμάρχην,
one-another, in-common — they-questioned the village-chief,

διὰ τοῦ ἑρμηνέως περσίζοντος, τίς ἢ χώρα
throug the interpreter speaking-the-Persian-language, what the country

εἶη. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἄρμενία. Καὶ
might-be. And who said, that (it was) Armenia. And

πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. Δ'
again asking for-whom the horses might-be-bred. And

ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι δασμός βασιλεῖ· ἔφη δὲ,
— (he) said, as (a) tribute 'to (the) 'king; he-said also, (that)

τὴν πλησίον χώραν εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ
the neighbouring country was (that of the) Chalybes, | and

ἔφραζεν τὴν ὁδὸν ἣ εἶη.
mentioned the road in-what it-might-be [and he told them the

Καὶ τότε μὲν Ξενοφῶν ὤχετο
direction of the road]. And then indeed Xenophon departed

ἄγων αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτας ἑαυτοῦ,
conducting him to the family of-himself, [to his own family,]

καὶ δίδωσι ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαι-
and he-gave (the) horse which he-had-taken (and which was) rather-

τερον τῷ κωμάρχη ἀναδρέψαντι καταδύσαι,
old to-the village-chief (he) having-fattened (it) to-offer-it-in-sacrifice,

ὅτι ἤκουσεν αὐτὸν εἶναι ἱερὸν τοῦ Ἡλίου,
because he-had-heard (that) it was (a) victim of-the Sun,

δεδιώς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· γὰρ ἐκεκάκωτο ὑπὸ τῆς
having-feared lest it-might-die; for it-had-been-injured by the

πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ λαμβάνει τῶν πώλων,
journey; 'he indeed 'himself takes (some) of-the colts,

καὶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν
and to-each of-the other generals and captains

ἔδωκε πῶλον. Οἱ δ' ἵπποι ταύτῃ ἦσαν
he-gave (a) colt. The — horses in-this (country) were

μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, δὲ πολὺ
smaller indeed (than those) of-the Persians, but much

θυμοειδέστεροι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα ὁ κωμάρχης
more-spirited. And indeed here the village-chief

διδάσκει περιελεῖν σακία περὶ τοὺς πόδας
instructs (them) to-tie small-bags about the feet

τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων· ὅταν ἄγωσι
of-the horses and of-the cattle; when they-drove (them)

διὰ τῆς χιόνος· γὰρ ἄνευ τῶν σακίων κατεδύνοντο
 through the snow; for without the little-bags they-sunk
 μέχρι τῆς γαστρούς.
 up-to the belly.

CHAPTER VI.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ὀγδόη ἡμέρα ἦν, μὲν παραδίδωσι
 WHEN — (the) eighth day was, 'he indeed 'delivered-over
 τὸν ἡγεμόνα Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ καταλείπει τοὺς
 the guide to-Cheirisophus, but he-left the
 οἰκέτας τῷ κωμάρχῃ, πλὴν τοῦ
 members-'of (his) 'family to-the chief-of-the-village, except — (his)
 υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβασκοντος· δὲ τοῦτον
 son — (who was) just coming-to-age; and him
 παραδίδωσι Ἐπισθένῃ Ἀμφιπολίτῃ φυλάττειν
 he-gave-over to-Episthenes (of) Amphipolis to-guard
 ὅπως, εἰ ἡγήσοιτο καλῶς. ἀπίοι
 what, if 'he (the father) 'should-guide (them) fairly, he-might-return
 ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον. Καὶ εἰσεφόρησαν εἰς τὴν
 (home) having also this-one. And they-brought to the
 οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ὡς πλεῖστα ἐδύναντο, καὶ ἀνα-
 house of-him as many-things (as) they-could, and having
 ζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. Δ' ὁ κωμάρ-
 broken-up-their-camp they-proceeded-on-their-march. And the village-
 χης λελυμένος ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς διὰ χιόνος·
 chief unbound guided them through (the) snow;
 καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταδμῷ, καὶ
 and now also it-was in the third day's-march, and
 Χειρισόφος ἐχαλεπάνθη αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐκ
 Cheirisophus became-angry with-him that he-'did not

ἤγεν εἰς κώμας. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἰεν οὐκ
 'lead (them) to villages. But who said that there-was not
 ἐν τῷ τούτῳ τόπῳ. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἔπαισε
 (any) in — this region. — And Cheirisophus struck
 αὐτὸν μὲν, δ' οὐκ ἔλῃσε. Δ' ἐκ τούτου
 him indeed, but 'did not 'bind (him). | And from this
 ἐκεῖνος ἀποδράς ὥχετο τῆς νυκτός,
 he having-fled went-away (in) the night, [and on this ac-
 καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. Τόδε
 count he ran off at night,] leaving-behind — (his) son. This
 δὴ ἡ κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια τοῦ
 truly-indeed, (namely) the ill-treatment and neglect of-the
 ἡγεμόνος, ἐγένετο μόνον διάφορον Χειρι-
 guide, was (the) only dissension (between) Cheiri-
 σόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ. Δέ 'Επισ-
 sophus and Xenophon on the route. But Epis-
 δένης τε ἡράσθη τοῦ παιδός, καὶ κομίσας
 thenes not-only became-fond of-the boy, but-also having-taker
 οἶκαδε ἐχρῆτο πιστοτάτῳ.
 (him) home | made-use-of (him as) the-most-faithful [found him very
 Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ
 much attached to himself]. After this they-proceeded seven
 σταδμοὺς, ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας,
 day's-march, always five parasangs the day,
 παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν, εὖρος πλε-
 to the river Phasis, (the) breadth (of which is) equal-
 δριαῖον. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδμοὺς
 to-a-plethrum. Hence they-proceeded two days'-march
 δέκα παρασάγγας· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
 (making) ten parasangs; at — the pass-over
 εἰς τὸ πεδῖον Χάλυβες καὶ Ταόχοι.
 (the mountains) on-to the plain (the) Chalybes and (the) Taochi,
 καὶ Φασιανοὶ ἀπῆντησαν αὐτοῖς. Χειρί-
 and (the) Phasianians had-come-to-oppose them. Cheiri-
 σοφος δ', ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ
 sophus indeed, when he-saw the enemy on the

ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχω
pass, ceased proceeding (on the march), being distant

εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσῃ
about thirty stadia, that he-'might not 'approach

τοῖς πολεμίοις ἄγων κατὰ κέρας· δὲ
the enemy | leading by (a) wing; [in column;] and

καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς
also announced to-the other (officers) to-bring-up the

λόχους, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα γένοιτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος.
companies, so-that the army might-get into line.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦλθον, συνεκάλεσε
And when the rear-guard came, he-called-together

τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὥδε·
the generals and captains, and spoke thus :

Οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ὥς ὁρᾶτε κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς
The — enemy as you-see possess the passes

τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ ὥρα βουλευέσθαι, ὅπως
of-the mountain, (it is) indeed time to-consider, how

ἀγωνιούμεθα ὥς κάλιστα. Δοκεῖ
we-may-encounter (them) to-the-best-advantage-possible. It-seems

οὖν μὲν ἐμοὶ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις
therefore indeed to-me to-direct — the soldiers

ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, δὲ ἡμᾶς βουλευέσθαι, εἴτε
to-take-their-dinners, and (that) we should-consult, whether

δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε
it-seems (best) to-cross-over the mountain either to-day or

αὔριον. Ἐμοὶ δὲ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ,
to-morrow. To-me indeed at-least, said — Cleanor, it-seems

ἐπὶ ἄριστήσωμεν τάχιστα ἐξο-
(best), after we-have-dined as-speedily-as-possible (and) having-

πλισαμένους ὥς τάχιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.
armed-ourselves as speedily-as-possible to-go against the men.

Γὰρ εἰ διατρίψομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, τε
For if we-shall-waste the present day, not-only

οἱ πολέμοι νῦν ὁρῶντες ἡμᾶς ἔσονται θαρβύ-
the enemy now seeing us will-be more

λεώτεροι, καὶ ἄλλους εἰκός, τούτων θαρ-
 bold, and (that) others as-is-natural, these besomimg-conf.

αἰσούντων, προσγενέσθαι πλείους.
 sent-and-bold, will-join (them in) greater (numbers).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δέ
 After this-one Xenophon said: I indeed

γινώσκω οὕτω· εἰ μὲν ἐστὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι,
 think thus: if indeed it-is necessary to-fight.

τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευασάσθαι ὅπως ὥς μαχούμεθα
 this ought to-be-arranged how — we-may-fight

κράτιστα. Εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὑπερβάλλειν
 to-the-best (advantage). If indeed we-wish to-cross-over

ὥς ῥᾶστα, τοῦτο δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
 (the mountain) as easily-as-possible, this seems to-me to-be

σκεπτόεν ὅπως λάβωμεν μὲν ἐλάχιστα
 necessary-to-be-considered how-that we-may-receive — the-fewest

τραύματα, δὲ ὥς ἀποβάλωμεν ἐλάχιστα σώματα
 wounds and so-that we-may-lose the-fewest (bodies)

ἀνδρῶν. Οὖν μὲν τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ
 (of-) men. Therefore indeed the mountain is — (as far as,

ὀρώμενον πλεον ἢ ἑξήκοντα στάδια,
 is-to-be-seen more than (to) sixty stadia (in length),

δ' ἄνδρες φανεροί εἰσιν φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς
 but (the) men manifestly are watching us

οὐδαμοῦ, ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· οὖν
 nowhere, except along this-same — road; therefore (it is)

πολὺ κρεῖττον, καὶ πειρᾶσθαι κλέψαι λαθόντας
 much better, both to-endeavour to-seize, being-concealed.

τι τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους, καὶ εἰ δυνάίμεθα
 some (part) of-the desert mountain, and if we-can

ἄρπάσαι φθάσαντας, μᾶλλον
 to take-forcible-possession, having-occupied (it before the enemy), rather

ἢ μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἰσχυρά χωρία καὶ ἄνδρας
 than. to-fight against strong places and men

παρεσκευασμένους. Γὰρ πολὺ ῥᾶσι
 prepared (to resist) For (it is) much easier

ἵεναι ὄρδιον ἄμαχι, ἣν ὁμαλες
 to-go (up a) steep (place) without-fighting, than (along) level (roads)
 πολεμίων ὄντων ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν· καὶ νύκτωρ
 (the) enemy being here and there; and at-night
 τις ἂν ὀρώη τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν μᾶλλον
 any-one may see — (things) before (his) feet more
 ἄμαχι, ἣ μεθ' ἡμέραν
 (distinctly when) not-fighting, than in (the) day (time) (while)
 μαχόμενος· καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα εὐμενεστέρα τοῖς
 fighting; and the rough (road is) kinder to-the
 ποσὶν ἰούσιν ἄμαχι, ἣ ἡ ὁμαλή
 feet to-those-marching without-fighting, than the smooth (one)
 βαλλομένοις τὰς κεφαλὰς. Καὶ οἱ
 to-those-being-struck on-the head (with stones). And it-'does not
 δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀδύνατον κλέψαι ἐξὸν
 'seem to-me to-be impossible to-steal (a march) it-being-allowed
 μὲν ἵεναι νυκτὸς, ὥς μὴ ὀρᾶσθαι, δὲ
 (us) indeed to-go by-night, so-as not to-be-seen, it-'being also
 ἐξὸν ὑπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ παρέχειν
 'allowed (us) to-go-away so-far | as not to-suffer (a)
 αἰσθῆσιν. Δὲ
 being-heard [as to allow no opportunity of being heard or perceived]. And
 μοι ἂν δοκοῦμεν, προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν
 to-me — we-seem-likely, pretending to-attack
 ταύτην ἂν χρῆσθαι τῷ ἄλλῳ ὅρει
 in-this (manner) — to-have the rest (of the) mountain
 ἐρημοτέρῳ· γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι μᾶλλον μένοιν
 more-deserted; for the enemy 'would rather 'remain
 αὐτοῦ ἀδρόοι. Ἀτὰρ ἐγὼ συμβάλλομαι
 here collected-together. But-why 'should I 'conjecture
 τί περὶ κλοπῆς; γὰρ ἐγωγε, ᾧ Χειρίσοφε,
 any-thing about stealing? for I-at-least, O Cheirisophus,
 ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὅσοι
 hear, (that) you, the Lacedæmonians, as-many (of you as)
 ἐστὲ ὁμοίων, εὐδὺς ἐκ
 are 'of (the class of) 'equals (or higher order). immediately from

παίδων μελετᾶν κλέπτειν, καὶ εἶναι οὐκ
 boys (commence) to-practice to-steal, and (that) it-is not
 αἰσχρὸν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν, ὅσα
 shameful, but commendable to-steal, as-many-things-as (the,
 νόμος μὴ κωλύει. Δὲ ὅπως κλέπτητε ὥς
 law 'does not 'forbid. And so-that you-may-steal | as
 κράτιστα, καὶ πειρᾶσθε λαμ-
 best-possible, [as adroitly as possible,] and have-exerted-yourself to-
 δάνειν, ἄρα ἐστὶν νόμιμον ὑμῖν, ἐὰν ληφθῇτε
 conceal (it), now-then it-is lawful for-you, if you-are-caught
 κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. Νῦν οὖν ἐστὶν
 stealing, to-be-scourged. Now therefore (this) is
 μάλα καιρὸς σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν
 (the) very (best) opportunity for-you to-show — (your)
 παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μέντοι, μὴ ληφθῶμεν
 education, and to-guard moreover, lest we-may-be-caught
 κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὥς μὴ λάβωμεν
 stealing the mountain, (and) so-that we-'may not 'receive
 πληγὰς. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, καὶ γὰρ
 'stripes. But also, said — Cheirisophus, and-I
 ἰκοῦν ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, εἶναι δεινούς
 have-heard (that) you, the Athenians, are clever
 κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα δεινοῦ
 (to-steal) (at stealing) the public-money, and-though very great
 κινδύνου ὄντος τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς
 danger being to — (him) stealing, and (that) — (your)
 κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ οἱ
 best (men) moreover (steal) the-most, if-indeed the
 κράτιστοι ἀξιοῦνται ἀρχειν ὑμῖν· ὥστε
 best (men) are-thought-worthy to-rule you; so-that (it is)
 ἄρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν.
 time also for-you to-show — (your) education.
 Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰμι ἑτοιμος,
 I indeed therefore, said — Xenophon, am ready,
 ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας, ἐπειδὴν δειπνή-
 having the rear-guard (with me), after we-shall-have-

τωμεν, *ἵεναι καταληψόμενος* τὸ ὄρος. Δὲ καὶ
 upped, to-go about-taking-possession (of) the mountain. And also
ἔχω ἡγεμόνος· γὰρ οἱ γυμνήτες ἐνεδρεύσαιτες
 I-have guides; for the light-armed-men having-laid-in-ambush
ἔλαβόν τινας τῶν κλωπιῶν ἐφεπομένων ἡμῖν· καὶ
 took some of-the marauders following us; and
πυνθάνομαι τούτων, ὅτι τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ οἷα ἀβατον,
 I-hear from-these, that the mountain is not impassable,
ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ
 but (that) it-is-grazed-on by-goats and oxen; so-that if
ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους ἐστὶ
 once we-take-possession-of any (part) of-the mountain there-will-be
βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις. Δὲ ἐλπίζω
 passable (places) even for-the cattle. And I-expect (that)
τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲ ἔτι μενεῖν ἐπειδὴ
 the enemy 'will not-indeed longer 'remain after
ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων.
 they-see us on the level (with them) on the heights.
Γὰρ ἐδέλουσι οὐδὲ νῦν καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον
 For they-will not-indeed now come-down to (an) equality
ἡμῖν. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σέ
 with-us. — And Cheirisophus said: And why is-it-proper (that) you
ἵεναι, καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ
 (should) go, and leave the command-of-the-rear-guard? but
πέμψον ἄλλους, μὴ ἂν τινες ἐδελοῦσιοι φαίνωνται.
 send others, unless that some volunteers may-'make
Ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυ-
 (their) 'appearance. Upon this Aristonymus (the) Methy-
δριεὺς ἔρχεται, ἔχων ὀπλίτας, καὶ Ἀρι-
 drian came-forward, having (his) heavy-armed-men, and Aris-
τέας Χίος, γυμνήτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος
 teas (the) Chian, (having his) light-armed-men, and Nicomachu
Οἰταῖος, γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα
 (the) Oitean, (with his) light-armed-men; and (an) agreement
ἐποιήσαντο, ὁπότε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα
 was-made, (that) 'when they-might-have-possession-of the heights

καίειν πολλά πύρα. Ταῦτα συνδέμενοι
to-burn many fires. These (things) being-agreed-on

ἤριστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου ὁ Χειρίσοφος προ-
they-dined; after — the dinner — Cheirisophus led-

ἤγαγε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους
forward the whole army against the enemy

ὥς δέκα σταδίου, ὅπως δοκοίη ὥς μάλιστα
about ten stadia, so-that he-might-seem as-much-as-possible

προςάξειν ταύτην.
to-be-about-to-lead-against (them) in-that (direction).

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν, καὶ ἐγένετο νύξ
When indeed they-had-suppered, and it-was night

οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ὥχοντο, καὶ
— (those) indeed appointed (for this service) departed, and

καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι
take-possession-of the mountain; and the other (troops)

ἀνεπαύοντο αὐτοῦ. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ,
reposed there (where they were). The enemy indeed,

ὥς ᾗσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρευαν, καὶ
as they-perceived the mountain occupied, kept-watch, and

ἔκαιον πολλά πύρα διὰ νυκτός. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
burned many fires during (the) night. When indeed

ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἤγε
it-was day, Cheirisophus — having-offered-sacrifice led

κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν· οἱ δὲ καταλαβόντες
(the army) along the road; — (those)—having-taken-possession-of

τὸ ὄρος ἐπήεσαν κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ τῶν
the mountain advanced along the heights. But of-the

πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ μὲν ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
enemy the great (part) indeed remained at the pass

τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ μέρος αἰτῶν ἀπὸ πάντων τοῖς
of-the mountain, but (a) part of-them went (against) — (those)

κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ πρὶν τοὺς πολλοὺς,
along the heights. But before (that) | the many, [the

εἶναι ὁμοῦ, οἱ κατὰ τὰ
main bodies of the armies,] were together, — (those) along the

ἄκρα συμμιγνύασιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες,
heights met one-another, and the Greeks

νικῶσι καὶ διώκουσιν. Ἐν τούτῳ
conquered and drove-back (their opponents). At this (time)

δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου, μὲν οἱ πελτασταί
— also — (those) from the plain, namely the targeteer

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδρουν δρόμῳ πρὸς τοὺς
of-the Greeks ran 'in (a) 'race against — (those)

παρατεταγμένους, δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἐφείπετο ταχὺ
drawn-up-against (them), and Cheirisophus followed quickly

βάδην σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι
step-by-step with the heavy-armed-men. But the enemy (namely)

οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπειδὴ ἑώραν τὸ ἄνω
— (those) on the road, when they-saw — (those) above

ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ οὐ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν
defeated, flee-away; and not many indeed of-them

ἀπέθανον. Δὲ πάμπολλα γέβρα ἐλήφθη, ἃ
died. But (a) great-many shields were-taken, which

οἱ Ἕλληνες κόπτοντες ταῖς μαχαίραις,
the Greeks cutting — (with their) swords,

ἐποίουν ἄχρεια. Δ' ὥς ἀνέβησαν,
made useless. And as they-arrived-on (the heights),

θύσαντες, καὶ στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, κατέβησαν
having-sacrificed, and having-erected (a) trophy, they-descended

εἰς τὸ πεδίου, καὶ ἦλθον εἰς κώμας γεμούσας
into the plain, and they-went to villages stored-with

πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν.
many and good (things).

CHAPTER VII

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν πέντε ἡμέρας.
 FROM — these (villages) they-proceeded five days.
 μούς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς Ταόχους.
 march, (making) thirty parasangs, to (the) Taochi;
 καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπε· γὰρ οἱ Ταόχοι
 and — provisions began-to-fail (them); for the Taochi
 ὥκουν ἰσχυρὰ χωρία, καὶ ἐν οἷς εἶχον πάντα
 inhabited strong places, and in which they-had all
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνακεκομισμένοι.
 — (their) provisions having-'carried (them) 'up (and stored
 them there) Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς χωρίον, ὃ
 When however they-arrived at (a) place, which
 μὲν εἶχεν οὐ πόλιν οὔδ' οἰκίας, δ' αὐτόσε καὶ
 indeed had no town nor houses, and there both
 ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ πολλὰ κτήνη ἦσαν
 men and women and many cattle were
 συνεληλυθότες, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἦκων εὐθὺς
 included, Cheirisophus indeed having-come immediately
 προσέβαλλε πρὸς τοῦτο· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ πρώτη
 made-an-attack against this (place); when — the first
 τάξις ἀπέκαμεν, ἄλλη προσήει καὶ αὐτὴ
 division began-to-grow-tired, another succeeded and again
 ἄλλη· γὰρ ἦν οὐκ ἰσχυρὰ· ἀδρόους
 another; for it-was not (possible for them) drawn-up-in-a-body
 περιστῆναι, ἀλλὰ ἦν ποταμὸς κύκλῳ.
 to-stand-around (it), as there-was (a) river 'in (a) 'circle
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθο-
 (around it). When — Xenophon came with the rear-
 φύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα
 guard and targeteers and heavy-armed-men, then
 δὴ Χειρίσοφος λέγει· Ὁκετε εἰς καλὸν· γὰρ
 truly Cheirisophus says: You-have-come most-opportunely; for

τὸ χωρίον αἰρετέον· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 -- (this) place must-be-taken; for there-is no — provisions

τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰ μὴ ληφόμεθα τὸ
 'for the 'army | if not [unless] we-shall-take — (this)

χωρίον. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐβουλευόντο κοινῇ· καὶ
 place. Then indeed they-deliberated in-common; and

τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος, τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον
 — Xenophon having-asked, what might-be the hindrance

εἰσελθεῖν, ὁ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ αὕτη
 to-enter (the place), — Cheirisophus said: But this

ἐστὶν μία πάροδος ἣν ὁρᾷς· ὅταν δέ
 is 'the one (only) passage which you-see; whenever indeed

τις πειράται παρίεναι ταύτην, κυλινδοῦσι
 any-one should-attempt to-pass-along this, they-roll (down)

λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας·
 stones over this — impending rock;

ὃς δὲ ἂν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται.
 (he) indeed who may have-been-struck, 'is thus 'disposed-of.

Δ' ἅμα ἔδειξε ἀνδράπους συντετριμμένους
 And at-the-same-time he-showed men crushed

καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. Δὲ ἦν ἀναλώσωσιν
 both (as respects) legs and ribs. But if they-should-expend

τοὺς λίθους, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τι ἢ οἷδέν ἄλλο
 — (their) stones, said — Xenophon, is-there nothing else

κωλύει παρίεναι; γὰρ δὴ οὐχ ὁρῶμεν
 (that) prevents (us) to-advance? for indeed we-'do not 'see

ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, εἰ μὴ τούτους ὀλίγους
 (any) of — (those) opposed-to-us, unless these few

ἀνδράπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὦπλισμένους.
 men, and of-these (only) two or three are-armed.

Δὲ τὸ χωρίον, ὃ δεῖ διελθεῖν βαλλο-
 And the space, which it-is-necessary to-pass-through (while) being-

μένους ἐστὶν, ὥς καὶ σὺ ὁρᾷς, σχεδὸν τρία
 thrown-at is, as even you see, about three

ἡμιπλεθρά. Δὲ τούτου ὅσοι·
 half-plethra [about 150 feet]. And of-this (space) as-much as (a)

πλέθρον δασὺ μεγάλαις πίτυσι διαλει-
plethrum [about 100 feet] (is) thick with-great pine-trees standing-

πούσαις ἀνδ' ὧν ἄνδρες ἐστηκότες ἀ-
apart-from-one-another against which men standing

τί πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ
what will-they-suffer either from the thrown stones or

ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδουμένων; τὸ λοιπὸν
from the rolled (ones)? the rest (of the space)

ἤδη οὖν γίγνεται ὥς ἡμίπλεθρον,
now therefore becomes about (a) half-plethrum [about 50 feet], (over)

ὃ δεῖ, ὅταν οἱ λίθοι λωφήσωσι, παρα-
which it-is-necessary, when the stones may-cease, to-run-

δραμεῖν. Ἀλλὰ, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, εἰδὺς
past. But, said — Cheirisophus, immediately

ἐπειδὰν ἀρξώμεθα προσίεναι εἰς τὸ δασὺ,
when we-commence to-advance to the (part) thick (with trees)

πολλοὶ οἱ λίθοι φέρονται. Αἰτὸ, ἔφη,
many — stones are-thrown. That, said (Xenophon),

ἂν εἴη τὸ δέον γὰρ θᾶπτον ἀναλώσουσι
would be the thing-wanted, for the-more-speedily will-they-expend

τοὺς λίθους. Ἀλλὰ πορεύμεθα,
— (their) stones. But let-us-advance (to the place),

ἐνθεν ἔσται τι μικρὸν ἡμῖν παραδραμεῖν,
whence there-will-be some small (place) for-us to-run-past,

ἢν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ῥάδιον ἀπελθεῖν,
if we-can, and (from which we may) easily depart,

ἢν βουλώμεθα.
if we-please.

Ἔπειθ' οὖν Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ Καλλί-
Thence Cheirisophus and Xenophon, and Calli-

μαχος Παρρᾶσιος λοχαγός, (γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία
maches (the) Parrhasian (a) captain, (for the lead

τῶν λοχαγῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων
of-the captains of-the rear-guard (was in possession)

τούτου ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ,) ἐπορεύοντο· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι
of-this-one on-that — day,) proceeded-forward; but the other

λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. Μετὰ τοῦτο
 captains remained in — safety. After this
 οὖν ὥς ἐβδομήκοντα ἄνδραποὶ ἀπεῆλθον ὑπὸ
 therefore about seventy men went-off under
 τὰ δένδρα, οὐκ ἀδρόοι, ἀλλὰ καθ' ἓνα,
 the trees, not collected-in-a-body, but one-by-one,
 ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὥς ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίας
 each-one guarding-himself as (well as) he-could. Agasias
 δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς
 — the Stymphalian and Aristonymus (the) Methydrian
 καὶ οὗτοι ὄντες λοχαγοὶ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, καὶ
 and these being captains of-the rear-guard, and
 ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· γὰρ ἦν
 others also, standing-near without the trees; for it-was
 οὐκ ἀσφαλές πλεῖον ἢ τὸν ἓνα λόχον ἐστάναι
 not safe (for) more than — one company to-stand
 ἐν τοῖς δένδροις. Καλλίμαχος ἦν δα δὴ μηχανᾷ-
 under the trees. Callimachus then indeed con-
 ταί τι· προέτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου,
 trived something (thus): he-ran-forward from the tree,
 ὑφ' ᾧ αὐτός ἦν, δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· δὲ ἐπεὶ
 under which he was, two or three times; but when
 οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνεχάζετο εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἑκάστης
 the stones were-hurled, he-retired expeditiously; at each
 δὲ προδρομῆς πλεόν ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν
 — sally more than ten wagon (loads) of-stone
 ἀνηλίσχοντο. Δὲ ὁ Ἀγασίας, ὥς ὁρᾷ τὸν
 were-consumed. But — Agasias, as he-perceives —
 Καλλίμαχον, ἃ ἐποίει, καὶ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα
 Callimachus, what he-was-doing, and all the army
 θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παρα-
 beholding (it), fearing lest (he might) not (be) the-first run-
 δράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ παρακαλέσας τὸν
 ning-by into the place, neither calling-to —
 Ἀριστώνυμον ὄντα πλησίον, οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον
 Aristonymus (he) being near. nor (to) Eurylochus

τον Λουσιέα ὄντας ἑταίρους, οὐδὲ οὐδένα
the Lusian (both) being (his) comrades, nor (to) no-one
ἄλλον, αὐτός χωρεῖ, καὶ παρέρχεται
else, he went-on (by himself), and passed-by
πάντας. Ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος, ὥς ἑώρα αὐτὸν
all. — But Callimachus, as he-saw him
παριόντα ἐπιλαμβάνεται τῆς ἵτιος αὐτοῦ·
passing-by seizes the rim (of the shield) of-him;
δ' ἐν τούτῳ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς παρέδει
but at this (time) Aristonymus (the) Methydrian ran-by
αὐτοὺς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς.
them, and after this (one) Eurylochus (the) Lusian.
Γὰρ πάντες οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς, καὶ
For all these claimed-for-themselves valour, and
διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως
contended with one-another (as respects it); and thus
ἐρίζοντες αἰροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Γὰρ ὥς ἅπαξ
contending they-take the place. For as 'they once
εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἠνέχθη ἄνωθεν.
'had-run-in, not (a) stone was-thrown from-above.
Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν δεινὸν θέαμα. Γὰρ αἱ
Then indeed there-was (a) dreadful spectacle. For the
γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι τὰ παιδία,
women throwing — (their) children (over the precipice),
καὶ εἶτα ἐπικατεῤῥίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες
(and) then threw-themselves-down-upon (them), and the men
ὡσαύτως. Ἐνθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας
in-like-manner (did the same). Then indeed also Æneas (the)
Στυμφάλιος, λοχαγός, ἰδὼν τινα, ἔχοντα
Stymphalian, (a) captain, seeing some-one (of them), having (a)
καλὴν στολὴν, θέοντα ὥς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτὸν
handsome dress, running as being-about-'throwing himself 'over.
ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὥς κωλύσων. Δεῖ
laid-hold (of him) as being-about-hindering (him). But
ὁ ἐπισπᾶται αὐτὸν, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ὥχοντο
— (he) 'drags him 'along, and both went (over)

φερόμενοι κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν, καὶ ἀπέδαιον.
being-borne down the rocks, and died

Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἄνθρωποι ἐλήφθησαν,
Therefore indeed very few men were-captured,

δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ βόες καὶ ὄνοι καὶ πρόβατα.
but — many oxen and asses and sheep.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χα-
Thence they-proceeded through (the country) 'of (the) 'Cha-
λύβων ἑπτὰ σταδμοὺς, πεντήκοντα παρα-
lybians seven days'-march, (making) fifty para-
σάγγας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ἀλχιμώτατοι ὦν
sangs. These were the-bravest (of those people) whose

διῆλθον. καὶ ἦσαν εἰς χεῖρας.
(country) they-passed-through, | and they-went to hands [and they

Εἶχον δὲ λινοὺς θώρακας
came to close combat]. They-had also linen cuirasses (reaching)

μέχρι τοῦ ἥτρου, δ' ἀντὶ τῶν πτερίγων
just to-the groin, and in-place of — skirts (they and)

πυκνὰ σπάρτα ἐστραμμένα. Εἶχον δὲ καὶ
thick cords twisted. They-had also —

πημιῖδας, καὶ κράνη, καὶ μαχαίριον παρὰ
greaves, and helmets, and (a) knife at

τὴν ζώνην ὅσον Λακωνικὴν ξυήλην,
— (their) girdle as-long-as (a) Spartan (dagger) sickle-shaped,

ὃ ἔσφαττον, ὧν δύναιτο κρατεῖν.
with-which they-cut-the-throats, of — (those) they-could master,

καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες τὰς κεφαλὰς αὐτῶν ἔχοντες
and cutting-off — (their) heads — (and) having

ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ ᾗδον, καὶ ἐχόρευον,
(them) they-proceeded (on their march); and they-sang, and danced,

ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι ἐμελλον ὄψεσθαι.
when (they thought) the enemy were-about to-see (them)

Καὶ εἶχον δὲ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πηχῶν,
And they-had also (a) spear about fifteen cubits (in length)

ἔχον μίαν λόγχην. Οὗτοι εἰμένοντες
'but) having 'only) one spike. These (people) remained

ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 in — (their) towns. When however the Greeks
 παρέλθοιεν, εἶποντο ἀεὶ μαχόμενοι.
 may-have-passed-by, they-followed continually fighting (with them).
 Ὡλοῖν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὀχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 They-dwelt — in — strongholds, and — (their) provisions
 ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν ἐν τοῖς, ὥστε
 were-brought-up in these (strongholds), so (that)
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας λαμβάνειν μηδὲν αὐτόθεν, ἀλλὰ
 the Greeks took nothing from-that-place, but
 διτράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν, ἃ ἔλαβον ἐκ τῶν
 were-nourished by-the cattle, which they-took from the
 Ταόχων. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ
 Taochi. After this the Greeks arrived at
 τὸν ποταμόν Ἀρπασαν, εἶρος
 the river Harpasus, (the) breadth (of which being)
 τεττάρων πλέθρων. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
 four plethra. Thence they-proceeded through
 Σκυθινῶν τέτταρας σταδμοὺς,
 (the country of the) Scythini four days'-march, (making)
 εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας,
 twenty parasangs, through (a) plain to villages,
 ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
 in which they-remained three days, and collected-provisions.
 Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἦλθον τέτταρας σταδμοὺς
 Thence indeed they-went four days'-march (making)
 εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, πρὸς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα,
 twenty parasangs, to (a) large and wealthy
 καὶ οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνίας. Ἐκ
 and populous city, which was-called Gymnias. From
 ταύτης ὁ ἄρχων τῆς χώρας πέμπει ἡγεμόνα
 this (place) the ruler of-the country sends (a) guide
 τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὅπως ἄγοι αὐτοὺς διὰ τῆς
 to-the Greeks, that he-might-conduct them through the
 χώρας πολεμίας ἑαυτῶν. Δ' ἐκεῖνος
 country inimical (to his people) themselves. And he

ἔλδων λέγει, ὅτι ἄξει αἰτούς πέντε ἡμερῶν
having-come says, that he-will-lead them (in) five days

εἰς χωρίον, ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλλατταν· δὲ εἰ
to (a) place, whence they-would-see (the) sea; and if

μὴ ἐπηγγέλλετο τεθνάναι. Καὶ ἡγούμενος,
not announced-himself (willing) to-die. And leading

ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν
(them), when he-entered into the (country) inimical

ἑαυτοῖς, παρεκελεύετο αἰδεῖν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν
to-themselves, he-exhorted (them) to-burn and lay-waste the

χώραν· καὶ ᾧ ἐγένετο δῆλον ὅτι ἔλδοι
country; and by-which it-became evident that he-had-come (by)

ἐνεκα τούτου, οὐ τῆς εὐνοίας τῶν
reason of-this, (and) not — (from any) good-will (for) the

Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ
Greeks. And they-arrived at the mountain on-the

πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήκης.
fifth day; (the) name — (of) the mountain was Thechez.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους,
When indeed the foremost got on the mountain,

καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν, πολλὴ κραυγὴ
and looked-down (on) the sea, (a) great noise

ἐγένετο. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
occurred. But — Xenophon and the rear-guard

ἀκούσας ᾤκηθησαν ἄλλους πολεμίους ἐμπροσθεν
having-heard (it) thought (that) other enemies in-front

ἐπιτίδεσθαι· γὰρ εἶποντο ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς
were-assailing (them); for they-followed behind from the

καιομένης χώρας, καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ποιησάμενοι
burnt places, and the rear-guard by-forming

ἐνέδραν τε ἀπέκτεινάν τινας καὶ ἐζώγησαν.
(an) ambuscade not-only killed some, but-also made

καὶ ἔλαβον ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν γέρβρα
(others) prisoners; and they-took about — twenty shields

ὠμοβόεια δασειῶν βοῶν.
'made of raw-hides of-thick-haired oxen.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ βοή τε ἐγίγνετο πλείων καὶ
 When indeed the noise not-only became greater but-also
 ἐγγύτερον, καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔδεον
 nearer, and — (those) continually running-up kept-running
 δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ βοῶντας, καὶ ἡ βοή
 in-haste to — (those) continually shouting, and the noise
 ἐγίγνετο πολλῷ μείζων, ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους
 became much greater, by-how-much indeed more-numerous
 ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι δὴ εἶναι τι
 they-became, it-seemed to — Xenophon indeed to-be something
 μείζον. Καὶ ἀναβάς ἐφ' ἵππον,
 greater (than common). And (he) having-mounted on (his) horse,
 καὶ ἀναλαβὼν Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας,
 and having-taken-with (him) Lucius and the cavalry,
 παρεβόηδει· καὶ τάχα δὴ
 (he went forward, that) he-might-give-assistance; and quickly indeed
 ἀκούουσι τῶν στρατιωτῶν βοῶντων, Θάλαττα!
 they-hear the soldiers shouting, (The) sea!
 Θάλαττα! καὶ παρεγγυώντων.
 (the) sea! and cheering-on (those in the rear).
 Ἐνθα δὲ ἅπαντες ἔδεον καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες,
 Then indeed all commenced-running and the rear-guard,
 καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο καὶ οἱ
 and the baggage-cattle were-excited (to their full speed) and (also) the
 ἵπποι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον,
 horses. And when all arrived on the summit,
 ἐνταῦθα δὲ περιέβαλλαν ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατη-
 then indeed they-embraced one-another, also (the) gene-
 γοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς, δακρύοντες. Καὶ ἑξαπίνης,
 rals and captains, shedding-tears. And suddenly,
 οἷον δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος, οἱ
 whoever indeed (it might be) having-exhorted (them to it), the
 στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους, καὶ ποιοῦσι μέγαν
 soldiers bring stones, and make (a) large
 κολωνόν. Ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίδεσαν πλῆθος
 mound. Then they-placed-on (this mound a) multitudes

δερμάτων ὠμοβοείων, καὶ βακτηρίας, καὶ τὰ γέβρα
 of-skins of-raw-ox-hides, and staves, and the shields

αἰχμάλωτα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν τε αὐτός κατέτεμνε
 captured (from the enemy), and the guide not-only himself cut-to-pieces

τὰ γέβρα, καὶ διεκελεύετο τοῖς ἄλλοις.
 the shields, but-also exhorted the others (to do the same).

Μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι τὸν ἡγεμόνα,
 After thus the Greeks sent-away the guide,

δόντες δῶρα ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον,
 giving (him) presents from (the) common (stock, namely, a) horse,

καὶ ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην, καὶ Περσικὴν σκειῆν,
 and (a) silver cup, and (a) Persian robe,

καὶ δέκα δαρεικοὺς· δ' μάλιστα ᾗτει τοὺς
 and ten darics; but most-of-all he-asked-for the

δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν
 finger-rings, and he-obtained many (of them) from the

στρατιωτῶν. Δὲ δείξας κώμην αἰτοῖς οὗ
 soldiers. And he-having-pointed-out (a) village to-them where

σκηνήσουσι, καὶ
 they-might-encamp (or take up their quarters), and (he also having showed

τὴν ὁδόν, ἣν πορεύονται εἰς Μάκρωνας,
 them) the road, on-which they-were-to-proceed to (the) Macrones,

ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἑσπέρα, ὥχετο ἀπὼν τῆς νυκτός.
 when it-was evening, he-departed, proceeding during-the night.

CHAPTER VIII.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
 HENCE — the Greeks proceeded through

Μακρῶνων τρεῖς σταδίμους,
 (the country) 'of (the) 'Macrones three days'-march, (making)

λέκα παρασάγγας. Δὲ τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
 ten parasangs. And on-the first day

ἰφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὃς ὄριζε τὴν
they arrived at the river, which bounded-and-divided the

τῶν Μακρόνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκι-
(territories) of-the Macrones — (from) — (those) of-the Scy-

θινῶν. Εἶχον δ' ὑπερδέξιον χωρίον οἷον
thini. They-had — 'on (their) 'right (a) place such-as

χαλεπώτατον, καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς
(to be) the-most-difficult (of access), and on (their) left

ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ
another river, into which the bounding (river), through where

ἔδει διαβῆναι, ἐνέβαλλεν. Οὗτος
it-was-necessary to-cross, emptied (itself). This (river),

ἦν δασύς δένδροις οὐ μὲν παχέσι,
— was thick-set (on its shores) with-trees not indeed thick (or large)

δὲ πυκνοῖς. Ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ
but (growing) close-together. These (trees) the Greeks, after

προσῆλθον, ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τοῦ
they-arrived, cut-down, hastening to-go-out from the

χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα. Δ' οἱ Μάκρωνες, ἔχοντες
country as speedily-as-possible. But the Macrones, having

γέρβρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τριχίνους χιτῶνας
wicker-shields and spears and hair tunics,

παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν καταντιπέρας τῆς διαβάσεως,
had-been-drawn-up on-the-opposite-side of-the crossing-place,

καὶ διεκελεύοντο ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἔρριπτον λίθους
and encouraged one-another, and they-threw stones

εἰς τὸν ποταμόν, δὲ οὐ ἐξικνοῦντο, οὐδ'
in the river, but 'they-did not 'reach (our men), (nor) (or)

ἔβλαπτον οὐδένα.

hurt none (of-them).

Ἐνθα δὴ τις ἀνὴρ τῶν πελταστῶν προσέρχεται
Then indeed some man of-the targeteers comes-up

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι
to — Xenophon, affirming (that he) had-been-a-slave

Ἀθήνησι, λέγων, ὅτι γιγνώσχοι τὴν φωνὴν
at-Athens, (and) saying, that he-knew the language

τῶν ἀνδρῶπων. Καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ταύτην εἶναι
of — (these) men. And I-think, said-he, this to-be

ἐμῇ πατρίδα· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι καλύει, ἐδέλω
my country; and | if not [unless] something hinders, I-wish

διαλεχθῆναι αὐτοῖς. Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν καλύει, ἔφη·
to-speak with-them. But nothing hinders, said

ἀλλὰ διαλέγου, καὶ μάθε πρῶτον
(Xenopho.); but speak (with them), and ascertain first

τίνες εἰσίν. Ἐρωτήσαντος, οἱ δ'
what (people) they-may-be. He-inquiring, — (they) —

εἶπον, ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα αὐτοὺς
said, that (they were) Macrones. Ask them

τοῖνυ, ἔφη, τί ἀντιτετάχεται, καὶ
then, said (Xenophon), why drawn-up-against (us), and

χρηζοῖσιν εἶναι πολέμιοι ἡμῖν. Δ' οἱ
wish to-be enemies to-us. But — (they)

ἀπεκρίναντο· Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἔρχεσθε ἐπὶ
answered: (Because) that even you come against

ἡμετέραν χώραν. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκέλευον
our country. The generals (then) ordered (him);

λέγειν, ὅτι οὐ ποιήσונτες κακῶς γε,
to-say, | that not making evil at-least, [that not in the

ἀλλὰ πολεμήσαντες
least intending to injure you,] but having-been-making-war 'with (the)

βασίλει, ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ
'king, we-were-returning to — Greece, and (that,

βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Ἐκεῖνοι
we-desire to-arrive to (the) sea. They

ῥώτων, εἰ ἂν δοῖεν τὰ πίστά τούτων.
asked, if (they) would give — pledges of these (things).

Δ' οἱ ἔφασαν ἐδέλιν καὶ δοῦνα·
And — (they) said (that they) wished both to-give

καὶ λαβεῖν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ Μάκρωνες διδῶσι
and to-receive (them). Then the Macrones gave

τοῖς Ἑλλησι βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην, δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες
the Greeks (a) barbarian lance, and the Greeks

ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν· γὰρ ἔφασαν
 (gave) them (a) Grecian (one); for they-said (that)
 ταῦτα εἶναι πιστὰ· δὲ ἀμφοτέροι
 these were (their) pledges; and both (parties called on the)
 θεοὺς ἐπεμαρτύραντο.
 gods (that) they-might-witness (it).

Δὲ μετὰ τὰ πιστὰ, οἱ Μάκρωνες εὐθὺς
 And after the pledges, the Macrones immediately
 συνεξέκοπτον τὰ δένδρα, τε ὁδοποιοῖον
 cut-down-with (them) the trees, not-only to-make-a-road (for
 ὁδὸν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες, ἀναμε-
 them, for a) path as about-'passing (them) 'through min-
 μιγμένοι ἐν μέσοις τοῖς Ἑλλήσι· καὶ
 gling (at the same time) among the Greeks; but-also
 παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν οἷαν ἐδύναντο· καὶ
 provided (a) market (for them) such-as they-were-able; and
 παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις, ἕως κατέ-
 they-'led (them) 'along for three days, until they-set-
 στησαν τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια Κόλχων.
 down the Greeks on the borders (of the) Colchians.
 Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μέγα ὄρος, δὲ προσβατὸν· καὶ
 Here was (a) large mountain, but accessible; and
 οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τούτου.
 the Colchians had-been-drawn-up on this (mountain).

Καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἀντιπαρετάζαντο
 And the Greeks indeed — (at) first drew-up-against
 κατὰ φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς
 (them) in line, as thus about-leading (the men) against
 τὸ ὄρος· δὲ ἔπειτα ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
 the mountain; but when it-seemed to-the generals (that)
 συλλεγεῖσι βουλευσασθαι ὅπως ἀγωνιοῦνται
 they-should-assemble to-deliberate how they-should-contend
 ὡς κάλλιστα. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἐλεξεν, ὅτι δοκεῖ,
 to-the-greatest-advantage. Xenophon therefore said, that it-seemed
 παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα,
 (to him), ceasing (to have the troops) — 'in (a) line

ποιῆσαι ὀρδίους λόχους· γὰρ μὲν
to-form | straight companies; [columns of companies;] for indeed

ἡ φάλαγξ εὐδὺς διασπασθήσεται· γὰρ μὲν
the line 'will immediately 'be-broken; for indeed

εἴη εὐρήσομεν ἄνοδον, δὲ τῇ
in — (some places) we-will-find (an) impassable-road, but in — (others)

εὐοδον τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐδὺς τοῦτο ποιήσεται ἄδυ-
a) good-road to-the mountain; and immediately this will-cause despon-

μίαν, ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα, ὀρῶσι
dency (in the men), when drawn-up in line, they-see

ταύτην διεσπασμένην. Ἐπειτα, ἣν μὲν προσάγωμεν
this (line) broken. Then, if indeed we-advance

τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ πολλοὺς, οἱ πολέμοι περιπτεύουσιν
drawn-up many-deep, the enemy will-reach-beyond

ἡμῶν, καὶ χρήσονται τοῖς περιττοῖς,
us (on the wings), and will-use the superfluous

τι ὃ ἂν βούλωνται. Δὲ ἂν
(men), (in) any (manner) which 'they may 'desire. And if

ἴωμεν τεταγμένοι ἐπ' ὀλίγων, ἂν εἴη οὐδὲν
we-go (forward) drawn-up few-deep, it-would be nothing

θαυμαστόν, εἰ ἡ φάλαγξ ἡμῶν διακοπεῖται
wonderful, | if the line of-us [if our line] be-cut-through

ὑπὸ καὶ ἀδρόων βελῶν καὶ πολλῶν ἀνδρώπων
by both collected missiles and many men

ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δὲ πῃ τοῦτο ἔσται, ἔσται
falling-upon (it); if indeed by-any-means this should-be, it-will-be

κακὸν τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι,
bad for-the whole line. But it-seems to-me, (that)

ποιησαμένους τοὺς λόχους ὀρδίους, κατασχεῖν
having-formed the companies (in) columns, to-separate

τοῖς λόχοις διαλιπόντας τοσοῦτον χωρίον,
the companies, being-distant (from one another), so-much space,

ὥσον τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι
as-that the extreme companies (on the right and left) will-be

ἐξω κεράτων τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ οὕτως ο
beyond (the) wings of-the enemy. And thus 'we. ἡ

ἔσχατοι λόχοι ἐσόμεθα τε ἔξω τῆς φάλαγγος
 extreme companies, 'will-be not-only beyond the line

τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἄγοντες ὀρδίους οἱ
 of-the enemy, but-also leading (forward) in-column the

κράτιστοι ἡμῶν προσίασι πρῶτον, τε ἧ
 bravest of-us advance first, and (in the place) in-which

ἂν ἧ εὖοδον ταύτῃ ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος
 there may 'be (a) good-road, in-that — each company

ἄξει. Καὶ οὐ τε ἔσται ῥάδιον τοῖς πολεμίοις
 will-lead. And it-'will not indeed 'be easy for-the enemy

εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὸ διαλείπον
 to-penetrate into the (space) left (vacant between the com-

πανίων λόχων ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν, τε
 panies in column) there-being companies here and there, and-indeed

οὐ ἔσται ῥάδιον διακόψαι λόχον ὀρδίον
 it-'will not 'be easy to-break-through (a) company in-column

προσιόντα. Τε εἰάν τις τῶν λόχων πιέζηται
 advancing-forward. And if any of-the companies be-hard-pressed

ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. Τε ἢν πῃ εἰς τῶν
 the nearest will-give-assistance. And if by-any-means one of-the

λόχων δυνηθῇ ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον οὐδεὶς τῶν
 companies may-be-able to-ascend on the height none of-the

πολεμίων μηκέτι μείνῃ. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε καὶ
 enemy after-this may-remain. This seemed-good, and

ἐποίουν τοὺς λόχους ὀρδίους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν
 they-formed the companies (in) columns. And Xenophon

ἀπὼν ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον
 departing from the right (wing of the enemy) to the left

ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· Οὗτοι εἰσιν, οὓς ὁρᾶτε,
 said to-the soldiers: These are, whom you-see, (the)

μόνοι ἄνδρες ἔτι ἐμποδῶν ἡμῖν τὸ μὴ ἤδη
 only men yet in-the-way (to prevent) us — not soon

εἶναι, ἐνθα πάλαι ἐσπεύδομεν·
 to-be, there (where) we-'have long 'desired-and-hastened (to be);

τούτους, ἣν πως δυνώμεθα, δεῖ καὶ κατὰ
these, if in-any-way we-can, it-becomes (us) even | to
φαγεῖν ὥμους.
eat-up raw [to exterminate].

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο ἐν ταῖς χώραις,
When indeed each had-got in — (their!) places,
καὶ τοὺς λόχους ἐποίησαντο ὀρδίου, ἐγένοντο
and the companies were-formed (in) columns, there-were
μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς
— companies of-the heavy-armed-men (to) about the (number of)
ὀγδοήκοντα, δ' ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος σχεδὸν
eighty, and — each company (amounted) nearly
εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· δ' ἐποίησαντο τοὺς πελ-
to — (a) hundred (men); and they-formed the tar-
ταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ τοὺς;
geteers and the archers | threefold [in three divisions] —

μὲν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου δὲ τοὺς τοῦ
(one) indeed beyond the left-wing and the (other beyond) the
δεξιῶν δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον, ἑκάστους
right-wing and the (third) in (the) centre, each (divi-

σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ
sion being) nearly six-hundred (men). After this the
στρατηγοὶ παρηγγύησαν εὐχεσθαι·
generals ordered (the soldiers) to-'make (their-

εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες
'vows; having-'made (their) 'vows, and also having-sung-the-pæan,
ἐπορεύοντο. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν
they-proceeded (forward). And Cheirisophus indeed and Xenophon

καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς, γενόμενοι ἔξω τῆς
and the targeteers with them, being beyond the
φάλαγγος τῶν πολεμίων ἐπορεύοντο.
line of-the enemy, proceeded (on their march).

Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὥς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαραδέοντες.
The enemy indeed, as they-saw them, running-against

οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιόν, δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τὸ
'them), — (some) indeed to the right, but — (others) to the

εὐώνυμον, διεσπιάσθησαν, καὶ ἐποίησαν πολὺ
 left, were-drawn-asunder, and they-made (a) great
 κενὸν ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τῆς φάλαγγος ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ οἱ
 -oid in the middle of-the line of-them. But the
 πελτασταί κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικόν,
 targeteers in the Arcadian (division in the centre),
 ὧν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν ἤρχεν ἰδόντες αὐτοὺς
 whom Æschines the Acarnanian commanded seeing them
 διαχάζοντας, νομίσαντες φεύγειν, ἔδεον
 separating, having-thought (them) to-be-fleeing, ran (forward)
 ἰνὰ κράτος, καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἀναβαίνουσι
 with (all their) might, and these first ascended
 ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος· δὲ καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν,
 on the mountain; and also the Arcadian heavy-armed (troops),
 ὧν Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἤρχε, συνεφείπετο.
 whom Cleanor the Orchomenian commanded, followed-together(after).
 Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥς ἤρξαντο θεῖν οὐκέτι
 But the enemy, as (the Greeks) began to-run no-longer
 ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλη ἐτράπετο.
 stood, but fled, | other in-other turned [some
 Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνα-
 going one way and some another]. But the Greeks de-
 βάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν
 scending (from the mountain) encamped among
 πολυαῖς κώμαις ἐχούσαις πολλὰ τὰπιτήδεια.
 many villages having much (of) provisions.
 Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἦν
 | And the indeed other (things) [and as respects other things] there-was
 οὐδέν, ὃ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· δὲ ἦν πολλὰ
 nothing, that even they-were-surprised-at; but there-were many
 τα σμήνη αὐτόδι, καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 — bee-hives there, and as-'many of-the soldiers 'as
 ἔφαγον τῶν κηρίων, πάντες τε ἐγίγνοντο ἄφρονες,
 ate of-the combs, all not-only became delirious,
 καὶ ἤμουν, καὶ διεχώρει αὐτοῖς κάτω,
 but-also vomited, | and it-passed-through them downwards. [and they

καὶ οὐδεὶς ἠδύνατο ἵστασθαι ὀρθός,
were purged,] and no-one was-able to-stand straight,

ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἐδοκίμαζον ὀλίγον σφόδρα ἐώκεσαν
but — (those) indeed having-eaten little very-much resembled

μεθύουσι, δ' οἱ πολὺν
(persons) being-drunk, but — (those having eaten) much (resembled

μαινομένοις, δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀποδνήσκουσι.
those) being-mad, and also (resembled) — (those) dying

Πολλοὶ δὲ ἐκείντο οὕτω, ὥςπερ τροπῆς
Many indeed lay (on the ground) so, as-though (a) rout

γεγενημένης, καὶ ἡ ἀδυμία ἦν πολλή. Δὲ τῇ
had-taken-place, and the dejection was great. But on-the

ὑστεραίᾳ οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπέθανε, δ' ἀνεφρόνουν
next-day no-one indeed had-died, but they-recovered (their)

ἀμφὶ πού τὴν αὐτὴν ὥραν. δὲ
'senses about perhaps the same hour (they lost them); and

τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο, ὥςπερ ἐκ
'on (the) 'third and fourth (days) they-got-up, as-if from

φαρμακοποσίας.
taking-physic.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδμούς,

Hence indeed they-proceeded two days'-march, (making)

ἐπτά παρασάγγας, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν
seven parasangs, and came to (the) sea

εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, οἰκουμένην,
at Trapezus, (a) Greek city, populous,

ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, ἀποικίαν
(and situated) on the Euxine Sea, (being a) colony

Σινωπέων, ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Κόλχων.
'of (the) 'Sinopians, in the territory 'of (the) 'Colchians.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἡμέρας
There they-remained, about — thirty days

ἐν ταῖς κώμας τῶν Κόλχων. Κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώ-
in the villages of-the Colchians. And-hence making-

μενοι ἐληίζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. Δὲ Τραπεζοῦντιοι
incursi — they-blundered — Colchis. And (the) Trapezians

παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ τε ἐδέξαντο
provide (a) market for-the camp, and not-only received

τοῖς Ἑλληνας καὶ ἔδοσαν
the Greeks (hospitably in their city), but-also gave (them)

ζένια βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιτα
gifts-of-hospitality-and-friendship, (namely) oxen and barley-meal

καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ καὶ συνδιεπράττοντο ὑπὲρ
and wine. And also they-negotiated (with them) for

τῶν πλησίων Κόλχων, μάλιστα τῶν
(and in behalf) of-the neighbouring Colchians, especially — (those)

οἰκούντων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· καὶ ζένια καὶ ἥλδον
dwelling in the plain; and gifts-of-hospitality also came

παρ' ἐκείνων βόες. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ παρεσ-
from them (namely) oxen. After this indeed they-pre-

κευάζοντο τὴν θυσίαν, ἣν εὕξαντο· δ' ἱκανοὶ
pared the sacrifice, which they-had-vowed; and sufficient

βόες ἥλδον αὐτοῖς ἀποδῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτῆρι,
oxen came to-them to-sacrifice to — Jupiter the Preserver,

καὶ τῷ Ἑρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς
and to — Hercules for-safe-conduct, and to-the other gods

ἃ εὕξαντο. Δὲ καὶ ἐποίησαν γυμνικὸν
(that) which they-had-vowed. And also they-made (a) gymnastic

ἀγῶνα, ἐν τῷ ὄρει, ἔνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν. Δ' εἵλοντο
contest, on the hill, where they-were-encamped. And they-chose

Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην (ὃς ἔφυγε οἰκοδεν
Dracontius (the) Spartan (who became-an-exile from-home

ῶν παῖς, ἄκων κατακτανὼν παῖδα,
being (a) boy, (he) unwillingly killing (a) boy,

πατάξας ξυήλῃ) τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι
having-struck (him) 'with (a) 'dagger' not-only to-take-'care (to pro-

δρόμου, καὶ προστατῆσαι τοῦ ἀγῶνος.
vide) 'for (a) 'race, but-also to-preside-over the contest

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο,
(and games). When indeed the sacrifice was (performed),

παρέδοσαν τὰ δέρματα τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἐκέλευον
they-gave the skins to — Dracontius, and they-requested

ἡγεῖσθαι. ὅπου πεποιηκὼς εἶναι, ἵσθαι
 (him) to-lead (to the place) where he-may-have-made the
 δρόμον. Ὁ δὲ δείξας, ὅπου
 course. — But (he) having-pointed (to the place), where
 ἐτύγχανον ἐστηκότες, ἔφη, ὁ οὗτος λόφος
 they-happened (to be) standing, said, — this hill (is)
 κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου τις ἂν βού-
 most-excellent for-running (in) whatever-direction any-one may de-
 ληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται πα-
 sire. (But) how then, said-they, will-they-be-able to-
 λαίειν ἐν οὕτως σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ;
 wrestle in (a place) so hard and bushy (and rough)?
 ὁ δ', εἶπε, ὁ καταπεσὼν, ἀνιάσεται τι
 — but (he), said-he, who having-fallen, will-be-distressed some (what)
 μᾶλλον. Δὲ παῖδες μὲν, οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν
 the-more. And boys indeed, the most (of them) —
 αἰχμαλώτων, ἡγωνίζοντο στάδιον,
 (from those) taken-prisoners, contended (in the) stadium
 δὲ δόλιχον πλείους ἢ
 (or short course), and (in the) dolichon (or long course) more than
 ἑξήκοντα Κρήτες ἔδεον, δεῖτε ἄλλοι πάλιν
 sixty Cretans ran, and others (contended in) wrestling
 καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον. Καὶ ἐγένετο
 and boxing and (the) pancratium. And it-was (a)
 καλὴ θέα· γὰρ πολλοὶ κατέβησαν,
 fine sight; for many went-down, [entered the lists,]
 καὶ, ὅτε τῶν ἐταίρων θεωμένῳ, ἐγίγνετο
 and, as — (their) companions were-looking-on, there-was
 πολλὴ φιλονεικία. Δὲ καὶ ἵπποι ἔδεον· καὶ
 much emulation. And also horses ran; and
 ἔδει αὐτοὺς, ἐλάσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς,
 it-was-necessary for-them, having-galloped along-down the steep,
 ἀναστρέφαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, πάλιν
 (and) having-turned-round in the sea, again
 ἄγειν ἄνω πρὸς τὸν βωμόν. Καὶ μὲν
 lead-back upwards to the altar. And indeed 'going'

κάτω οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦτο· δ
downwards — many (of the horses) rolled (down); bu.
ἀνω πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρδιον, οἱ
(going) upwards against the exceedingly steep (ground), the
ἵπποι μὲν ἐπορεύοντο βάδην· ἔνθα
horses scarcely proceeded step-by-step (walking); then
ἐγίγνετο πολλὴ κραυγὴ, καὶ γέλως, καὶ παραχέ
there-was much shouting, and laughter, and cheer
λευσὶς αὐτῶν.
'rag from-them.

BOOK V.

CHAPTER 1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ
 WHAT indeed — the Greeks did in the
 ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου, καὶ ὅσα
 march-upwards, in — (that, namely,) with Cyrus, and what (they did)
 ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θάλατταν
 in the journey, — (that, namely,) just to (the) sea
 τὴν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ Εὐξείνῳ, καὶ
 | the in the Pontus Euxinus, [namely, the Euxine Sea,] and
 ὡς ἀφίκοντο εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν,
 how they-arrived at Trebisonde (a) Greek city,
 καὶ ὡς ἀπέδυσαν ἃ εὕξαντο θύσειν
 and how they-offered-the-sacrifice which they-had-vowed to-sacrifice 'for
 σωτήρια, ἐνδα πρῶτον ἀφίκοιντο εἰς φιλίαν
 [their] 'safety, when first they-should-arrive at (a) friendly
 γῆν, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
 country, (all this) has-been-declared in the preceding discourse.
 Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλευόντο περὶ
 Upon this indeed coming-together they-deliberated concerning
 τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· δὲ Ἀντιλέων
 the remaining (part of the) journey; and Antileon (the)
 Θοῦριος ἀνέστη πρῶτος, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἐγὼ μὲν
 Thurian stood-up first, and spoke thus: I indeed
 τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἀπείρηκα
 therefore, said-he, O men, have-'become now 'tired
 ζυσκευαζόμενος, καὶ βαδίζων, καὶ τρέχων, καὶ
 packing-up, and walking, and running, and

φέρων τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἰὼν ἐν τάξει, καὶ
 carrying — (my) arms, and going (drawn-up) in order, and
 φυλάττων φυλακὰς, καὶ μαχόμενος·
 | guarding guard, [standing guard,] and fighting;
 ἐπιθυμῶ ἤδη δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἔχομεν θάλατταν,
 I-desire now indeed, since we-have (attained the) sea,
 παυσάμενος τούτων τῶν πόνων, πλεῖν τὸ
 having-rested from-these — (our) toils, to-sail the
 λοιπὸν, καὶ ἐκταδεῖς, ὥςπερ Ὀδυσσεύς,
 remainder (of the way), and stretched-out, like Ulysses,
 καθεύδων ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Οἱ στρα-
 asleeping to-arrive in — Greece. The sol-
 τῶνται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεθορύβησαν
 diers hearing these (things) loudly-applauded (him)
 ὥς λέγοι εὖ· καὶ ἄλλος ἔλεγε ταῦτα,
 as (one who) spoke well; and another said these (same
 καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες.
 things), and all — (those) being-present (said the same).
 Ἐπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε·
 Then indeed Cheirisophus rose-up and spoke thus:
 ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος ἐστὶν φίλος μοι,
 O men, Anaxibius | is (a) friend to-me, [is my friend,]
 δὲ καὶ τυγχάνει ναυαρχῶν. Ἦν οὖν πέμψητέ
 and also happened-to-be commanding-a-fleet. If therefore you-will-send
 με, οἶομαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν ἔχων καὶ τριήρεις καὶ
 me, I-think — to-come (back) having both galleys and
 πλοῖα τὰ ἄξοντα ἡμᾶς·
 transports | (for) the (hereafter) carrying us; [to transport us home;]
 δὲ ὑμεῖς, εἴπερ βούλεσθε πλεῖν, περιμένετε, ἔστ'
 and you, since you-desire to-sail, stay-here, until
 ἐγὼ ἂν ἐλθω· ἥξω δὲ ταχέως. Οἱ
 I may come (back); I-will-come indeed speedily. The
 στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἡσθησάν τε
 soldiers hearing these (things) were-delighted —
 καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο αὐτὸν πλεῖν ὥς τάχιστα.
 and voted (for) him to-sail as speedily-as-possible.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν
 After this (one) Xenophon stood-up and spoke
 ὧδε· Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ στέλλεται ἐπὶ πλοῖα,
 thus: Cheirisophus indeed — is-sent after ships,
 δὲ ἡμεῖς ἀναμενουμέν· Ὅσα οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
 and we will-remain-here. What therefore it-seems to-me to-be
 καιρὸς ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα ἔρω.
 proper to-do in — (our) stay, that I-will-tell (you).
 Πρῶτον μὲν δεῖ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι
 First indeed it-is-necessary — (for) provisions to-be-procured
 ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· γὰρ ἔστιν οὔτε ἱκανή
 from the enemy; for there-is neither (a) sufficiently-abundant
 ἀγορὰ, οὔτε εὐπορία ὠνησόμεθα
 market, nor (have we the) means (with which) we-shall-buy
 οὔτου, εἰ μὴ τισὶν ὀλίγοις· ἡ χώρα δὲ
 anything, unless some few; the country indeed (around us is)
 πολεμία· οὖν κίνδυνος πολλοὺς
 hostile (to us); therefore (there is) danger (that) many
 ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἣν πορεύσθαι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 may-perish, if you-proceed-out for — provisions
 ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι
 carelessly — and unguardedly. But it-seems to-me
 λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια σὺν προνομαῖς,
 (that we ought) to-take — provisions with foraging-parties,
 δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι ἄλλως, ὥς σώξῃσθε,
 and not to-wander-about at-random, in-order-that you-may-preserve (your
 δ' ἡμᾶς ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τούτων.
 lives), and (that) we (your officers) should-regulate these (things).
 Ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Ἐπὶ
 [it-seemed-well (respecting) these (things, and they were adopted). And-now
 τοίνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. Γὰρ τινες ὑμῶν
 therefore listen also to-this. For-as some of-you
 ἐκπορεύονται ἐπὶ λείαν· οἶμαι οὖν εἶναι
 will-proceed-out to plunder; I-think therefore (it) to-be
 βέλτωτον εἰπεῖν ἡμῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξίέναι,
 better to-tell us (of) the intending to-go-out

δε καὶ φράζειν ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ εἰδῶμεν
 and also to-mention where (or in what direction), that even we-may-know
 τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἐξιόντων καὶ τῶν μενόντων,
 the multitude of — (those) going-out and of — (those) remaining,
 καὶ ξυμπαρασκευάζωμεν ἐάν τι δέη,
 and (that) we-may-prepare-together if anything should-be-required,
 ἢ καὶ καὶ καὶ βοηθῆσαι τισι, εἰδῶμεν
 and-if there-be occasion (that we) may-help any, (and) know
 ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ ἐάν τις τῶν ἀπει-
 where it-will-be-necessary to-help, and if any-one of-the more-
 ροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, ξυμβουλευίω-
 inexperienced may-undertake (anything) anywhere, we-may-consult-to-
 μεν πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ'
 gether endeavouring to-know the strength (of the enemy) against
 οὓς ἂν ἴωσι. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
 whom 'they may 'go. And these (things) seemed-good, (and
 Δὲ καὶ ἐννοεῖτε τόδε, ἔφη.
 were agreed to). And also consider this, said-he. (There is)
 Σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις ληΐζεσθαι, καὶ δικαίως
 leisure to-the enemy to-rob (us), and justly
 ἐπιβουλεύουσιν ἡμῖν, γὰρ ἔχομεν τὰ ἐκείνων·
 do-they-conspire-against us, | for we-have the (things) of-them;
 δ' ὑπερκάδην·
 [for we have their property;] and (moreover) they-are-placed-on-heights-
 ται ἡμῶν. Δὴ δοκεῖ μοι δεῖν εἶναι φύλακας
 above us. Indeed it-seems to-me there-ought to-be sentinels
 περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἐὰν οὖν μερισθέντες κατὰ
 round the camp; if therefore being-divided into
 μέρος φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἥττον ἂν οἱ
 parts we-guard and keep-a-look-out, the-less may — (our)
 πολέμοι δύναιτο θηρᾶν ἡμᾶς. Ἔτι τοίνυν
 enemies be-able to-hunt us (down). Moreover therefore
 ὁρᾶτε τάδε. Εἰ μὲν ἡπιστάμεθα σαφῶς, ὅτι
 consider this. If indeed we-knew certainly, that
 Χειρίσοφος ἥξει ἄγων ἱκανὰ πλοῖα,
 Cheirisophus will-come (back) bringing (a) sufficient (number of) ships.

ἄν οὐδὲν ἔδει ὧν μέλλω λέγειν· δὲ νῦν
 'there would 'be no 'need of-what I-am-about to-say; but now
 ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πει-
 since this (is) uncertain, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-en-
 ρᾶσθαι συμπαρασκευάζειν πλοῖα καὶ αὐτόθεν.
 deavours to-provide-and-bring-together ships even here.
 Γὰρ ἢν μὲν ἔλθῃ, ὑπαρχόντων
 For if indeed he-should-come (back with ships, vessels) being-provided
 ἐνθάδε, πλευσοῦμεθα ἐν ἁφθονωτέροις.
 here, we-shall-sail in (a) greater-abundance (of ships).
 Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἄγῃ, χρησόμεθα τοῖς
 If indeed he-'should not 'bring (any), we-will-make-use of — (those)
 ἐνθάδε. Ἐγὼ δὲ ὁρῶ πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέ-
 here. I indeed see vessels frequently sailing
 οντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων
 by; if therefore we-should-be-asking from the-people-of-Trebisond
 μακρὰ πλοῖα, κατάγοιμεν
 | long ships, [ships of war,] we-might-bring-into-port (those vessels
 καὶ φυλάττοιμεν αὐτὰ παραλυόμενοι τὰ
 sailing by), and might-guard them | loosening the
 πηδάλια, ἕως ἱκανὰ ἄν
 rudders, [unshipping the rudders,] until (a) sufficient (number) may
 γένηται τὰ ἄξοντα, ἄν ἴσως
 be-got (for) the 'carrying (of us) 'hereafter, 'we may probably
 οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κοιμῶν οἷας δεόμεθα. Καὶ
 not 'have-failed 'of (a) 'conveyance such-as we-seek. And
 ταῦτα ἔδοξε. Ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη,
 these (suggestions) were-approved. Think also, said-he,
 εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ,
 if (it will not be) proper even to-support from the common (stock),
 οὓς ἄν κατάγωμεν, ὅσον χρόνον ἂν
 those-whom 'we may 'bring-in, so-'long (a) time 'as 'they may
 μένωσι ἔνεκεν ἡμῶν, καὶ ξυνδέσθαι
 'remain on-account of-us, and to-make-an-agreement (with them
 ναῦλον, ὅπως ὠφελοῦντες
 about the) passage-money, so-that benefitting (us) they-(may

καὶ ὠφελῶνται. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
also 'benefit (themselves). And these (things) seemed-good

Δοκεῖ μοι ποῖνυν, ἔφη, ἣν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα
It-seems to-me therefore, said-he, if perhaps even these (things);

μὴ ἐκπεραίνηται, ὥστε πλοῖα ἄρκεῖν,
'do not 'result, so-that vessels be-sufficient (for us),

ἐντείλασθαι ταῖς πόλεσιν οἰκουμέναις παρὰ
(it is) to-be-enjoined to-the cities situated along (the)

θάλατταν ὁδοποιεῖν τὰς ὁδοὺς, αἷς ἀκούομεν εἶναι
sea to-repair the roads, which we-hear to-be

δυσπόρους· γὰρ πείσονται, καὶ διὰ τὸ
difficult-to-pass-through; for they-will-obey, both | through the

φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι
'to-fear, [through fear,] and through the to-desire [and through

ἀπαλλαγῆναι ἡμῶν.
the desire] to-get-rid of-us.

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον, ὥς δέοι οὐ
Then indeed they-exclaimed, that there-ought not

ᾠδοιορεῖν. Δὲ ὁ ὥς ἔγνω τὴν
so-be-travelling-by-land. But — (Xenophon) as he-perceived the

ἄφροσύνην αὐτῶν, οὐδέν μὲν ἔπε-
want-of-reason of-them, 'put nothing indeed (respecting roads) 'to-

ψήφισε, δὲ ἔπεισε τὰς πόλεις ὁδοποιεῖν
vote, but he-persuaded the towns to-make-the-roads

ἐκούσας, λέγων ὅτι θάπτον ἀπαλλάξον-
of-their-own-free-will, saying that the-more-speedily they-would-be-

ται, ἣν αἱ ὁδοὶ γένωνται εὐποροί.
freed-from (the Greeks), if the roads became passable.

Δέ καὶ ἔλαβον πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπε-
And also they-obtained (a) fifty-oared-galley from the people-of-

ζουντίων, ἣ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα
Trebisond, over-which they-placed Dexippus (a) Lacedæmonian

περίοικον. Οὗτος, ἀμελήσας τοῦ ζυλλέγειν
provincial. This (person), having-neglected (the) to-collect

πλοῖα, ἀποδράς ὥχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων
vessels, having-fled he-departed out of-the (Euxine) Sea, having

τῇ ναυῇ. Οὗτος μὲν οὖν ὕστερον ἐπαθε
 the vessel. This (person) indeed therefore afterwards suffered
 δίκαια· γὰρ ἐν Θράκῃ παρὰ
 just (punishment); for in Thrace at (the court of)
 Σεύδῃ, πολυπραγμονῶν τι, ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ
 Seuthes, meddling-with something, he-died by (the
 Νικάνδρου τοῦ Λάκωνος. Δὲ καὶ
 hands of; Nicander the Lacedæmonian. And (the Greeks) also
 ἔλαβον τριακόντορον, ἣ Πολυκράτης
 received (a) thirty-oared-galley, over-which Polycrates (the)
 Ἀθηναῖος ἐπεστάδῃ, ὃς κατήγε πλοῖα ὅποσα
 Athenian was-placed, who brought-in (the) vessels as-many-as
 λαμβάνοι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
 he-could-capture (to the shore) before the camp. And
 μὲν ἐξαιρούμενοι τὰ ἀγώγιμα, εἰ ἦγον τι,
 indeed taking-out the cargoes, if they-brought any,
 καδίστασαν φύλακας, ὅπως εἴη σῶα,
 they-'placed guards 'over (them), so-that they-might-be safe,
 δὲ χρῆσαιντο τοῖς πλοίοις εἰς παραγωγὴν.
 and they-used the vessels for (their) conveyance.
 Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, οἱ Ἕλληνες
 During (the time) that — these (things) were, the Greeks
 ἐξήεσαν ἐπὶ λείαν· καὶ μὲν οἱ ἐλάμβανον,
 went-out after plunder; and indeed — (some) took (plunder),
 δὲ καὶ οἱ οὐ. Δὲ Κλεαίνετος ἐξαγαγὼν
 but also — (others did) not. But Cleænetus leading-out
 καὶ τὸν λόχον ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον πρὸς
 both the company of-himself and another (one) against (a)
 χαλεπὸν χωρίον, τε αὐτός ἀπέθανε καὶ πολλοὶ
 difficult place, not-only himself lost-his-life, but-also many
 ἄλλοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.
 others of — (those) with him.

CHAPTER II

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν οὐκέτι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπι-
 WHEN indeed it-was no-longer (possible) to-take — pro-
 τήδεια, ὥστε ἀπαυδημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
 visions, so-as to-return-the-same-day to the camp,
 ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν, λαβὼν ἡγεμόνας
 | on this [then] Xenophon, having-taken (as) guides (some)
 τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἐξάγει τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ
 of-the people-of-Trebisond, led-out the half of-the
 στρατεύματος εἰς Δρίλας, δὲ τὸ ἥμισυ
 army against (the) Drilæ, but the (other) half
 κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· γὰρ οἱ
 he-left to-guard the camp; for the
 Κόλχοι ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, ἦσαν
 Colchians as having-been-driven-out from — (their) houses, were
 ἀδύροισι πολλοί, καὶ ὑπερεκάδηντο ἐπὶ
 collected-together (in) great (numbers), and were-posted on
 τῶν ἄκρων. Δὲ οἱ Τραπεζούντιοι οὐκ ἤγον
 the heights. But the people-of-Trebisond 'did not 'lead
 ὁπόθεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτηδεια ἦν ῥάδιον
 (them to places) whence — — provisions were easy
 λαβεῖν· γὰρ ἦσαν φίλοι αὐτοῖς·
 to-take; for (the people inhabiting them) were friends to-themselves;
 δὲ προδύμως ἤγον εἰς τοὺς Δρίλας, ὑφ' ὧν
 but eagerly led (them) to the Drilæ, | from whom
 ἔπασχον κακῶς, εἰς χωρία τε
 they-suffered evil, [who had injured them,] into (a) country not-only
 ὄρεινὰ, καὶ δύσβατα, καὶ πολεμικωτάτους
 mountainous, but-also difficult-of-access, and (among) the-most-warlike
 ἀνδρώπους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
 people of — (those) on the Pontus (Euxinus).
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἄνω ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ,
 When indeed the Greeks were up in the country,

καὶ οὐδεὶς ἠδύνατο ἵστασθαι ὀρθός,
 were purged,] and no-one was-able to-stand straight
 ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἐδηδοκότες ὀλίγον σφόδρα ἐώφεσαν
 but — (those) indeed having-eaten little very-much resembled
 μεθύουσι, δ' οἱ πολὺ
 (persons) being-drunk, but — (those having eaten) much (resembled
 μαινομένοις, δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀποδνήσκουσι.
 those) being-mad, and also (resembled) — (those) dying
 Πολλοὶ δὲ ἔκειντο οὕτω, ὥσπερ τροπῆς
 Many indeed lay (on the ground) so, as-though (a) rout
 γεγενημένης, καὶ ἡ ἀδυμία ἦν πολλή. Δὲ τῇ
 had-taken-place, and the dejection was great. But on-the
 ὑστεραίᾳ οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπέθανε, δ' ἀνεφρόνουν
 next-day no-one indeed had-died, but they-'recovered (their)
 ἀμφὶ πού τὴν αὐτὴν ὥραν. δὲ
 'senses about perhaps the same hour (they lost them); and
 τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο, ὥσπερ ἐκ
 'on (the) 'third and fourth (days) they-got-up, as-if from
 φαρμακοποσίας.
 taking-physic.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδμοίς,
 Hence indeed they-proceeded two days'-march, (making)
 ἑπτὰ παρασάγγας, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν
 seven parasangs, and came to (the) sea
 εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, οἰκουμένην,
 at Trapezus, (a) Greek city, populous,
 ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, ἀποικίαν
 (and situated) on the Euxine Sea, (being a) colony
 Σινωπέων, ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Κόλχων.
 'of (the) 'Sinopians, in the territory 'of (the) 'Colchians.
 Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἡμέρας
 There they-remained, about — thirty days
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις τῶν Κόλχων. Κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώ-
 in the villages of-the Colchians. And-hence making-
 μενοι ἐληίζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. Δὲ Τραπεζοῦντιοι
 incurr — they-blundered — Colchis. And (the) Trapezians

παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ τε ἐδέξαντο
provide (a) market for-the camp, and not-only received

τοὺς Ἑλληνας καὶ ἔδοσαν
the Greeks (hospitably in their city), but-also gave (them)

ξένια βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιτα
gifts-of-hospitality-and-friendship, (namely) oxen and barley-meal

καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ καὶ συνδιεπράττοντο ὑπὲρ
and wine. And also they-negotiated (with them) for

τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων, μάλιστα τῶν
(and in behalf) of-the neighbouring Colchians, especially — (those)

οἰκούντων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· καὶ ξένια καὶ ἥλδον
dwelling in the plain; and gifts-of-hospitality also came

παρ' ἐκείνων βόες. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ παρεσ-
from them (namely) oxen. After this indeed they-pre-

κευάζοντο τὴν θυσίαν, ἣν εὐξάντο· δ' ἱκανοὶ
pared the sacrifice, which they-had-vowed; and sufficient

βόες ἥλδον αὐτοῖς ἀποδῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτῆρι,
oxen came to-them to-sacrifice to — Jupiter the Preserver,

καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς
and to — Hercules for-safe-conduct, and to-the other gods

ᾧ εὐξάντο. Δὲ καὶ ἐποίησαν γυμνικὸν
(that) which they-had-vowed. And also they-made (a) gymnastic

ἀγῶνα, ἐν τῷ ὄρει, ἐνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν. Δ' εἵλοντο
contest, on the hill, where they-were-encamped. And they-chose

Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην (ὃς ἔφυγε οἰκοδε-
Dracontius (the) Spartan (who became-an-exile from-home

ῶν παῖς, ἄκων κατακτανὼν παῖδα,
being (a) boy, (he) unwillingly killing (a) boy,

πατάξας ξυήλη) τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι
having-struck (him) 'with (a) 'dagger not-only to-take-'care (to pro-

δρόμου, καὶ προστατῆσαι τοῦ ἀγῶνος.
vide) 'for (a) 'race, but-also to-preside-over the contest

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο,
(and games). When indeed the sacrifice was (performed),

παρέδοσαν τὰ δέρματα τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἐκέλευον
they-gave the skins to — Dracontius, and they-requested

ἡγεῖσθαι. ὅπου πεποιηκὼς εἶν, ἵδη
 (him) to-lead (to the place) where he-may-have-made the
 δρόμον. Ὅ δὲ δείξας, ὅπου
 course. — But (he) having-pointed (to the place), where
 ἐτύγχανον ἐστηκότες, ἔφη, ὁ οὗτος λόφος
 they-happened (to be) standing, said, — this hill (is)
 κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου τις ἂν βού-
 most-excellent for-running (in) whatever-direction any-one may de-
 ληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται πα-
 sire. (But) how then, said-they, will-they-be-able to-
 λαίειν ἐν οὕτως σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ;
 wrestle in (a place) so hard and bushy (and rough)?
 ὁ δ', εἶπε, ὁ καταπεσὼν, ἀνιάσεται τι
 — but (he), said-he, who having-fallen, will-be-distressed some (what)
 μᾶλλον. Δὲ παῖδες μὲν, οἱ πλείστοι τῶν
 the-more. And boys indeed, the most (of them) —
 αἰχμαλώτων, ἡγωνίζοντο στάδιον,
 (from those) taken-prisoners, contended (in the) stadium
 δὲ δόλιχον πλείους ἢ
 (or short course), and (in the) dolichon (or long course) more than
 ἑξήκοντα Κρηῖτες ἔδεον, δε ἕτεροι πάλιν
 sixty Cretans ran, and others (contended in) wrestling
 καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον. Καὶ ἐγένετο
 and boxing and (the) pancratium. And it-was (a)
 καλὴ θεά· γὰρ πολλοὶ κατέβησαν,
 fine sight; | for many went-down, [entered the lists,]
 καί, ὅτε τῶν ἐταίρων θεωμένων, ἐγίγνετο
 and, as — (their) companions were-looking-on, there-was
 πολλὴ φιλονεικία. Δὲ καὶ ἵπποι ἔδεον· καὶ
 much emulation. And also horses ran; and
 ἔδει αὐτούς, ἐλάσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πραινοῦς,
 it-was-necessary for-them, having-galloped along-down the steep,
 ἀναστρέφοντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, πάλιν
 (and) having-turned-round in the sea, again
 ἄγειν ἄνω πρὸς τὸν βωμόν. Καὶ μὲν
 lead-back upwards to the altar. And indeed (going)

κάτω οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦτο· δ
 downwards — many (of the horses) rolled (down); bu.

ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρδιον, οἱ
 (going) upwards against the exceedingly steep (ground), the

ἵπποι μὲν ἐπορεύοντο βάδην· ἔνθα
 horses scarcely proceeded step-by-step (walking); then

ἐγίγνετο πολλὴ κραυγὴ, καὶ γέλως, καὶ παρακὲ
 there-was much shouting, and laughter, and cheer

λευσὶς αὐτῶν.
 'ing from-them.

BOOK V.

CHAPTER I

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ
 WHAT indeed — the Greeks did in the
 ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου, καὶ ὅσα
 march-upwards, in — (that, namely,) with Cyrus, and what (they did)
 ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θαλάτταν
 in the journey, — (that, namely,) just to (the) sea
 τὴν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ Εὐξείνῳ, καὶ
 [the in the Pontus Euxinus, [namely, the Euxine Sea,] and
 ὡς ἀφίκοντο εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν,
 how they-arrived at Trebisonde (a) Greek city,
 καὶ ὡς ἀπέδυσαν ἃ εὔξαντο θύσειν
 and how they-offered-the-sacrifice which they-had-vowed to-sacrifice 'for
 σωτήρια, ἔνθα πρῶτον ἀφίκοντο εἰς φιλίαν
 [their] 'safety, when first they-should-arrive at (a) friendly
 γῆν, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
 country, (all this) has-been-declared in the preceding discourse.
 Ἐκ τούτο δὲ ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλευόντο περὶ
 Upon this indeed coming-together they-deliberated concerning
 τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· δὲ Ἀντιλέων
 the remaining (part of the) journey; and Antileon (the)
 Θοίριος ἀνέστη πρῶτος, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἐγὼ μὲν
 Thurian stood-up first, and spoke thus: I indeed
 τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἀπείρηκα
 therefore, said-he, O men, have-'become now 'tired
 ξυσκευαζόμενος, καὶ βαδίζων, καὶ τρέχων, καὶ
 packing-up, and walking, and running, and

φέρων τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἰὼν ἐν τάξει, καὶ
 carrying — (my) arms, and going (drawn-up) in order, and
 φυλάττων φυλακὰς, καὶ μαχόμενος·
 | guarding guard, [standing guard,] and fighting;
 ἐπιθυμῶ ἤδη δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἔχομεν θάλατταν,
 I-desire now indeed, since we-have (attained the) sea,
 παυσάμενος τούτων τῶν πόνων, πλεῖν τὸ
 having-rested from-these — (our) toils, to-sail the
 λοιπὸν, καὶ ἑκταδεῖς, ὥσπερ Ὀδυσσεύς,
 remainder (of the way), and stretched-out, like Ulysses,
 καθεύδων ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Οἱ στρα-
 sleeping to-arrive in — Greece. The sol-
 τιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεδорύθησαν
 diers hearing these (things) loudly-applauded (him)
 ὥς λέγει εὖ· καὶ ἄλλος ἔλεγε ταῦτα,
 as (one who) spoke well; and another said these (same
 καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες.
 things), and all — (those) being-present (said the same).
 Ἐπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε·
 Then indeed Cheirisophus rose-up and spoke thus:
 ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος ἔστιν φίλος μοι,
 O men, Anaxibius | is (a) friend to-me, [is my friend,]
 δὲ καὶ τυγχάνει ναυαρχῶν. Ἦν οὖν πέμψητέ
 and also happened-to-be commanding-a-fleet. If therefore you-will-send
 με, οἶμαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν ἔχων καὶ τριήρεις καὶ
 me, I-think — to-come (back) having both galleys and
 πλοῖα τὰ ἄξοντα ἡμᾶς·
 transports | (for) the (hereafter) carrying us; [to transport us home;]
 δὲ ὑμεῖς, εἴπερ βούλεσθε πλεῖν, περιμένετε, ἔστ'
 and you, since you-desire to-sail, stay-here, until
 ἐγὼ ἂν ἔλθω· ἥξω δὲ ταχέως. Οἱ
 I may come (back); I-will-come indeed speedily. The
 στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἡσθησάν τε
 soldiers hearing these (things) were-delighted —
 καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο αὐτὸν πλεῖν ὥς τάχιστα.
 and voted (for) him to-sail as speedily-as-possible.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε·
 After this (one) Xenophon stood-up and spoke
 ὧδε· Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ στέλλεται ἐπὶ πλοῖα,
 thus: Cheirisophus indeed — is-sent after ships,
 δὲ ἡμεῖς ἀναμενοῦμεν. Ὅσα οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
 and we will-remain-here. What therefore it-seems to-me to-be
 καιρὸς ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα ἐρῶ.
 proper to-do in — (our) stay, that I-will-tell (you).
 Πρῶτον μὲν δεῖ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι
 First indeed it-is-necessary — (for) provisions to-be-procured
 ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· γὰρ ἔστιν οὔτε ἱκανή
 from the enemy; for there-is neither (a) sufficiently-abundant
 ἀγορὰ, οὔτε εὐπορία ὠνησόμεθα
 market, nor (have we the) means (with which) we-shall-buy
 οὔτου, εἰ μὴ τισὶν ὀλίγοις· ἡ χώρα δὲ
 anything, unless some few; the country indeed (around us is)
 πολεμία· οὖν κίνδυνος πολλοὺς
 hostile (to us); therefore (there is) danger (that) many
 ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἣν πορεύσῃς ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 may-perish, if you-proceed-out for — provisions
 ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι
 carelessly — and unguardedly. But it-seems to-me
 λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια σὺν προνομαῖς,
 (that we ought) to-take — provisions with foraging-parties,
 δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι ἄλλως, ὥς σώξῃς,
 and not to-wander-about at-random, in-order-that you-may-preserve (your
 δ' ἡμᾶς ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τούτων.
 lives), and (that) we (your officers) should-regulate these (things).
 Ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Ἔτι
 It-seemed-well (respecting) these (things, and they were adopted). And-now
 τοῖνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. Γὰρ τινες ὑμῶν
 therefore listen also to-this. For-as some of-you
 ἐκπορεύονται ἐπὶ λείαν· οἶμαι οὖν εἶναι
 will-proceed-out to plunder; I-think therefore (it) to-be
 βέλτιστον εἰπεῖν ἡμῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξίέναι,
 best to-tell us (of) the intending to-go-out

δὲ καὶ φράζειν ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ εἰδῶμεν
 and also to-mention where (or in what direction), that even we-may-know
 τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἐξιόντων καὶ τῶν μενόντων,
 the multitude of — (those) going-out and of — (those) remaining,
 καὶ συμπαρασκευάζωμεν ἐάν τι δέη,
 and (that) we-may-prepare-together if anything should-be-required,
 καὶ ἢ καιρὸς βοηθῆσαι τισι, εἰδῶμεν
 and-if there-be occasion (that we) may-help any, (and) know
 ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ ἐάν τις τῶν ἀπει-
 where it-will-be-necessary to-help, and if any-one of the more-
 ροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, συμβουλεύω-
 inexperienced may-undertake (anything) anywhere, we-may-consult-to-
 μεν πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ'
 gether endeavouring to-know the strength (of the enemy) against
 οὓς ἂν ἴωσι. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
 whom 'they may 'go. And these (things) seemed-good, (and
 Δὲ καὶ ἐννοεῖτε τόδε, ἔφη.
 were agreed to). And also consider this, said-he. (There is)
 Σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις ληϊζεσθαι, καὶ δικαίως
 leisure to-the enemy to-rob (us), and justly
 ἐπιβουλεύουσιν ἡμῖν, γὰρ ἔχομεν τὰ ἐκείνων.
 do-they-conspire-against us, | for we-have the (things) of-them;
 δ' ὑπερκάσθην
 [for we have their property;] and (moreover) they-are-placed-on-heights-
 ται ἡμῶν. Δὴ δοκεῖ μοι δεῖν εἶναι φύλακας
 above us. Indeed it-seems to-me there-ought to-be sentinels
 περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἐὰν οὖν μερισθέντες κατὰ
 round the camp; if therefore being-divided into
 μέρος φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἥττον ἂν οἱ
 parts we-guard and keep-a-look-out, the-less may — (our)
 πολέμοι δύναιτο θηρᾶν ἡμᾶς. Ἔτι τοίνυν
 enemies be-able to-hunt us (down). Moreover therefore
 ὁρᾶτε τὰδε. Εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμεθα σαφῶς, ὅτι
 consider this. If indeed we-knew certainly, that
 Χειρίσοφος ἥξει ἄγων ἱκανὰ πλοῖα,
 Cheirisophus will-come (back) bringing (a) sufficient (number of) ships.

ἄν οὐδὲν ἔδει ὧν μέλλω λέγειν· δὲ νῦν
 there would 'be no 'need of-what I-am-about to-say; but now
 ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πει-
 since this (is) uncertain, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-en-
 ρᾶσθαι συμπαρασκευάζειν πλοῖα καὶ αὐτόθεν.
 deavour to-provide-and-bring-together ships even here.
 Γὰρ ἢν μὲν ἔλθῃ, ὑπαρχόντων
 For if indeed he-should-come (back with ships, vessels) being-provided
 ἐνθάδε, πλευσούμεεθα ἐν ἁφδονωτέροις.
 here, we-shall-sail in (a) greater-abundance (of ships).
 Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἄγῃ, χρησόμεθα τοῖς
 If indeed he-'should not 'bring (any), we-will-make-use of — (those)
 ἐνθάδε. Ἐγὼ δὲ ὁρῶ πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέ-
 here. I indeed see vessels frequently sailing
 οντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζούντιων
 by; if therefore we-should-be-asking from the-people-of-Trebisond
 μακρὰ πλοῖα, κατάγοιμεν
 | long ships, [ships of war,] we-might-bring-into-port (those vessels
 καὶ φυλάττοιμεν αὐτά παραλνόμενοι τὰ
 sailing by), and might-guard them | loosening the
 πηδάλια, ἕως ἱκανὰ ἄν
 rudders, [unshipping the rudders,] until (a) sufficient (number) may
 γένηται τὰ ἄξοντα, ἄν ἰσως
 be-got (for) the 'carrying (of us) 'hereafter, 'we may probably
 οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κομιδῆς οἷας δεόμεθα. Καὶ
 not 'have-failed 'of (a) 'conveyance such-as we-seek. And
 ταῦτα ἔδοξε. Ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη,
 these (suggestions) were-approved. Think also, said-he,
 εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ,
 if (it will not be) proper even to-support from the common (stock),
 οὓς ἄν κατάγωμεν, ὅσον χρόνον ἄν
 those-whom 'we may 'bring-in, so-'long (a) time 'as 'they may
 μένωσι ἔνεκεν ἡμῶν, καὶ ξυνδέσθαι
 'remain on-account of-us, and to-make-an-agreement (with them
 ναῦλον, ὅπως ὠφελοῦντες
 about the) passage-money, so-that benefitting (us) they-(may

καὶ ὠφελῶνται. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
also 'benefit (themselves). And these (things) seemed-good

Δοκεῖ μοι ποῖνν, ἔφη, ἣν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα
It-seems to-me therefore, said-he, if perhaps even these (things),

μὴ ἐκπεραίνηται, ὥστε πλοῖα ἄρκειν,
'do not 'result, so-that vessels be-sufficient (for us),

ἐντείλασθαι ταῖς πόλεσιν οἰκουμέναις παρὰ
(it is) to-be-enjoined to-the cities situated along (the)

θάλατταν ὁδοποιεῖν τὰς ὁδοὺς, ἃς ἀκούομεν εἶναι
sea to-repair the roads, which we-hear to-be

δυσπόρους· γὰρ πείσονται, καὶ διὰ τὸ
difficult-to-pass-through; for they-will-obey, both | through the

φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι
to-fear, [through fear,] and through the to-desire [and through

ἡπαλλαγῆναι ἡμῶν.
the desire] to-get-rid of-us.

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον, ὥς δέοι οὐ
Then indeed they-exclaimed, that there-ought not

ὁδοιπορεῖν. Δὲ ὁ ὥς ἔγνω τὴν
so-be-travelling-by-land. But — (Xenophon) as he-perceived the

ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, οἷδέν μὲν ἔπε-
want-of-reason of-them, 'put nothing indeed (respecting roads) 'to-

ψήφισε, δὲ ἔπεισε τὰς πόλεις ὁδοποιεῖν
vote, but he-persuaded the towns to-make-the-roads

ἐκούσας, λέγων ὅτι θᾶττον ἀπαλλάξον-
of-their-own-free-will, saying that the-more-speedily they-would-be-

ται, ἣν αἱ ὁδοὶ γένωνται εὐποροί.
freed-from (the Greeks), if the roads became passable.

Δέ καὶ ἔλαβον πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπε-
And also they-obtained (a) fifty-oared-galley from the people-of-

ζουντίων, ἣ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα
Trebisond, over-which they-placed Dexippus (a) Lacedæmonian

περίοικον. Οὗτος, ἀμελήσας τοῦ ζυλλέγειν
provincial. This (person), having-neglected (the) to-collect

πλοῖα, ἀποδρὰς ὤχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων
vessels, having-fled he-departed out of-the (Euxine) Sea, having

τῇ ναυῇ. Οὗτος μὲν οὖν ὕστερον ἔπαθε
the vessel. This (person) indeed therefore afterwards suffered

δίκαια· γὰρ ἐν Θράκῃ παρὰ
just (punishment); for in Thrace at (the court of)

Σεύδῃ, πολυπραγμονῶν τι, ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ
Seuthes, meddling-with something, he-died by (the

Νικάνδροι τοῦ Λάκωνος. Δὲ καὶ
hands of: Nicander the Lacedæmonian. And (the Greeks) also

ἔλαβον τριακόντορον, ἣ Πολυκράτης
received (a) thirty-oared-galley, over-which Polycrates (the)

Ἀθηναῖος ἐπεστάδῃ, ὃς κατήγε πλοῖα ὅποσα
Athenian was-placed, who brought-in (the) vessels as-many-as

λαμβάνοι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
he-could-capture (to the shore) before the camp. And

μὲν ἐξαιρούμενοι τὰ ἀγώγυμα, εἰ ἦγον τι,
indeed taking-out the cargoes, if they-brought any,

καδίστασαν φύλακας, ὅπως εἴη σῶα,
they-'placed guards 'over (them), so-that they-might-be safe,

δὲ χρῆσαιτο τοῖς πλοίοις εἰς παραγωγὴν.
and they-used the vessels for (their) conveyance.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, οἱ Ἕλληνες
During (the time) that — these (things) were, the Greeks

ἐξήεσαν ἐπὶ λείαν· καὶ μὲν οἱ ἐλάμβανον,
went-out after plunder; and indeed — (some) took (plunder),

δὲ καὶ οἱ οὐ. Δὲ Κλεαίνετος ἐξαγαγὼν
but also — (others did) not. But Cleænetus leadin_g-out

καὶ τὸν λόχον ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον πρὸς
both the company of-himself and another (one) against (a)

χαλεπὸν χωρίον, τε αὐτός ἀπέθανε καὶ πολλοὶ
difficult place, not-only himself lost-his-life, but-also many

ἄλλοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.
others of — (those) with him.

CHAPTER II

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν οὐκέτι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπι-
 WHEN indeed it-was no-longer (possible) to-take — pro-
 τήδεια, ὥστε ἀπαυδημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
 visions, so-as to-return-the-same-day to the camp,
 ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν, λαβὼν ἡγεμόνας
 [on this [then] Xenophon, having-taken (as) guides (some)
 τῶν Τραπεζούντων, ἐξάγει τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ
 of-the people-of-Trebisond, led-out the half of-the
 στρατεύματος εἰς Δρίλας, δὲ τὸ ἥμισυ
 army against (the) Drilæ, but the (other) half
 κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· γὰρ οἱ
 he-left to-guard the camp; for the
 Κόλχοι ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκίων, ἦσαν
 Colchians as having-been-driven-out from — (their) houses, were
 ἀδύοι πολλοί, καὶ ὑπερεκάδηντο ἐπὶ
 collected-together (in) great (numbers), and were-posted on
 τῶν ἄκρων. Δὲ οἱ Τραπεζούντιοι οὐκ ἤγον
 the heights. But the people-of-Trebisond 'did not 'lead
 ὁπόθεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτηδεῖα ἦν ῥάδιον
 (them to places) whence — — provisions were easy
 λαβεῖν· γὰρ ἦσαν φίλοι αὐτοῖς·
 to-take; for (the people inhabiting them) were friends to-themselves;
 δὲ προδύμως ἤγον εἰς τοὺς Δρίλας, ὑφ' ὧν
 but eagerly led (them) to the Drilæ, | from whom
 ἔπασχον κακῶς, εἰς χωρία τε
 they-suffered evil, [who had injured them,] into (a) country not-only
 ὄρεινά, καὶ δύσβατα, καὶ πολεμικωτάτους
 mountainous, but-also difficult-of-access, and (among) the-most-warlike
 ἀνθρώπους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
 people of — (those) on the Pontus (Euxinus).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἄνω ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ,
 When indeed the Greeks were up in the country,

ὅποια τῶν χωρίων ἑδόκει τοῖς Δρίλαις εἶναι
'such of the places 'as it-seemed to-the Drilæ to-be

ἁλῶσιμα, ἐμπιπράντες ἀπήεσαν· καὶ
easy-to-be-taken, having-set-fire (to such places) they-retreated; and

ἦν οὐδὲν λαμβάνειν, εἰ μὴ ὕς, ἢ βούς, ἢ τι
there-was nothing to-take, unless swine, or oxen, or any

ἄλλο κτῆνος διαπεφευγός τὸ πῦρ. Δὲ ἦν ἐν
other cattle having-escaped-from the fire. | But there-was one

χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν·
place (the) metropolis of-them; [but there was one place that

εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνεβήκεσαν.
was 'heir metropolis;] to this all flocked-together.

Δὲ περὶ τοῦτο ἦν ἰσχυρῶς βαθεῖα
And round this (place) there-was (an) exceedingly deep

χαράδρα, καὶ πρόσοδοι πρὸς τὸ χωρίον
ravine, and (the) accesses to the country (were)

χαλεπαί. Οἱ πελτασταὶ δὲ, προδραμόντες τῶν
difficult. The targeteers however, having-run-before the

ὀπλιτῶν πέντε ἢ ἕξ στάδια, διαβάντες τὴν
heavy-armed-men five or six stadia, having-crossed the

χαράδραν, ὁρῶντες πολλὰ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα
ravine, (and) seeing many sheep and other

κρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· δὲ καὶ
things, made-an-attack on the place; and also

πολλοὶ δορυφόροι, οἱ ἐξωρμημένοι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπι-
many spear-men, — (those) having-gone-out for — pro-

τήδεια ξυνείποντο· ὥστε οἱ διαβάντες
visions followed-with (them); so-that — (those) crossing (the

ἐγένοντο πλείους ἢ διςχιλίους ἀνδρώποις.
ravine) happened-to-be more than two-thousand men

Δὲ ἐπεὶ μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἑδύναντο λαβεῖν
But when fighting they-'were not 'able to take

τὸ χωρίον (γὰρ καὶ ἦν εἰρεῖα τάφρος
the place (for also there-was (a) broad trench, (it)

ἵναβεβλημένη περὶ αὐτό, καὶ ἐπὶ
having-been-thrown-up around this (place), and (there-were) --

τῆς ἀναβολῆς σκόλοπες, καὶ ξύλιναι τύρσεις
the rampart palisades, and (also) wooden towers

πυκταὶ πεποιημέναι), δὴ ἐπε-
close-together having-been-made) (on the mound or rampart), indeed they-

χείρου ἀπιέναι· δὲ οἱ ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς.
attempted to-depart; but the (Drilæ) pressed-upon them.

Δὲ ὧς οἷκ' ἐδύναντο ἀποτρέχειν
But (the Greeks), as they-'were not 'able to-retreat

(γὰρ ἡ κατάβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν
(for the passage-down from the place to the ravine

ἦν ἐφ' ἑνός), πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ὃς
was for one) (only), sent to Xenophon, who

ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ὀπλίταις. Δ' ὁ ἐλθὼν
led the heavy-armed-men. And the (messenger) having-gone

λέγει, ὅτι χωρίον ἔστι μεστόν πολλῶν
said, that (the) place is full of-many

χρημάτων· οὔτε δυνάμεδα λαβεῖν τοῦτο·
things; nor were-we-able to-take this (place);

γὰρ ἐστὶν ἰσχυρόν· οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον· γὰρ
for it-is strong; or to-retreat easily; for

ἐπεξεληλυθότες μάχονται, καὶ ἡ ἀφοδος
(the enemy) having-marched-out fight (us), and the way-from

χαλεπή.
(it is) difficult.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν, προσαγαγὼν
Having-heard these (things) — Xenophon, leading-forward

πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν, ἐκέλευσε μὲν τοὺς
(his men) to the ravine, ordered — the

ὀπλίτας θέσθαι τα ὀπλα· αὐτὸς δέ,
heavy-armed-men to-stand — (under) arms; he indeed,

δαβὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς, ἐσκοπεῖτο πότεροι
having-crossed-over with the captains, considered whethe.

εἴη κρεῖττον ἀπάγειν καὶ τοὺς
it-might-be better to-lead-back also — (those) 'having (already)

διαβεβηκότας, ἢ καὶ διαβιβάζειν τοὺς ὀπλίτας,
crossed-over, or even to-lead-over the heavy-armed-men.

ὥς ἂν τοῦ χωρίου ἄλόντος. Γὰρ ἐδόκει μὲν
as — (hoping) the place being-taken. For it-seemed indeed

τὸ ἀπάγειν οὐκ εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν
(the) to-'lead (the men) 'back not to-be (possible) without many

νεκρῶν, δ' ἂν οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ ᾤοντο εἰλεῖν
dead | and — the captains even were-of-opinion to-take

τὸ χωρίον.

the place [and the captains were of the opinion that the place could

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε, πιστεύσας
be taken]. And — Xenophon yielded, having-confided

τοῖς ἱεροῖς· γὰρ οἱ μάντις ἀποδεδειγμένοι ἦσαν,
in-the sacrifices; for the augurs had-shown,

ὅτι μὲν ἔσται μάχη, δὲ τὸ τέλος τῆς
that indeed there-would-be (a) battle, and (that) the termination of-the

ἐξόδου καλόν. Καὶ μὲν ἔπεμπε τοὺς
excursion (would be) favourable. And — he-sent the

λοχαγούς διαβιβάζοντας τοὺς
captains | being-about-bringing-over [to bring over] the

ὀπλίτας, δ' αὐτὸς ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἅπαντας
heavy-armed-men, but he-himself remained having-kept-back all

τοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ εἷα οὐδένα ἀκροβο-
the targeteers, and allowed none (of them) to-skir-

λίζεσθαι. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ ὀπλῖται ἦκον,
mish (with the enemy). When indeed the heavy-armed-men came,

ἐκέλευσε ἕκαστον τῶν λοχαγῶν ποιῆσαι τὸν
he-ordered each of-the captains to-form — (his)

λόχον ὥς ἂν οἴηται κράτιστα ἀγωνιεῖσθαι·
company as 'he might 'think the-best to-fight (with);

γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἦσαν πλησίον ἀλλήλων, ἃ
for the captains were near to-one-another, who

πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ
at-all — times contended with-one-another about

ἀνδραγαδίας. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐποίουν ταῦτα·
deeds-of-vaour. And — (they) indeed did these (things).

δ' ὁ παρήγγειλε πᾶσι τοῖς πελτασταῖς ἵεναι
and — he-ordered all the targeteers to-go

διηκυλωμένους, ὥς δεῖσον ἀχοιτίζειν
 holding-their-javelins-by-the-thong, as it-would-be-necessary to-hurl
 ὅποτεν σημῆνῃ, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβε-
 whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the archers to-have.
 βλῆσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, ὥς δεῖσον
 placed (the arrows) on the string, as it-would-be-necessary
 τοξεύειν ὅποτεν σημῆνῃ, καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας
 to-shoot whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the light-armed
 ἔχειν τὰς διφθέρας μεστὰς λίθων·
 (allingers) to-have — (their) bags-made-of-skins full of-stones;
 καὶ ἐπεμψε τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους τούτων
 and he-sent — (those) fit to-'have these (things)
 ἐπιμεληθῆναι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα παρεσκεύαστο,
 'taken-care-of. When indeed all had-been-prepared,
 καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ὑπολοχαγοὶ, καὶ οἱ
 and the captains and the lieutenants, and — (those)
 ἀξιοῦντες μὴ εἶναι χείρους τούτων, πάντες
 esteeming (themselves) not to-be inferior (to) these, all
 παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων
 were-drawn-up-in-order, and indeed truly they-beheld
 ἀλλήλους· (γὰρ ἡ τάξις διὰ
 one-another; (for the order (in which they were drawn up), from
 τὸ χωρίον ἦν μηνοειδής). Ἐπεὶ δ'
 (the nature of) the place, was (a) crescent). When indeed
 ἐπαιάνισαν, καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο,
 they-had-sung-the-pæan, and the trumpet had-sounded,
 ἅμα τε ἠλάλαξαν τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ, καὶ
 at-the-same-time also they-raised-the-war-cry to — Enyalios, and
 οἱ ὀπλίται ἔδεον δρόμῳ· καὶ τὰ
 the heavy-armed-men ran, (as) 'in (a) 'race, (fast); and the
 βέλη ἐφέρετο ὁμοῦ λόγχαι, τοξεύματα
 missiles were-thrown together, (namely,) lances, arrows,
 σφειδόναι, δὲ πλείστοι λίθοι ἐκ τῶν
 balls-and-stones-from-slings, and many stones from the
 χειρῶν· δὲ ἦσαν οἱ καὶ προσέφερον πῦρ.
 hands; and there-were (some) who even threw fire

Ὑπὸ δὲ πλέθους τῷ βελῶν
 (at the place). On-account therefore 'of (the) 'multitude of-the missiles
 οἱ πολέμοι ἐλίπον τε τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς
 the enemy deserted not-only the palisades but-also the
 τύρσεις· ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος καὶ Φι-
 towers; so-that Agasias (the) Stymphalian and Phi-
 λόξενος Πελληνεύς, καταδέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα
 loxenus (the) Pellenian, having-put-down — (their) arms,
 ἀνέβησαν ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον, καὶ ἄλλος
 mounted (the rampart) in (their) tunics only, and one
 εἴλκε ἄλλον, καὶ ἄλλος ἀναβέβηκει, καὶ, ὥς
 drew-up another, and another climbed-up, and, as
 ἐδόκει, τὸ χωρίον ἡλώκει. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ
 it-appears the place was-taken. And — the targeteers
 καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ εἰσδραλόντες ἡρπαζον ὃ τι ἕκαστος
 and the light-armed-men running-in took whatever each-one
 ἐδύνατο· ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας
 could; — Xenophon indeed standing at the gates
 κατεκώλενε ἕξω ὅπόσους ἐδύνατο τῶν ὀπλιτῶν·
 detained without as-many-as he-could of-the heavy-armed-men;
 γὰρ ἄλλοι πολέμοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπὶ τισὶν ἰσχυροῖς
 for other enemies appeared on some strong
 ἄκροις. Μεταξὺ δὲ οὐ πολλοῦ χρόνου
 heights. In-the-mean-while, indeed no long time
 γενομένου ἐγίγνετο τε κραυγὴ ἔνδον, καὶ οἱ
 having-occurred, there-was — (a) noise within, and the
 ἔφευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες αἱ ἔλαβον,
 (men) fled, — (some) indeed even having what they-had-taken,
 τάχα δὲ τις καὶ τετραμένος· καὶ ἦν πολὺς
 presently also some even wounded; and there-was much
 ὠδισμός ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. Καὶ οἱ
 crowding-and-pressing about the gates. And — (these)
 ἐκπίπτοντες ἐρωτώμενοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἄκρα τέ
 rushing-out being-questioned said, that (a) citadel indeed

ἔστιν ἐνδον, καὶ πολλοὶ οἱ πολέμιοι, οἳ ἐκδεδρα-
is within, and many (of) the enemy, who sallying-
μηκότεις, παίουσι τοὺς ἀνδρώπους ἐνδον.
forth, fell-on the men within.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐκέλευσε Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα
Then (Xenophon) ordered Tolmides the crier

ἀνειπεῖν τὸν βουλόμενόν λαμβάνειν τι
to-proclaim (that) — (those) desiring to-take anything

ἵεναι εἰσω. Καὶ πολλοὶ ἵεντο εἰσω, καὶ οἱ
might-go within. And many rushed within, and — (those)

ὠδούμενοι εἰσω νικῶσι τοὺς ἐκπίπτοντας,
pushing (to get) within overcome — (those) pressing-out,

καὶ πάλιν κατακλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς
and 'they again 'shut-up the enemy in

τὴν ἄκραν. Καὶ μὲν πάντα ἔξω τῆς ἁκρας
the citadel. And indeed all (things) without the citadel

διηρπάσθη, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξεκομίσαντο.
were-seized, and the Greeks 'carried (them) 'ous;

δὲ οἱ ὀπλίται ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, οἱ μὲν
and the heavy-armed-men stood — (under) arms, — (some) indeed

περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, δὲ οἱ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν
about the palisades, and — (others) along the road

τῇν φέρουσαν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν. Ὁ Ξενο-
— (that, namely,) leading to the citadel. — Xeno-

φῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐσκόπουν, εἰ εἴη
phon indeed and the captains began-to-consider, if it-might-be

οἶόν τε λαβεῖν τὴν ἄκραν· γὰρ ἦν οὕτω
possible to-take the citadel; for (if) it-were so

σωτηρία ἀσπαλῆς· ἄλλως δὲ ἐδόκει
(their) safety (would be) sure; otherwise indeed it-seemed

εἶναι πάννυχον χαλεπὸν ἀπελθεῖν· δὲ τὸ χωρίον
to-be extremely difficult to-retire; and the place

ἔδοξε αὐτοῖς σκοποῦμένοις εἶναι παντάπασιν
seemed to-them (after) having-explored (it) to-be altogether

ἀνάλωτον. Ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν
impregnable. Then they-began-to-prepare (for) the

ἄφοδον, καὶ ἕκαστοι μὲν διήρουν τὴν
 retreat, and each (of the men) indeed pulled-up the
 σταυροὺς τοὺς καδ' αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἐξεπέμ-
 palisades — (those namely) near themselves, and they sent
 ποιτο τοὺς ἄχρείους καὶ ἔχοντας
 out (of the place) the useless (persons) and (those) having
 φορτία, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὀπλιτῶν· δὲ οἱ
 burdens, also the multitude of-the heavy-armed-men; but the
 λοχαγοὶ κατέλιπον οἷς ἕκαστος
 captains left (remaining those) in-whom each
 ἐπίστευεν.
 confided.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, πολλοὶ
 After indeed they-commenced to-retreat, many (of the enemy)
 ἐπεξέδεον ἐνδοθεν, ἔχοντες γέρρα
 sallied-forth from-within (the citadel), having (Persian) shields
 καὶ λόγχας, καὶ κνημίδας καὶ Παφλαγονικά κράνη·
 and lances, and greaves and Paphlagonian helmets;
 καὶ ἄλλοι ἀνέβαινον ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας τὰς
 and others went-up on the houses — (namely those)
 ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ φερούσης εἰς
 on-this-side and (those) on-that-side of-the way leading to
 τὴν ἄκραν. Ὡστε ἦν οὐδὲ ἀσφαλὲς διώκειν
 the citadel. So-that it-was not-even safe to-pursue (them)
 κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς φερούσας εἰς τὴν
 to the gates — (those namely) leading to the
 ἄκραν. Καὶ γὰρ ἐπεβρίπτουν ἀνωθεν μέγала
 citadel. And indeed they-threw-on (them) from-above large
 ξύλα, ὥστε ἦν καὶ χαλεπὸν μένειν καὶ
 (logs of) wood, so-that it-was both dangerous to-remain and
 ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἡ νύξ ἐπιούσα ἦν φοβερά. Δὲ
 to-retreat; and the night coming-on it-was dreadful. But
 αὐτῶν μαχομένων καὶ ἀπορουμένων τις θεῶν
 they fighting and perplexed some-one 'of (the) 'gods
 δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας. Γὰρ ἐξαπίνης
 save them (the) means of-safety. For suddenly

οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀνέλαμψεν, τοῦ
 (a) house of — (those) on (the) right having-burst-out-in-flames, whoever
 δὴ ἐνάψαντος. Ὡς δ' αὖτη ξυνέ-
 truly (it may be) having-set-fire-to (it). As indeed this (house) fell-
 πιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκῶν
 in, (the enemy) fled, — (those namely) from the houses
 ἐν δεξιᾷ. Ὡς δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔμαθε τοῦτο
 on (the) right. As indeed — Xenophon learned this
 παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐκέλευε καὶ ἐνάπτειν τὰς
 from — fortune, he-ordered (them) also to-set-fire (to) the
 οἰκίας ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, αἱ ἦσαν ξύλιναι,
 houses on (the) left, which (as) they-were wooden, 'were
 ὥστε καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. Οἱ ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ
 also even immediately 'on-fire. — They-fled therefore even
 ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκῶν. Οἱ δὲ μόνοι
 from these — (same) houses. — (Those) indeed alone
 κατὰ τὸ στόμα δὴ ἔτι ἐλύπουν,
 along the front (or direction of the army) truly any-more annoyed
 καὶ ἦσαν δῆλοι ὅτι ἐπιχείσονται ἐν τῇ
 (them), and it-was evident that they-would-fall-on (them) on —
 ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει.
 (their) departure and also (on their) descent (from the plain).
 Ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα,
 Then 'he (Xenophon) ordered (them) to-bring wood,
 ὅσοι ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἔξω
 (namely) 'such (men) 'as happened being without (the reach)
 τῶν βελῶν, εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν
 of-the missiles, into the middle (between) themselves and the
 πολεμίων. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἤδη ἱκανὰ
 enemy. And when there-was now (a) sufficient (quantity)
 ἐνῆψαν. δὲ καὶ ἐνῆπτον τὰς οἰκίας,
 they-'set (it) 'on-fire; and also they-set-fire-to the houses
 παρὰ τὸ αὐτὸ χάραγμα ὅπως οἱ πολέμοι ἐχοιεν
 along the very palisading, so-that the enemy might-have
 ἀμφὶ ταῦτα. Οὕτω μόλις
 (their mind occupied) about these (things). Thus with-difficulty

ἀπῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, ποιησάμενοι πῦρ
 they-departed from the place, having-made (a) fire
 ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ
 in (the) middle (between) themselves and the enemy. And
 πᾶσα ἡ πόλις κατεκαύθη, καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι, καὶ αἱ
 all the town was-burnt, and the houses, and the
 τύρσεις, καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, καὶ πάντα
 towers, and the palisading, and all (things)
 τάλλα, πλὴν τῆς ἀκρας.
 else, except the citadel.

Δὲ τῇ ἑσπερίᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπήεσαν, ἔχοντες
 And on-the next-day the Greeks departed, having
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν κατάβασιν
 — provisions. But as they-feared the descent
 τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, (γὰρ ἦν πρηνὴς
 — (namely that) to Trebisonde, (for it-was steep
 καὶ στενή,) ἐποίησαντο ψευδενέδραν. Καὶ
 and narrow,) they-made (a) false-ambuscade. And (a)
 ἀνὴρ Μυσὸς τὸ γένος, καὶ ἔχων τοῦτο τοῦνομα,
 man (a) Mysian — by-birth, and having this same-name
 λαβὼν δέκα Κρητῶν, ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ
 (Mysus), taking ten Cretans, he-remained in (a) bushy
 χωρίῳ, καὶ προσεποιεῖτο πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν
 place, and did-as-if to-attempt to-conceal
 τοὺς πολεμίους· δ' αἱ πέλται αὐτῶν,
 (himself from) the enemy; and the shields of-them,
 οὖσαι χαλκαῖ, διεφαίνοντο
 being brass, 'appeared (glittering) 'through (the bushes)
 ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε. Οὖν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι
 from-time — to-time. Therefore indeed the enemy
 διορῶντες ταῦτα ἐφοβοῦτο ὥς οὖσαν
 perceiving these (things) feared (it) as being (a real,
 ἐνέδραν· δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινεν
 ambuscade; and the army during this (time) descended.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει τῷ Μυσῷ ἤδη
 When indeed it-seemed to - Mysus (that the Greeks) now

ὑπεληλυθεναι ἱκανόν, ἐσήμηνε φεύγειν ἀνά
 had-advanced sufficiently (far), he-gave-the-signal to-flee with
 κράτος· καὶ ὃς ἐξαναστάς φεύγει, καὶ
 'all (their) 'might; and who getting-up flees, as-also
 οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι Κρητές,
 — (those) with him. And indeed the other Cretans,
 ἐκπεσόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ (γὰρ ἔφασαν
 departing from the road (for they-said (that they)
 ἀλίτκεσθαι τῷ δρόμῳ) ἐσώθησαν κυλιν-
 were-getting-caught-in-the race) saved (themselves) roll-
 δούμενοι εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς νάπας. Δὲ
 ing-down into (the) woods among the bushy-hollows. But
 ὁ Μυσὸς φεύγων κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, ἐβόα
 Mysus fleeing along the road, he-called-out (for them)
 βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ αἰέλαβον
 to-help (him); and they-helped him, and 'took
 τετρωμένον. Καὶ οἱ αὐτοὶ βοηθήσαντες
 (him) 'off wounded. And — those having-helped (him)
 ἀνεχώρουν ἐπὶ πόδα βαλλόμενοι,
 | retreated on foot [retreated slowly step by step] being-thrown-at
 καὶ τινες τῶν Κρητῶν ἀντιτοξεύοντες.
 (by the enemy), and some of-the Cretans 'shot
 Οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στραπέπεδον.
 (their) 'arrows-in-return. Thus they-arrived at the camp
 πάντες ὄντες σῶοι
 all being safe.

CHAPTER III.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Χειρίσοφος οὔτε ἦκεν, οὔτε ἦν
 WHEN indeed — Chéirisophus neither came, nor were-there
 ἱκανὰ πλοῖα, οὔτε ἦν ἔτι λαμβά-
 sufficient vessels, nor was-there any-more (any place where) to-pro-
 νειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπυτέον. Καὶ
 cure the provisions, it-seemed to-be necessary-to-depart. And
 μὲν ἐνεβίβασαν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα τε τοὺς
 indeed they-'placed on 'board the vessels not-only — (those)
 ἀσθενούντας, καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα
 oeing-infirm, but-also — (those) above forty
 ἔτη, καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας, καὶ
 (years of) age, and (the) children and women, and
 τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα ἦν μὴ ἀνάγκη ἔχειν.
 of-the baggage such-as it-was not necessary to-have (with them),
 καὶ Φιλῆσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους
 and Philésius and Sophænetus the oldest
 τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες, ἐπέλεον ἐπι-
 of-the generals going-on-board, they-ordered (them) to-
 μελεῖσθαι τούτων· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ
 take-charge of-them; but the others marched-forth; the
 ὁδὸς δὲ ὥδοπεποιημένη ἦν. Καὶ πορευόμενοι
 road indeed having-been-made. And proceeding-forth
 ἀφικνοῦνται τριταῖοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα
 they-arrived (in) three-days at Cerasus, (a) Grecian
 πόλιν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, ἀποικον Σινωπέων,
 city on (the) sea (coast), (a) colony 'of (the) 'Sinopians,
 ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν δέκα
 in the Colchian country. Here they-remained ten
 ἡμέρας· καὶ ἐγίγνετο ἐξέτασις ἐν τοῖς
 days; and there-was (a) review (of those) under —
 ὅπλοις καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι
 arms and-also (an) enumeration, and there-were eight-thousand

καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. Οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν ἐκ τῶν
 and six-hundred. These were-saved out-of — (those at first)
 ἀμφὶ τοὺς μυρίους· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπώλοντο τε
 about — ten-thousand; and the others had-been-destroyed not-only
 ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ χιόνος, καὶ εἴ τις
 by the enemy, but-also (by the) snow, and if any
 νόσῳ.
 by-sickness.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀργύριον
 And here they-distribute the money
 γενόμενον ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων. Καὶ τὴν
 got from (the sale) of-the prisoners. And the
 δεκάτην, ἣν ἐξεῖλον Ἀπόλλωνι
 tenth (part), which they-took-out (and set apart) for-Apollo
 καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, οἱ στρατηγοὶ διέλα-
 and the Ephesian Diana, the generals took-among-them-
 βον, ἕκαστος τὸ μέρος, φυλάττειν τοῖς
 selves, each-one — (his) part, to-keep (it) for — (these)
 θεοῖς· δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος ἔλαβε ἀντὶ
 gods; and Neon the Asinaean took (the part) in-place
 Χερισόφου. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ποιησάμενος
 of-Oheirisophus. Xenophon therefore having-made (and set aside
 ἀνάδημα τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος,
 out of his part an) offering — (that) indeed for — Apollo,
 ἀντιτίθησιν εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων
 deposits (it) in the treasury of-the Athenians
 ἐν Δελφοῖς, καὶ ἐπέγραψε τὸ τε ὄνομα αὐτοῦ
 in Delphis, and he-inscribed (on it) the — name of-himself
 καὶ τὸ Προξένου, ὃς ἀπέθανε σὺν Κλεάρχῳ·
 and — (that) of-Proxenus, who died with Clearchus;
 γὰρ ἦν ξένος αὐτοῦ. Δὲ τὸ
 for (Proxenus) was (the) guest-friend of-himself. But the (part)
 τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτε ἀπῆει σὺν
 of — Diana of — Ephesus, when he-departed with
 Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν Βοιωτοῦς,
 Agesilaus from — Asia into the road (to) Boetia.

καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ νεωκόρῳ τῆς
 he-left with Megabysus the warden of-he (temple
 Ἀρτέμιδος, ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐδόκει ἵεναι κινδυνεύσων,
 of-Diana, as he seemed to-go about-incurring-dangor.
 καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἣν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, ἀπο-
 and enjoined-on (him), if indeed he should-be-saved, to-
 δοῦναι αὐτῷ· δὲ ἣν πάδῃ τι
 return (the money) to-himself; | but if he-suffered any-thing [but
 ἀναδεῖναι, ποιησάμενοι
 if he lost his life] to-dedicate (it), having-made (and set it apart)
 τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι, ὅ τι οἰοίτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ
 for — Diana, whatever he-might-think to-be-agreeable to-the
 θεῷ. Δ' ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔφευγε αὐτοῦ
 goddess. But when — Xenophon was-in-banishment (and) he
 ἤδη κατοικοῦντος ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι, οἰκισθέντος παρὰ
 now dwelling in Scillus, having-been-settled near
 τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, Μεγαβύζος
 — Olympia by the Lacedæmonians, Megabysus
 ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων,
 came to Olympia | about-seeing-the-public-games, [for the
 καὶ ἀποδίδωσι
 purpose of being present at the Olympian games,] and he-returned
 τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν
 the deposit to-him. And Xenophon taking (it)
 ὠνεῖται χωρίον τῇ θεῷ, ὅπου ὁ θεός
 buys (a) piece-of-land for-the goddess, where the god
 ἀνείλε. Δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινούς
 had-'directed (him) 'by-a-response. And (the) river Selinus
 ἔτυχε ῥέων διὰ μέσου τοῦ χωρίου.
 |happened running [ran] through (the) middle of — (this) piece-of-land.
 Καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινούς παραρρεῖ
 And in Ephesus also (a) river Selinus runs-by
 παρὰ τὸν νεῶν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος, καὶ δὲ ἐν ἀμφοτέροισι
 along the temple of — Diana, and also in both
 ἔννεισι ἰχθύες καὶ κόγχαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ χωρίῳ
 there-are fish and shell-fish; in indeed — (this) piece-of-land

ἐν Σκιλλοῦτι καὶ θῆραι πάντων,
 in Scillus (there are) also hunts of-all (kind., espe-
 cially of) such-as are hunted wild-beasts. Δὲ καὶ
 ἐποίησε βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου,
 he-made (an) altar and (a) temple with the sacred money,
 καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰεὶ δεκατεῖον τὰ
 and (for) the rest (of time) also always taking-the-tenth (of) the
 ὥραϊα ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ἐποίει θυσίαν τῇ θεῷ.
 season's (produce) from the land he-made (a) sacrifice to-the goddess;
 καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες
 and all the citizens and the neighbouring men
 καὶ γυναῖκες μετείχον τῆς ἑορτῆς.
 and women participated (in) the festival (following the sacri-
 fice). Δὲ ἡ θεὸς παρεῖχε τοῖς σκηνῶσιν
 (with) barley-meal, bread, wine, sweatmeats, and (a)
 ἀλφίτα, ἄρτους, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ
 (with) barley-meal, bread, wine, sweatmeats, and (a)
 λάχος τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς, καὶ
 share of-the victims from the sacred pastures, and
 τῶν θηρευομένων δὲ. Γαρ καὶ τε οἱ παῖδες
 of — (those) hunted also. For also not-only the sons
 Ξενοφῶντος ἐποιοῦντο θήραν εἰς τὴν ἑορτήν,
 of-Xenophon made (a) hunt for the festival,
 καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν· οἱ ἄνδρες
 but-also — (those) of-the other citizens; — (those) men
 δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ξυνεδήρων· καὶ ἡλίσ-
 namely desiring (it) also hunted-with (them); and there-
 κετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ
 were-caught — (partly) indeed from this the (same) sacred
 χώρου, δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐκ τῆς Φολόης, σύες καὶ
 place, and also — (partly) from — Pholoë, boars and
 δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. Δὲ ἡ χώρα
 antelopes and deer. And — (this sacred) piece-of-land
 ἐστίν ἣ πορεύονται ἐκ Λακεδαιμόνος εἰς
 is (on the road) by-which they-go from Lacedæmonia to

Ὀλυμπίαν, ὥς εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ Διὸς
Olympia, about thirty stadia from the temple of Jupiter

ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ. Ἐνὶ δ' ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ χώρῳ
in Olympia. There are within also in — (this) sacred place

καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ἄλση καὶ ὄρη μεστὰ δένδρων,
also meadows and groves and hills full of trees,

ἱκανὰ τρέφειν καὶ σῦς καὶ αἰγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ
adapted to breeding as well swine as goats and oxen and

ἵππους, ὥστε καὶ τὰ ἵποζύγια, τῶν ἰόντων
horses, so that also the cattle, — (of those) going

εἰς τὴν ἑορτήν, εἰσχωεῖσθαι. Δε περὶ τὸν
to the festival, are well-supplied with food. And round the

ναὸν αὐτὸν ἐφυτεύθη ἄλσος ἡμέρων δένδρων,
temple itself is-planted (a) grove of cultivated trees,

ὅσα ἐστὶ τρακτὰ ὥραϊα. Δ' ὁ
(bearing) 'such (fruits) 'as are eatable in different seasons. And the

ναὸς εἶκασται τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ ὥς μικρὸς
temple is-like to — (that) in Ephesus (in) as (far as a) small

μεγάλῳ, καὶ τὸ ξόανον
(one may be compared) 'with (a) 'large (one), and the statue

ἔοικεν τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ, ὥς κυπα-
is-like to — (that) in Ephesus, (in) as (much as) 'one (being) 'of-

ρίττινον ὄντι χρυσῷ. Καὶ στήλη
cypress (is like to one) being of-gold. And (a) pillar

ἔστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν ἔχουσα γράμματα.
stood near the temple having (this) inscription:

Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΙΕΡΟΣ ΤΗΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ.
— (This) ground (is) sacred — (to) Diana.

ΔΕ ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΤΜΕΝΟΝ
And — (he) possessing (it) and 'gathering

ΚΑΤΑΘΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ
(the) 'fruit (thereof) is-to-offer-in-sacrifice each year

ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ. ΔΕ ΕΚ
the — tenth (part of this produce). And from

ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΤΑΖΕΙΝ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ.
the residue to-keep-in-repair the temple

ΑΝ ΤΙΣ ΔΕ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ
 If any-one indeed 'should not 'perform these
 ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ ΘΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ.
 (conditions) it-will-be-a-care to-the goddess (to remember it).

CHAPTER IV.

Ἐκ Κερασσοῦντος δὲ οἱ καὶ πρόσθεν
 From Cerasus — those-who (had) even before
 ἐκομίζοντο μὲν κατὰ θάλατταν,
 (been on board) 'were (again) 'carried — by sea,
 δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ γῆν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦσαν
 but the rest proceeded by land. But when they-were
 ἐπὶ τοῖς ὀρίοις Μοσσυνοίκων, πέμπουσιν εἰς
 on the confines 'of (the) 'Mossynœci, they-send to
 αὐτοὺς Τιμησίδεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον, ὄντα
 them Timesitheus the Trapezian, being (the)
 πρόξενον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες
 public-friend-and-entertainer of-the Mossynœci, inquiring
 πότερον πορεύονται τῆς χώρας ὥς διὰ
 whether they-might-proceed-through — (their) country as through
 φιλίας, ἢ ὥς διὰ πολεμίας Δὲ οἱ
 (a) friendly (one), or as through (an) inimical (one). And —
 εἶπον ὅτι οὐ διήσοιεν, γὰρ
 they-said that they-'would not 'allow (them) 'to-pass-through, for
 ἐπίστευον τοῖς χωρίοις. Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Τιμη-
 they-trusted to — (their) strong-places. Then — Time-
 σίδεος λέγει, ὅτι οἱ ἐκ τοῦ
 sithous says, that — (those of the Mossynœci) from —
 ἐπέκεινα εἰσιν πολέμοι αὐτοῖς. Καὶ ἐδόκει
 beyond (them) were enemies to-them. And it-seemed-best
 καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλονται ποιήσασθαι
 & -call-on them (to knew), if they-might-wish to-make

ξυμμαχίαν· καὶ ὁ Τιμησίδεος πεμφθεὶς
(an) alliance (with the Greeks); and — Timesitheus having-been-sent

ἤκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. Ἐπεὶ
(to them) came bringing — (their) rulers (or chiefs). When

δὲ ἀφίκοντο, τε οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων,
indeed they-arrived, not-only the chiefs of-the Mossynœi,

καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, συνῆλθον·
but-also the generals of-the Greeks, came-together;

καὶ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἐλεξε, δὲ Τιμησίδεος ἡρμήνευε·
and indeed Xenophon spoke, and Timesitheus interpreted·

ὦ Μοσσύνοικοι ἄνδρες, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα δια-
O Mossynœan men, we desire | to-

σωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ·
'save (ourselves) 'through into the Greece on-foot,

γὰρ ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα· δὲ
[to go safely into Greece on foot;] for we-have no ships; and

οὗτοι καλῶνσι ἡμᾶς, οὓς ἀκούμεν εἶναι
those (people) oppose us, whom we-hear to-be

πολεμίους ὑμῖν. Εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν
enemies to-you. If therefore you-wish, it-is-allowed you

λαβεῖν ἡμᾶς ξυμμάχους, καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι,
to-take us (as) allies, and to-avenge-yourselfes,

εἴ ποτε οὗτοι ἡδίκηκασιν ὑμᾶς τι, καὶ
if at-any-time these (people) may-have-injured you (in) any-thing, and

τούτους εἶναι ὑπηκόους ὑμῶν
(you may have) these (people) (so as) to-be subject (to) you

τὸ λοιπὸν. Δὲ εἰ ἀφήσετε ἡμᾶς, σκέψασθε
(for) the rest (of time). But if you-will-reject us, consider

πόθεν ἂν αὖτις λάβοιτε τοσαύτην δύναμιν
whence 'you may again 'procure such (a) force

ξύμμαχον. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ ἄρχων
'as an) ally. To this the ruler (or head chief)

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι καὶ βούλονται
of-the Mossynœi replied, that 'they both 'desired

ταῦτα, καὶ δέχονται τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. Ἄγετε
this, and accepted the alliance. | Bring

δὲ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τί δεήσεσθε χρή-
 then, [well then,] said — Xenophon, in-what do-you-want: to-
 σασθαι ἡμῶν, ἂν γεγώμεθα ξύμμαχοι ἡμῶν;
 make-use of-us, if we-become allies of-you?
 καὶ τί ἔσεσθε οἰοί τε ὑμεῖς ξυμπᾶσαι ἡμῖν
 and in-what will-it-be possible for-you to-assist us
 περὶ τῆς διόδου. Δὲ οἱ εἶπον ὅτι
 as-respects the journey-through (the country)? And — they-said that
 ἔσμεν ἱκανοὶ εἰςβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ
 we-are sufficient (and able) to-make-an-irruption | from the (side) on
 θάτερα εἰς τὴν χώραν τὴν
 side [from the farther side] into the country — (namely that)
 τῶν πολεμίων ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν, καὶ πέμψαι
 of-the enemies of-you as also of-us, and to-send
 δεῦρο ὑμῖν ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες ξυμ-
 hither for-you ships as also men, who are-to-
 μαχοῦνται ὑμῖν, τε καὶ ἡγήσονται τὴν
 be-auxiliaries for-you, as also they-will-guide (you) on-the
 ὁδόν.
 road.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις δόντες καὶ λαβόντες πιστὰ
 Upon these (things) giving and taking pledges-of-good-faith
 ᾤχοντο. Καὶ ἦκον τῇ ὀστεραίᾳ ἄγοντες τρια-
 they-departed. And they-came on-the next-day bringing three-
 κόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα, καὶ τρεῖς ἄνδρας
 hundred boats (made out of) one-piece-of-wood, and three men
 ἐν ἑκάστῳ, ὧν οἱ δύο μὲν,
 (being) in each, of-whom — two indeed (from each boat),
 ἐκβάντες, ἔθεντο εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα, δὲ
 having-disembarked, placed-themselves in line under-arms, and
 ὁ εἷς ἔμενε. Καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες
 the one (in each boat) remained. And — (these last) indeed taking
 τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν. δὲ οἱ μένοντες
 — (their) boats sailed-away; but — those remaining
 ἱξετάξαντο ὧδε. Ἔστησαν ἀνὰ μάλιστα
 were drawn up thus. They-stood — very (nearly)

ἑκατὸν, ὥςπερ χοροί, ἀντιστοιχοῦντες
 (a) hundred (in each line), like troops-of-dancers, drawn-up-opposite
 ἀλλήλοις, πάντες ἔχοντες γέρρα λευκῶν
 one-another. all having shields (made of) white (hides)
 βοῶν δασέα, εἰκασμένα πετάλα
 of-oxen (and the) hair-on, (the shield) being-like 'to (a) 'leaf
 κιττοῦ, δὲ ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ παλτὸν ὥς ἑξάπηχη
 of-ivy, and on the right (hand was a) javelin about six-cubit-long
 ἔχον μὲν ἔμπροσθεν λόγχην, δὲ ὀπισθεν
 having indeed 'at (the) 'top (a) spear, but 'at (the) 'lower
 σφαιροειδὲς τοῦ ξύλου αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἐνεδε-
 (end a) ball-like-form (made) of-the wood itself. And they-
 δύκεσαν χιτωνίσκους ὑπὲρ γονάτων,
 were-dressed (in) tunics (reaching) to (the) knees,
 πάχος ὥς λινοῦ
 (and the) thickness (of these tunics was the same) as (that) 'of (a) 'linen
 στρωματοδέσμον, δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ σκύτινα
 bed-sack, and (they having) on the head leathern
 κράνη, οἷαπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, ἔχοντα
 helmets, such-as the Paphlagonian (helmet), having (a)
 κρώβυλον κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύττα τιανο-
 nunch-of-hair along (the) middle (of the helmet), very-nearly tiara-
 εἰδῆ· δὲ καὶ εἶχον σιδηρᾶς σαγάρεις. Ἐντεῦθεν
 shaped; and also they-had iron battle-axes. Then
 μὲν εἰς αὐτῶν ἐξῆρχε, δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύ-
 indeed one of-them went-out, and all the others proceeded
 οντο ᾄδοντες ἐν ῥυθμῶ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ
 forth singing in rhythmic-modulation, and passing through
 τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὀπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
 the lines and through the heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,
 ἐπορεύοντο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπὶ
 they-proceeded directly towards the enemy, on (a)
 χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐπιμαχώτατον. Δὲ
 fortified-place which seemed to-be most-assailable. And
 τοῦτο ὧκειτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως καλουμένης
 this (place) was-situated before the city called

αὐτοῖς τῆς μητροπόλεως, καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ ἀκρότατον
by-them the metropolis, and having the highest-situation

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. Καὶ ὁ
(of any place in the country) of-the Mossynœci. And the

πόλεμος ἦν περὶ τούτου· γὰρ οἱ
war was about this-same (place); for — (those who)

ἄει ἔχοντες τοῦτ' ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐγκρατεῖς
at-any-time having this (place) seemed to-be the-most-powerful

καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους
even of-all (the) Mossynœci, and they-say (that) these

οὐ ἔχειν τοῦτο δικαίως,
(their opponents) 'had not 'obtained this (place) justly,

ἀλλὰ καταλαβόντας, ὃν κοινόν
but having-seized (it), (it) being common (property, that thus)

πλεονεκτεῖν.

they-got-the-ascendency.

Δ' τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἶποντο αὐτοῖς,
And some of-the Greeks even followed them,

οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ
not having-been-ordered by the generals, but

ἐνεκεν ἀρπαγῆς. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, προσιόντων,
for-the-sake of-plunder. But the enemy, (they) advancing,

τέως μὲν, ἡσύχαζον· δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο
so-long-as (they did) indeed, kept-quiet; but when they-got

ἐγγὺς τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες αὐτοῖς τρέ-
near the place, sallying-out 'put them 'to-

πονται, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνούς τῶν βαρβάρων,
flight, and they-killed many of-the barbarians,

καὶ τινὰς τῶν ξυναβάντων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ
and some of-the accompanying Greeks, and

ἰδίῳκον μέχρι οὐ εἶδον τοὺς Ἕλληνας βοή-
they-pursued just-to where they-saw the Greeks coming-

δοῦντας. Δὲ εἶτα ἀποτραπόμενοι ὤχοντο,
to-help (the defeated). And then having-turned-back they-fled,

καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν,
and cutting-off the heads of-the dead

ἐπεδείκνυσαν τε τοῖς Ἑλλήσι καὶ τοῖς
 they-exhibited (them) not-only to-the Greeks but-also to-the
 πολεμίους ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἅμα ἐχόρευον ᾄδοντες
 enemies of-themselves, and at-the-same-time they-danced singing
 τινὶ νόμῳ. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες μάλα ἤχθοντο
 to-some tune. And the Greeks 'were very-much 'disturbed
 ὅτι ἐπεποιήκεσαν τε τοὺς πολεμίους θρασύτεροις,
 'that they-had-made not-only the enemy more-bold-and-daring,
 καὶ ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξελθόντες σὺν αὐτοῖς
 but-also that the Greeks having-gone-out with them
 ἐπεφύγεσαν, ὄντες μάλα συχνοί· ὃ οὐπω
 fled, (they) being very numerous; which 'had never
 ἐπεποιήκεσαν πρόσθεν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Δὲ
 'been-done before during the expedition. But
 Ξενοφῶν, ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἕλληνας, εἶπεν·
 Xenophon, calling-together the Greeks, said:
 ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀδυμήσητε ἔνεκα
 Men soldiers, 'do not 'be-cast-down on-account
 τῶν γεγενημένων· γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι καὶ
 of-the (things) having-happened (thus); for know that even (a)
 ἀγαθὸν οὐ μείον τοῦ κακοῦ γεγένηται. Γὰρ
 good not less (than) the evil has-occurred. For
 πρῶτον μὲν ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι οἱ μέλλοντες
 first indeed know, that — (those) being-about
 ἡγεῖσθαι ἡμῖν εἰσιν πολέμοι τῷ ὄντι
 to-conduct us are enemies to — (those) being (really
 οἷσπερ καὶ ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς·
 enemies to themselves) to-whom also it-is-necessary for-us (also to be
 καὶ ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀφρον-
 enemies); and next indeed — (those) of-the Greeks ne-
 τιστήσαντες τῆς τάξεως ξὺν ἡμῖν, καὶ
 neglecting the order-and-discipline (prevalent) with us, and
 ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ἱκανοὶ πράττειν ξὺν
 thinking (themselves) to-be able to-perform with
 τοῖς βαρβάροις ταῦτά, ἅπερ ξὺν ἡμῖν,
 the barbarians the-same, which (they do) with us

δεδώκασιν δίκην· ὅστε αὖτις
 ; have-given justice; [have suffered justly]; so-that hereafter (it will be
 ἥττον ἀπολείπονται ἡμετέρας
 considered) worse 'should (the men) 'desert our
 τάξεως. Ἄλλ' δεῖ ἡμᾶς πηρασκευάζεσθαι,
 ranks. But it-is-proper (that) you prepare-yourselfes
 ὅπως καὶ τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν βαρβάρων
 so-that both [(to)-the] friends being of-the barbarians [to the
 δόξητε εἶναι κρῖντους αὐτῶν,
 barbarians your allies] you-may-appear to-be better (than) they
 καὶ δηλώσητε τοῖς πολυΐοις, ὅτι
 (in courage), and show — (your) encampies, that they-'dc
 οὐ μαχοῦνται ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι νυν τε καὶ ὅτε
 not 'fight 'with (the) 'same men now as when
 ἐμάχοντο τοῖς ἀτάκτοις.
 they-fought with-the undisciplined.

Οὕτως μὲν ἔμειναν οὖν ταύτῃ τὴν ἡμέραν
 So indeed they-remained therefore that — day
 Δ' τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ θύσαντες, ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερή
 But on-the next-day having-sacrificed, when they-had obtained-favour
 σαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, ποιησάμενοι τοῖς λόχοις
 able-omens, they-breakfasted, having-formed the companies
 ὀρδῖους, καὶ ταξάμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους
 [straight, [in columns,] and drawing-up the barbarians
 ἐπὶ τὸ εἰώνυμον κατὰ ταῦτά, ἐπικρεύοντο,
 on the left according (to) the-same (way) they-marched-forth,
 ἔχοντες τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων, ἵπολει-
 having the archers between the companies, having-
 πομένους δὲ μικρὸν τοῦ στόματος τῶν
 left indeed (a) little (space from) the front of-the
 ὀπλιτῶν. Γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ εὐζῶνοι τῶν
 heavy-armed-men. For there-were the active (men) of-the
 πολεμίων, κατατρέχοντες ἔβαλλον τοῖς λίθοις·
 enemy, (who) running-down threw — stones;
 οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταὶ ἀνέστελλον τούτους
 the archers and targeteers kept-back these

Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο βάδεν.
 But the others (of the Greeks) proceeded (slowly; step-by-step)
 πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἂφ' οὗ οἱ βάρβαροι
 first indeed against the (strong) place at which the barbarian
 ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς
 (allies of the Greeks) were-repulsed and the (Greeks) with them
 γὰρ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι.
 for there the enemy were drawn-up-against (them).
 Οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν οὖν ἐδέξαντο πελταστὰς,
 The barbarians indeed therefore received (the) targeteers,
 καὶ ἐμάχοντο· δὲ ἐπειδὴ οἱ ὀπλίται
 and fought (with them); but when the heavy-armed-men
 ἦσαν ἐγγὺς ἐτράποντο. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασται
 were near they-took-to-flight. And indeed the targeteers
 εὐθὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν μητρό-
 directly followed driving (them) upwards towards the metro-
 πολιν, οἱ ὀπλίται δὲ εἶποντο ἐν τάξει.
 polis, the heavy-armed-men indeed followed in order
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἄνω πρὸς ταῖς οἰκίαις τῆς μετρο-
 When indeed they-were above by the houses of-the metro-
 πόλεως, ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ
 polis, here indeed the enemy 'having —
 πάντες γενόμενοι ὁμοῦ ἐμάχοντο, καὶ
 all 'got together fought (with them), and
 ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλτοῖς· καὶ ἔχοντες ἄλλα
 they-hurled — (their) darts; and having other
 παχέα δόρατα, μακρὰ, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν μόλις
 thick spears, large, so-that (a) man could scarcely
 φέροι, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμυνεσθαι
 carry (them), with-these they-endeavoured to-defend-themselves
 ἐκ χειρὸς. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐχ ὑφίεντο
 hand-to-hand. But when the Greeks 'did not 'give-way,
 ἀλλ' ἐχώρουν ὁμοσε, οἱ
 | but went to-the-same-place, [but engaged in close combat,] the
 βάρβαροι ἔφευγον, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἅπαντες ἔλιπον
 barbarians fled. and thereupon 'they altogether 'left

τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν
 the place. But the king of-them — (he living) in
 τῷ μύσσυνι τῷ ὠκοδομημένῳ ἐπ' ἄκροι,
 the wooden-tower — (that namely) having-been-built on (the) height,
 ἦν μένοντα αὐτοῦ πάντες τρέφουσι καὶ
 whom remaining these all supported and
 φυλάττουσιν κοινῇ, οὐκ ἔδελεν ἐξελθεῖν,
 guarded (him) in-common, 'did not 'wish to-leave (it),
 οὐδὲ οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ πρότερον αἶρεθεντι,
 nor — (those) in the strong-place first taken,
 ἀλλ' κατεκαύθησαν αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μωσσύνοις.
 but were-burnt these with the wooden-towers
 Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία, εὗρισκον
 But the Greeks, ransacking the place, found
 ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις θησαυροὺς ἄρτων νενημένων
 in the houses stores of-bread heaped-together
 πατρίους, ὥς οἱ Μωσσύνοιοι
 according-to-the-custom-of-their-forefathers, as the Mossyncei
 ἔφασαν, δὲ τὸν νέον σῖτον ἀποκείμενον ξὺν τῇ
 say, also the new corn put-up (with) (in) the
 καλὰμῃ· δ' αἱ πλεῖσται ἦσαν ξειαί. Καὶ
 straw; and the most was spelter. And
 τεταριχευμένα τεμάχη δελφίνων εὗρισκετο ἐν
 pick'ed slices of-dolphins were-found in
 ἀμβρεῦσι, καὶ στέαρ τῶν δελφίνων ἐν τεύχεσι,
 jars, and (the) fat of — dolphins in vessels,
 ᾧ οἱ Μωσσύνοιοι ἐχρῶντο, καθάπερ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 which the Mossyncei used, as the Greeks
 τῷ ἐλαίῳ. Δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνωγαίων ἦν
 (do) — oil. And in the upper-parts-of-the-houses there-were
 πολλὰ κάρυα τὰ πλατέα, οὐχ ἔχοντα
 many nuts (chestnuts) the broad-ones, not having
 οὐδεμίαν διαφυήν. Τούτῳ καὶ ἐχρῶντο
 (no) (any) fissure. This 'they even used
 πλεῖστῳ σίτῳ, ἔψοντες καὶ ὀπτῶντες ἄρτους
 most for-food, boiling (them) and baking breads

Δὲ οἶνος εὗρίσκετο, ὃς μὲν ἄκρατος
 (of them). Also wine was-found, which indeed (when) pure
 ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὀξύς ὑπὸ τῆς αἰσθηρότητος,
 seemed to-be sour from — (its) very-great-roughness,
 δὲ κερασθεῖς εὐώδης τε καὶ
 but being-mixed (with water) (it becomes) fragrant and also
 ἡδύς.
 pleasant.

Οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν δὴ, ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα,
 The Greeks indeed —, having-breakfasted there,
 ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες
 proceeded on — (their) forward (march), giving-up
 τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασιν τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων.
 the place to — (their) allies of-the Mossynoeci.
 Δὲ καὶ ὅποσα ἄλλα χωρία παρήεσαν, τῶν
 And also as-many other places 'as they-arrived-at, — (those)
 ὄντων ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις, τὰ εἰς-πρὸς-ο-
 being with the enemy, — (some of the places) being-most-
 δῶντατα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, δὲ οἱ
 accessible the (barbarians) indeed deserted (them), but the (inhabit-

ἐκόντες προσεχώρουν. Δὲ τὰ πλεῖστα
 ants of other places) willingly surrendered. And the most
 τῶν χωρίων ἦν τοιάδε. Αἱ πόλεις ἀπείχον
 of-the places were (situated) thus. The towns were-distant
 ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ὀγδοήκοντα στάδια, αἱ δὲ
 from one-another (about) eighty stadia, — (some) indeed
 πλείον, αἱ δὲ μείον· δὲ ἀναβοώντων
 more, — (others) indeed less; and calling-aloud (to)
 ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας πόλεως
 one-another they-heard-each-other from the (other) (one) city
 εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν· ἡ χώρα ἦν οὕτως ὑψηλή
 to the other; (for) the country was so elevated
 τε καὶ κοίλη. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἦσαν
 and so hollow. When indeed having-proceeded-forwards they-were
 ἐν τοῖς φίλοις, ἐπεδείκνυσαν αὐτοῖς παῖδας
 among — friends, they-showed them boys (the sons of)

τῶν εὐδαιμόνων, ἀπαλούς καὶ σφόδρα λευκοὺς,
 of-the rich, soft and exceedingly white,
 σιτευτοὺς, τετραμμένους ἐφδοῖς καρύοις, καὶ οὐ
 being-made-fat, having-been-fed with-boiled chestnuts, and not
 δέοντας πολλοῦ εἶναι ἴσους τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ
 wanting much to-be equal — (in) length and — (in)
 πλάτος, δὲ ποικίλους τὰ νῶτα, καὶ πάντα
 breadth, and painted-with-various-colours on-the back, and on-all
 τὰ ἔμπροσθεν ἐστιγμένους ἀνδέμιον. Δὲ
 the forepart pricked (in the form of) flowers. And
 καὶ ἐζήτουν ξυγγίγνεσθαι ἐμφανῶς ταῖς ἐταῖραις
 also they-desired to-have-intercourse publicly with-the mistresses
 αἷς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἤγον, γὰρ οὗτος νόμος
 which the Greeks brought (with them), for this custom
 ἦν σφισι. Δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες
 was to-them. And all the men and the women
 λευκοί. Οἱ στρατευσάμενοι
 were very) white. — (Those) having-'served-in (this) 'expedition
 ἔλεγον διελθεῖν βαρβαρωτάτους,
 | said (that) they-passed-through the-most-barbarous, [that these were
 καὶ πλεῖστον
 the most barbarous people they had passed through,] and the-most
 κεχωρισμένους τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων. Γὰρ
 removed from-the Grecian manners (and customs). For
 τε ἐποίουν ὄντες ἐν ὄχλῳ ἅπερ ἄνθρωποι ἂν
 indeed they-do being in (a) crowd what men would
 ποιήσειαν ἐν ἐρημίᾳ, ἄλλως δὲ ἂν οὐ
 (only) do in private, otherwise indeed might not
 τολμῶεν· τε ὄντες μόνοι ἐπραττον
 dare (to do); and being alone they-did-those-things
 ἅπερ ἂν ὁμοία ὄντες
 which (they) might (do) (the) same (as if) being (in company,
 μετ' ἄλλων· διελέγοντό τε ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐγέλων
 with others; talked — to-themselves, and laughed

ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐφιστάμενοι ὠρχοῦντο ὅπου
 to themselves, and stopping they-danced wherever
 τύχοιεν, ὥσπερ ἐπιδεικνύμενοι ἄλλοις.
 they-might-happen (to be), as-if exhibiting-themselves to-others

CHAPTER V.

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας, τε διὰ τῆς
 THROUGH these — countries, — (namely) through — (those)
 πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπο-
 inimical and — (those) friendly, the Greeks pro-
 ρεύθησαν ὀκτὼ σταδμούς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς
 oceeded eight days'-march, and arrived among (the)
 Χάλυβας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ὀλίγοι καὶ
 Chalybes. These (people) were few (in number) and (were)
 ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος τοῖς
 subjects of-the Mossynocci, and — (their) living for-the
 πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπο σιδηρείας. Ἐντεῦθεν
 most of-them (was obtained) from iron-works. Thence
 ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοῦς. Ἡ χώρα δὲ
 they-arrived among (the) Tibareni. The country —
 τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν ἦν πολὺ πεδινωτέρα, καὶ εἶχει
 of-the Tibareni was much more-level, and they-had
 χωρία ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἥττον ἐρυμνα. Καὶ
 stations on (the) sea (coast) but-weakly fortified. And
 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐχρηζον προσβάλλειν πρὸς τὰ χωρία,
 the generals wanted to-make-an-attack on the places,
 καὶ ἀνηθῆναί τ τὴν στρατιὰν κα.
 and to-have-'conferred some 'benefit on-the army and
 οὐκ ἐδέχοντο τὰ ζῆνια ἃ ἦκε παρὰ
 they-'did not receive the gifts-of-hospital' ty which came from
 Τιβαρηνῶν, ἀλλ' κελεύσαντες ἐπιμεῖναι
 (the) Tibareni, but having-ordered (the messengers) to—

ἔστε βουλεύσαντο, ἐθύοντο. Καὶ πολλὰ
 till they-might-deliberate, they-sacrificed. And many (victims
 καταθυσάντων, τέλος πάντες οἱ μάντις ἅπε
 having-been-sacrificed, at-last all the augurs of
 δείξαντο γνώμην, ὅτι οἱ θεοὶ οὐδαμῇ προσίοιεν
 fered (their) opinion, that the gods in-no-wise approved-of
 τοῖς πόλεμον. Ἐντεῦθεν δὴ ἐδέξαντο τὰ ξέ
 the war. Then indeed they-accepted the gifts-of
 νια, καὶ πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας, ὥς
 hospitality, and proceeding-on (their march) two days, as
 διὰ φιλίας, ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα
 through (a) friendly (country), they-arrived at Cotyora (a)
 Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, ἀποικίαν Σινωπέων, δ' ὄντας
 Greek city, (a) colony from-Sinope, and being
 ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Τιβαρηνῶν.
 in the country 'of (the) 'Tibareni.

Ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπέξευσε μέχρι ἐνταῦθα. Πληθος
 The army proceeded-by-land just-to here. (The) length
 τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ
 of-the descent (down the country along) the road from
 τῆς μάχης ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα
 the battle (ground) in Babylon just to Cotyora (was)
 ἑκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο σταδμοί, ἑξακόσιοι
 a-hundred (and) twenty two stations, (making) six-hundred
 καὶ εἴκοσι παρασάγγαι, μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι
 and twenty parasangs, (or) ten-thousand and eight-thousand
 καὶ ἑξακόσιοι στάδιοι· πληθος χρόνοι
 and six-hundred (18,600) stadia; the-amount of-time (was)
 ὀκτὼ μῆνες. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τετταράκοντα
 eight months. There they-remained forty
 πέντε ἡμέρας. Ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον
 five days. During — these (days) 'they first
 μὲν ἔθυσαν τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ ἐποίησαν πομπὰς
 indeed 'sacrificed to-the gods, and they-made processions
 ἕκαστοι κατὰ ἔθνος τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
 each according-to (the) nation (or tribe) of-the Greeks

καὶ γυμνικούς ἀγῶνας. Δὲ τὰ
 (to which he belonged), and gymnastic games. And —
 ἐπιτήδεια ἐλαμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλα-
 provisions they-took — (partly) indeed from — Paphla-
 γονίας, δὲ τὰ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν.
 gonias, and — (partly) from the lands of-the Cotyories;
 γὰρ οὐ παρέιχον ἀγοράν, οὐδ' ἐδέχοντο
 for they-'did not 'provide (a) market, nor did-they-receive
 τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας εἰς τὸ τεῖχος.
 the feeble-and-sick within the walls.

Ἐν τούτῳ πρέσβεις ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης,
 During this ambassadors come from Sinope,
 φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τε τῆς
 they-being-in-fear about the Cotyores namely (those) of-the
 πόλεως, (γὰρ ἦν ἐκείνων, καὶ
 city, (for it-was of-them, [for it was theirs,] and (the in-
 ἔφερον φόρους ἐκείνοις,) καὶ
 habitants) brought tribute to-them,) and (they were also in fear)
 περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηνου-
 about the territories, as they-had-heard (that they were) being-
 μένην. Καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἔλεγον
 ravaged. And going to the camp, they-said
 (δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος προηγόρει, νομιζόμενος εἶναι δεινὸς
 (and Hecatonymus spoke-for-them, he-being-considered to-be able
 λέγειν). Ἡ πόλις τῶν Σινωπέων ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς,
 to-speak): The city of-the Sinopians has-sent us,
 ὧς ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐπαινέσοντάς τε ὑμᾶς, ὅτι
 O men soldiers, about-praising indeed you, that
 ὄντες Ἕλληνες νικᾶτε βαρβάρους, δὲ καὶ
 being Greeks you-have-conquered (the) barbarians, and also
 ἔπειτα ζυνησθησομένους, ὅτι πάρεστε
 then congratulating (you), that you-are-present (here)
 σεσωσμένοι, ὥς ἡμεῖς ἀκούμεν, διὰ πολλῶν τε
 having-been-saved, as we hear, through many and
 καὶ δεινῶν πραγμάτων. Δὲ ἀξιούμεν, ὄντες καὶ
 also grievous things. But we-think-it-right, being also

αὐτοὶ Ἕλληνες, μὲν πάσχειν τι
 ourselves Greeks, (that we ought) indeed to-suffer something
 ἀγαθόν, δὲ μηδὲν κακὸν ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ὄντων Ἑλλήνων.
 good, but nothing evil from you, being Greeks;
 γὰρ οὐδὲ πώποτε ὑπῆρξάμεν ποιοῦντες οὐδὲν
 for neither 'have-we ever 'commenced doing (no) (any)
 κακῶς ὑμᾶς. Οὗτοι Κοτυωρίται δὲ εἰσὶ μὲν
 evil to-you. These Cotyoritans — are indeed
 ἡμέτεροι ἀποικοί, καὶ ἡμεῖς παραδεδώκαμεν αὐτοῖς
 our colonists, and we have-given them
 ταύτην τὴν χώραν, ἀφελόμενοι βαρ-
 this — (same) land, having-taken (it) 'from (the) 'bar-
 βάρους· καὶ διὸ οὗτοι φέρουσιν ἡμῖν
 barians; and therefore these (people) bring us (an)
 τεταγμένον δασμόν, καὶ ὡσαύτως Κερασούντιοι καὶ
 appointed tribute, and likewise (the) Cerasuntians and
 Τραπεζούντιοι· ὥστε ὃ τι κακὸν ἂν ποιήσητε
 Trapezuntians; so-that whatever evil 'you may 'do
 τούτους, ἡ πόλις Σινωπέων νομίζει
 them, the city 'of (the) 'Sinopians considers (itself)
 πάσχειν. Δὲ νῦν ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς τε
 to-suffer (from it). But now we-hear (that) you not-only
 παρεληλυθόντας εἰς τὴν πόλιν βία, ἐνίους
 having-entered into the town by-force, some (of you)
 σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις, καὶ λαμβάνειν
 lodge in the houses, but-also (that you) take
 βία, ἐκ τῶν χωρίων ὧν ἂν δέησθε,
 by-force, from the (neighbouring) places what 'you may 'want
 οὐ πείδοντας. Οὖν οὐκ ἀξιόῦμεν
 (the owners) not consenting. Therefore we-'do not 'approve
 ταῦτα· δὲ εἰ ποιήσετε ταῦτα
 these (things); and if you-will-do these (things) there-'will-
 ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν ποιῆσθαι φίλον καὶ Κορύλλαν
 be (a) 'necessity for-us to-make friends both (of) Coryllan

καὶ Παφλαγόνας, καὶ ἄλλον, ὅντις τε
and (of the) Paphlagonians, and (any) other, whosoever
ἂν δυνώμεθα.
may 'be-able.

Πρὸς ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπεν
In-respect to-these (things) Xenophon rising-up spoke
ἱπὲρ τῷ στρατιωτῶν· Ἡμεῖς δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες
for the army: We indeed, O men (of)
Σινωπεῖς, ἥκομεν ἀγαπῶντες, ὅτι διεσώσαμεθα
Sinope, have-come being-content, that we-have-saved
τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ ἦν οὐ
— (our) bodies and — (our) arms; for it-was not
δυνατὸν ἅμα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν χρήματα,
possible at-the-same-time to-drive and bring (away) things,
καὶ μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ
and to-fight the enemy. And now when
ἤλθομεν εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις, μὲν ἐν
we-have-come to — Greek cities, (as) indeed among (the)
Τραπεζοῦντι (γὰρ παρεῖχον ἡμῖν ἀγοράν) ὠνού-
Trebisondians (for they-provided us (a) market) buy-
μενοι εἶχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἀνδ' ὧν
ing we-had — (our) provisions, and in-return for-what
ἐτίμησαν ἡμᾶς, καὶ ξένια ἔδωκαν
they-honoured us, and (the) gifts-of-hospitality (which) they-gave
τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτούς, καὶ εἴ
to-the army we-'honoured them 'in-return, and if
τις τῶν βαρβάρων ἦν φίλος αὐτοῖς, ἀπει-
any-one of-the barbarians was (a) friend to-them, we-ab-
χόμεθα τούτων· δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους
stained (from injuring) them; but (to) the enemies
αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὓς αὐτοὶ ἡγοῖντο ἐποιοῦμεν κακῶς
of-them against whom they may-have-led (us) we-did evil
ὅσον ἐδυνάμεθα. Δὲ ἐρωτᾶτε αὐτούς ὁποίων
as-much-as we-could. But ask them what-sort
τινῶν ἐτυχον ἡμῶν· γὰρ παρῆισι ἐνθάδε,
of-persons they-may-have-found us; for they-are-present here.

οὓς ἡ πόλις ξυνέπεμψεν ἡμῖν ἡγεμόνας διὰ
whom the city sent-with us (as) guides through

φιλίαν. Δ' ὅποι ἂν ἐλδόντες μὴ ἔχωμεν
friendship. But wherever 'we may 'have-been-coming (and) not having

ἀγορὰν, ἂν τε εἰς βάρβαρον γῆν τε
(a) market, (it) may (be) as-well to (a) barbarian country as (it)

ἂν Ἑλληνίδα, λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
may (be) 'to (a) 'Grecian, we-take — provisions

οὐχ ὕβρει, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκῃ. Καὶ
not (through) insolence, but (through) necessity. And

ἐκτῆσάμεθα πολεμίους Καρδούχους καὶ
we-made enemies (of the) Carduchi and (of the)

Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους, καίπερ οὐχ ὄντας
Taochi and (of the) Chaldeans, although not being

ὑπηκόους βασιλέως, καὶ ὁμως ὄντας μάλα
subjects 'of (the) 'king, and yet being very

φοβεροὺς, διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἀνάγκην
formidable, | through the to-be [from being] (in) necessity

λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ οὐ παρέιχον
to-take — provisions, when they-'did not 'furnish (us)

ἀγορὰν. Δὲ Μάκρωνας, καίπερ ὄντας βάρ-
(a) market. 'But (the) Macones, although being bar-

βάρους, ἐπεὶ παρέιχον ἀγορὰν, οἶαν ἐδύναντο,
barians, when they-provided (us a) market, as-much-as they-could,

ἐνομίζομεν τε εἶναι φίλους, καὶ ἐλαμβάνομεν
we-considered indeed to-be friends, and we-took

οὐδὲν τῶν ἐκείνων βίᾳ. Δὲ Κοτυωρίτας,
nothing of-the (things) of-them by-force. But (the) Cotyrites

οὓς φατὲ εἶναι ὑμετέρους, εἰ εἰλήφαμεν τι
whom you-say to-be yours, if we-have-taken any-thing

αὐτῶν, αὐτοὶ εἰσιν αἴτιοι· γὰρ
from-them, they-themselves are (the) authors (thereof); for

οὐ προσεφέροντο ὡς φίλοι ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ
they-'did not 'carry-themselves as friends of-us, but

κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας, οὔτε ἐδέχοντο
having-closed — (their) gates, 'would neither 'receive (us)

εἶσω, οὔτε ἐπεμπον ἀγορὰν ἔξω.
 within (the walls), nor did-they-send (us a) market without (the walls),
 δὲ ἡτιῶντο τὸν ἀρμοστὴν παρ' ὑμῶν εἶναι
 and they-alleged (that) the governor (sent) by you was
 αἴτιον τούτων. Ὅ δὲ λέγεις
 the-author of-these (things). (As to) what indeed you-say (that)
 παρελθόντας βία σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἤξιούμεεν,
 entering by-force we-quartered (in the place), we requested,
 δέξασθαι τοὺς κάμνοντας εἰς τὰς
 (that) they-would-receive — (those) being-sick — (under) — (their)
 στέγας· δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἀνέωγον τὰς πύλας,
 roofs; but when they-'would not 'open the gates,
 ἣ τὸ χωρίον αὐτὸ ἐδέχετο ἡμᾶς
 [in-which (way) the place itself received us [where the
 ταύτῃ εἰσελθόντες,
 nature of the place admitted our entrance] in-the-same (place) entering,
 ἄλλο ἐποιήσαμεν μὲν οὐδὲν βίαιον· δ' οἱ
 (but) we-committed indeed no violent (act); but — (these)
 κάμνοντες σκηνοῦσι ἐν ταῖς στέγαις, δαπανῶντες
 being-sick they-quarter — (under) the roofs, | consuming
 τὰ ἑαυτῶν· καὶ φρου-
 the (things) of-themselves; [living on their own means]; and we-
 ροῦμεν τὰς πύλας, ὅπως οἱ ἡμῶν κάμνοντες
 guard the gates, so-that — (those) of-us being-sick
 μὴ ὥσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ ἀρμοστῇ,
 'may not 'be in the (power of) your governor,
 ἀλλ' κομίσασθαι ἢ ἐφ' ἡμῖν,
 | but to-remove (them) may-be to us, [but that it may
 ὅταν βουλώμεθα. Δὲ οἱ
 be in. our power to remove them,] when we-wish. But the
 ἄλλοι, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, σκηνοῦμεν ὑπαίθριον,
 rest (of us) as you-see, we-are-encamped (in the) open-air
 ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἂν τις
 in — (proper) order, prepared, (that) should any-one
 μὲν ποιῇ εἰ, ἀντευποιεῖν, δὲ αἱ
 indeed act well (to us), to-act-well-in-return (to them). but (if he) should

κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι. Δέ δ
 (act) ill, to-defend (ourselves). And (as respects) what
 ἠπειλησας, ὥς, ἣν δοκῇ ὑμῖν, ποιήσεσθε
 you-have-threatened, that, if it-seemed-proper to-you, you-would-make
 Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ξυμμάχους ἐφ'
 Corylas and (the) Paphlagonians (your) allies against
 ἡμᾶς, δὲ ἡμεῖς, ἣν μὲν ἢ ἀνάγκη,
 us, but we (on our part), if indeed it-may-be necessary.
 πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις· (γὰρ ἤδη καὶ ἐπολε-
 will-fight even with-you-both; (for already even we-have
 μήσαμεν ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν·) δέ
 fought with-others more-numerous (than) you;) and (if) 't
 ἂν δοκῇ, ποιήσομεν τὸν Παφλαγόνα
 may seem-proper (to us), we-will-make the Paphlagonian (a)
 φίλον ἡμῖν. Δέ ἀκούομεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν
 friend to-us. And we-have-heard (that) he even covets
 τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ τῶν ἐπιδαλαττίων χωρίων.
 — your city and the maritime places.
 Οὖν πειρασόμεθα, συμπράττοντες ὧν
 We-'shall therefore 'try, helping (him in) what
 ἐπιθυμεῖ γίνεσθαι φίλοι.
 he-desires to-become (his) friends.
 Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις ἦσαν μὲν μάλα
 After this (speech) the joint-ambassadors were indeed very
 δῆλοι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Ἑκατωνύμῳ τοῖς
 evident being-much-displeased at — Hecatonymus in — (what
 εἰρημένοις· δ' ἄλλος αὐτῶν παρελθὼν εἶπεν,
 he-had-been-saying; but others of-them coming-forward said,
 ὅτι οὐ ἤκοιεν ποιησόμενοι πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ
 that they-'did not 'come making war, but
 ἐπιδείκοντες ὅτι εἰσὶ φίλοι. Ἦν μὲν ἔλ-
 showing-and-declaring that they-were friends. If indeed you-should-
 δεῖτε πρὸς τὴν πόλιν Σινωπέων, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθι
 come to the city of-the-Sinopeans, there we-will-receive (you)
 καὶ ζενίοις, δὲ νῦν κελεύσομεν τοὺς
 even with-gifts-of-hospitality, and now we-will-order — (themselves)

ἐνθάδε διδόναι ἃ δύνανται· γὰρ ὁρῶμεν πάντα
 here to-give what they-can; for we-perceive all
 ὄντα ἀληθῆ ἃ λέγετε. Ἐκ τούτου τε οἱ Κοτυω-
 being true that you-say. After this indeed the Coto-
 ρῖται ἐπεμπον ξένια, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 ritans sent gifts-of-hospitality, and the generals
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον τοὺς πρέσβεις τῶν Σινωπέων,
 of-the Greeks entertained the ambassadors of-the Sinopeans,
 καὶ διελέγοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους τε πολλά
 and they-conversed with one-another not-only (about) many (things)
 καὶ φιλικὰ, τὰ
 but-also (about) friendly (things, that concerned one another), among-the
 ἄλλα τε ἐπυνθάνοντο καὶ περὶ τῆς
 other (things) indeed they-inquired and (in particular) about the
 λοιπῆς πορείας, ὧν ἑκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.
 remaining route, what each (party) desired (to know).

CHAPTER VI.

Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
 Such was the end indeed to-that — day.
 Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ξυνέλεξαν τοὺς
 But on-the next-day the generals assembled the
 στρατιώτας, καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς
 soldiers, and it-seemed (best) to-them as-respects the
 λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας
 remaining route (that) having-called-in the Sinopeans
 βουλευέσθαι. Γὰρ εἴτε δέοι πορεύ-
 to-consult (with them). For if it-might-be-necessary to-
 εἶσθαι πεζῇ, οἱ Σινωπεῖς ἂν ἐδόχουν εἶναι χρήσιμοι·
 proceed by-land, the Sinopeans would seem to-be useful;
 γὰρ ἦσαν ἔμπειροι τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε
 for they-were well-acquainted (with) — Paphlagonia; &

κατὰ θάλατταν ἐδόκει προσδεῖν
by sea it-seems (that they would) require (the aid)

Σινωπέων, γὰρ ἂν ἐδόκουν μόνοι εἶναι
'of (the) Sinopeans, for 'they would 'seem alone to-be

ἱκανοὶ παρασχεῖν πλοῖα ἀρκοῦντα
competent to-furnish ships 'being (in number) 'sufficient

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Οὖν παλέσαντες τοὺς πρέσβεις
for-the army. Therefore calling (in) the ambassadors

ξυνεβουλεύοντο, καὶ ἤξιουν ὄντας Ἕλληνας
they-consulted-together, and requested being (as) Greeks

Ἕλλησι τούτῳ πρῶτον δέχεσθαι
so-Greeks (that) in-this (relation) they-'would first 'receive

καλῶς τε εἶναι εὖνους τῷ καὶ
(them) well, not-only to-be friendly-and-kind to — (them), but-also

ξυμβουλεύειν τὰ κάλλιστα.
to-advise (them) for-the best.

Δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος ἀναστὰς, πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογή-
But Hecatonymus having-risen-up, first indeed he-stated-in-

σατο περὶ οὗ εἶπεν, ὥς ποιήσονται τὸν Παφλαγόνα
defence about what he-said, that they-would-make the Paphlagonian

φίλον, ὅτι οὐχ εἶποι, ὥς σφῶν
a) friend, that he-'might not 'have-said (this), as-that themselves

πολεμῆσόντων τοῖς Ἕλλησι, ἀλλ' ὅτι
were-about-making-war against-the Greeks, but that (though)

ἐξόν εἶναι φίλους τοῖς βαρβάροις αἰρή-
it-being-allowed (them) to-be friends to-the barbarians they-

σονται τοὺς Ἕλληνας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
would-take (in preference) the Greeks. When indeed

ἐκέλειον ξυμβουλεύοιμι, ἐπευ-
they-called-in (him) that-he-might-'give (his) opinion-and-advice, calling-

ξάμενος εἶπεν ὧδε· Εἰ μὲν ξυμβουλεύοιμι,
imprecations (on himself) he-spoke thus: If indeed I-advise

ἃ δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι βέλτιστά, πολλά καγαδὰ
(you), what seems to-me to-be best, 'may much even-good

γένητο μοι· δὲ εἰ μή, τὰναντία. Γὰρ αὕτη
happen to-me; but if not, the-contrary. For that

συμβουλὴ ἣ λεγομένη εἶναι ἱερὰ δοκεῖ μὲν
counsel which is-said to-be sacred seems to-*be*

παρεῖναι· γὰρ νῦν μὲν δὴ, ἂν μὲν φανῶ
to-be-present; for now indeed —, if indeed I-shall-appear (*as*)

συμβουλευσας εὖ, ἔσεςδε πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπαι-
having-advised (you) well, you-will-be many — *ap*

νοῦντές με· δὲ ἂν κακῶς, ἔσεςδε πολλοὶ οἱ κατα-
plauding me; but if ill, you-will-be many — *exe*

ρώμενοι. Οὖν μὲν οἶδ' ὅτι ἔχομεν πολυ-
crating (me). Therefore indeed I-know that we-shall-have much

πλείω πράγματα, εἰὰν κομίζησθε κατὰ θάλατταν·
more trouble, if you-are-conveyed by sea

γὰρ δεήσει ἡμᾶς πορίζειν τὰ πλοῖα·
for it-will-be-necessary (that) we furnish the ships;

δὲ ἢν στέλλησθε κατὰ γῆν, δεῆσαι ὑμᾶς
but if you-are-sent by land, it-will-be-necessary (that) you

εἶναι τοὺς μαχομένους. Ὅμως δὲ
be — (those) fighting. However indeed (the things)

ἃ γινώσκω λεκτέα· γὰρ εἰμι ἔμπειρος καὶ
which I-know are-to-be-spoken; for I-am well-acquainted both

τῆς χώρας τῶν Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως.
with-the country of-the Paphlagonians and — (their) power.

Γὰρ ἔχει ἀμφοτέρα, καὶ κάλλιστα πεδία καὶ
For it-has both, as-well most-beautiful plains *as*

ἰψηλότατα ὄρη. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εἰδύς
most-high mountains. For first indeed I-know exactly

τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἣ ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι·
the entrance by-which (it will be a) necessity (for you) to-make

γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ ἄλλη ἢ ἣ
(your entrance); for there-is not by-another than (that) by which

τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους καδ' ἐκάτερα τῆς ὁδοῦ
he peaks of-the mountain on each (side) of-the road

ἐστὶν ἰψηλά, κατέχοντες ἃ καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι
are high, possessing which even (a) very few

ἂν δύναιντο κρατεῖν· δὲ κατεχομένων τούτων,
might be-able to-be-superior (to you); but having-pre-occupied this

οὐδέ πάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἂν δύναιτ'
not-even all the men (in the world) might be-able

ἂν διελθεῖν· δὲ καὶ ἂν δείξαιμι ταῦτα.
(that they) might pass-through; and also 'I could 'show this,

εἰ βούλοισθε ξυμπέμψαι μοί τινα. Ἐπειτα δὲ
if you-desire to-send-with me any-one. Then indeed

οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα, καὶ ἵππειαν, ἣν οἱ βάρ-
I-know even (of) plains being, and cavalry, which the bar-

βαροι αὐτοὶ νομίζουσι εἶναι κρείττω ἀπάσης τῆς
barians themselves consider to-be superior (to) all the

ἵππειας βασιλέως. Καὶ νῦν οὗτοι
cavalry 'of (the) 'king. And now (lately) these (Paphla-

οὐ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ κα-
gonians) 'did not 'present (themselves) 'to (the) 'king call-

λοῦντι, ἀλλὰ ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν φρονεῖ μείζον.
ing-on (others), but the ruler of-them thinks greater

Δὲ εἰ καὶ δυνηθεῖτε τε κλέψαι
(of himself, than to obey). And if also you-were-able indeed to-steal

τὰ ὄρη, ἢ λαβόντες φθάσαι,
(over) the mountains, or having-taken-possession to-have-anticipated (the

καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μαχόμενοι κρατῆσαι τε
enemy), and in the plain fighting to-have-conquered —

τούς ἵππεις τούτων καὶ πλεῖον ἢ δώδεκα
the cavalry of-these (people) and more than twelve

μυριάδες πεζῶν ἥξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς
ten-thousands [120,000] of-infantry, you-will-come to the

ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμῶδοντα, εὖρος
rivers, first indeed to-the Thermodon, (the) breadth

τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν οἶμαι χαλεπὸν
(being) three plethra, [300 feet,] which I-think difficult

διαβαίνειν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὄντων μὲν πολλῶν
to-cross, especially — also there-being indeed (a) numerous

πολεμίων ἔμπροσθεν, δὲ πολλῶν ἐπομένῳ
enemy before (you), and many following

ὀπίσθεν· δεύτερον δ' Ἴριν, ὡσαύτως τρί-
behind; second — (the) Iris, likewise three-

πλέθρον· δὲ τρίτον ὁ Ἄλυν, οὐ μείον
 plethra; [300 feet;] and third (the) Halys, not less (than),
 δυοῖν σταδίοις, ὃν ἂν οὐ δύναισθε διαβῆναι
 two stadia, which 'you may not 'be-able to-pass
 ἀνευ πλοίων· δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων πλοῖα;
 without boats; but what-one will-there-be — providing boats!
 ὥς δ' αὐτως καὶ ὁ Παρθέnius ἀβατος, ἐφ' ὃν
 as indeed likewise even the Parthenius (is) impassable, at which
 ἂν ἔλθοιτε, εἰ διαβαίητε τὸν Ἄλυν. Ἐγὼ
 'you may 'arrive, if you-cross-over the Halys. I
 οὖν μὲν νομίζω τὴν πορείαν εἶναι οὐ χαλεπὴν
 therefore indeed consider the route to-be not difficult
 ὑμῖν, ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν ἐδύνατον. Δὲ ἂν
 (only) for-you, but altogether impassable. But if
 πλέητε, ἔστιν ἐνδένδε μὲν παραπλεῖνσαι
 you-sail, it-is (in your power) from-hence indeed to-coast-along
 εἰς Σινώπην, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ
 to Sinope, from Sinope indeed to Heracleia; from
 Ἡρακλείας δὲ ἀπορία οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε
 Heracleia indeed (the) passage (may be) either by-land or
 κατὰ θάλατταν· γὰρ ἔστιν καὶ πολλὰ πλοῖα ἐν
 by sea; for there-are even many vessels in
 Ἡρακλείᾳ.
 Heracleia.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔλεξε ταῦτα, οἱ ὑπώπτευν
 When indeed he-had-said this, — (some) suspected (that)
 λέγειν ἔνεκα φιλίας τῆς Κορύλα, (γὰρ ἦν
 he-said (it) by-reason of-friendship for — Corylas, (for he-was
 καὶ πρόξενος αὐτῷ,) δὲ καὶ οἱ
 even (the) public-guest-friend to-him,) and also — (others) suspected
 ὥς ληψόμενον δῶρα διὰ ταύτην τὴν ξυμβου-
 him) as about-to-receive (a) reward on-account-of this — coun-
 λην· δὲ οἱ καὶ ὑπώπτευν λέγειν ἔνεκα
 sel; and — (others) again suspected (that) he-said (so) by-reason
 τοῦτου, ὥς μὴ ἰόντες πεζῇ ἐργάζονται τι κακὸν
 of-this, that lest going on-foot they-might-do some evil

τὴν χώραν Σινωπέων. Δ' οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες
to-the country of (the) Sinopeans. But — the Greeks

ἐψηφισαντο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν κατὰ θάλατταν.
voted to-make the journey by sea.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· ὦ Σινωπεῖς,
After these (things) Xenophon said: O Sinopeans,

οἱ ἄνδρες μὲν ἤρηνται πορείαν, ἣν ὑμεῖς ζυμβου-
the men indeed have-chosen (the) route, which you ad-

λεύετε· δὲ ἔχει οὕτω·
vise; | and it-has (itself) thus; [and we will sail on these con-

εἰ μὲν μέλλει ἔσεσθαι πλοῖα ἱκανὰ
ditions;] if indeed it-is-intended (that) there-will-be ships sufficient

ἀριθμῶ, ὥς μὴ ἓνα καταλείπεσθαι ἐνθάδε,
in-number, so-as (that) not one be-left here,

ἡμεῖς ἂν πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν οἱ
we may sail; if indeed we-intend (that) — (some)

μὲν καταλείψεσθαι, δὲ οἱ πλεύσεσθαι, ἂν
indeed are-to-be-left, but — (others) to-sail, 'we may

οὐκ ἐμβαίημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. Γὰρ γινώσκομεν,
not 'embark on (board) the ships. For we-know,

ὅτι, ὅπου μὲν ἂν κρατῶμεν ἂν δυναίμεθα
that, where indeed 'we may 'be-the-strongest 'we may 'be-able

καὶ σώζεσθαι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
both to-save (ourselves), and to-have — provisions;

δὲ εἴ που ληφθῆσόμεθα ἥττους
but if any-where | we-shall-be-taken worse [shall be found weaker]

τῶν πολεμίων, εὐδην δὲ, ὅτι
(than) — (our) enemies, (it is) very-evident indeed, that

ἔσόμεθα ἐν χώρα ἀνδραπόδων. Οἱ πρέσβεις
we-will-be in (the) place of-slaves. The ambassadors

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκέλευον πέμπειν
hear-ing these (things) requested (them) to-send

πρέσβεις. Καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον
ambassadors (to Sinope). And they-sent Callimachus (the)

Ἀρκάδα, καὶ Ἀρίστωνά Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Σαμό-
 Arcadian, and Ariston (the) Athenian, and Samo-
 λαν Ἀχαιόν. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ὥχοντο.
 as (the) Achæan. And — (they) indeed departed.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι,
 During indeed this (same) — time (it seemed) to-Xenophon,
 ὁρῶντι μὲν πολλοὺς ὀπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
 seeing indeed (the) many heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,
 δὲ καὶ ὁρῶντι πολλοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ τοξότας
 and also seeing many targeteers, and archers
 καὶ σφενδονήτας, καὶ ἱππέας δὲ, καὶ μάλα ἱκανοὺς
 and slingers, and cavalry also, and very efficient
 ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ,
 now through — exercise, being indeed in — Pontus,
 ἔνθα τοσαύτη δύναμις ἂν οὐκ παρεσκευάσθη ἀπ'
 where such (a) force could not have-been-prepared from
 ὀλίγων χρημάτων, ἐδόκει εἶναι καλὸν
 small things-and-means, 'it (therefore) 'seemed to-be good
 αὐτῷ προσκτήσασθαι καὶ χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ
 to-him to-have-added-yet-more both territory and power to —
 Ἑλλάδι, κατοικήσαντας πόλιν. Καὶ ἐδόκει
 Greece, having-provided (a) city (there). And it-seemed
 αὐτῷ ἂν γενέσθαι μεγάλην, καταλογιζομένῳ
 to-him (that it) might become great, considering
 τε τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν, καὶ τοὺς περιοι-
 not-only the multitude of-themselves, but-also — (those) inhabiting-
 κοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις
 around the Pontus (unskilled in war). And about this
 ἔδυετο, πρὶν εἰπεῖν τινὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
 he-sacrificed, (and) before he-spoke to-any of-the soldiers,
 καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρακιώτην, τὸν
 having-called-in Silanus the Ambracian, — (who)
 γενόμενον τὸν μάντιν Κύρου. Ὁ δὲ Σιλανός,
 was the augur of-Cyrus. — But Silanus
 δεδιὼς μὴ ταῦτα γένηται, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ
 having-feared lest this might-happen, and the army

καταμείνῃ που, ἐκφέρει λόγον εἰς τὸ
might-remain some-where (here), he-brings word to the
στράτευμα, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται τὴν στρατιὰν
army that Xenophon desired the army
καταμείναι, καὶ οἰκίσαι πόλιν, καὶ περὶ
to-remain, and to-build (a) city, and (thereby) ac-
ποιήσασθαι ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν ἑαυτῷ. Δ' ὁ
quire (a) name and power for-himself. But —
Σιλανὸς αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
Silanus himself desired to-arrive in — Greece
ὅτι τάχιστα· γὰρ διεσεσώκει τρις-
'as quick 'as-possible; for he-had-saved (the) three-
χιλίους δαρεικούς, οὓς ἔλαβε παρὰ Κύρου, ὅτε
thousand darics, which he-received from Cyrus, when
θυόμενος ἠλήθευσε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας
sacrificing he-'told (the) 'truth (respecting) the ten days
Κύρῳ. Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν,
to-Cyrus. But (as respects) the soldiers, when they-heard
ἐδόκει μὲν τοῖς εἶναι βέλτιστον καταμείναι,
(this), it-seemed indeed to — (some) to-be the-best to-remain,
δὲ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὐ. Δὲ Τιμασίῳ
but — (others) the-most (numerous) not (to remain). But Timasius
ὁ Δαρδανεύς καὶ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος λέγουσι
the Dardanean and Thorax the Boeotian told
τινὰς ἐμπόρους παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν
some merchants being-present-there of-the Heracleans
καὶ Σινωπέων, ὅτι, εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι
and 'of (the) 'Sinopeans, that, if they-'do not procure
μισθὸν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
pay for-the army, so-as to-have — provisions (while,
ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι τοσαύτη δύναμις κιν-
sailing-out (on their voyage), | that so-large (a) force will-be
δυνεύσει μέναι ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
in-danger to-remain in — Pontus [there will be danger of se
Γὰρ Ξενοφῶν βοῶν
large a force remaining in Pontus]. For (said they) Xenophon

λεύεται, καὶ παρακαλεῖ ἡμᾶς, ἐπειδὰν τὰ πλοῖα
 planning (thus), and requests us, when the vessels
 ἔλθῃ, εἰπεῖν τότε ἐξαίφνης τῇ στρατιᾷ· Ἄνδρες,
 may-come, to-say then suddenly to-the army; Men,

νῦν μὲν ὁρῶμεν ἡμᾶς ὄντας ἀπόρους καὶ
 'we now indeed 'perceive you being at-a-loss (how) even
 ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ὥς
 in the voyage-homeward to-have — provisions, and how
 ἀπελθόντας οἴκαδε διῆσαι τι τοῦς οἴκοι·
 having-departed home to-have-benefitted any (of) — (those) at-home;
 εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε ἐκλεξάμενοι τῆς οἰκουμένης
 if indeed you-desire (it), having-selected — (an) inhabited

χώρας, κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν Πόντον ὅπῃ ἂν
 place, 'in (a) 'circle round the Pontus whenever 'you may
 βούλεσθε, κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐδέλοντα,
 'wish, to-take-possession-of (it), and — (those) indeed wishing
 ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, δὲ τὸν ἐδέλοντα μένειν
 (it), to-depart home, but — (those) wishing (it) to-remain
 αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δὲ πάρεσιν ὑμῖν, ὥστε, ὅπῃ
 here, ships indeed are-ready (here) for-you, so-that, when 'you
 ἂν βούλησθε, ἂν ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπέσοιτε.
 may 'wish, 'you may suddenly 'fall-on (such place).

Οἱ ἔμποροι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπήγγελλον
 The merchants hearing these (things), announced
 ταῖς πόλεσι· δὲ Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεύς
 (them) to-the cities; and Timasion the Dardanean
 ξυνέπεμψε αὐτοῖς Εὐρύμαχόν τε τὸν Δαρδανέα
 sent-with him Eurymachus also — (a) Dardanean
 καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιώτιον, ἐρῶντας τὰ αὐτὰ
 and Thorax the Boeotian, saying the self
 ταῦτα Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται,
 same (things). (The) Sinopeans and also (the) Heracleans,
 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πέμποισι πρὸς τὸν Τιμα-
 having-heard these (things), sent to — Tima-
 σίωνα καὶ κελεύουσι, λαβόντα χρήματα,
 sion and requested (him), having-received money.

προστατεῖσαι, ὅπως ἡ στρατιὰ
to-place-himself-at-the-head (of bringing it about), that the army

ἐκπλεύσῃ. Ὁ δὲ ἄσμενος ἀκούσας,
would-sail-out (of the Euxine). — (He) indeed willingly listening

ἐν ξυλλόγῳ, ὄντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
(to this), | (and) in (an) assembly, being the soldiers,

λέγει τάδε· Δεῖ
[and in an assembly of the soldiers.] spoke thus: It-becomes (us)

οὐ, ὦ ἄνδρες, προσέχειν τῇ μονῇ, οὐδὲ
not, O men, to-bend (our minds) on — remaining, nor

ποιεῖσθαι οὐδέν· περὶ πλείονος τῆς
to-make (no) (any) (country) of more-value (than) —

Ἑλλάδος. Ἀκούω δὲ τινὰς θύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῦτο, ἡ
Greece. I-hear indeed (that) some are-sacrificing about this

οὐδὲ λέγοντας ὑμῖν. Δὲ ἐπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν.
(and) not-even mentioning (it) to-you. And I-promise you,

ἂν ἐκπλέητε, παρέξειν ἑκάστῳ κυζικηὸν
if you-set-sail, to-furnish hereafter to-each-of-you (a) cysicene

μισθοφορὰν τοῦ μηνός, ἀπὸ
(about five dollars) as-pay — (per) month, (counting) from

νουμηνίας· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν
(the) beginning-of-the-month; and I-will-lead you to —

Τρωάδα, ἐνθεν καὶ εἰμι φυγὰς, καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ
Troas, whence even I-am (an) exile, and — my

πόλις ὑπάρξει ὑμῖν· γὰρ ἔχοντες
city will-aid you; for 'they (my countrymen) 'will willingly

δέχονται με. Δὲ ἐγὼ αὐτὸς ἡγήσομαι,
'receive me. And I myself will-conduct (you to places),

ἐνθεν λήψεσθε πολλὰ χρήματα. Εἰμι δὲ ἔμ-
where you-will-get much riches. I-am indeed well-

πειρος τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας, καὶ τῆς
acquainted-with — Æolia and — Phrygia, and —

Τρωάδος, καὶ πάσης τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Φαρ-
Troas, and all the government [satrapy] (of) — Phar-

ναβάζοι, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐκείθεν,
nabazus, | the indeed through the to-be nence, [partly as be-

δὲ τὰ δια τὸ ξυνεστρα-
 ing a native of that place], and — (partly) through | the to-make-cam-
 τεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ
 paigns-with [having served with] in that (place) with Clearchus
 τε καὶ Δερκυλλίδα.
 and also Dercyllidas.

Ἀὖτις δὲ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιωτίας, ὃς ἀεὶ ἐμάχετο
 Afterwards indeed Thorax the Bœotian, who always contended
 Ξενοφῶντι περὶ στρατηγίας, ἀναστὰς, ἔφη,
 with-Xenophon about (the) command-of-the-army, having-stood-up, said,
 εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, Χερρόνησον
 if they-should-depart from the Pontus, (that the) Chersonese
 ἔσεσθαι αὐτοῖς, χώραν καλὴν καὶ
 will-be (the place) for-them, (for that the) country (is) fine and
 εὐδαίμονα, ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ
 rich, so-that (it will be) to — (him) wishing-it (in his power)
 ἐνοικεῖν, δὲ τῷ μὴ βουλομένῳ
 to-dwell-therein, but to — (him) not wishing-it (it will be in his
 ἀπιεῖν οἴκαδε. Δὲ εἶναι γελοῖον, οὔσης
 power) to-depart home. And (that) it-was ridiculous, there-being
 ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου χώρας,
 in — Greece much and excellent land,
 μαστεύειν ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων. Δ' ἔστε, ἔφη,
 to-seek-for-it in the (country) of-barbarians. But until, said-he
 ἂν γένησθε ἐκεῖ, καὶ γὰρ, καθάπερ Τιμασίῳν,
 'you may 'get there, both-I, as-well-as Timasion
 ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν τὴν μισθοφορίαν. Δὲ ἔλεγε
 promise you — pay. And he-said
 ταῦτα, εἰδὼς Τιμασίῳν ἃ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ
 this, having-heard from-Timasion what the Heracleans and
 οἱ Σινωπεῖς ὑπισχνοῦντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ
 the Sinopeans had-promised (it) provided (that) they-set-sail. But —
 Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα. Δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ
 Xenophon during this was-silent. But Philæsius and
 Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀναστὰς ἔλεγον, ὥς εἶη δεινὸν
 Lyco- the Achæans having-stood-up sa'd, that it-was insufferable

μὲν Ξενοφῶντα ἰδία· τὴν πεῖθειν
 indeed that) Xenophon in-private 'should not-only persuade (people)
 καταμένειν, καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μνηστῆς, μὴ
 to-remain, but-also to-sacrifice about — (their) stay, not
 κοινοῦμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, δὲ εἰς τὸ κοινὸν
 having-communicated to-the army, and in the public
 ἀγορεύειν μεδὲν περὶ τούτων. Ὡς τε ὁ Ξενο-
 to-declare nothing about these (things). So-that — Xeno-
 φων ἠναγκάσθη ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε·
 phon was-obliged to-stand-up and to-speak thus:
 Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι, ὥς μὲν ὁρᾶτε, ὅποια
 I, O men, sacrifice, as indeed you-see, as-well-as
 δύναμαι, καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἑμαυτοῦ, ὅπως
 I-can, both for you and for myself, in-order-that
 τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πράττων
 I-happen both speaking and thinking and doing [in order
 ταῦτα ὅποια μέλ-
 that I may speak, and think and do] those (things) such-as it-may-be-
 λει ἔσεσθαι κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα τε ὑμῖν καὶ
 about to-be the-most-honourable and best not-only for-you but-also
 ἐμοί. Καὶ νῦν ἐδυόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου,
 for-me. And now I-was-sacrificing about this same (thing),
 εἰ εἴη ἄμεινον ἄρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς
 (namely) whether it-would-be better to-begin to-speak to
 ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων, ἢ παντάπασιν
 you and to-act respecting these (things), or altogether
 μηδὲ ἄπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ
 not to-touch the affair. And Silanus the
 μάντις ἀπεκρίνατο μοι τὸ μέγιστον
 augur determined for-me — (what was of the) greatest
 μὲν, τὰ ἱερὰ εἶναι καλὰ· (γὰρ
 (importance) indeed, (that) the victims were favourable; (for
 ἦδει καὶ ἐμὲ ὄντα οὐκ ἄπειρον
 he-knew also (that) I was not unskilled (in such things),
 διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ παρῆναι τοῖς ἱεροῖς·) δὲ
 by-reason-of — (my) always being-present at-the sacrifices;) and

ἔλεξε ὅτι φαίνοιτο ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς τις δόλος
 said that there-appeared in the victims (as if) some fraud
 καὶ ἐπιβουλὴ ἐμοί, ὡς ἄρα γινώσκων,
 and plotting (was agitating) against-me, as in-truth knowing,
 ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς.
 that he was-plotting to-calumniate me to you.
 Γαρ ἐξήνεγκε τὸν λόγον, ὡς ἐγὼ ἤδη διανοοίμεν
 For he-brought-out the report, that I already intended
 πράττειν ταῦτα, οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς.
 to-do these (things), not having-persuaded you (to give
 Δὲ ἐγὼ, εἰ μὲν ἑώρων ὑμᾶς ἀποροῦντας,
 your consent). And I, if indeed I-saw you destitute
 τοῦτ' ἂν ἐσχόπων ἀφ' οὗ
 (and in perplexity), for-that 'I would 'have-looked-out from which 'I
 ἂν γένοιτο, ὥστε ὑμᾶς λαβόντας πόλιν, τὸν
 might 'happen, that you having-taken (a) city, — (those)
 μὲν βουλόμενον, ἀποπλεῖν ἤδη, τὸν
 indeed desiring (it), (might) set-sail now, — (those)
 δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτῆ-
 indeed not desiring (it), (might do so) when they-might-have-
 σαιτο ἱκανὰ, ὥστε ὠφελῆσαι τι τοὺς οἰκείους
 acquired sufficient, so-as to-assist somewhat the families
 ἑαυτοῦ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ὁρῶ Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινω-
 of-themselves. But when I-see (the) Heracleans and (the) Sino-
 πείς πέμποντας τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ὑμῖν, ὥστε
 peans sending — vessels even to-you, so-as (that)
 ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ ἄνδρας ὑπισχνουμένους ὑμῖν μισθὸν
 you-may-set-sail, and men promising you pay
 ἀπὸ νομηνίας, δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι καλὸν
 from (the) beginning-of-the-month, it-seems to-me to-be (an) excellent
 σωζομένους ἐνθα βουλόμεθα λαμβάνειν
 (thing that) we-being-saved to-where we-wish (to be) to-receive
 μισθὸν τῆς πορείας· καὶ τε αὐτὸς παύ-
 pay 'for (making) 'the journey; and not-only myself do-
 νμαι ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὅποσοι προσ-
 desist from-this — (same) intention. but-also such-as have

ἦσαν πρὸς ἐμὲ, λέγοντες, ὥς χρὴ πράττειν
some-forward to me, saying, that it-is-necessary to-do

ταῦτα, φημι χρῆναι ἀνα-
these (things), I-say (to them also) (that) it-is-necessary to-
παύσασθαι. Γὰρ οὕτω γινώσκω· ὄντες
desist (from them). For thus I-know: being

πολλοὶ ὁμοῦ, ὥσπερ νυνί, ἂν δοκεῖτε μοι καὶ
many together, as now, 'you may seem to-me even

εἶναι ἔντιμοι, καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· (γὰρ ἐστὶν
to-be honoured, and to-have — provisions; | (for it-is

ἐν τῷ κρατεῖν καὶ τὸ
in the to-have-power [for it belongs to those having power] even —

λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων·) δ' ἂν διασπας-
to-take the (things) of-the weaker;) but — being-torn-

δέντες, καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως γενομένης
into-pieces, and — (your) force having-become (divided into)

κατὰ μικρά, ἂν οὔτε δύνασθε λαμβάνειν
-- small (parties), 'you might neither 'be-able to-procure

τροφὴν, οὔτ' ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε χαίροντες. Δοκεῖ
subsistence, nor might you-depart rejoicing. It-seems

οὖν μοι ἅπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπο-
therefore to-me (good) which (is good) for-you, (that) 'we (ought) 'to-

ρεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· καὶ εἰάν τις μείνῃ
depart for — Greece; and if any-one remains

ἢ ληφθῇ ἀπολιπὼν τινα, πρὶν τὸ πᾶν
or be-caught 'leaving any-one 'behind, before (that) the whole

στράτευμα εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλει αὐτὸν κρίνεσθαι
army is in safety (that) he is-to-be-judged

ὥς ἀδικοῦντα. Καὶ ὅτῳ, ἔφη ταῦτα δοκεῖ
as committing-a-crime. And to-whom, said-he these (things) seems

ἀράτῳ τὴν χεῖρα Ἄπαντες
(good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All

ἀνέτειναν.

held-up (their hands).

Ὁ Σιλανὸς δὲ ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν,
— Silanus indeed cried-out, and attempted to-speak

ὥς εἶη δίκαιον τὸν βουλόμενον
 (in order to show), that it-might-be lawful for — (those) desiring
 ἀπέναι. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ οὐκ ἠνείχοντο.
 (li) to-depart. The soldiers however 'did not 'tolerate
 ἀλλ' ἠπειλουν αὐτῷ, ὅτι εἰ λήφονται ἀποδι-
 (it) but threatened him, that if they-caught (him) running-
 δράσκοντα, ἐπιδήσοιεν τὴν δίκην.
 away, | they-would-'put the law 'on (him), [they would
 'Εντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἐγνωσαν,
 punish him]. Thereupon, when the Heracleans knew,
 ὅτι δεδογμένον εἶη ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ Ξενοφῶν
 that it-had-been-determined to-set-sail, and (that) Xenophon
 αὐτὸς ἐπέψηφικῶς εἶη, πέμπουσι μὲν τὰ πλοῖα,
 himself had-put-it-to-vote, sent indeed the ships,
 δὲ τὰ χρήματα ἃ ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίῳ
 but (as respects) the money which they-promised to-Timasion
 καὶ Θώρακι τῆς μισθοφορίας ἐψευσμέ-
 and Thorax (as) the pay (of the soldiers) they-had-
 νοι ἦσαν. Ἐνταῦθα δὲ οἱ ὑπεσχημένοι
 falsified (their word). Then indeed — (those) having-promised
 τῆς μισθοφορίαν ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ
 the pay were-astounded and
 ἐδεδοίκεσαν τὴν στρατιάν. Οὗτοι οὖν παραλα-
 feared the army. These therefore taking-with
 βόντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς, οἷς ἀνεκοι-
 (them) also the other generals, to-whom they-com-
 νοῦντο, ἃ πρόσθεν ἐπραττον, (δὲ
 municated, what 'they before (this) 'attempted-to-bring-about, and
 ἦσαν πάντες, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου,
 'they-were all (of them), except Neon the Asinian,
 ὃς ὑπεστρατήγει Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ Χειρισόφος οὐτι
 who commanded-under Cheirisophus, but Cheirisophus 'was not-ye
 παρῆν,) ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν
 'present,) they-went to Xenophon, and said
 ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοῖη
 that it-repented them (for what had been done), and it-might-seem

εἶναι κράτιστον πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ ἔστι
 to-be the-best to-sail to (the) Phasis, when there-were
 πλοῖα, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν χώραν Φασιανῶν
 vessels, and to-have-taken the country 'of (the) 'Phasians
 (δὲ υἱοῦς Αἰήτου ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν).
 'for (a) grandson of-Æetes happened to-be-reigning-over them).
 Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἂν εἴποι οὐδὲν
 But Xenophon replied, that 'he would 'say nothing
 τούτων εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· δὲ ὑμεῖς ξυλλέξαντες,
 of-this to the army; but you assembling
 ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε.
 'them), said-he, if you-wish, tell (them about the affair)
 Ἐνταῦθα Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς ἀποδείκνυται
 Then Timasion the Dardanian offered (the)
 γνώμην, οὐκ ἐκκλησιάζειν, ἀλλὰ
 opinion, (that) they-'ought not 'to-call-a-council (of all), but
 πρῶτον τοὺς λοχαγοὺς πειρᾶσθαι πείδειν
 first the captains (ought) to-endeavour to-persuade
 ἕκαστον αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἀπελθόντες
 | each (of the men) of-himself [his own men]. And departing
 ἐποίησαν ταῦτα.
 they-did these (things).

CHAPTER VII.

Οἱ στρατιῶται οὖν ἀνεπίδοντο ταῦτα
 THE soldiers therefore heard (that) these (things)
 παττόμενα. Καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει, ὡς Ξενοφῶν
 were-doing. And — Neon tells (them), that Xenophon,
 ἀναπεπεικῶς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς, διανοεῖται,
 having-persuaded the other generals, was-deliberating,
 ἐξαπατήσας, ἄγειν πάλιν τοὺς στρατιώτας
 deceiving (them), to-lead back-again the soldiers

εἰς Φᾶσιν. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαιτες
 to (the) Phasia. But the soldiers hearing (this,
 χαλεπῶς ἔφερον· καὶ ἐγίγνοντο ξύλλογοι,
 were greatly 'excited. and there-were assemblages,
 καὶ κύκλοι ξυνίσταντο, καὶ ἦσαν μάλα φοβεροί,
 and circles were-formed, and they-were much to-be-feared,
 μὴ ποιήσειαν, οἷα καὶ ἐποίησαν τοὺς κήρυκας
 est they-might-do, as 'they even 'had-done to-the heralds
 Κόλχων καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους· γὰρ
 'of (the) 'Colchians and the superintendents-of-the-markets; for
 ὅσοι μὴ κατέφυγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, κατε-
 as-many-as 'did not 'take-refuge in the sea, were-
 λείσθησαν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ᾗσθάνετο,
 destroyed. When however Xenophon perceived (these
 ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὥς τάχιστα ξυνα-
 things), it-seemed (best) to-him 'as speedily 'as-possible to-call-
 γαγεῖν ἀγοράν αὐτῶν, καὶ μὴ ἑᾷσι
 together (an) assembly of-them (the soldiers), and not to-have-permitted
 ξυλλεγεῖν αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν
 (them) to-assemble of-their-own-accord; and he-ordered the
 κήρυκα ξυλλέγειν ἀγοράν. Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ
 nerald to-collect-together (a) meeting. But — (they) when
 ἤκουσαν τοῦ κήρυκος, ξυνέδραμον καὶ
 they-heard (the proclamation) of-the herald, ran-together even
 μάλα ἐτοίμως. Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν οὐ μὲν
 very speedily. Then Xenophon 'did not indeed
 κατηγορεῖ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν,
 'accuse the generals, that they-came to him,
 δὲ λέγει ὧδε·
 but speaks thus:

Ἀκούω, ὦ ἄνδρες, τινὰ διαβάλλειν ἐμὲ ὥς
 I-hear, O men, (that) some-one accuses me that
 ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς
 I name'y deceiving you intend to-lead (you) to (the)
 Φᾶσιν. Ἀκούσατε μου οὖν πρὸς θεῶν·
 Phasia. Hear me therefore for (the sake) of-the-gods,

καὶ εἰ μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνομαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρή
and if indeed I may-appear to-do-wrong, it-'is not 'proper

με ἀπελθεῖν ἐνδένδε, πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην
(that) I should-depart hence, | before 'I may 'give justice;

δ' οἱ διαβάλλοντες ἐμὲ
[before I suffer punishment ;] but (if) — (those) calumniating me

ἂν φαίνονται ὑμῖν ἀδικεῖν, χρῆσθε αὐτοῖς οὕτως
may appear to-you to-do-wrong, treat them so

ὥσπερ ἄξιον. Ὑμεῖς δὲ δήπου ἴστε, ἔφη, ὅθεν
as is-fitting. You indeed certainly know, said-he, whence

ἥλιος ἀνίσχει, καὶ ὅπου δύεται, καὶ ὅτι,
(the) sun rises, and where it-sets, and to-whom,

εἰ μὲν μέλλῃ ἰέναι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, δεῖ
if indeed he-intends to-go to — Greece, (to him) it-is-necessary

πορεύεσθαι πρὸς ἐσπέραν· ἣν δέ τις βούληται
to-proceed to (the) west; if indeed any-one might-wish

εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοῦμπαλιν πρὸς
(to go) to the barbarians, (on) the-contrary (he must go) to (the)

ἕω. Ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις ἂν δύναίτο ἐξαπα-
east. Is-there therefore any-one (that) might be-able so-to-

τῆσαι ὑμᾶς τοῦτο, ὥς ἥλιος,
deceive you in-this, as (to make you believe that the) sun,

ἐνθεν μὲν ἀνίσχει, δὲ δύεται ἐνταῦθα, δὲ
there-where indeed it-was, 'it also 'sets there, and

ἐνθα δύεται, δ' ἀνίσχει ἐντεῦθεν; Ἀλλὰ μὲν
where it-sets, 'it also 'rises there? But indeed

καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι βορέας μὲν
even this at-least know, that (the) north-wind 'will indeed

φέρει ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
carry (us) out-of the Pontus (Euxinus) towards — Greece,

δὲ νότος εἰσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγετε,
eu. (the) south-wind inwards towards (the) Phasis, and you-say,

ἦταν βορρᾶς πνέη, ὥς εἰσιν καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰς
when (the) north-wind may-blow, that it-is fair sailing for

τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτο οὖν ὅπως ἔστιν, τις
— Greece. In-this therefore how is-it (possible), any-one

ἂν ἐξαπατήσαι ὑμᾶς, ὥστε ἐμβαίνειν, ὁπότεν
could deceive you, so-as to-embark, when (the)

νότος πνέη; Ἄλλὰ γάρ ἐμβιβῶ
south-wind may-blow? But perhaps (you will say that) I shall-'put

ὁπότεν ἢ γαλήνη. Ἐγὼ
(you) 'on-board when there-may-be (a) calm. Will I

οὐκοῦν μὲν πλεύσομαι ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ, δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐν
not-therefore indeed 'sail in one ship, but you in

ἐκατόν τοῦλάχιστον; Πῶς οὖν ἂν ἐγὼ ἢ
(a) hundred (at) the-least? How therefore could I either

βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς πλεῖν ζὺν ἐμοὶ, μὴ βουλο-
force you to-sail with me, (you) not being-

μένους, ἢ ἐξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι. Δὲ ποῶ
willing, or deceiving lead (you away). But I-make

ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατηθέντας καὶ κατα-
[I will suppose] (that) you having-been-deceived and having-

γονητευθέντας ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἔχειν εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ
been-tricked by me to-come to (the) Phasis; and

δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν·
indeed (that) we-descend (from the vessels) to the land

δήπου γνώσεσθε, ὅτι ἐστέ οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι.
you-'will certainly 'know, that you-are not in — Greece.

Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ὁ ἐξηπατηκὸς ἔσομαι εἷς, δὲ
And I indeed who have-been-deceiving (you) will-be (but) one, but

ἡμεῖς οἱ ἐξηπατημένοι ἔχοντες ἐγγὺς μυρίων
you — (who) have-been-deceived having near ten thousand

ὅπλα. Πῶς οὖν ἂν εἷς ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον
(men under) arms. | How therefore could one man more

δοίῃ δίκην,
given justice, [how could one man more effectually have brought punish-

ἢ βουλευόμενος οὕτω τε περὶ
ment on himself,] than (for) planning thus not-only about

ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ὑμῶν; Ἄλλ' οὗτοι εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι
himself but-also (about) you? But these are the words

ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἡλιθίων καὶ φοβούντων, ὅτι ἐγὼ
of-men even foolish 'and envying 'ma. however,

τιμῶμαι ὑφ' ὑμῶν. Καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἂν
 am-honoured by you. Although not justly at-least —
 φθοιοῖεν μοι· γὰρ ἐγὼ ἢ κωλύω τίνα λέγειν,
 do-they-annoy me; for 'do I either 'prevent any-one to-speak,
 εἰ τις δύναται τι ἀγαθὸν ἐν ὑμῖν,
 if any-one is-able (to say) any-thing good (or advantageous) for you,
 ἢ μάχεσθαι, εἰ τις ἐθέλει, τε ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ
 or to-fight, if any-one wishes, not-only for you but-also
 ἐαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐγρηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας
 (for) himself, or to-watch for — your
 ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελούμενον; Γὰρ τί, ὑμῶν
 safety (if) caring (to do so)? For (in) what, you
 αἰρουμένων ἄρχοντας, εἰμι ἐγὼ ἐμποδῶν τινι;
 choosing officers, am I (a) hindrance to-any-one?
 παρίημι, ἀρχέτω· μόνον φαινέσθω
 I-yeild (to him), 'let (him) 'command; alone 'let (him) 'appear
 ποιῶν τι ἀγαθὸν ὑμᾶς. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
 doing something good (and advantageous) for-you. But howev-
 μὲν τὰ εἰρημένα περὶ τούτων ἀρκεῖ ἐμοί·
 indeed the (things) said about this are-sufficient for-me,
 εἰ δὲ τις ὑμῶν οἶεται ἢ αὐτὸς ἂν ἐξαπατη-
 if indeed any-one of-you thinks that he-himself could have-been-
 θῆναι ταῦτα, ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπα-
 deceived (as respects) these (things), or (that) another (could) have
 τῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδα-
 deceived (him) (as respects) these (things), speaking 'let (him) 'in-
 σκέτω. Δὲ ὅταν ἔχητε ἅλις τούτων,
 form (us). But when you-may-have enough of-these (things),
 μὴ ἀπέλθητε, πρὶν ἀκούσητε οἷον πρᾶγμα
 'do not 'depart, before you-may-have-heard what thing
 ὁρῶ ἀρχόμενον ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ· ὃ εἰ ἔπεισι καὶ
 I-see reigning in the army; which if it-go-on and
 ἔσται, οἷον ὑποδείκνυσιν, ὧρα ἡμῖν
 will-be, as it-'shows (itself) 'gradually, (it is) time for-us
 βουλευέσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, μὴ ὀποφαινόμεθα
 to-deliberate about us ourselves, lest we-appear

τε κάκιστοι καὶ αἰσχιστοι ἄνδρες, καὶ πρὸς
not-only the-worst but-also the-most-infamous men, both before

θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ
(the) gods and before men (and) both (before) friends and
πολεμίων.
foes.

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα εἰδού-
The soldiers indeed hearing these (things) won-
μασάν τε ὅ τι εἶη, καὶ ἐκέλευον λέγειν
dered not-only what it-might-be, but-also requested (him) to-say
'Ἐκ τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν· Ἐπίστασθε
(what it was). On this he-begins again: You-know

που, ὅτι ἦν χωρία ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι
perhaps, that there-are places in the mountains (belonging to the)
βαρβαρικά, φίλια τοῖς Κερασούντιοις, ὅθεν τινὲς
barbarians, friendly to-the Cerasuntians, whence some

κατιόντες ἐπῶλουν ἡμῖν καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ ἄλλα
coming-down sold us both (cattle for) victims and other

ὧν εἶχον, δέ καὶ τινες ὑμῶν δοκοῦσι μοι
(things) which they-had, and also some of-you seem to-me

ἐλθόντες ἐγγυτάτω χωρίον τούτων,
having-gone to-the-nearest places of-these (people), (and)

ἀγοράσαντές τι, ἀπελθεῖν πάλιν. Κλεάρετος
having-purchased something, to-have-gone-away again. Clearetus

ὁ λοχαγός, καταμαδὼν τοῦτο, ὅτι εἶη
the captain, having-learned this, that (this place) was

καὶ μικρὸν καὶ ἀφύλακτον, διὰ τὸ φίλων
both small and unguarded, on-account-of the friendship.

νομίζεῖν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
(that they) supposed to-be (between us), went against them

τῆς νυκτὸς ὥς πορδήσων, εἰπὼν οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν.
at — night as about-plundering, telling none of-us.

Διενενόητο δέ, εἰ λάβοι τὸ χωρίον τόδε,
He-had-proposed however, if he-should-take — (this) place here,

μηκέτι μὲν ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὸ στράτευμα, δὲ εἰςθάς
never-more indeed to-go to the army, but embarking

ἂς πλοῖον, ἐν ᾧ οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ ἐτίγ-
 in (board a) vessel, in which the companions of-himself hap-
 χανον παραπλέοντες, καὶ ἐνδέμενος
 pened-to-be sailing-along (the coast), and putting-on (board)
 εἰ τι λάβοι ἀποπλέων οἴχεσθαι
 | if any [whatever] he-might-take, (and then) sailing-away to-depart
 ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. Καὶ ξυνωμολόγησαν ταῦτα
 out-of the Pontus. And they-concerted these (things)
 αὐτῷ οἱ σύσκηνοι ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου, ὡς
 with-him, (namely) — (those his) companions from the vessel, as
 ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομι. Οὖν παρακαλέσας, ὅπόσους
 I now perceive. Therefore having-called-together, as-many-as
 ἐπειδεν, ἤγεεν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. Δ' ἡμέρα
 he-had-persuaded, he-led (them) against the place. But day
 γενομένη φθάνει αὐτὸν πορευόμενον,
 have-become overtakes him proceeding (on his march),
 καὶ οἱ ἄνδρωποι ξυστάντες βάλλοντες
 and the men (of the place) having-come-together hurling
 καὶ παίοντες ἀπο ἰσχυρῶν τόπων, ἀποκτείνουσι
 and striking from (the) strong places, they-kill
 τε τὸν Κλεάρετον καὶ συχνοὺς τῶν ἄλλων.
 not-only — Clearetus but-also many of-the other (men);
 δ' οἱ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ ἀποχωροῦσι εἰς Κερασοῦντα.
 out — some of-them also go-away to Cerasus.
 Ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἡμεῖς
 These (things) indeed were on the day on-which we
 ἐξωρμῶμεν δεῦρο πεζῇ· τινὲς δὲ τῶν
 set-out hither on-foot; (while) some indeed of — (those who
 πλεόντων ἦσαν ἔτι ἐν Κερασοῦντι, οὕτω
 were) sailing were still in Cerasus, 'having not-yet'
 ἀνηγμένοι. Μετὰ τοῦτο, ὡς οἱ Κερασούντιοι
 'brought-up (the anchors). After this, as the Cerasuntians
 λέγουσιν, ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου
 say, there-arrived of-the (people) from the place
 τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων, χρήζοντες ἐλθεῖν
 three men of-the older-class, desiring to go.

πρὸς τὸ κοινόν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐ
 to the public-council (of officers). But when they-'did not
 κατέλαβον ἡμᾶς, ἔλεγον πρὸς τοὺς Κερασούντιους,
 'find us, they-told to the Cerasuntians,
 ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί δόξειεν ἡμῖν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ'
 that they-wondered why it-seemed to-us (proper) to-go against
 αὐτούς. Ἐφασαν ἐπεὶ μέντοι
 them. 'They (the Cerasuntians) 'said (that) when however
 σφεῖς λέγειν, ὅτι τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ γένοιτο ἀπὸ
 they told (them), that the thing 'did not 'happen from
 κοινοῦ, αὐτοὺς τε ἡδεσθαι
 common (or public authority), (that) they 'were not-only 'delighted
 καὶ μέλλειν πλεῖν ἐνθάδε, ὥς λέξαι τὰ
 but-also (that they) were-about 'o-sail hither, so-as to-relate the
 γενόμενα ἡμῖν, καὶ κελεύειν τοὺς
 (things) having-happened to-us, and (that) they-requested — (those)
 δεομένους τούτου λαβόντας τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν
 desiring this (that) taking the dead to-bury
 αὐτούς. Δὲ τινὲς Ἑλλήνων, τῶν
 them. But some (of the) Greeks, — (those namely)
 ἀποφυγόντων, ἔτυχον ἔτι ὄντες ἐν Κερασούντι.
 having-fled-away, happened still (being) (to be) in Cerasus;
 δ' αἰσδόμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους, ὅποι ἴοιεν,
 and having-perceived the barbarians, (and) whither they-were-going,
 αὐτοὶ τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς λίθοις, καὶ
 they not-only dared to-throw — stones, but-also
 παρεκελεύοντο τοῖς ἄλλοις. Καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες
 encouraged — others (to do so). And the men
 ἀποδνήσκουσι, ὄντες οἱ τρεῖς πρέσβεις, καταλευσ-
 die, being the three ambassadors, stoned-to-
 θέντες. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, οἱ Κερασούντιοι
 death. When indeed this happened, the Cerasuntians
 ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς, καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ
 come to us, and relate the affair; and
 ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἤχθόμεθα
 we the general hearing (it) were-greatly-excited-against

τε τοῖς γεγενημένοις, καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα ξὺν
 not-only the (things) having-happened, but-also we-consulted with
 τοῖς Κερασούντιοις, ὅπως οἱ νεκροὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 the Cerasuntians, how the dead of-the Greeks
 ἂν ταφείησαν. Δὲ συγκαθήμενοι ἔξωθεν τῶν
 might be-buried. And sitting-together outside of-the
 ὀπλων, ἐξαίφνης ἀκούομεν πολλοῦ θορίθου,
 place-of-arms, suddenly we-hear much noise-and-outcry,
 Παιε, παιε, βάλλε, βάλλε, καὶ τάχα δὴ ὀρώμεν
 Strike, strike, throw, throw, and immediately indeed saw
 πολλοὺς προσθέοντας ἔχοντας λίθους ἐν ταῖς
 many (men) running-together having stones in —
 χερσί, δὲ καὶ ἀναιρουμένους. Καὶ μὲν
 (their) hands, and also 'picking (them) 'up. And indeed
 οἱ Κερασούντιοι ὥς ἂν καὶ ἑωρακότες τὸ
 the Cerasuntians as (they) may even have-perceived the
 πρᾶγμα παρ' ἑαυτοῖς, δέισαντες ἀπο-
 affair ('hat happened) among themselves, fearing re-
 χωροῦσι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. Ἦσαν δὲ, νῆ Δία,
 treat to — (their) vessels. There-was indeed, by Jupiter,
 καὶ οἱ ἡμῶν ἔδεισαν. Ἐγώ γε μὴν ἦλθον
 even — (some) of-us (who) feared. I-at-least indeed went
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἠρώτων, ὅ τι τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐστὶ.
 to them, and inquired, what the affair is.
 Δὲ ἦσαν τῶν μὲν οἱ ἠδῆσαν οὐδέν, δὲ
 And there-were (some) of — (them) indeed who knew nothing, and
 ὁμῶς εἶχον λίθους ἐν ταῖς χερσίν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 yet had stones in — (their) hands. When indeed
 ἐπέτυχον τινὶ εἰδότει, λέγει μοι ὅτι οἱ ἀγορα-
 I found some-one knowing (it), he-tells me that the superintendents-
 νόμοι ποιοῦσι τὸ σπράτευμα δεινότατα. Ἐφ'
 of-the-market treat the army most-shamefully. And
 τούτῳ τις ὄρα τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζή-
 this (time) some-one saw the superintendent-of-markets Ze-
 λάρχον ἀποχωροῦντα πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ
 tarchus retreating to the sea, and

ἀνέκραγε· δὲ οἱ ὥς ἤκουσαν ἵενται ἐπ' αὐτὸν
 called-out; and — (those) that heard (it) rushed towards him
 ὥσπερ ἢ ἀγρίου σὺός ἢ ἐλάφου φανέντι οὕτως.
 as-if either (a) wild boar or (a) stag were-appearing.
 Δ' οἱ Κερασούντιοι αὖ, ὥς εἶδον ὁρμῶντας κατὰ
 But the Cerasuntians also, as they-saw (them) hurrying towards
 αὐτούς, σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἵεσθαι ἐπὶ
 them, evidently thinking (that they were) about-to-rush against
 ἑαυτοὺς, φεύγουσι δρόμῳ, καὶ ἐμπίπτουσιν
 themselves, flee in-haste, and throw (themselves)
 εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. Δὲ καὶ τινες ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
 into the sea. And also some of-us ourselves
 ξυνεισέπεσον, καὶ ὅστις ἐτύγχανε
 'threw (themselves) 'together-in (the sea), and whoever happened
 μὴ ἐπιστάμενος νεῖν ἐπνίγετο. Καὶ τί δοκεῖτε
 not being-skilled to-swim was-drowned. And what do-you-think
 τούτους; Μὲν οὐδέν ἠδίκουι,
 of-these (persons fleeing thus)? They-'did indeed no 'wrong,
 δὲ ἔδεισαν μὴ τις λύττα ὥσπερ κυσὶν ἐμ-
 but they-feared lest some madness like (that of) dogs might-
 πεπτώκοι ἡμῖν. Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ἔσται τοιαῦτα,
 have-fallen-on us. If then these (things) are-to-be even-thus,
 θεάσασθε, οἷα ἡ κατάστασις τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔσται
 see, what the constitution of-the army will-be
 ἡμῖν. Ὑμεῖς μὲν οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε
 w-us. You indeed the whole (army) 'will not 'be
 κίριοι οὔτε ἀνελεῖσθαι πόλεμον ᾧ ἂν
 masters either to-undertake (any) war which 'you may
 βούλησθε, οὔτε καταλῦσαι, δὲ ἰδίᾳ
 'wish, or to-'put-an-end-to (it) 'by-making-peace, but in-private
 ὃ βουλόμενος ἄξει στράτευμα ἐφ' ὃ τι
 — (he) desiring (it) will-lead (an) army against what 'they
 ἂν θέλῃ. Καὶ τινες πρέσβεις ἴωσι ὑμᾶς, ἢ
 may 'wish. And (if) any ambassadors might-come-to-you, either
 δεόμενοι εἰρήνης ἢ τινός ἄλλου, οἱ βουλόμενοι,
 asking for-peace or anything else, — (those) wishing (it)

κατακτείναντες τούτους ποιήσουσιν
 having-killed these (ambassadors) will-make (that)
 ὑμᾶς μὴ ἰκοῦσαι τῶν λόγων τῶν ἰόντων
 you 'will not 'hear the words of — (those) coming
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Ἔπειτα δὲ, οὓς μὲν ὑμεῖς ἅπαντες
 to you. Then also, (those) whom indeed you all
 ἂν ἐλησδε ἄρχοντας, ἔσονται ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ χώρᾳ·
 may have-chosen rulers, | will-be in no place;
 δ' ὅστις ἂν ἐληται ἑαυτὸν
 [will be of the authority:] but whoever may take-upon himself
 στρατηγόν, καὶ ἐθέλῃ λέγειν, Βάλλε,
 (the office of) general, and wishes to-say, Strike,
 βάλλε, ὧτος ἔσται ἱκανὸς κατακατεῖν, καὶ
 strike, this (person) will-be able to-kill, both
 ἄρχοντα καὶ ἰδιώτην, ὃν ὑμῶν ἂν ἐθέλῃ,
 commander and private, whom of-us 'he may 'wish,
 ἄκριτον· ἣν ὧσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ, ὥσπερ
 without-trial, if there-may-be — (those) obeying them, as
 καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. Δὲ σκεψασθε οἷα καὶ
 even now has-happened. Also consider what-sort-of (things) even
 οἱ οὗτοι αὐθαίρετοι στρατηγοὶ διαπεπράχασιν
 — these (same) self-chosen generals effected
 ὑμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν Ζήλαρχος ὁ ἀγορανόμος,
 for-you. For indeed Zelarchus the superintendent-of-the-market,
 εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, ἀποπλέων οἴχεται, οὐ
 if indeed he-has-'done you 'wrong, sailing-away he-has-departed, not
 δούς ὑμῖν δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖ,
 rendering you justice; if indeed he-'has not 'done (you) 'wrong,
 φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δέσας μὴ ἀποθάνῃ
 he-flees from the camp, fearing lest he-may-die
 ἀδίκως ἄκριτος. Οἱ δὲ καταλεύσαντες τοὺς
 unjustly without-trial. — (Those) indeed having-stoned the
 πρέσβεις, διεπράξαντο ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν
 ambassadors, have-effected for-you alone indeed of-the
 Ἑλλήνων μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι εἰς Κερασούντα,
 Greeks (that it is) not safe to-be in Cerasus

μή ἂν ἀφικνεῖσθαι σὺν ἰσχύϊ· δὲ
unless 'it may 'have-been-gone-there with (a) strong-force; but (as respects)

τοῖς νεκροῖς, οὓς πρόσθεν αἰτοὶ οἱ κατακαίνοντες
the dead, whom previously those — having-killed

ἐκέλευον θάπτειν, διεπράξαντο μὴδὲ εἶναι
(them) requested (you) to-bury, they-have-rendered (it) not-even to-be

ἀσφαλὲς ἔτι ἀνελεῖσθαι τούτους ξὺν
safe now (for you) to-'carry these (dead) 'off (even) with

κηρυκίῳ. Γὰρ τίς ἐδεήσεται ἰέναι κῆρυξ,
(the) herald's-staff. For who will-desire to-go (as a) herald,

ἀπεκτονὼς κήρυκας; Ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἐδεήθημεν
having-killed heralds? But we requested (the

Κερασούντων θάψαι αὐτοὺς. Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα
Cerasuntians to-bury them. | If indeed therefore these

ἔχει καλῶς,
(things) have handsomely, [if these proceedings be right,] 'let (them)

δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα, ὥς
'appear (good) to-you (and be sanctioned by you), in-order-that, as

τοιούτων ἔσομένων, τις καὶ ποιήσῃ φυλακὴν
these-same (things) are-about-to-be, one 'may both 'set (a) guard

ἰδίᾳ, καὶ πειράται σκηνοῦν ἔχων τὰ ἐρυμνά
in-private, and endeavour to-lodge, having the strong-places

ὑπερδέξια. Εἰ μὲντοι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα δοκεῖ
'over (his) 'right. If however — these-same deeds seem

ὑμῖν εἶναι θηρίων, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀνδρώπων,
to-you to-be (those) of-wild-beasts, but not (those) of-men

σκοπεῖτε τινα παύσαν αὐτῶν· εἰ δὲ μὴ, πρὸς
look-for some cessation of-them; if indeed not, —

Διός, πῶς ἢ θύσομεν θεοῖς
(in the name of) Jupiter, how either shall-we-sacrifice 'to (the) 'gods

ἡδέως, ποιοῦντες ἀσεβῆ ἔργα, ἢ πῶς μαχούμεθα
cheerfully, (while) performing impious deeds, or how shall-we-fight

πολεμίους, ἣν κατακαίνωμεν ἀλλήλους; Δὲ
'our' enemies, if we-kill one-another? And

τίς φιλία πόλιν δέξεται ἡμᾶς, ἥτις ἂν ὄρα
what friendly city will-receive us, which may see

τοσαύτη ἀνομίαν ἐν ἡμῖν· δὲ τίς θαρρῶν
such lawlessness among us? and what-one confiding

ἄξει ἀγορὰν, ἣν φαινόμεθα ἔξαμαρ-
will-bring (provisions for a) market, if we-appear offend

τάνοντες περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μέγιστα; δὲ
ing as-respects — these the-greatest (of things)? and

δὴ οὐ οἴομεθα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου πάντων,
truly (there) where we-think to-find (the) praise of-all,

τίς ἂν ἐπαινέσειεν ἡμᾶς ὄντας τοιούτους; γὰρ
what-one might praise us being such? for

μὲν ἡμεῖς, ὅτι οἶδ', ἂν φαίημεν τοὺς εἶναι
indeed we, as they, would pronounce — (those) to-be

πονηροὺς ποιοῦντας τὰ τοιαῦτα.
bad (men) doing — these-same (things).

Ἐκ τούτου πάντες ἀνιστάμενοι ἔλεγον τοῖς
On this all rising-up said (that) —

μὲν ἄρξαντας τούτων δοῦναι
(those) indeed having-been-leaders of-these (things) | (ought) to-give

δίκην, δὲ τοῦ λοιποῦ μη-
justice, [ought to be punished,] and (for) the future (it should) no-

κέτι ἐξεῖνα ἄρξαι ἀνομίας· ἐὰν δὲ
more be-allowed to-begin (any) lawlessness (of the kind); if indeed

τις ἄρχῃ, αὐτοὺς ἄγεσθαι
any-one should-command (these things), (that) they were-to-be-led

ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, δὲ τοὺς στρατηγούς καταστήσαι
to death, and (that) the generals should-'put

πάντας εἰς δίκας· δὲ εἶναι δίκας, καὶ εἰ
all on trial; and there were) to-be trials, even if

τις ἡδίκητο τι ἄλλο ἐξ οὗ Κῦρος
any-one had-done-wrong (in) any-thing else since Cyrus

ἀπέθανε· δὲ ἐποίησαντο τοὺς λοχαγούς
die!; and they-made the captains (the)

δικαστὰς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶντος παραινοῦντος, καὶ τῷ
judges And Xenophon recommending, and the

μάντων συμβουλευόντων, καὶ ἔδοξε καθῆραι
 augurs agreeing-thereto. 'it even 'seemed (good) to-purify
 τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ καθαρμός ἐγένετο.
 the army. And (the) purification took-place.

CHAPTER VIII.

Δὲ καὶ ἔδοξε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὑποσχεῖν
 AND also it-seemed (good that) the generals should-undergo
 δίκην τοῦ χρόνον παρεληλυθότος.
 (a) trial (for their conduct) during-the time having-gone-by.

Καὶ δίδόντων Φιλήσιος μὲν ὥφλε
 And giving (it) Philesius indeed was-condemned (to pay)
 καὶ Ξανθικλῆς τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαν
 and-also Xanthicles (for) the (careless) guarding of-the merchant-
 λικῶν τὸ μείωνα χρημάτων εἴκοσι μνᾶς.
 vessels the deficiency of-things (of their cargoes) twenty minæ.

Δὲ Σοφαίνετος δέκα μνᾶς, ὅτι αἰρεθεὶς
 And Sophænetus (was fined) ten minæ, because having-been-chosen
 ἄρχων κατημέλει. Δὲ τινες κατηγορήσαν
 commander he-neglected (his duty). And some accused

Ξενοφῶντος, φάσκοντες παῖεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ,
 Xenophon, saying (that) they-were-struck by him,
 καὶ ἐποιοῦντο τὴν κατηγορίαν ὡς ὑβρί
 and they-made the accusation (against him) as being-
 ζοντος. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς ἐκέ-
 insolent (and overbearing). And — Xenophon standing-up re-

λευσε τὸν λέξαντα πρῶτον εἰπεῖν, ποῦ καὶ
 quæsted the (one) having-spoken first to-say, where also
 ἐπλήγη. Δὲ ὁ ἀποκρίνεται. Ὅπου καὶ
 he-might-have-been-beaten. And — he-replied: Where even

ἀπωλλύμεθα τῷ ρίγει, καὶ ἦν πλείστη
 we-were-perishing with-the cold, and (where) there-was the-most

χιω . Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ χειμῶνος
 now. And — (Xenophon) said : But indeed even (the) cold
 ὄντος γε οἴου λέγεις, δὲ σίτου ἐπιλελοιπότος,
 being at-least as-great-as you-say, and provisions had-become-deficient,
 δὲ παρόν οἴνου μὴδ' ὁσφραίνεσθαι, δὲ
 and there-was-present of-wine not-even (enough) to-smell-to, and
 πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων ὑπὸ πόνων, δὲ
 many (of us) being-exhausted with fatigue, and (the)
 πολεμίων ἐπομένων, εἰ ὕβριζον
 enemy following, if (then) I-acted-insolently (and overbear-
 ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ, ὁμολογῶ εἶναι καὶ
 ingly) on such (an) occasion, I-acknowledge (myself) to-be even
 ὑβριστότερος τῶν ὄνων, οἷς φασιν, ὑπὸ
 more-spiteful (than) — asses, which it-is-said, (that) from
 τῆς ὕβρεως, κόπον οὐκ ἐγγίγνεσθαι. Δὲ καὶ
 — spite, fatigue 'is not 'engendered. And also
 ὁμῶς λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης. Πότερον
 likewise tell (us), said-he, for what you-were-beaten. Whether
 ἦτουν σέ τι, καὶ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐδίδως
 did-I-ask you for-any-thing, and, when you-'did not 'give (it)
 μοι ἔπαιον; ἀλλ' ἀπήτουν; ἀλλὰ
 to-me I-struck (you)? but did-I-'demand (anything) 'back? or
 μαχόμενος περὶ παιδικῶν, ἀλλὰ μεθύων ἔτα-
 was-fighting about (a) beloved (object), or being-in-liquor, did-
 ρώνησα; Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφησεν
 I-act-turbulently-like-a-drunken-man (to you)? When indeed he-said
 οὐδὲν τούτων, ἐπῆρετο αὐτόν,
 (that it was) nothing of-these (things), (Xenophon) asked him,
 εἰ ὀπλιτεύοι; Οὐκ, ἔφη. Πάλιν, εἰ
 if he-served-as-a-heavy-armed-soldier? No, said-he. Again, if
 πελτάζοι. Οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ἔφη, ἀλλ' ταχδεῖς ὑπὸ
 as-a-targeteer. Not-even this, said-he, but having-been-appointed by
 τῶν συσκήνων ἐλαύνειν ἡμίονον ὦν
 — (his) comrades to-drive (a) mule (he himself) being
 ἐλεύθερος. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀναγινώσκει αὐτόν,
 (a) freeman Then indeed he-recognised him,

καὶ ἤρετο· Ἦ εἰ σὺ ὁ ἀπαγαγὼς
 and asked (him): Whether — (are) you the (man) carrying-away
 τὸν κάμνοντα; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη· γὰρ σὺ
 the (person) being-sick? Yes — by-Jupiter, said-he; for you
 ἠνάγκαζες· δὲ διέρριψας τὰ σκεύη τῶν
 compelled (me to do so); and you-threw-about the baggage of —
 ἐμῶν συσκήνων. Ἀλλ' ἡ διὰρρίψις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
 my comrades. But the throwing-about, said — Xeno-
 φῶν, ἐγένετο τις τοιαύτη. Διέδωκα ἄλλοις
 phen, happened something like-this. I-distributed (it) to-others
 ἄγειν, καὶ ἐκέλευσα ἀπαγαγεῖν
 to-carry, and ordered (them) to-'carry (such baggage) 'away
 πρὸς ἐμέ, καὶ ἀπολαβὼν ἅπαντα σῶα, ἀπέδωκά
 for me, and having-received all safe, I-delivered (it)
 σοι, ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα ἐμοί.
 to-you, when also you produced the man to-me.
 Ἀκούσατε, ἔφη, οἶον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο·
 Hear, said-he, how indeed the thing happened;
 γὰρ καὶ ἄξιον.
 for (it is) even worth (your while).

Ἀνὴρ κατελείπετο, διὰ τὸ μηκέτι
 (A) man was-left-behind, on-account (that) — he-'was no-longer
 δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἐγίγνωσκον
 able to-proceed. And I indeed knew
 τὸν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἴη εἰς ἡμῶν· δὲ
 the man so-much (only) (as) that he-was one of-us; and
 ἠνάγκασα σὲ ἄγειν τοῦτον, ὥς μὴ
 I-obliged you to-carry this (man), that he-'might not
 ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γὰρ, ὥς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, πολέμιοι
 'perish; and also, as I think, (the) enemy
 ἐφείποντο ἡμῖν. Ὁ ἄνθρωπος συνέφη τοῦτο
 were-pursuing us. The man acknowledged this.
 Οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ προὔπεμψά σε,
 Therefore, said — Xenophon, after I-had-'sent you 'before
 προσιών σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι οὐκ αἰῶς
 coming-up with the rear-guard did-'I not likewise

καταλαμβάνω ὀρύττοντα βόθρον, ὡς κατο-
 'overtake (you) digging (a) pit, as about
 ρύζοντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον· καὶ ἐπιστὰς ἐπῆνουν
 burying the man; and stopping did-'I (not) 'praise
 σε; Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμῶν παρεστηκότων, ὁ ἀνὴρ
 you? When indeed we having-stood-by, the man
 συνέκαμψε τὸ σκέλος, οἱ παρόντες ἀνέκραγον,
 drew-together — (his) legs, — (those) present exclaimed,
 ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ ζῇ· σὺ δ' εἶπας· Ὅποσα
 that the man was-alive; you indeed said: (He may live) as-'much
 γε βούλεται· ὡς ἔγωγε οὐκ ἔξω αὐτόν.
 at-least 'as he-pleases; as I-at-least 'will not 'carry him.
 Ἐνταῦθα ἐπαισά σε· λέγεις ἀληθῆ· γὰρ
 Then I-struck you; you-speak (the) truth; for
 ἔδοξας μοι εἰκέναι εἰδότει, ὅτι ἔζη.
 you-seemed to-me to-have-been-like (one) knowing, that he-was-alive.
 Τί οὖν· ἔφη, τι ἦττον ἀπέθανεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ
 What then? said-he, did-'he any the-less 'die, after I
 ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν σοι; Καὶ γὰρ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
 showed him to-you? Certainly, not for, said — Xeno-
 φῶν, ἡμεῖς πάντες ἀποθανούμεθα· οὖν ἔνεκα
 phon, we all shall-die; therefore on-account
 τούτου δεῖ ἡμᾶς κατορυχθῆναι ζῶντας;
 of-this is-it-necessary (that) we are-to-be-buried alive?
 Πάντες μὲν ἀνέκραγον ὡς παῖσειεν τοῦτον
 All indeed cried-out that he-had-struck this (man too)
 ὀλίγας· δ' ἐκέλευε ἄλλους λέγειν,
 few (blows); and 'he (then) 'called-up (the) others to-say,
 διὰ τί ἕκαστος ἐπλήγη. Δέ ἐπεὶ
 for what each (of them) had-been-struck. But when they-'did
 οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 not 'stand-forward, he said: I, O men,
 δὴ ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι ἄνδρας ἔνεκεν
 indeed acknowledge to-have-beaten men by-reason of-undisciplined-
 ἀταξίας· ὅσοις μὲν
 and-disorderly-conduct-in-'leaving (their) 'ranks; to-as-'many indeed as

ἤρκει σῶζεσθαι δι' ἡμᾶς, τε ἰόντων ἐν τάξει.
 were-content to-be-saved by us, not-only marching in ranks
 καὶ μαχομένων, οπου δέοι· δὲ αὐτοὶ
 but-also fighting, where it-might-be-necessary; but those
 λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις, προδέοντες, ἤδελον ἀρπάζειν,
 leaving the ranks, hurrying-on-before, they-desired to-plunder,
 καὶ πλεονεκτεῖν ἡμῶν. Εἰ δὲ πάντες ἐποι-
 and to-have-an-advantage-over us. If indeed 'we all 'had-
 οὔμεν τοῦτο, ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα. Δὲ καὶ
 acted so, 'we all might 'have-perished. And also
 ἤδη τινα μαλακιζόμενον καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα
 already some giving-way-to-slothful-feelings, and not willing
 ἀνίστασθαι, ἀλλὰ προῖέμενον αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις,
 to-stand-up, but abandoning themselves to-the enemy,
 καὶ ἔπαισα, καὶ ἐβιασάμεν πορεύεσθαι. Γὰρ ἐν
 I also 'struck, and forced to-proceed. For in
 τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτὸς ποτε ἀναμένων
 the vehement cold even myself once waiting
 τινὰς συσκευαζομένους, καθεζόμενος
 for-some having-packed-up (their baggage), (and) having-sat-down
 συχρὸν χρόνον, κατέμαδον ἀναστὰς μόλις
 'for (a) 'considerable time, I-found standing-up difficult
 καὶ ἐκτείνας τὰ σκέλη. Οὖν λαβὼν
 and-also stretching-out the legs. 'Having therefore taken
 πεῖραν ἐν ἑμαυτῷ, ἐκ τούτου καὶ ὁπότε ἴδοιμι
 experience in myself, after this also when I-saw (one)
 καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα ἡλαυνον· γὰρ
 sitting-down and indulging-in-sloth I-'drove (him) 'on; for
 τὸ κινεῖσθαι καὶ ἀνδρίζεσθαι παρῆχε τινὰ
 — to-be-moved (about) and to-act-manfully produce (a) certain
 θερμασίαν καὶ ὑγρότητα· δὲ τὸ καθεῖσθαι καὶ
 warmth and suppleness; but — to-sit-down and
 ἔχειν ἡσυχίαν ἑώραν ὃν ὑπουργὸν τῷ
 (to-have) idleness I-perceive (as) being the-assisting-means by-which
 τε τὸ αἷμα ἀποπήγνυσθαι, καὶ τοὺς
 not-only (that) the blood is-congealed, but-also (that) the

δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσήμεσθαι· καὶ ἅπερ
fingers of-the feet are-mortified; and (with) which

ὑμεῖς ἴστε πολλοὺς παθόντας. Ἄλλον δὲ γε
you know many are-suffering. Another indeed at-least

ἴσως ὑπολειπόμενον πον, διὰ ῥαστώιην, καὶ
likewise being-left-behind somewhere, through insolence, and

κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς
hindering both you (in) the front and us (in)

τοὺς ὀπισθεν πορεύεσθαι ἐπαίσα πύξ, ὅπως
the rear to-proceed-forward I-struck 'with (the) 'fist, so-that

μὴ παίοιτο λόγχῃ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.
he-'might not 'be-struck 'with (the) 'spear by the enemy.

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἐξεστὶν αὐτοῖς σωθεῖσιν, εἰ
For indeed therefore now it-is-allowed to-those having-been-saved, if

ἐπαθόν τι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον,
they-have-suffered any-thing by me contrary-to — justice,

λαβεῖν δίκην. Δ' εἰ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῖς
to-obtain justice. but if they-had-got into (the power of) the

πολεμίοις, τί οὕτω μέγα ἂν ἐπαθόν,
enemy, what (evil) however great 'they may 'have-suffered, (for)

οὗτου ἂν ἥξιον λαμβάνειν δίκην; ὁ λόγος
which 'they might 'claim to-obtain justice? the case (is)

ἡπλοῦς, ἔφη, μοι. Εἰ μὲν ἐκόλασά τινα ἐπ'
plain, said-he, to-me. If indeed I-have-punished any-one for

ἀγαθῷ, ἀξιῶ ὑπέρχειν δίκην, οἷαν
(his) good, I-claim to-undergo justice (and punishment), such-as

καὶ γονεῖς υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισί.
even parents (receive for) sons and teachers (for) boys.

Καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἱατροὶ καίουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ.
And also the surgeons cauterize and cut for good.

Δὲ εἰ νομίζετέ με πράττειν ταῦτα
But if you-think me 'to (have) 'acted thus (through)

ὑβρεῖ, ἐνδυμήδητε, ὅτι νῦν σὺν
insolence (and tyranny) consider, that now with (the assistance

τοῖς θεοῖς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον θαρσῶ ἢ τότε, καὶ
(of) the gods I 'have much-more spirit than then, and

εἰμι θρασύτερος νῦν ἢ τότε, καὶ πίνω πλεῖον οἶνον
 am bolder now than then, and I-drink more wine;
 ἀλλ' ὁμως παίω οὐδένα· γὰρ ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς ἐν
 but yet-however I-strike no-one; for I-see you (now) in (a)
 εὐδία. Δὲ ὅταν χειμῶν ᾗ, καὶ μεγάλη
 salm. But when (a) storm may-be, and (a) great
 θάλαττα ἐπιφέρηται, οὐχ ὁρᾶτε,
 sea may-be-'bearing (itself) 'onward, do-'you not 'see,
 ὅτι προρεὺς χαλεπαίνει μὲν τοῖς ἐν
 that the-commander-in-the-prow becomes-angry indeed with — (those) in
 πρῶρα καὶ ἔνεκα νεύματος μόνου, δὲ καὶ
 (the) prow even by-reason-of (a) nod only, and also (the)
 κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ; γὰρ ἐν τῷ
 steersman with — (those) in (the) stern? for in —
 τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἁμαρτηθέντα ἱκανὰ
 such (circumstances) even small mistakes (are) sufficien
 συνεπιτρίψαι πάντα. Ὅτι δὲ ἔπαιον αὐτοὺς
 to-ruin all. That indeed I-struck this (man)
 δικαίως, καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες
 justly, even you have-'given (your) 'judgment; having
 ξίφη, οὐ ψήφους, παρέστητε, καὶ ἐξῆν ὑμῖν
 swords, not voting-pebbles, you-stood-by, 'and it-was-allowed you
 ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ, μὰ Δία,
 to-assist them, if you-wished; but, by Jupiter,
 οὔτε ἐπεκουρεῖτε τούτοις, οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ
 'you neither 'assisted these (men), nor with me
 ἐπαίετε τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν ἐποιήσατε
 struck the disorderly. Therefore | you-have-made
 ἐξουσίαν τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν, ἐῶντες
 licence [you gave licence] to-the bad (ones) of-them, permitting
 αὐτοὺς ἱβρίζειν· γὰρ οἶμαι, εἰ ἐθέλετε
 them to-be-violent (and audacious); for I-think, if you-wish
 σκοπεῖν, εἰρήσετε τοὺς αὐτοὺς καὶ
 to-examine, you-will-find (that) — (those) same (who) even
 τότε κακίστους, καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτάτους.
 then (were) the-worst, (are) even now the-most-audacious.

Γοῦν Βοῖσκος, ὁ Θετταλὸς πύκτης, τότε μὲν
Also Boiscus, the Thessalian boxer, then indeed

διεμάχετο, μὴ φέρειν ἀσπίδα, ὡς
fought-hard, (that he might) not carry (his) shield, as

κάμνων, νῦν δ' ὡς ἀκούω, ἤδη ἀποδέδυκε
being-sick, now indeed as I-hear, 'has already 'despoiled

πολλοὺς Κοττωριτῶν. Ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε,
many 'of (the) Cotyrians. If therefore you-are-wise,

ποιήσετε τούτῳ τὰναντία, ἣ ποιοῦσι τοὺς
you-will-do to-this (one) the-reverse, to (what) they-do (to) the

κύνας· γὰρ μὲν διδέασι κύνας τοὺς χαλεπούς,
dogs; for indeed they-have-tied-up dogs the cross-ones,

τὰς ἡμέρας μὲν, δὲ τὰς νύκτας
(namely) during-the day indeed, but by — night have-'let (them)

ἀφιᾶσι· δὲ τοῦτον ἦν σωφρονῆτε δῆσετε μὲν τὴν
'loose; but this-one if you-are-wise you-will-tie indeed by —

νύκτα, δὲ ἀφήσετε τὴν ἡμέραν. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ,
night, but let-loose by — day. But also,

ἔφη, θαυμάζω, ὅτι, εἰ μὲν ἀπηχθόμεν τινι
said-he, I-am-surprised, that, | if indeed I-become-hateful to-any-one

ὑμῶν, μέμνεσθε,
of-you, [if I did anything to incur your displeasure,] you-remember (it),

καὶ οὐ σιωπᾶτε, εἰ δὲ ἐπεκούρησα τῷ
and 'did not 'remain-silent, if indeed I-assisted — (any-one)

ἢ χειμῶνα, ἢ ἀπῆρυξα πολέμιον,
(or) 'against (a) 'storm, or repelled (the) enemy (from him),

ἢ συνεξεπόρισά τι ἄσθενουντι ἢ ἀποροῦντι,
or aided-in-procuring any-thing 'for (one) 'being-sick or being-destitute,

οὐδεὶς μέμνηται τούτων, οὐδ' εἰ ἐπῆνεσα
no-one remembers these (things), nor if I-have-praised

τινα ποιοῦντα τι καλῶς, οὐδ' εἰ ἐτίμησα,
any-one doing something good, or if I-have-honoured,

ὥς ἐδυνάμην, τιν' ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθόν,
as (much as) I-could, any man being brave,

οἷδὲ μέμνεσθε τούτων. Ἀλλὰ μὴν τε
neither do-you-remember these (things). But indeed (it is) not-only

καλόν, καὶ δίκαιον, καὶ δσιον καὶ ἡδίων μεμνησθαι
 beautiful, but-also just, and pious and pleasing to-remember
 τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν.
 — good rather than — evil.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνιμνήσκον.
 On this indeed truly they-rose-up and recollected

Καὶ περιέγενετο ὥστε ἔχειν κα-
 (past events). And it-remained so-as to-have hand

λῶς.

comely [and in the end everything turned out well].

BOOK VI.

CHAPTER I

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ
 FROM this (time) (some of) the (Greeks) indeed during — (their,
 διατριβῇ ἔζων ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς,
 stay lived (on what they procured) from the market,
 δὲ καὶ οἱ ληϊζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας.
 and also — (others by) plundering (from) the Paphlagonians.
 Δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἐκλώπειον μάλα εὖ τοὺς
 And also the Paphlagonians stole-away very adroitly —
 ἀποσκεδαννυμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπειρῶντο
 (those) scattered-about, and at — night attempted
 κακουργεῖν τοὺς σκηνοῦντας πρόσω· καὶ ἐκ
 to-injure-and-annoy — (those) quartering far-off; and from
 τούτων εἶχον πολεμικώτατα πρὸς ἀλλήλους.
 these (things) they-had the-greatest-hostility to one-another.
 Ὁ δὲ Κορύλας δς τότε ἐτύγχανε ἄρχων
 — But Corylas who then happened (to be) ruler
 Παφλαγονίας, πέμπει πρέσβεις, ἔχοντας
 of-Paphlagonia, sends ambassadors, having (as presents)
 ἵππους καὶ καλὰς στολὰς, παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας,
 horses and beautiful robes, to the Greeks,
 λέγοντας, ὅτι Κορύλας εἴη ἕτοιμος μῆτε ἀδικεῖν
 saying, that Corylas was ready neither to-injure
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 the Greeks nor to-be-injured (by them). The generals
 δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι βουλευσούντο σὺν τῇ
 however replied, that they-would-consult with the

στρατιᾷ περὶ μὲν τούτων, ἐδέχοντο αἰτούς *δε*
 army about indeed these (things), they-received them however
 ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ· δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσαν τῶν ἄλλων
 at (a) hospitable (table); and also they-invited the other
 ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν εἶναι δικαιοτάτους. Δὲ
 men whom they-considered to-be the-most-worthy. And
 θύσαντες βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ
 having-sacrificed oxen — (those namely) captured and
 ἄλλα ἱερεῖα ἀρκοῦσαν εἰσῶχίαν
 other cattle-killed-for-sacrifice-and-for-eating (an) abundant feast
 παρεῖχον, δὲ κατακείμενοι ἐν σκίμποσιν ἐδείπνουν,
 was-provided, and reclining on couches they-supped,
 καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίναν ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐντύχανοι
 and they-drank out-of horn cups, which they-found
 ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
 in the country.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε σπονδαὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ
 When however not-only (the) libations had-taken-place, but-also
 ἐπαιάνισαν, πρῶτον μὲν Θραῖκες ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
 they-had-sung-the-psalm, at-first indeed Thracians stood-up, and
 ὠρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις πρὸς
 danced with — (their) arms to (the sound of the)
 αἶλόν, καὶ ἤλλοντο ὑψηλά τε καὶ κούφως, καὶ
 pipe, and they-jumped high and also with-agility, and
 ἐχρῶντο ταῖς μαχαίραις· δὲ τέλος ὁ ἕτερος
 they-made-use of — (their) swords; and at-length the one
 παίει τὸν ἕτερον, ὥς ἐδόκει πᾶσι πεπληγέναι
 struck the other, so-that it-seemed to-all to-have-wounded
 τὸν ἄνδρα· δ' ὁ ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πως. Καὶ οἱ
 the man; and — he-fell artfully in-some-way. And the
 Παφλαγόνες ἀνέκραγον. Καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύσας
 Paphlagonians cried-out. And — 'he indeed 'having-despoiled
 τοῦ ἑτέρου τὰ ὅπλα, ἐξήει ᾄδων τὸν
 the other (one) of — (his) arms, departed singing the 'song'
 Σιτάλκαν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν ἐξέφερον τὸν
 Sitalcas; others indeed of-the Thracians carried-off the

ἕτερον ὥς τεθνηκότα· ἦν δὲ
 other (one) as-if having-been-dead; he-was however (in the state of)
 πεπονθώς οἰδέν. Μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνῖανες
 having-suffered no (injury). After this (some) Ænians
 καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ ὠρχοῦντο τὴν
 and Magnesians stood-up, who danced the (dance)
 καλουμένην καρπαίαν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Ὁ τρόπος
 called carpean in — arms. The nature
 δὲ τῆς ὀρχήσεως ἦν ὁδε· ὁ μὲν, παρα-
 indeed of-the dance was thus: — (one of them) indeed, having-
 θέμενος τὰ ὅπλα, σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ,
 laid-aside — (his) arms, sows and drives-a-yoke-of-oxen,
 πικνὰ μεταστρεφόμενος, ὥς φοβούμενος·
 often turning-around, as-if fearing (something);
 ληστής δὲ προσέρχεται· δ' ἐπειδὰν ὁ προιδηται,
 (a) robber indeed approaches; but when — he-perceives
 ἄρπάσας τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ μάχεται πρὸ τοῦ
 (him), snatching-up — (his) arms, 'he even 'fights for the
 ζεύγους· (καὶ οὗτοι ἐποιοῦν ταῦτ'
 yoke (of oxen); (and these (men) performed these (things)
 ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν·)
 [in rhythm to the pipe;] [keeping time to the pipe;]
 καὶ τέλος ὁ ληστής δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα ἀπάγει
 and at-last the robber having-tied the man 'leads (him) 'off
 καὶ τὸ ζεύγος· δὲ καὶ ἐνίοτε ὁ ζευγηλάτης
 and-also the yoke (of oxen); but also sometimes the driver-of-the-oxen
 τὸν ληστήν· εἶτα ζεύξας παρὰ τοὺς
 overcomes) the robber; then having-fastened (him) to the
 βοῦς ἐλαύνει δεδεμένον τῷ χεῖρι ἐπίσω.
 oxen he-'drives (him) 'off bound with — (his) hands behind.
 Μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων πέλτην ἐν
 After this (a) Mysian entered having (a) light-shield in
 ἑκατέρᾳ τῇ χειρὶ· καὶ τότε μὲν ὠρχεῖτο μιμούμενος
 each — hand; and at-one-time he-danced mimicking
 ὥς δύο ἀντιταττομένων, δὲ τότε ἐχρήτε
 as (if) two were-attacking (him), but at-another-time he-used

ταῖς πέλταις ὥς πρὸς ἓνα, δὲ το
 the shields as (if engaged) with one (only), and-also another
 τὲ ἐδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκυβίστα, ἔχων τὰς πέλτας,
 time he-whirled-about and threw-summerset, having the shields
 ὥστε καλὴν ὄψιν φαίνεσθαι. Δέ
 at the same time), so-that (a) fine sight appeared And
 τέλος ὤρχεῖτο τὸ Περσικόν, κρούων τὰς
 at last he-danced the Persian (dance), striking the
 πέλτας· καὶ ὠκλαζε, καὶ ἐξανίστατο·
 shields (together); and he-'sank-on (his) 'knees, and rose-up-again;
 καὶ ἐποίει πάντα ταῦτα ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν
 and he-performed all this in rhythm to the
 αἰλόν. Δὲ ἐπὶ τούτῳ οἱ Μαν-
 (sound of the) pipe. And after this (one) — (some) Man-
 τινεῖς ἐπιόντες, καὶ τινὲς ἄλλοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων
 tineans coming-forward, and some others of-the Arcadians
 ἀναστάντες, ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο.
 standing-up, armed as handsomely (as) they-could
 ἦσαν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ, αἰλούμενοι
 | went — in rhythm, [marched in time,] playing-on-the-pipe (tuned,
 πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπλιον ῥυθμόν, καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν
 for the armed-war rhythm (or movement), and they-sang-the-pæan
 καὶ ὤρχήσαντο, ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς προσόδοις πρὸς
 and danced, as in the procession to
 τοὺς θεοὺς. Δὲ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ὁρῶντες
 the gods. And the Paphlagonians seeing (these things)
 ἐποιοῦντο δεινὰ πάσας τὰς ὀρχήσεις
 made (a) great-thing-of-it (that) all the dances
 εἶναι ἐν ὅπλοις. Ὁ Μυσὸς ἐπὶ ὅρων τούτοις
 were in arms. The Mysian after seeing these (things)
 αὐτοὺς ἐκπεπληγμένους, πείσας
 (that) they were-struck (with surprise), (and) having-persuaded
 τινὰ τῶν Ἀρκάδων, πεπαμένον ὀρχηστρίδα,
 a certain-one of-the Arcadians, having-in-possession (a) female-dancer
 εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο
 he-'brings (her) 'in having-equipped (her) as handsomely (as) he-could

καὶ δούς αὐτῇ κούφην ἀσπίδα. Δὲ ἡ ὥρχήσατο
and giving her (a) light shield. And — she-danced

πυρρίχην ἐλαφρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν
(the) Pyrric (dance) with-great-agility. Then there-was

πολύς κρότος· καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἤροντο,
much applause-and-clapping; and the Paphlagonians asked,

εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμαχόντο αὐτοῖς. Οἱ δ'
if also women fought-together with-them. — (They) —

ἔλεγον, ὅτι εἶεν καὶ αὗται αἱ τρεψάμεναι
said, that it-was even these (women) — (that) had-been-driving

βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Οὖν μὲν τοῦτο
(the) king from the camp. Therefore indeed such

ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος τῇ ταύτῃ νυκτὶ.
was the end (of) — that night.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραία προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς
And on-the next-day they-led them [the ambassadors] to

τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις
the army, | and it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers

μῆτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μῆτε
[and the soldiers resolved] neither to-injure (the) Paphlagonians nor

ἀδικεῖσθαι. Μετὰ τοῦτο μὲν οἱ πρέσβεις
to-be-injured (by them). After this indeed the ambassadors

ῥέοντο· οἱ Ἕλληνες δὲ, ἐπειδὴ ἱκανὰ
departed; the Greeks also, as (a) sufficient (number of)

πλοῖα ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἐπλεον
ships seemed to-be-present, going-on-board they-sailed (that)

ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα, πνεύματι καλῶ, ἔχοντες
day and night, (the) wind (being) fair, having

τὴν Παφλαγονίαν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Δὲ τῇ ἄλλῃ
— Paphlagonia on (the) left. And on-the next

ἀφικνοῦντα εἰς Σινώπην, καὶ ᾠρμίσαντο εἰς
(day) they-arrived at Sinope, and anchored at

Ἀρμύην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ
Harmene (the harbour) of — Sinope. (The) Sinopeans —

μὲν οἰκοῦσι ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, δὲ εἰσιν
indeed dwell in — Paphlagonian (territory), and they-are

ἀποικοι Μιλησίων. Οὗτοι δὲ πέμπουσι
 (a) colony of-the-Milesians. These (Sinopeans) indeed send
 ξένια τοῖς Ἑλλήσι μὲν τριςχιλίους
 gifts-of-hospitality to-the Greeks (namely) — three-thousand
 μεδίμνους ἀλφίτων, δὲ
 medimni [each medimni being about twelve gallons] of-flour, also
 χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια κεράμια
 a-thousand and five-hundred ceramia [the ceramia being about
 οἶνου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Χειρίσοφος ἦλθε
 six gallons] of-wine. And then Cheirisophus came
 ἔχων τριήρη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται προσεδόκων
 having galleys. And indeed the soldiers expected
 ἦκειν ἄγοντά τί σφισι· δ' ὁ ἦγε μὲν
 (that) he-came bringing something for-them; but — he-brought indeed
 οὐδὲν, δὲ ἀπήγγελλε, ὅτι καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύ-
 nothing, however he-announced, that both Anaxibius the naval-
 αρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπαινοίη αὐτοῦς, καὶ ὅτι
 commander and the others praised them, and that
 Ἀναξίβιος ὑποσχενίτο, εἰ ἀφικνοῖντο ἔξω
 Anaxibius promised, if they-would-come-to (him) out-of
 τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσεσθαι μισθοφορίαν αὐτοῖς.
 the Pontus, (that) there-would-be pay to-them.
 Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας ἐν
 And the soldiers remained five days in
 ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμένῃ. Ὡς δὲ ἐδόκουν γίγ-
 this — Harmene. As indeed they-considered (that) they-
 νεσθαι ἐγγὺς τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ
 were-getting near — Greece 'it now more than
 πρόσθεν εἰσῆει αὐτοῦς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἀφίκωνται
 before 'occurred to-them how 'they might even 'arrive
 οἰκαδὲ ἔχοντές τι. Οὖν ἠγήσαντο εἰ
 at-home having something. Therefore they-thought (that) if
 ἔλοιντο ἓνα ἄρχοντα, ἂν μᾶλλον ἢ
 they-should-choose one commander, (it) would (be) better than
 οὕσης πολυαρχίας, τὸν ἓνα δύνασθαι.
 there being many-commanders, (that) the one (commander) would-be-able

χρησθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νύκτός καὶ ἡμέρας,
to-use the army both by-night and by-day

καὶ εἰ δέοι λανθάνειν τι ἂν
and if it-should-be-necessary to-conceal any-thing (that it) would (be)

μᾶλλον κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἰ δέοι αὖ φθάνειν
much-better concealed, and if it-were-necessary again to-anticipate

π. ἂν ἥττον ὑστερίζειν· γὰρ
any-thing (there) would (be) less coming-late (and delay); for

ἂν οὐ δεῖν λόγων πρὸς ἀλλήλους,
(that) 'there would 'be no 'need of-conferences with one-another,

ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ
| but (that) the to-seem (good) to-the one [but that the determination

ἂν περαίνεσθαι· δὲ τὸν χρόνον
of the one commander] would be-carried-out; but (in) the time

ἔμπροσθεν οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔπραττον πάντα ἐκ
heretofore the generals did every (thing) from

τῆς νικῶσης. Ὡς δὲ διανοοῦντο ταῦτα
the prevailing (opinion). As indeed they-were-'revolving these (things)

ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ
'in (their) 'minds, they-turned-themselves to — Xenophon; and

οἱ λοχαγοὶ προσιόντες αὐτῷ, ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ
the captains going to-him, said, that the army

γινώσκει οὕτω· καὶ ἕκαστος ἐνδεικνύμενος
think-and-determine thus; and each showing (his)

εὖνοιαν ἐπειδεν αὐτὸν ὑποστῆναι τὴν ἀρχήν.
good-will persuaded him to-undertake the command.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν πῇ μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα,
— And Xenophon in-some-measure indeed desired this,

νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν γίγνεσθαι αὐτως
acknowledging (that) even the honour would-become thus

μεῖζω ἑαυτῷ πρὸς τοὺς φίλους, καὶ τοῦνομα
greater to-himself before — (his) friends, and the-name

αὐτοῦ ἀφίξεσθαι μεῖζον εἰς τὴν πόλιν, τυχόν·
of-himself would-become greater in — (his own) city, perhaps

δὲ καὶ ἂν γενέσθαι τινος αἴτιος ἀγαθοῦ
likewise also (that) 'he might 'become some cause of-good

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Μὲν δὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐνδυμήματα
 to-the army. Indeed truly — these-same considerations
 ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμεῖν γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα αὐτο-
 impelled him to-desire to-become | commander with-full-
 κράτορα. Δ' ὁπότε αὖ ἐνδυμοῖτο,
 power [commander-in-chief]. But as again he-reflected,
 ὅτι ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνδρῶπι, ὅπη τὸ
 that (it was) uncertain indeed to-every man, | how the
 μέλλον ἔξει, δὲ καὶ διὰ
 future will-hold, [what the future will produce,] and also through
 τοῦτο εἶη καὶ κίνδυνος ἀποβαλεῖν τὴν
 this (that) there-might-be even danger to-lose — (his)
 προειργασμένην δόξαν, ἥπορεῖτο. Δὲ αὐτῷ διαπο-
 previously-earned reputation, he-was-perplexed. And he hesi-
 ρομένῳ διακρίναι ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτιστον ἀνακοι-
 tating to-decide it-seemed to-be the-best to-con-
 νῶσαι τοῖς θεοῖς· καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο
 suit the gods; and having-placed-by (the altar) two
 ἱερεῖα, ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅσπερ ἦν
 victims, he-sacrifices to — Jupiter the king, who was
 μαντευτὸς ἐκ Δελφῶν αὐτῷ· καὶ δὴ ἐνό-
 pointed-out-by-the-oracle at Delphos to-him; and indeed he-is-
 μιζεν ἑωρακέναι τὸ ὄναρ ὑπὸ τούτου
 knowledged [to-have-seen [to have had] the dream from the-same
 τοῦ θεοῦ, ὃ εἶδεν, ὅτε ἤρχετο καδίστασθαι τὸ
 — god, which he-had, when he-began to-set-himself —
 συνεπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς. Καὶ ὅτε ὥρματο
 to-take-charge-with-others of-the army. And when he-departed
 ἐξ Ἐφέσου, συσταθησόμενος Κύρῳ, ἀνεμυμήσκετο
 from Ephesus, about-meeting Cyrus, he-recalled-to-mind
 ἅετον φθεγγόμενον δεξιὸν ἑαυτῷ,
 (an) eagle crying-out 'on (the) 'right (hand of) himself,
 μέντοι καθήμενον, ὥσπερ ὁ μάντις ὁ προ-
 however sitting, (which) as the augur — ac-
 πέμπων αὐτὸν ἔλεγειν, ὅτι εἶη μὲν μέγας οἰωνός,
 accompanying him said, that it-was indeed (a) great omen.

καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος μέντοι
 and not belonging-to-a-private-individual, and honourable however
 ἐπίπονος· γὰρ τὰ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίδесδαι τῷ
 ~ilsome; for the birds most-of-all attack the
 αετῷ καθήμενῳ· μέντοι τὸν σίωνον εἶναι οὐ
 eagle sitting; however (that) the omen is not
 κρηματιστικόν, γὰρ τὸν αἶτὸν μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν
 indicative-of-gain, for (that) the eagle rather took
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πετόμενον. Οὕτω δὴ αὐτῷ
 — (his) provisions flying-about. As indeed he
 θυομένῳ ὁ θεὸς διαφανῶς σημαίνει μήτε προς-
 was-sacrificing the god evidently signified neither to
 δεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς, μήτε, εἰ αἰροῖντο, ἀπο-
 desire the command, nor, if he-should-be-chosen, to
 δέχεσθαι. Τοῦτο δὴ μὲν ἐγένετο οὕτως. Ἡ
 accept (it). This truly indeed happened thus. The
 στρατιὰ δὲ συνῆλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἓνα
 army indeed assembled, and all said (that) one
 αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε,
 (commander) was-to-be-chosen; | and when this seemed (good),
 προεβάλλοντο αὐτόν.
 [and when this was resolved on by the army,] they-proposed him
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδόκει εἶναι δῆλον, ὅτι
 [Xenophon]. When indeed it-seemed to-be evident, that
 αἰρήσονται αὐτόν, εἰ τις ἐπιψηφίζοι,
 they-would-choose him, if any-one should-put (it) 'to-the-vote,
 ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε·
 he-rose-up and spoke thus:
 Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, μὲν ἡδομαι ὑπὸ τιμώμενος
 I, O men, 'am indeed 'delighted at being-honoured
 ὑμῶν, εἵπερ εἰμι ἄνθρωπος, καὶ ἔχω χάριν,
 by-you, as-indeed I-am (a) man, and have gratitude
 καὶ εὐχομαι τοὺς θεοὺς δοῦναί μοι
 (for what you intend), and I-pray the gods to-grant me
 γενέσθαι αἰτιὸν τινος ἀγαθοῦ ὑμῖν· μέντοι το
 to-become (the) author of-some good to-you; | however the

προκριθῆναι ἐμὲ ὑπὸ ὑμῶν
 to-have-preferred me [but the preferring me] by you (as you),
 ἄρχοντα, Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος, δοκεῖ
 commander, (a) Lacedæmonian man being-present, it-seems
 μοι οὔτε εἶναι συμφέρον ὑμῖν, ἀλλ', εἰ
 to-me (would) neither be (an) advantage to-you, but, if
 δέοισδε τι παρ' αὐτῶν, ἂν ἥττον
 you-should-desire any-thing from them, (that you) would the-less
 διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, τε νομίζω τοῦτο
 on-account-of this obtain (it), and I-think (that) this
 αἶ οὐ πᾶν τι εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς ἐμοί.
 again (would) not at-all in-any-manner be safe for-me.
 Γὰρ ὁρῶ ὅτι καὶ πρόσθεν οὐ
 For I-see that even 'they [the Lacedæmonians] heretofore 'did not
 ἐπαίσαντο πολεμοῦντες τῇ πατρίδι μου,
 'cease making-war against-the | country of-me, [my country,]
 πρὶν ἐποιήσαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν
 before they-had-made (the) whole — state to-acknowledge (the)
 Λακεδαιμονίους εἶναι καὶ ἡγεμόνας αὐτῶν. Ἐπεὶ
 Lacedæmonians to-be even masters of-them. When
 δὲ ὡμολόγησαν τοῦτο, εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο
 indeed they-acknowledged this, 'they directly 'ceased
 πολεμοῦντες, καὶ οὐκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρχησαν τὴν
 making-war, and no-longer more did-they-besiege the
 πόλιν. Εἰ οὖν, ὁρῶν ταῦτα, ἐγὼ δοκοίην
 city. If therefore, seeing these (things), I should-seem
 ἐνταῦθ' ὅπου δυναίμην ποιεῖν ἄχυρον τὸ
 (to be) there where I-might-be-able to-make null the
 ἀξίωμα ἐκείνων, ἐννοῶ ἐκεῖνο μὴ ἂν λίαν ταχὺ
 authority of-them, I-consider this lest 'I might very speedily
 σωφρονισδεῖν. Ὅ δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι
 'be-taught-discretion. What indeed you consider-in-your-minds, that
 ἐνὸς ἀρχοντος ἂν εἴη ἥττον στάσις
 (there being) one commander 'there would 'be less faction
 ἢ πολλῶν, ἵστε εὖ, ὅτι ἐλόμενοι μὲν
 than (there being) many, you-know well, that having-chosen indeed

ἄλλον οὐχ εὕρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα. γὰρ
 another you-'will not 'find me exciting-faction; for
 νομίζω ὅστις ὢν ἐν πολέμῳ στασιάζει πρὸς
 I-acknowledge (that) he-who being in war excites-faction against
 ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον στασιάζειν πρὸς τὴν
 (his) commander, (that) this (one) contends against the
 σωτηρίαν ἑαυτοῦ· δὲ εἰάν τις ἐλθῃ ἐμὲ ἂν οὐκ
 safety of-himself; but if you-should-choose me 'I would not
 θαυμάσαιμι εἰ εὕροιτε τινα ἀχθόμενον καὶ ὑμῖν
 wonder if you-found some discontented both with-you
 καὶ ἐμοί.
 and myself.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπε ταῦτα, πολὺ πλείονες
 When indeed he-had-said these (things), many more
 ἐξανίσταντο, λέγοντες, ὥς αὐτὸν δεοῖ ἀρχειν.
 stood-up, saying, that he ought to-command.
 Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι εἴη
 Agasias indeed (the) Stymphalian said that it-would-be
 γελοῖον, εἰ ἔχοι οὕτως.
 ridiculous, | if it-have (itself) thus; [if things be in such a state;]

ὥς Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὀργισθῶσι, καὶ εἰάν τις
 (since) that (the) Lacedæmonians might-be-enraged, even if (a party)
 συνελθόντες σύνδειπνοι μὴ αἰρῶνται Λακε-
 having-met to-sup-together (and) 'do not 'choose (a) Lace-
 δαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον. Εἰ ἐπεὶ οὕτω γε
 dæmonian (as) president-of-the-banquet. | If when thus at-least
 τοῦτο ἔχει, ἔφη, οὐδὲ
 it has (itself), [if such be the case,] said-he, it-'would neither
 ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν λοχαγεῖν, ὥς ἔοικεν, ὅτι
 'be-proper for-us to-lead-companies (as captains), as it-seems, that
 ἐσμέν Ἀρκάδες. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀνεδορύβησαν ὥς
 we-are Arcadians. Then truly they-murmured as

τοῦ Ἀγασίου εἰπόντος εὖ. Καὶ ὁ Ξενο-
 (signifying) — Agasias having-spoken well. And — Xeno-
 φων ἐπεὶ ἑώρα ἐνδέον πλείονος,
 phon when he-saw (that) there-was-need of-more (speaking)

παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ὥς
 coming-forward he-said: But, O men, said-he, that you-'may
 πάνυ εἰδῆτε, ὀμνύω ὑμῖν πάντα θεοὺς καὶ
 fully 'know, I-swear to-you by-all (the) gods and
 πάσας, ἥ μὲν ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ ᾗσθαιόμην
 by-all (the goddesses), (that) truly indeed when I perceived
 ὑμενίραν γνῶμην, ἐδυόμην, εἰ εἴη
 your intention, I-sacrificed, (to ascertain) if it-might-be
 βέλτιον ὑμῖν τε ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν
 better for-you not-only to-have-confided this — (same)
 ἀρχὴν ἐμοί, καὶ ἐμοί ὑποστῆναι· καὶ οἱ θεοὶ
 command to-me, but-also for-me to-have-undertaken (it); and the gods
 οὕτως ἐσήμηναν ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ὥστε καὶ ἰδιώτην
 so signified in the sacrifices that even(a) private-person
 ἂν γινῶναι, ὅτι δεῖ με ἀπέχεσθαι
 [not an augur] might know, that it-was-proper | (that) I should-hold-off
 τῆς μοναρχίας.
 from-the single-rule [that I should not accept the sole command].

Οὕτω δὴ αἰροῦνται Χειρίσοφον. Δὲ Χει-
 Thus indeed 'they (then) 'chose Cheirisophus. And Chei-
 ρίσοφος ἐπεὶ ἡρέδη παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ',
 risophus when he-was-elected coming-forward said: But,
 ὦ ἄνδρες, ἴστε μὲν τοῦτο, ὅτι ἐγώ γε ἂν ἐστασίαζον
 O men, know indeed this, that I-at-least would have-'excited
 οὐδ', εἰ εἴλεσθε ἄλλον· μέντοι, ἔφη,
 no 'factions, if you-had-elected another; however, said-he,
 ὠνήσατε Ξενοφῶντα οὐχ ἐλόμενοι· ὥς
 you-have-done-a-service-to Xenophon (by) not having-elected (h'im); as
 καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη διέβαλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς
 even now Dexippus 'has already 'accused him before
 Ἀναξίβιον, ὅτι ἐδύνατο, καὶ ἐμοῦ μάλα
 Anaxibius, as-much-as he-could, even I (trying) much
 σιγάζοντος αὐτὸν. Ὁ δ' ἔφη
 to-silence him. — (Dexippus) also said (that he)
 νομίζειν, αὐτὸν ἐδεῖλῃσαι μᾶλλον
 thought, (that) he (Xenophon) desired rather

συναρχειν Τιμασίῳνι, ὄντι Δαρδανεὶ
 to-be-joined-in-command-with Timasion, (he) being (a) Dardanian
 στρατεύματος τοῦ Κλεάρχου, ἢ ἑαυτῷ
 'of (the) 'army of — Clearchus, than with-himself
 ὄντι Λάκωνι. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη,
 (Cheirisophus) being (a) Lacedæmonian. Since however, said-he,
 εἴλεσθε ἐμὲ, ἐγὼ καὶ πειράσομαι ποιεῖν
 (as) you-have-elected me, I 'will even 'endeavour to-do
 ὑμᾶς ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἂν δύνωμαι. Καὶ οὕτω
 you (all the) good, as-much-as 'I may 'be-able. And thus
 παρασκευάζεσθε, ὥς αὔριον ὑμεῖς ἀναξόμενοι,
 prepare-yourselves, as to-morrow you will-be-ordered (to depart),
 εἴαν ἢ πλοῦς· δὲ ὁ
 if there-may-be (a) sailing (permitted by the weather); and the
 πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· οὖν δεῖ
 sailing will-be to Heraclea; therefore it-is-proper (that)
 ἅπαντας πειρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν ἐκεῖσε· δὲ τὰ
 all endeavour to-arrive there; and (about) —
 ἄλλα βουλευσόμεθα, ἐπειδὴν ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε.
 other (things) we-will-consult, when we-arrive there

CHAPTER II.

Ἐντεῖθεν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναγόμενοι, ἔπλεον
 HENCE on-the next-day lifting (the anchors), they-sailed
 καλῶ πνεύματι δύο ἡμέρας παρα γῆν.
 'with (a) 'fair wind two days along (the) land.
 Καὶ παραπλέοντες ἐδεώρουν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν,
 And sailing-along they-saw not-only (the) Jasonian beach,
 ἐνθα ἡ Ἀργὼ λέγεται ὀρμίσασθαι, καὶ τὰ
 where the Argo is-said to-have-been-moored, but-also the
 στόματα τῶν ποταμῶν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμῶ
 mouths of-the rivers, first indeed of-the Therme

δοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἴριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἑάλυος,
 don, afterwards also of-the Iris, afterwards also the Halyus,
 μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· δὲ παραπλεύ-
 after indeed that of-the Parthenius; and having-sailed-
 σαντες τοῦτον ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν,
 by this (last river) they-arrived at Heraclea, (a)
 Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, ἀποικον Μεγαρέων, δ'
 Greek city, (a) colony 'of (the) 'Megarians, and
 οὔσαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Μαρνανδυνῶν. Καὶ
 being in the territory 'of (the) 'Mariandryans. And
 ὥρμισαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιᾷ Χερσονήσῳ, ἔνθα
 they-anchored near the Acherusian Peninsula, where
 ὁ Ἡρακλῆς λέγεται καταβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν κύνα
 — Hercules is-said to-have-descended for the dog
 Κέρβερον ἣ νῦν δεικνῦσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς
 Cerberus, where (indeed) now they-show the marks of —
 καταβάσεως, τὸ βάθος ἐπὶ πλέον ἢ δύο
 (his) descent, to — (a) depth for more than two
 στάδια. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἡδακλεῶται πέμπουσι
 stadia. There the Heracleans send
 ξένια τριςχιλίους μεδίμνους
 gifts-of-hospitality (namely) three-thousand medimni [the medimni
 ἀλφίτων, καὶ διςχίλια κεράμια
 being about twelve gallons] of-barley-meal, and two-thousand ceramia
 οἶνου, καὶ εἴκοσι βοῦς,
 [the ceramia being about six gallons] of-wine, and twenty oxen,
 καὶ ἑκατὸν οἷς. Ἐνταῦθα ποταμός, Λύκος
 and (a) hundred sheep. Here (a) river, Lycus (by)
 ὄνομα, ρεῖ διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, εὖρος ὥς
 name, flows through the plain, (the) breadth (thereof being) about
 δύο πλέθρων.
 two plethra (or about two hundred feet).

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ συλλεγέστες ἐβουλευόντο
 The soldiers indeed assembling deliberated
 τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν, πότερον χρῆ
 (about) the rest 'of (the) 'road, whether it-might-be-better

πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου ἀτὰ
 for them) to-have-proceeded from the Pontus (Euxinus) by
 γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν. Δὲ Λύκων Ἀχαιοὺς
 land or by sea. But Lycon (an) Achæan
 ἀναστὰς, εἶπε· Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῶν
 rising-up, said: I-wonder indeed, O men, (at) the
 στρατηγῶν, ὅτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἐκπορίζειν
 generals, that they-'do not 'endeavour to-procure
 σιτηρέσιον ἡμῖν· γὰρ μὲν τὰ ξένια οὐ μὴ
 money-for-provisions for-us; for indeed the presents 'will not —
 γένηται σῖτα τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν·
 'be (sufficient) food for-the army for-three days:
 δ' ἔστιν οὐκ, ἔφη, ἐπισιτισά-
 and there-is no (place), said-he, having-provided-ourselves-with-pre
 μενοι, ὅπόθεν πορευσόμεθα. Οὖν δοκεῖ
 visionz, whence we-will-set-forth (on our journey). Therefore it-seems
 ἐμοὶ αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ
 to-me (that we ought) to-ask the Heracleans (for) not
 ἔλαττον ἢ τρισχιλίους κυζικηνοὺς.
 less than three-thousand cyzices [about 15,000 dollars].
 Δ' ἄλλος εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίους· καὶ
 But another said not less than ten-thousand; and
 πρέσβεις ἐλομένους, πέμπειν μάλα αὐτίκα
 deputies being-chosen, to-send (them) (more) immediately
 πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, ἡμῶν καθήμενων, καὶ εἰδέναι ὃ τι
 to the city, we being-in-session, even to-know what
 ἂν ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ βουλευέσθαι πρὸς
 report-'they might 'bring, and to-deliberate about
 ταῦτα. Ἐντεῦθεν προὔβάλλοντο πρέσβεις,
 these (things). Then they-proposed (for) deputies,
 πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι ἦρῃτο ἀρχων·
 first indeed Cheirisophus, because he-had-been-chosen commander;
 δ' ἔστι καὶ οἱ Ξενοφῶντα. Δὲ
 and it-is also (that) — (others proposed) Xenophon. But
 οἱ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· γὰρ ταῦτα
 — 'they vehemently 'set-themselves-against (it); for this

ἰδόκει ἀμφοῖν μὴ ἀναγκάζειν
 seemed to-both (of them), (that) 'they (ought) not 'to-compel
 Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν καὶ φιλίαν διδοῖει
 (a. Greek city and (one) friendly (to them) to-give
 ὅ τι αὐτοὶ μὴ ἐδέλοντες. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι
 what they 'were not 'willing (to give). When indeed these
 ἰδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμπουσιν Λύκωνα
 showed (themselves) no-ways-inclined to-go, they-send Lycon
 Ἀχαιοὺν, καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρρᾶσιον, καὶ
 (the) Achæan, and Callimachus (the) Parrhasian, an
 Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. Οὗτοι ἐλδόντες
 Agasias (the) Stymphalian. These going (to the town)
 ἔλεγον τὰ δεδομένα. Ἐφασαν δὲ
 informed (them of) the resolutions. They-said indeed (that)
 τὸν Λύκωνα καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν
 — Lycon even threatened, if they-'did not 'do
 ταῦτα. Δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἀκούσαντες
 these (things). And the Heracleans hearing (this)
 ἔφασαν βουλευέσθαι· καὶ εὐθὺς συνήγον
 said (that) they-would-consult-about-it; and immediately they-collected
 τε τὰ χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν, καὶ ἀνεσκεύ-
 not-only — (their) property from the fields, but-also packed-
 ασαν εἰσω τὴν
 up (and carried) within (the city) the (things exposed for sale in the
 ἀγορὰν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο, καὶ ὅπλα
 market, and the gates were-closed, and armed (men;
 ἐφαίνετο ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν.
 appeared on the walls.

Ἐκ τούτο οἱ παράξαντες ταῦτα ἠτιῶντο
 Upon this — (those) having-promoted these (things) accused
 τοὺς στρατηγούς διαφθείρειν τὴν πράξιν.
 the generals (that they) spoiled the affair.
 Καὶ οἱ Ἀρκαῖδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ συνίσταντο· δὲ
 And the Arcadians and the Achæans joined-together; and
 τε Καλλίμαχος ὁ Παρρᾶσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ
 not-only Callimachus the Parrhasian, but-also Lycon the

Ἀχαιοὶς προειστήκει μάλιστα αὐτῶν.
 Achæan | 'stood most 'over them [were the

Δὲ οἱ λόγοι ἦσαν αὐτοῖς,
 head leaders]. | And the words were to-them, [and the con-

ὥς εἶη αἰσχρον Ἀθη-
 version among them was,] that it-was disgraceful (that an) Athe-

ναῖον ἄρχειν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμο-
 nian (should) rule Peloponnesians and Lacedæmo-

νίων, παρεχόμενον μηδεμίαν δύναμιν εἰς τὴν
 nians, (and he) contributing no force to the

στρατιάν, καὶ σφᾶς ἔχειν τοὺς πόνους
 army, and (that) they-themselves had the trouble

μὲν, δὲ ἄλλους τὰ κέρδη, καὶ ταῦτα
 indeed, but others the profits, and these (things taking place;

σφῶν κατειργασμένων τὴν σωτηρίαν.
 they-themselves having-effected the safety (of all),

γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους εἶναι Ἀρκάδας
 for (that) — (those) accomplishing (this) were Arcadians

καὶ Ἀχαιούς, δὲ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα εἶναι
 and Achæans, and (that) the rest (of the) army was (as)

οὐδέν· (καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἡμισυ
 nothing; (and there-was indeed in — truth above half

τοῦ ὅλου στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ
 of-the whole army (who were) Arcadians and

Ἀχαιοί). Οὖν εἰ σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ
 Achæans). Therefore if they-were-wise, these (the Achæans

συστάντες, καὶ ἐλόμενοι στρατηγοὺς
 and Arcadians) having-united, and choosing commanders

ἑαυτῶν, ἂν ποιοῖντο τὴν πορείαν καδ'
 of-themselves, 'they might 'make the journey by

ἑαυτοὺς, καὶ πειρῶντο λαμβάνειν τι ἀγαθόν.
 themselves, and endeavour to-procure something good.

Ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ
 for themselves). This seemed (good and was adopted); and (the)

Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον, εἰ
 Arcadians or Achæans leaving Cheirisophus, if

τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα, συνέστησαν·
any were with him, as-also Xenophon, joined-together

καὶ αἰροῦνται δέκα στρατηγούς ἐαυτῶν·
(with the rest); and choose ten commanders of-themselves;

δὲ τούτους ἐφηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσης
and (that) these (when) they-had-decided by the majority

ποιεῖν τοῦτο ὃ τι δοκοίη. Οὖν μὲν ἰ
weru-to-do that whatever might-be-decided-on. Therefore indeed the

ἀρχὴ παντός τοῦ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα
command of-all the (army) by-Cheirisophus 'was then

κατελύθη ἑκτῇ ἢ ἑβδόμῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφ' ἧς
'dissolved 'on (the) 'sixth or seventh day after which

ἡρέθη.

he-was-chosen.

Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν
Xenophon however wished to-make the journey

κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν, νομίζων οὕτως εἶναι
in-common with them, thinking (that) thus 'it (would) 'be

ἀσφαλεστέραν, ἢ ἕκαστον στέλλεσθαι
safer, than (that) each (should) go

ἰδία· ἀλλὰ Νέων ἐπειδεν αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι
his-own (way); but Neon persuaded him to-proceed

καθ' αὐτὸν, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου, ὅτι Κλέανδρος·
by himself, having-heard from— Cheirisophus, that Cleander

ὁ ἄρμωστής ἐν Βυζαντίῳ φαίη ἥξειν εἰς
the governor in Byzantium said (that he would) come to

λιμένα Κάλπης ἔχων τριήρεις. Οὖν συνεβού-
(the) harbour of-Calpe having galleys. Therefore he-ad-

λευε διὰ ταῦτα ὅπως μηδεὶς μετὰσχοι
vised (him) for this (purpose) that no-one might-participate

ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται
to be) on the galleys, but they and the soldiers

κῦτῶν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἅμα ἀδν-
of-themselves. And Cheirisophus 'being indeed at-the-same-time 'dis-

μῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, δὲ ἅμα μι-
heartened with-the (things) having-happened, and 'being also 'dis-

σὼν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα,
 gustæ? on-account of-these (things) (with) the army,
 ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὅ τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν
 he-permits him to-do what he-wishes. Xenophon
 δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεῖς
 also moreover indeed (for some time) attempted (after) having-left
 τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι· δὲ αὐτῷ θυομένῳ
 the army to-sail-away; and he sacrificing (to)
 Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ ἡγεμόνι, καὶ κοινουμένῳ πότερα
 Hercules the conductor, and consulting (with him) whether
 εἶη λῶον καὶ ἄμεινον στρατεύεσθαι, ἔχοντι
 it-would-be better and more-desirable to-march, having
 τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
 — (those) remaining (with him) of-the soldiers,
 ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ὁ θεὸς ἐσήμνηε τοῖς ἱεροῖς
 or to-take-leave-of (them), the god signified by-the victims
 συστρατεύεσθαι. Οὕτω τὸ στράτευμα
 (that he ought) to-march-with (them). Thus the army
 γίγνεται τριχῇ· Ἀρκάδες καὶ μὲν
 became (divided into) three-parts; (the) Arcadians and indeed (the)
 Ἀχαιοί, πλείους ἢ τετρακισχίλιοι, πάντες ὀπλῖται·
 Achæans, more than four-thousand, all heavy-armed-men;
 δὲ Χειρισόφῳ μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους
 but with-Cheirisophus (there were) indeed in (number) four-hundred
 καὶ χιλίους ὀπλῖται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς
 and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number)
 ἑπτακοσίους, οἱ Θρᾶκες Κλεάρχου· δὲ Ξενο-
 seven-hundred, (being) the Thracians of-Clearchus; and with-Xeno-
 φῶντι μὲν εἰς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ
 phon indeed (there were) in (number) seven-hundred and
 χιλίους ὀπλῖται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς τρια-
 a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number) three-
 κοσίους· δὲ αὐτὸς μόνος εἶχεν ἵππικόν ἀμφι
 hundred; and he alone had cavalry about
 τετταράκοντα ἵππείας.
 forty horsemen.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἀρκάδες διαπραζάμενοι πλοῖα παρὰ
 And indeed the Arcadians having-procured ships from
 τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν, πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως, ἐξαίφνης
 the Heracleans, first set-sail, that-is, suddenly
 ἐπιπесόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, λάβοιεν
 making-an-irruption-against the Bithynians, (that) they-might-take
 ὅ τι πλεῖστα· καὶ ἀπο-
 | what most (they could); [as much as they could;] and de-
 βαίνουσιν εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης,
 scending (from their vessels) at (the) harbour of-Calpe,
 πῶς κατὰ μέσον τῆς Θράκης. Δὲ Χειρίσοφος
 somewhere about (the) middle — of-Thrace. And Cheirisophus
 εὐδὺς ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως
 'having immediately 'commenced (the journey) from the city
 τῶν Ἡρακλεωντῶν ἐπορεύετο πεζῇ διὰ τῆς χώρας·
 of-the Heracleans proceeded-forth on-foot through the territories
 δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀνέβαλε εἰς τὴν Θράκην
 (of the Heracleans); but when he-entered (into) — Thrace
 ἦει παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν· καὶ γὰρ ἦσδένει.
 he-went along the sea; for indeed he-was-sick.
 Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν πλοῖα, ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ
 Xenophon indeed having-taken vessels, disembarks on the
 ὄρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος, καὶ
 confines of — Thrace and — Heraclea, and
 ἐπορεύετο διὰ μεσογαίας.
 proceeded through (the) inland (parts.)

CHAPTER III.

Ὅν τρόπον μὲν οὖν τε ἡ ἀρχὴ Χειρι-
 IN-WHAT manner indeed therefore not-only the command (cf. Cheri-
 σόφου τοῦ παντός κατελύθη, καὶ τὸ
 sophus (over) the entire (army) was-dissolved, but-also (how) the
 στράτευμα τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐσχίσθη ἐν τοῖς
 army of-the Greeks was-divided into the (three parts)
 εἴρηται ἐπάνω.] Ἐκαστοι δ' αὐτῶν
 has-been-related above.] Each indeed of-these (three divisions)
 ἔπραξαν τάδε. Οἱ Ἀρκάδες μὲν, ὥς ἀπέβησαν
 fared thus. The Arcadians indeed, as they-had-disembarked
 νυκτὸς εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς
 by-night at (the) port of-Calpe, proceeded to the
 πρώτας κώμας ὥς τριάκοντα στάδια
 first (or nearest) villages (being) about thirty stadia
 ἀπὸ θαλάττης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετο φῶς
 from (the) sea. When indeed it-was (day) light
 ἕκαστος στρατηγὸς ἤγεν ἐπὶ κώμην τὸν λόχον
 each commander led against (a) village the company
 ἑαυτοῦ· δὲ ὅποια ἐδόκει εἶναι μείζων
 of-himself; but whatever (village) seemed to-be greater (than the rest)
 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἤγον σύνδύο λόχους.
 the commanders led 'two companies 'together (against it).
 Δὲ συνεβάλοντο καὶ λόφῳ, εἰς ὃν δέοι
 And they-agreed also 'about (a) 'hill, on which it-might-be-
 πάντας ἀλίζεσθαι· καί, ὅτε ἐπιπесόντες
 proper for-all to-re-assemble; and, as falling-on
 ἐξαίφνης, ἔλαβον τε πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα,
 (these people) suddenly, they-took not-only many slaves,
 καὶ περιέβαλον πολλὰ πρόβατα.
 but-also surrounded many (flocks of) sheep (and other cattle).
 Δ' οἱ Θραῖκες οἱ διαφεύγοντες ἤθροί-
 But the Thracians — (those namely) fleeing-away collected-

ζοντο· δὲ πολλοὶ διέφευγον, ὄντες πελτασταί,
together; and many escaped, being targeteers,

ὀπλίτας ἑξ τῶν χειρῶν αὐτῶν·
(from the) heavy-armed-men (even) from the hands of-them.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτον
When indeed 'they (the Thracians) 'had-collected-together, 'they first

μὲν ἐπιτίθενται τῷ λόχῳ Σμίκρητος, ἑνὸς τῶν
indeed 'attacked the company of-Smicretes, one of-the

στρατηγῶν Ἀρκάδων, ἤδη ἀπιόντι εἰς τὸ
commanders 'of (the) 'Arcadians, now departing to the

συγκείμενον καὶ ἄγοντι πολλὰ χρήματα.
place-agreed-on and leading (with him) much booty.

Καὶ τέως μὲν οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐμάχοντο ἅμα
And for-a-while indeed the Greeks fought while

πορευόμενοι. Δὲ διαβάσει ἐπὶ
marching-forward. But 'they [the Greeks] 'being-about-to-cross over (a)

χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ τε ἀποκτιν-
ravine they-routed them, and 'they not-only 'killed

νύασι τὸν Σμίκρητα αὐτόν, καὶ πάντα τοὺς
— Smicres himself, but-also all the

ἄλλους· ἄλλου λόχου δὲ τῶν δέκα στρα-
others (with him); of-another company indeed of-the ten com-

τηγῶν, τοῦ Ἡγησάνδρου, κατέλιπον
manders, — (that namely) of-Hegesander, they-left

μόνους ὀκτὼ· καὶ Ἡγησάνδρος αὐτὸς ἐσώθη. Καὶ
only eight; and Hegesander himself was-saved. And

δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ συνῆλθον, οἱ μὲν σὺν
also the other captains came-together, — (some) indeed with

πράγμασιν, οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων· δὲ οἱ
things, — (others) indeed without things; but the

Θράκες, ἐπεὶ εὐτύχησαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτίχημα,
'Thracians, when they-had-luckily-met (with) this — good-luck,

τε συνεβόων ἀλλήλους, καὶ συνελέγοντο
not-only cried-out (encouragingly) to-one-another, but-also assembled

ἐβρωμένως τῆς νυκτός. Καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα,
'strongly during-the night. And at-the-time (of) day light;

καὶ πολλοὶ ἵππεις καὶ πελτασταὶ ἐτάττοντο
 with many horsemen and targeteers arranged-themselves 'in
 κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρά-
 (a) 'circle round the hill, where the Greeks were.
 τοπεδεύοντο, καὶ αἰεὶ πλείονες
 encamped, and continually more (of these Thracians)
 συνέρρεον. Καὶ ἀσφαλῶς προσέβαλλον πρὸς
 kept-flocking-together. And 'they safely 'rushed against
 τοὺς ὀπλίτας· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶχον
 the heavy-armed-men; for indeed the Greeks had
 οὔτε τοξότην, οὔτε ἀκοντιστήν οὔτε ἵππέα.
 neither (an) archer, or (a) javelin-man or (a) horseman.
 Δ' οἱ προσδέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες
 And the (Thracians) running-up and riding-forwards
 ἤκοντιζον· δὲ ὁπότε
 'threw (their) 'darts (among them); and when 'they [the
 ἐπίοιεν αὐτοῖς, ῥαδίως ἀπέφευγον. Ἄλλοι
 Greeks] advanced-against them, easily fled-away. | Others
 δὲ ἐπετίθεντο ἄλλῃ.
 indeed attacked other (part) [some of the Thracians attacked
 one part, others another part]. Καὶ μὲν τῶν πολλοὶ
 were-wounded, but of-the (Thracians) none; so-that (the Greeks)
 ἐτιτρώσκοντο, δὲ τῶν οὐδεὶς· ὥστε
 οὐκ ἐδύναντο κινηθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ
 'were not 'able to-move from the place, but
 οἱ Θρᾶκες τελευτῶντες καὶ εἶργον αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ
 the Thracians | finishing even prohibited them from
 τοῦ ὕδατος. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
 the water [finally even cut them off from water]. But when (the)
 ἀπορία ἦν πολλή, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν·
 distress was much, they-began-to-speak about terms;
 καὶ μὲν τὰ ἄλλα ὁμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, δὲ οἱ
 and indeed the other (terms) had-been-agreed-on by-them, but the
 Θρᾶκες οὐκ ἐδίδσαν ὁμήρους, τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 Thracians 'would not 'give hostages, the Greeks

αἰτούντων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ ἰσχετο
 requesting (them), but on this (the affair) was-in-check;
 μὲν δὴ τὰ τῶν Ἀρκάδων εἶχε
 indeed truly the (affairs) of-the Arcadians had (themselves)
 οὕτως.
 ~a

Δὲ Χειρίσοφος πορευόμενος ἀσφαλῶς παρὰ
 But Cheirisophus proceeding safely along (the)
 θάλατταν, ἀφικνεῖται εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης.
 sea (coast), arrived at (the) harbour of-Calpe.
 Ξενοφῶντι δὲ πορευομένῳ διὰ τῆς μεσογαίας,
 Xenophon however proceeding through the interior,
 οἱ ἵππεῖς προκαταδέοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι
 — (his) horsemen hastening-on-before fall-in-with (some)
 πρεσβύταις πορευομένοις ποι. Καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθη-
 ambassadors proceeding some-where. And when they-had-
 σαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἰ
 conducted (them) to Xenophon, he-asked them if
 που ἦσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος, ὄντος
 any-where they-might-have-seen another army, being
 Ἑλληνικοῦ. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ
 Grecian. And — they-told (him) all the (things)
 γεγενημένα, καὶ ὅτι νῦν πολιορκοῦνται
 having-occurred, and that now 'they [the Greeks] 'were-besieged
 ἐπὶ λόφου, δὲ πάντες οἱ Θρᾷκες εἶεν περι-
 on (a) hill, and (that) all the Thracians were sur-
 κεκυκλωμένοι αὐτούς. Ἐνταῦθα. μὲν ἰσχυρῶς
 rounding them. Then indeed 'he strictly
 ἐφίλαττε τούτους τοὺς ἀνδρώπους, ὅπως εἶεν
 'guarded these-same — men, so-that they-might-be
 ἡγεμόνες ὅπου δέοι. δὲ καταστήσας
 guides when it-might-be-required; and having-stationed
 σκοποὺς, συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἐλέξεν.
 scouts, he-assembled the soldiers and said:
 Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, οἱ μὲν τῶν Ἀρκάδων
 Men soldiers, — (some) indeed of-the Arcadians

τεθινᾶσιν, δὲ οἱ λοιποὶ πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ τινος
have-died, but — (those) remaining are-besieged on some
λόφου. Δ' ἔγωγε νομίζω, εἰ ἐκείνοι ἀπολοῦνται,
hill. And I-at-least think, if these are-destroyed,

οὐδ' εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν ἡμῖν,
(that there will) neither be any salvation for-us,

πολεμίων ὄντων μὲν οὕτω πολλῶν, δὲ οὕτω
(the) enemy being indeed so numerous, and so

τεθαρρηκότων. Οὖν κράτιστον ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν
confident-and-daring. (It is) therefore best for-us to-assist

τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ὥς τάχιστα, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι
the men 'as speedily 'as-possible, so-that if as-yet

εἰσὶ σῶοι, μαχώμεθα, καὶ μὴ, λειφθέντες
they-are safe, we-may-fight (together), and not, being-left

μόνοι, καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν μόνοι. Νῦν μὲν οὖν
alone, even encounter-danger alone. Now indeed therefore

στρατοπεδεύμεθα προελθόντες ὅσον
'let (us) 'encamp (after) having-marched-forward as-much

ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι καιρὸς εἰς τὸ δεῖπνοποιεῖσθαι.
may seem to-be (the) proper (time) to the taking-of-supper;

δ' ἕως ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίῳ ἔχων τοὺς
and while 'we may 'be-marching-forward 'let Timasion having the

ἵππεις προελαννέτω ἑφορῶν ἡμᾶς,
cavalry (with him) 'ride-on-before 'keeping us 'in-view,

καὶ σκοπεῖτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὥς μηδὲν
and 'let (him) 'reconnoitre the (country) in-front, that nothing

λάθῃ ἡμᾶς. (Δὲ καὶ παρέπεμψε
may-be-concealed from-us. (And 'he [Xenophon] also 'sent-about

εὐζώνους ἀνδρώπους τῶν γυμνήτων εἰς τὰ
active men of-the light-armed (troops) to the

πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως, εἴ που καθορῶεν
flanks and to the hills, so-that, if any-where they-might-see

τί ποθεν, σημαίνοιεν· ἐκέλευε δὲ
any-thing thence, they-might-signify (it); he-ordered (them) moreover

καίειν ἅπαντα ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν καυσίμῳ.) Γὰρ
to-burn every-thing that they-might-meet-with combustible.) For

ἡμεῖς ἂν ἀποδραίημεν ἐνδένδε οὐδαμοῦ· γὰρ μὲν
 we can flee hence no-where; for indeed

ἔφη, πολλὰ ἀπιέναι πάλιν εἰς
 said-he, | (it is) much [it is a long way] to-go-hence back to

Ἡράκλειαν, δὲ πολλὰ διελθεῖν εἰς Χρυσόπολιν·
 Heraclea, and much to-go to Chrysopolis;

δὲ οἱ πολέμοι πλησίον· εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης
 and the enemy (being) near; to (the) Harbour of-Calpe

δὲ, ἐνθα εἰκάζομεν Χειρίσοφον εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται,
 indeed, where we-suppose Cheirisophus to-be, if he-is-safe,

ὁδὸς ἐλαχίστη. Ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν ἔστιν
 (the) way (is) very-short. But truly there indeed there-are

οὔτε πλοῖα, οἷς ἀποπλευσοῦμεθα, τε μένουσι
 neither ships, in-which we-may-set-sail, but (we) remaining

αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια μιᾶς ἡμέρας.
 there neither is-there — provisions (enough) for-one day.

Δὲ τῶν πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων, σὺν τοῖς
 But — (those) besieged perishing, with the

μόνοις Χειρισόφου ἔστι κάκιον διακινδυνεύειν,
 (men) alone of-Cheirisophus it-is worse to-face-danger,

ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων, πάντας ἐλθόντας εἰς
 than — (these) being-saved, all coming to

ταῦτόν· ἔχεσθαι κοινῇ τῆς σωτηρίας.
 that (place) to-take-hold in-common of — (our) safety

Ἀλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασαμένους τὴν γνώμην
 But it-is-necessary having-prepared-and-made-up — (our) minds

πορεύεσθαι, ὥς νῦν ἔστιν ἢ τελευτῆσαι
 to-proceed-forward, as (if) now it-is either to-have-ended (our lives)

εὐκλεῶς, ἢ ἐργάσασθαι κάλλιστον ἔργον,
 gloriously, or to-have-performed (a) most-honourable work,

τοσοῦτους Ἕλληνας σώσαντας. Καὶ ἴσως ὁ
 so-many Greeks being-saved. And perhaps — (some)

θεὸς ἄγει οὕτως, ὃς βούλεται ταπεινῶσαι
 god leads (the affair) thus, who wishes to-humiliate

τοὺς μεγαληγορήσαντας, ὥς πλεῶν φρονοῦντας.
 ·· (those) having-spoken-boastfully, as 'being more 'wise

δὲ καταστῆσαι, ἡμᾶς, τοὺς ἀρχομένους
(than we are), and to-render, us, — beginning

ἀπὸ θεῶν, ἐντιμοτέρους
(every thing) from (consulting the) gods, more-honoured (than);
ἐκείνων. Ἄλλ' ἤ χρὴ ἑπείσδαι, καὶ
they. But it-is-necessary to-follow (your leaders), and

προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὥς ἂν δύνῃσδε ποιεῖν
apply — (your) minds, that 'you may 'be-able to-perform

τὸ παραγγελλόμενον.
the (thing) ordered.

Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ἡγήτο. Δὲ οἱ
Having-said this he-led (his men forward). And the

ἵππεις διασπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον εἶχε
cavalry spreading-themselves over as-'much (ground) 'as had (itself)

καλῶς, ἔκαιον ἢ ἐβάδιζον, καὶ
safe-and-proper, (and) they-set-fire in-whatever (place) they-went, and

οἱ πελτασταί, ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα,
the targeteers, moving-abreast-of (them) along the heights,

ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα ἑώρων καύσιμα, καὶ δὲ ἡ
burned all what they-saw combustible, and also the

στρατιά, εἰ ἐντυγχάνοιεν τινι παρα-
army (did the same), if they-found any-thing

λειπομένῳ· ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα ἐδόκει
left (unhurt); so-that all the place seemed

αἰδεσθαι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα εἶναι πολὺ. Ἐπεὶ
to-be-on-fire, and the army to-be large. When

δὲ ἦν ὥρα, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐκβαίντες
indeed it-was time, they-encamped having-gone

ἐπὶ λόφον, καὶ ἑώρων τε τὰ πυρὰ τῶν πολεμίων,
on (a) hill, and they-saw also the fires-of-the enemy,

(δὲ ἀπείχον ὥς τετταράκοντα σταδίου,) καὶ
(for they-were-distant about forty stadia,) and

αὐτοὶ ἔκαιον πλεῖστα ὥς ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ
they [the Greeks] burned as-much as they-could. When

δὲ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλδη κατασβεῖν
however they-had-supped very-speedily. it-was-ordered to-extin

νύναι πάντα τὰ πυρά. Καὶ μὲν ποιησάμενοι
 guish all the fires. And indeed having-stationed
 φιλακὰς τὴν νύκτα ἐκάδευδον· ἅμα δὲ
 sentinels for-the night they-went-to-sleep; at-the-time indeed
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ συν-
 — (of) day (light) having-prayed to-the gods, and putting-
 ραξάμενοι ὡς εἰς μάχην, ἐπορεύοντο τάχιστα ἢ
 themselves-in-order as for battle, they-marched-forth as-speedily as
 ἐδύναντο. Τιμασίῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεις, ἔχοντες τοὺς
 they-could. Timasion and also the horsemen, having the
 ἡγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες, γενόμενοι ἐλάνθανον
 guides and riding-on-before, having-got concealed
 αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες
 (and unknown to) themselves on the hill, where the Greeks
 ἐπολιορκούντο. Καὶ ὁρῶσιν οὐχ οὔτε φίλιον
 were-besieged. And see not either (a) friendly
 στράτευμα, οὔτε πολέμιον, (καὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι
 army, nor (an) inimical (one), (and they-announce
 ταῦτα πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα,)
 these (things) to — Xenophon and the army,)
 δὲ καὶ γραιῖδια γερόντια καὶ ὀλίγα πρόβατα
 but only old-women (and) old-men and (a) few sheep
 καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον
 and oxen left-behind. And indeed (at) the first
 ἦν θαῦμα, τί εἶη τὸ γεγενημένον·
 there-was wonder-and-surprise, what might-be the (thing) having-happened;
 ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο τῶν καταλελειμ-
 afterwards indeed also they-learned from — (those) left-
 μένων, ὅτι οἱ Θρᾷκες μὲν εὐδὺς ἀφ' ἐσπέρας
 behind, that the Thracians indeed immediately after night-fall
 ὠχοντο ἀπιόντες· δὲ καὶ ἔφασαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
 departed going-away; and also they-said (that) the Greeks
 οἵχεσθαι ἔωθεν· δὲ ὅπου νῦν
 departed early-in-the-morning; but whither (that they did) now
 εἰδέναι.
 know

Οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
— (Those) with Xenophon hearing these (things),

ἐπεὶ ἤριστῃσαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο,
after they-had-breakfasted, having-packed-up proceeded (on their

βουλόμενοι ὥς τάχιστα συμμῖξαι τοῖς
march), desiring as soon-as-possible to-have-joined the

ἄλλοις εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης. Καὶ πορευόμενοι
others at (the) harbour of-Calpe. And proceeding

ἑώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν
they-perceived the track of-the Arcadians and Achæans

κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐπὶ Κάλπης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο
on the road to Calpe. When indeed they-had-arrived

εἰς τὸ αὐτό, τε ἄσμενοί εἶδον
at the same (spot), (they were) not-only pleased (when) they-saw

ἀλλήλους, καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὥς περ ἀδελφούς. Καὶ
one-another, but-also embraced like brothers. And

οἱ Ἀρκάδες ἐπυνθάνοντο τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα,
the Arcadians inquired of — (those) with Xenophon,

τί κατασβέσειαν τὰ πυρὰ· γὰρ μὲν ἡμεῖς, ἔφασαν,
why they-had-put-out the fires; for indeed we, said-they,

ὥς μεδα μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὴ οὐχ
thought indeed at — first (that) you, when we-'did not

ἑωρῶμεν τὰ πυρὰ, ἥξειν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τοὺς
'see the fires, were-coming at — night against the

πολεμίους· (καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὥς γε ἐδόχουν
enemy; (and the enemy also, as at-least it-appeared

ἡμῖν, δείσαντες τοῦτο ἀπῆλθον· γὰρ σχεδὸν ἀμφὶ
to-us, fearing this departed; for near'y about

τούτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπῆσαν). Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ
that — time they-disappeared). But when you-'did not

ἀφίκεσθε, δὲ ὁ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, ὥς μεδα ὑμᾶς,
'arrive, and the time passed-by, we-thought (that) you,

πυδομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβηθέντας
hearing the (things) relating to-us, (that) being-alarmed

οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει
you-departed fleeing to (the) sea; and it-seemed

ἡμῖν μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. Οὕτω.
 to-us (that) we-ought not 'to-be-left-behind you. Tho

οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπορεύθημεν δεῦρο.
 therefore also we proceeded in-this-direction.

CHAPTER IV.

Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἡυλίζοντο
 THEREFORE indeed that — (same) day they-encamped
 αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. Τὸ τοῦτο
 there on the shore near the port. — This
 χωρίον δέ, ὃ καλεῖται λιμὴν Κάλπης, ἐστὶ
 place indeed, which is-called (the) harbour of-Calpe, is
 μὲν ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ.
 indeed in — Thrace the (Thrace namely) in — Asia;
 δὲ αὕτη ἡ Θράκη ἐστὶν ἀρξαμένη ἀπὸ τοῦ
 and this — Thrace is (in extent) beginning from the
 στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας,
 mouth of-the Pontus (Euxinus) just-to Heraclea,
 ἐπὶ δεξιὰ εἰσπλέοντι εἰς τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ
 on (the) right (of one) sailing to the Pontus. And
 μὲν ἐστὶ τριῆρι κώπαις ἐκ Βυζαντίου εἰς
 indeed it-is 'for (a) 'galley with-oars from Byzantium to
 Ἡράκλειαν μάλα μακρὰς ἡμέρας πλοῦς· δὲ ἐν
 Heraclea (a) very long day's sail; and in
 τῷ μέσῳ μὲν οὐδεμία ἄλλη
 the middle (between these towns there is) indeed no other
 πόλις οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνίς, ἀλλὰ Βιθυνοί
 town either friendly or Grecian, but Bithynians

ὕβριζειν τοὺς Ἑλληνας δεινὰ. Δὲ ὁ λιμὴν
to-insult-and-treat the Greeks dreadfully. But the harbour

Κάλπης κεῖται ἐν μέσῳ μὲν ἑκατέρωθεν
of-Calpe lies in mid (way) indeed from-both-sides (for those)

πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, δὲ ἐν τῇ
sailing from Heraclea and Byzantium, and in the

θαλάττῃ ἐστὶ χωρίον προκείμενον, τὸ
sea there-is a-piece-of-land (there) projecting-forward, the (part)

μὲν αὐτοῦ καδῆκον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν ἀπορῥώξ
indeed of-it reaching-down to the sea (as a) steep

πέτρα, ὕψος ὅπῃ ἐλάχιστον οὐ μείον εἴκοσιν
rock, (the) height where (it is) the-least not less (than) twenty

ὀργυῶν· δὲ ὁ αὐχὴν, ὁ ἀνήκων εἰς τὴν
fathoms; and the neck, — (that namely) extending into the

γῆν τοῦ χωρίου, τὸ εὖρος μάλιστα
land of-the country, the breadth (of this neck is) at-most

τεττάρων πλέθρων· δὲ τὸ χωρίον
four plethra (or about four hundred feet); and the place

ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος ἱκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνδράποισι
within the neck is-sufficient for-ten-thousand men

οἰκῆσαι. Λιμὴν δ' ἰπ' αὐτῇ τῇ
to-inhabit (or quarter on). (The) harbour indeed (is) under this —

πέτρα ἔχων τὸ αἰγιαλὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν.
'same' rock having — (its) shore towards (the) west.

Δὲ κρήνη ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἀφθονος ῥέουσα ἐπὶ
And (a) spring of-sweet water and copiously flowing near

τῇ θαλάττῃ αὐτῇ, ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπιχρατείᾳ τοῦ
the sea itself, (is) under the command of — (this)

χωρίου. Δὲ μὲν πολλὰ ξύλα καὶ ἄλλα,
place. And indeed (there is) much wood and (of) different

δὲ πάνυ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα
(kinds), but especially much and fine (wood) fit-for-ship-building

ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. Δὲ τὸ ὄρος, τὸ
on this — (same) sea (coast). And the mountain, —

ἐν τῷ λιμένι, ἀνήκει μὲν εἰς μεσόγαιαν
(that namely) at the harbour, extends indeed to (the) interior

ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίου, καὶ τοῦτο γεῶδες
 as-much-as to twenty stadia, and this (part is) earthy
 καὶ ἄλιδον· δὲ τὸ παρὰ θάλατταν, πλεόν
 and clear-of-stones; and the (part) along (the) sea, more
 ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίου, δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ παντο-
 than about twenty stadia, thick with-many and vari-
 δαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. Δὲ ἡ ἄλλη
 ous and large trees. And the other (parts of the)
 χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή· καὶ εἰσι πολλαὶ
 country (were) beautiful and much (in extent); and there-were many
 καὶ οἰκουμεναι κῶμαι ἐν αὐτῇ· γὰρ ἡ γῆ
 and populous villages in this (country); for the land
 φέρει καὶ κριθάς, καὶ πυρούς, καὶ πάντα
 produces — barley, and wheat, and all (kinds of)
 ὅσπρια, καὶ μελίνας, καὶ σήσαμα, καὶ ἀρκοῦτα
 legumes, and millet, and sesame, and abundance (of)
 σῦκα, καὶ πολλὰς ἀμπέλους καὶ ἡδυοίνους, καὶ
 figs, and many vines even producing-sweet-wine, and
 πάντα τᾶλλα πλὴν ἐλαιῶν. Τοιαύτη
 all else except (trees) of oil [the olive tree]. Such
 μὲν ἦν ἡ χώρα. Ἐσκήνων δὲ
 indeed was the country. (The Greeks) 'pitched (their) 'tents indeed
 ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· δὲ εἰς τὸ
 on the shore by the sea; but into the
 πόλισμα ἂν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο
 city (that) might have-been they-'did not 'wish
 στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ
 (to march and) encamp, but it-seemed (that) even
 τὸ ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα εἶναι ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς,
 [the to go there [going there] was from design, (as if)
 τινῶν βουλομένων κατοικίσαι πόλιν. Γὰρ οἱ
 some (persons) were-wishing to-build (a) city. For the
 πλείστοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν οὐκ ἐκπεπλευκότες ἦσαν
 most of-the soldiers 'had not 'sailed
 σπάνει βίου ἐπὶ τούτῃ τῇ
 :from home) for-want of-subsistence on this — (same;

μισθοφοράν, ἀλλ' ἀκούοντες τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου,
service, but hearing-of the virtue of-Cyrus,

οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄγοντες ἄνδρας, οἱ καὶ δέ
— (some) indeed even bringing men. — (others) also indeed

προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ ἕτεροι τούτων
having-in-addition-spent money, (in the cause), and others of-these

ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μετέρας, δέ
(soldiers) having-fled-from (their) fathers and mothers, and

καὶ οἱ καταλιπόντες τέκνα, ὥς κτησάμενοι
also — (some) leaving-behind (their) children, that they-might-acquire

χρήματ' αὐτοῖς, ἥζοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ
money for-them, (then) coming back, hearing also

τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πρᾶτ-
(that) — others — (those namely) with Cyrus | were-

τειν πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ.
doing many and good (things) [were acquiring wealth].

ὄντες τοιοῦτοι ἐπόθουν σῶζεσθαι εἰς τὴν
Being such (men) they-desired | to-be-saved to —

Ἑλλάδα.

Greece [to return in safety to Greece].

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ τῆς συνόδοι
When indeed (the) next day of — (their) coming-together

εἰς ταῦτόν ἐγένετο, Ξενοφῶν ἐδύετο ἐπ'
in that (place) was, Xenophon sacrificed about (an)

ἐξόδῳ· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη ἐξάγειν ἐπὶ τὰ
expedition; for it-was necessary to-lead-out (the soldiers) for —

ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ καὶ ἐπενόει θάπτειν τοὺς
provisions; and also he-was-thinking (about) burying the

νεκροὺς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγένετο καὶ
dead. When indeed the victims happened (favourably) also

οἱ Ἀρκάδες εἶποντο, καὶ μὲν ἔθαψαν ἐκάστους
the Arcadians accompanied (him), and indeed they-buried each-of

τοὺς νεκροὺς, τοὺς πλείστους, ἐνθαπερ ἔπεσον·
the dead, the most, where they-had-fallen,

(γὰρ ἤδη ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι, κα-
[for already | they-were five days'-ones, [they were five days dead,] and

ἦν ἐτι οὐχ οἶόν τε ἀναιρεῖν) · δε
 it-was now not possible to-'take (them) 'away); and
 συνενεγκόντες ἐνίους τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν,
 having-gathered-together some of — (those) from the road,
 ἔθαψαν ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο ἐκ τῶν
 they-buried (them) as becomingly (as) they-could from — (their)
 ὑπαρχόντων · δὲ οὐς μὴ εἵρισκον
 existing (means); but (those) that they-'did not 'find
 ἐποίησαν μέγα κεινοτάφιον αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐπέδεσαν
 they-made (a) large cenotaph for-them, and placed-on (it)
 στεφάνους. Δὲ ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεχώρησαν
 garlands. And having-performed these (things) they-returned
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ μὲν τότε δειπνήσαντες
 to the camp. And indeed then having-supped
 ἐκοιμήθησαν. Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ πάντες οἱ στρα-
 they-went-to-sleep. On-the next-day indeed all the sol-
 τῶται συνῆλθον · (δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε
 diers assembled-together; (but chiefly Agasias indeed (the,
 Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς συνῆγε · καὶ Ἱερώνυμος
 Stymphalian captain assembled (them); and Hieronymus (the)
 Ἡλείος λοχαγός, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν
 Elian captain, and — others the oldest of-the
 Ἀρκάδων). Καὶ ἐποίησαντο δόγμα, ἐάν τις
 Arcadians). And they-made (a) decree, if any (one)
 τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῇ ποιεῖν τὸ στρατεύμα
 for-the rest (of the time) might-mention to-make the army
 διχα αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι θανάτῳ, καὶ
 divided-into-two (that) he should-be-punished with-death, and (that)
 τὸ στρατεύμα ἀπιέναι κατὰ χώραν, ἥπερ
 the army (should) depart to (the) place-and-order which
 εἶχε πρόσθεν, καὶ τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς
 it-had before, and (that) the former generals
 ἄρχειν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη
 (should) command. And Cheirisophus indeed 'had already
 τετελευτήκει πῶν φάρμακον, πυρέττων ·
 died having-drunk (a) medicine, being-in-a-fever

ἃς Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος παρέλαβε τὰ ἐκείνου.
and Neon the Asinaean | received the (things) of
him [took his place].

Μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε·
After this indeed Xenophon standing-up said:

Ὁ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὥς ἔοικε, δῆλον μὲν ὅτι
O men soldiers, as it-seems, evident indeed that
τὴν πορείαν ποιητέον πεζῇ· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ πλοῖα·
the journey is-to-be-performed on-foot; for there-are not ships;

ἀνάγκη ἤδη πορεύεσθαι· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ τὰ
(it is) necessary now to-depart; for there-is not —

ἐπιτήδεια μένουσι. Οὖν μὲν, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς
food (for us) remaining. Therefore indeed, said-he, we

θυσόμεθα· δὲ ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι
will-sacrifice; but you 'it (now) 'becomes to-prepare

ὥς μαχουμένους, εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε·
as-for fighting, if ever even at-any-other-time (it was

γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι ἀνατεδαρρήκασιν. Ἐκ
necessary); for the enemy has-recovered-confidence. After

τούτου οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθύοντο, δὲ Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς
this the generals sacrificed, and Arexion (the) Arcadian

παρῆν μάντις· δὲ ὁ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης
was-present (as) augur; for — Silanus the Ambracian

ἤδη ἀποδεδράκει μισθωσάμενος πλοῖον ἐξ
'had already 'fled having-hired (a) vessel from

Ἡρακλείας. Δὲ θυομένοις ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ
Heraclea. And sacrificing about — (their) departure the

ιερά οὐκ ἐγίνετο. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην
victims 'did not 'become (favourable). Therefore indeed on-the

τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο.
— (same) day they-desisted (from their intended departure).

Καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὥς ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
And some having-been-bold-enough said that — Xenophon,

βουλόμενος οἰκίσαι τὸ χωρίον, πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν
desiring to-colonise the country, had-persuaded the augur

λέγειν ὥς τὰ ἱερὰ γίνεταί οὐ ἐπὶ
to-say that the victims were not (favourable) to a

ἀφόδῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν Ξενοφῶν κηρύξας
departure. Then Xenophon having-made-proclamation (that),

τὸν βουλόμενον παρῆναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν
.. (he) wishing (it) might-be-present at the sacrifice

τῇ αὐρίον, καὶ παραγγείλας εἰ εἴη τις μάντις
on-the next-day, and having-notified if there-were any augurs

παρῆναι ὡς συνδεασόμενον τὰ ἱερὰ,
(among them) to-be-present as inspecting-with (him) the victims,

ἔδνε· καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλοί
'he (Xenophon) 'sacrificed; and then many (persons)

παρῆσαν. Δὲ θυομένων πάλιν εἰς τρίς
were-present. And sacrificing again to (the) third (time)

ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγίνετο οὐκ.
in-respect to-the departure the victims were not (favourable).

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον χαλεπῶς.
[On this the soldiers had (it) uneasily; [the sol-

γὰρ καὶ τὰ ἐπιτή-
diers in consequence of this were distressed;] for even the provi-

δεια, αἱ ἔχοντες ἦλθον,
sions, | which having they-came, [which they had when they came,]

ἐπέλιπεν, καὶ οὐδεμία ἀγορὰ παρῆν.
failed, and no market | was-present [provided for them].

Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων, Ξενοφῶν πάλιν
On this (the soldiers) assembling, Xenophon again

εἶπε· ὦ ἄνδρες, ὡς ὁρᾶτε μὲν, τὰ ἱερὰ γίνεταί
said: O men, as you-see indeed, the victims are

οὐπω τῇ πορείᾳ· δ' ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους
not-yet (favourable) for — (our) journey; and I-see you wanting

τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀνάγκη
— provisions; therefore it-seems to-me to-be necessary

θύεσθαι περὶ οὗτοῦ τούτου. Τίς δ'
to-sacrifice respecting this same (thing). Some (one) however

ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα τὰ ἱερὰ γίνεταί
standing-up said: And with-reason therefore the victims are

οὐ ἡμῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ ἤκουσά τινος
not (favourable) for-us; and as I have-heard from-some (one),
χθὲς ἀπὸ πλοίου ἤκοντος τοῦ αὐτομάτου,
yesterday (who was) from (a) vessel coming (in) — of-itself

ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἄρμοστῆς ἐκ Βυζαντίου
(accidentally), that Cleander the governor of Byzantium
μέλλει ἥξειν, ἔχων πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις. Ἐκ τοιούτοι
is-about coming, having vessels and galleys. On this

δὲ ἐδόκει μὲν πᾶσιν ἀναμένειν· δ' ἦν
(account) then it-seemed indeed to-all (proper) to-remain; but it-was
ἀνάγκη ἐξιέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ
necessary to-go-out for — provisions. And about this

πάλιν ἐδύετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ τὰ ἱερά
it-was again 'sacrificed to three (times), however the victims
ἐγίγνετο οὐ. Καὶ ἤδη καὶ ἰόντες
were not (favourable). And now even (the soldiers) going

ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν Ξενοφώντος, ἔλεγον ὅτι ἔχοιεν
to the tent of-Xenophon, said that they-had

οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δ' ὁ ἔφη ἂν οὐκ
no — provisions. And — he-said (that) 'he could not

ἐξαγαγεῖν, τῶν ἱερῶν μὴ γιγνομένων.
'lead (them) 'out, the victims not being (favourable).

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδύετο, καὶ σχεδόν
And again on-the next-day it-was-sacrificed, and nearly

τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν
in-some (manner) all the army on-account-of — it-being-a-solicitude

ἅπασιν, ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· δὲ τὰ
to-every (one), were-crowded-in-a-circle round the victims; but the

θύματα ἐπιλελοίπει. Δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν οὐκ
victims were-deficient. But the generals indeed 'did not

ἐξῆγον, δὲ συνεκάλεσαν Ξενοφῶν
'lead-out (the troops), but 'called (them) 'together. Xenophon

οὖν εἶπεν· Ἴσως οἱ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσί.
therefore said: Perhaps the enemy have-been-assembled-together.

καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες
and (it is) necessary (that) we-fight; if therefore leaving-behind

τὰ σκεῖῃ ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὥς ἵοιμεν
 — (our) baggage in the strong places so-that we-may-go
 παρσκευασμένοι εἰς μάχην, ἴσως τὰ ἱερὰ αἶ
 prepared for battle, perhaps the victims may
 προχωροῖν ἡμῖν. Δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες
 become-favourable to-us. But the soldiers hearing (this)
 αἰέκραγον ὥς δεοῖ οὐδὲν ἄγειν εἰς τὸ χωρίον,
 cried-out that it-ought not to-lead to the place,
 ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι

[that he ought not to lead them to such strong place,] but to-sacrifice

ὥς τάχιστα. Καὶ μὲν ἦν οὐκέτι πρόβατα,
 as speedily (as possible). And indeed there-was no-longer sheep,
 δὲ πριάμενοι βοῦς ὑπὸ ἀμάξης ἐδύνοντο· καὶ
 but buying (an) ox from (a) wagon they-sacrificed; and
 Ξενοφῶν ἐδεήθη Κλεάνορος τοῦ Ἀρκάδος προ-
 Xenophon besought Cleanor the Arcadian to-be-
 θυμῆσθαι, εἰ εἴη τι ἐν
 prompt-of-mind (to act), if there-might-be any-thing (encouraging) in
 τούτῳ. Ἀλλ' ὥς ἐγένετο οὐδὲ.
 this (sacrifice). But even-thus there-was neither (anything favourable)

Δὲ Νέων μὲν ἦν στρατηγὸς τὸ μέρος
 But Neon indeed was (now) general in-the place
 Χειρισόφου· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνδρώπους, ὥς
 of-Cheirisophus; and when he-saw the men, that
 εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ,
 they-had (it) grievously in — (their) want, [that the men were suffer-
 βουλόμενος χαρίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,
 ing much from want of food,] wishing to-relieve-and-gratify them,

εὕρων τινα ἄνθρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς
 (and) having-found (a) certain man (a) Heracleean, who
 ἔφη εἰδέναι κώμας ἐγγὺς, ὅθεν εἴη
 said (that) he-knew (of) villages near, whence it-might-be (possible)
 λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν
 to-procure — provisions, he-proclaimed (by a herald that) — (any one)
 βουλόμενῳ ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὥς ἡγεμόνως
 of-those-wishing to-go for — provisions, that (a) guide

ἰσομένον. Ἐξέρχονται δὴ εἰς
 would-be (for them). (Then) they-departed indeed to (the number of)
 διςχιλίους ἀνδρώπους σὺν δορατίοις, καὶ ἀσχοῖς καὶ
 two-thousand men with spears, and leather-bags and
 θυλάκοις, καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν
 sacks, and other receptacles. When indeed they-were
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, καὶ διεσπείροντο, ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ
 in the villages, and were-dispersed, as for the
 λαμβάνειν, οἱ ἵππεῖς Φαρναβάζου
 taking (of what they wanted), the cavalry of-Pharnabazus
 πρῶτοι ἐπιπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς (γὰρ ἦσαν βεβοη-
 first fell-upon them (for they-were (some) help-
 δηκότες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς) βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυ-
 ing the Bithynians) desiring with the Bithy-
 νοῖς, εἰ δύναιτο, ἀποκωλύσαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας
 nians, if they-could, to-prevent the Greeks (that
 μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ
 they might not enter into — Phrygia; these — (same)
 ἵππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι οὐ μείον πεντακοσίου τῶν
 cavalry killed not less (than) five-hundred of-the
 ἀνδρῶν· οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ ἀνέφυγον ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Ἐκ
 men; the rest indeed fled-away to the mountain. Or
 τούτου τις τῶν ἀποφυγόντων ἀπαγγέλλει
 this some (one) of — (those) having-fled announced
 ταῦτα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
 these (things) at the camp. And — Xenophon,
 ἐπεὶ τὰ ἱερά οὐκ ἐγεγένητο ταύτῃ τῇ
 when the victims 'had not 'been (favourable) that —
 ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ ἀμάξης, (γὰρ ἦν οὐκ
 day, taking (an) ox from (a) wagon, (for there-were no
 ἄλλα ἱερεῖα,) σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοήθει, καὶ οἱ
 other cattle,) having-sacrificed he-went-to-give-help, and the
 ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἅπαντες
 others — (those namely) just-to thirty years-of-age all
 Καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς ἀνδρας
 went with him). And bringing-off — (these) men

λοιπούς, ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
left, they-returned to the camp. And
ἦν ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς· καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
it-was now indeed about sun set; and the Greeks
ἔχοντες μάλ' ἀδύμωσ' ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο,
being much dejected were-'taking (their) 'supper, (when)
καὶ ἐξαπίνης τινες τῶν Βιθυνῶν ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς
even suddenly some of-the Bithynians fell-upon the
προφύλαξι διὰ τῶν λασίων, μὲν κατέκτανον
advanced-guards through the thickets, (and) indeed they-killed
τοὺς, δὲ τοὺς ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς
— (some of the Greeks), and — (others) they-pursued just to
τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ κραυγῆς γενομένης πάντες
the camp. And (a) great-noise arising all
οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδραμον εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ διώκειν
the Greeks ran to — arms; and to-pursue
μὲν, καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ
indeed, and to-move the camp at-night 'did not
ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλές· γὰρ τὰ χωρία ἦν δασέα·
'seem to-be safe; for the country was full-of-thickets;
δὲ ἐνυκτέρευον ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, φυλαττόμενοι
and they-passed-the-night under — arms. guarded
ἱκανοῖς φύλαξι
by-sufficient sentinels.

CHAPTER V.

Οὕτω μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα. Δὲ ἄμα τη
 Thus indeed they-passed the night. But at-the-time-of --

ἡμέρα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἤγοῦντο εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν
 day (break) the generals went to the strong

χωρίον, δὲ οἱ εἶποντο, ἀναλαβόντες τὰ
 place, and the (men) followed, bringing-with (them) — (their)

ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. Πρὶν δὲ εἶναι ὥραν
 arms and — (their) baggage. Before indeed it-was time (for)

ἀρίστου ἀπετάφρευσαν εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἢ ἡ
 dinner they-had-completed-a-trench at the place at-which the

εἰσόδος ἦν, καὶ ἅπαν ἀπεσταύ-
 entrance (to it) was, and had-fenced-'off (the) whole (place) 'with-pali-

ρωσαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς πύλους. Καὶ πλοῖον
 sades, leaving three gates. And (a) vessel

ἦκεν ἐκ Ἡρακλείας ἄγον ἄλφιτα, καὶ ἱερεῖα,
 came from Heraclea bringing barley-meal, and cattle,

καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς πρῶτ' ἐθύετο
 and wine. And Xenophon having-risen early he-sacrificed

ἐπεξόδια, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ γίνεταί ἐπὶ
 for-a-successful-expedition, and the victims were (favourable) on

τοῦ πρώτου ἱερείου. Καὶ ἤδη ἐχόντων
 the first victim. And already having (made an)

τέλος τῶν ἱερῶν, ὁ μάντις Ἀρηξίων Παρῤῥάσιος
 end of-the sacrifices, the augur Arexion (the) Parrhasian

ὄρα αἰσῶν ἀετὸν, καὶ κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα
 saw (a) lucky eagle, and requested — Xenophon

ἡγεῖσθαι. Καὶ διαβάντες τῇ τάφρῳ
 to-lead (forth). And (the men) crossing the trench

τίθειται τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν
 ranged-themselves (under) — arms, and it-was-proclaimed-by-the

τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀριστήσαντας ἐξιέναι
 beralde (that) the soldiers having-dined would-march-out

σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, δὲ καταλιπεῖν τὸν ὄχλον
with — (their) arms, but to-leave the crowd

καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ.

(of camp-followers) and the slaves there (in the camp).

Μὲν δὴ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξήεσαν, δὲ οὐ Νέον.
indeed truly the others all marched-out, out not Neon:

γὰρ ἐδόκει κάλλιστον καταλιπεῖν τοῦτον
for it-seemed the-best to-leave this-one (namely Neon)

φύλακα τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Ἐπεὶ
(as a) guard of — (what was) in the camp. When

δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλιπον
indeed the captains and the soldiers had-left

αὐτούς, αἰσχυρόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων
them, being-ashamed not to-follow the others

ἐξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ
going-out, 'they (then) 'left there — (those) above

πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη. Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν
five and forty years-of-age. And these indeed

ἔμεινον, δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. Πρὶν δὲ διεληλυ-
remained, but the others proceeded-forth. Before indeed they-had

θέναι πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια ἤδη ἐνέτυχον
gone fifteen stadia 'they already 'met-with

νεκροῖς· καὶ ποιησάμενοι τὴν οἰρὰν τοῦ κέρατος
dead-bodies; and having-placed the rear of-the wing

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους νεκροὺς φανέντας, ἔθαπτον
by the first dead-bodies seen, they-buried

πάντας, ὅποσους τὸ κέρας ἐπελάμβανε.

(them) all, as-many-as the wing took-in (or covered).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔθαψαν τοὺς πρώτους, προ-
When indeed they-had-buried — (those) first (found), pro-

αγαγόντες, καὶ κῦδις ποιησάμενοι τὴν οἰρὰν
ceeding-forward, and again having-placed the rear

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων,
along the first of-the unburied (they now met with),

ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὅποσους ἡ στρατιά
they-buried (in) the same manner. as-many-as the army

ἔπελάμβανεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤκον εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν
covered. When indeed they-came to the road

τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἔνθα δὲ
— (that namely leading) from the villages, where indeed

ἔκειντο ἄνδρες, συνενεγκόντες
(the dead) lay close-together, 'carrying (them) 'together

ἔθαψαν αὐτοὺς.
they-buried them.

Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦσης τῆς ἡμέρας
| Now indeed beyond having-been-in-the-middle (of) the day

προαγαγόντες τὸ στράτευμα
[it was now past mid-day] having-led-forward the army

ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν, ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
beyond the villages, (the men) took — provisions,

ὃ τι τις ὀρώη, ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος. Καὶ
whatever any-one saw, within the line. And

ἐξαίφνης ὀρῶσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας
suddenly they-saw the enemy passing-over (and)

κατὰ τινὰς λόφους ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου,
down some hills from the opposite (side before them),

τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, τε πολλοὺς
drawn-up in line, (there being) not-only many

ἵππεις καὶ πεζοὺς· γὰρ καὶ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ
horsemen but-also foot-soldiers; for also Spithridates and

Ῥαδίνης ἤκον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν
Rbathines had-come from Pharnabazus having — (their)

δύναμιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι κατείδον τοὺς
forces. When indeed the enemy saw the

Ἕλληνας, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον πεντε-
Greeks, they-halted being-distant from-them about fif-

καίδεκα σταδίου. Ἐκ τούτου Ἀρηξίων ὁ μάντις
teen stadia. On this Arexion the augur

τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐθὺς σφαγιάζεται, καὶ τὰ σφάγια
of-the Greeks immediately sacrificed, and the victims

ἰγένετο καλὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. Ἐνθα δὲ Ξενο-
were 'favourable from the first. Then indeed Xero-

φῶν λέγει· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί,
phon said: It-seems to-me, O men commanders, (tha-

ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους
we-ought-to-station-behind the (principal) line companies (as)

φύλακας, ἵνα που ἂν δέη, ὥσιν οἱ
guards, that where 'it might 'be-necessary, there-may-be —

ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
(those) supporting the line, and the enemy

τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ
thrown-into-disorder may-fall-upon — (those) drawn-up-in-order and

ἄκεραίους. Ταῦτα συνεδόκε παῶσι. Ὑμεῖς μὲν
fresh. This was-approved by-all. You indeed

τοίνυν, ἔφη, προηγεῖσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς
therefore, said-he [Xenophon], advance on-the (road) to the

ἐναντίους, ὥς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ
(enemy) in-front (of us), that we-'may not 'stand-still, since

εἶδομεν καὶ ὠφθημεν τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐγὼ δὲ
we-have-seen and have-been-seen (by) the enemy; I indeed

ἤξω καταχωρίσας τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους,
will-come (after) having-stationed — (those) hindmost companies,

ἣ περ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν.
in-the-manner-which it-seemed (good) to-you.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν οἱ ἥσυχoi προῆγον· ὁ
On this indeed — (they) quietly advanced; —

δὲ ἀφελὼν

(Xenophon) indeed having-taken-from (and detached from the main body

τὰς τρεῖς τελευταίας τάξεις, ἀνὰ δια-
the three hindmost ranks (or companies), about two-

κοσίους ἄνδρας ἐπέτρεψε τὴν μὲν
hundred men (each) ordered the (one of them) indeed

ἐφέπεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν, ἀπολιπόντας ὥς πλέθρον.
to-follow on the right, being-distant about (a) plethrum.

Σαμολας Ἀχαιοὺς ἤρχε τῆς ταύτης
[100 feet]. Samolas (the) Achæan commanded — this

τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐχώρισεν ἑπεσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ
division: the (other) indeed he-detached to follow at the

μέσῳ· Πυρρίας Ἀρκάς ἤρχε ταύτης· δὲ
centre; Pyrrhias (the) Arcadian commanded this (division); and

τὴν μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐνύμῳ· Φρασίας
the (third) one (was stationed) on the left; Phrasias (the)

Ἀθηναῖος ἐφεστῆσει ταύτῃ. Δὲ προιόντες, ἐπεὶ
Athenian commanded it. But proceeding-forward when

οἱ ἡγούμενοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ μεγάλῳ
— (those) leading (in advance) got to (a) large

νάπει καὶ δυσπρόρῳ, ἔστησαν, ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ
woody-revine and difficult-to-pass, they-halted, not-knowing if

τὸ νάπος εἴη διαβατέον. Καὶ παρεγγυῶσι
the woody-ravine might-be passable. And requested

στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ
(the) generals and captains to-come-forward to the

ἡγούμενον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, θαυμάσας ὃ τι
leading (division). And — Xenophon, having-wondered what

εἴη ἰσχὸν τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν
it-might-be detaining the progress, and speedily hearing the

παρεγγυήν, ἐλαύνει τάχιστα ἢ ἐδύνατο.
announcement, pushes-on (his horse) as-fast as he-could.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον Σοφαίνετος ὢν πρεσβύ-
When indeed they-came-together Sophænetus being the-oldest

τατος τῶν στρατηγῶν λέγει, ὅτι εἴη οὐκ ἄξιον
of-the generals says, that it-was not worthy

βουλῆς, εἰ ὃν τοιοῦτον τὸ νάπος ἐστὶ
of-consideration, whether being such — (a) woody-ravine it-is

διαβατέον.

necessary-to-pass (it).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν·
And — Xenophon speedily seizing (an opportunity) said

Ἄλλ' μὲν ἴστε με, ὦ ἄνδρες, πῶ ἐδελοῦσιον
But indeed you-know me, O men, (that) 'I never voluntarily

προξενήσαντα οὐδένα κίνδυνον ὑμῖν· γὰρ ὁρῶ
'brought any danger on-you; for I-see

ὑμᾶς οὐ δεομένους δόξης εἰς ἀνδρειότητα, ἀλλὰ
you not wanting reputation for valour, but

σωτηρίας. Δὲ νῦν ἔχει οὕτως ἔστιν εἰ
of-safety. But now it-has (itself) so; it-is not

μὲν ἀπελθεῖν ἐνδένδε ἀμαχί· γὰρ ἤν ἡμεῖς
indeed (for us) to-depart hence without-fighting; for if we

μη ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι, ὁπότεν
do not 'advance against the enemy, these, when

ἀπίωμεν, ἔψονται καὶ ἐπιπесοῦνται ἡμῖν. Ὅρατε
we-retreat, will-follow and attack us. Consider

δὴ πότερον κρεῖττον ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδρας,
indeed whether (it is) better to-go against the men

προβαλλομένους τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ μεταβαλ
'throwing (our) — arms 'before (us), or 'hurl-

λομένους, θεάσασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπι-
ing (them) 'back, to-perceive the enemy fol-

όντας ὀπισθεν ἡμῶν. Ἴστε μέντοι ὅτι μὲν τὸ
lowing behind us. Know however that indeed the

ἀπιέναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων ἔοικε οὐδενὶ καλῷ, δὲ
fleeing from (an) enemy looks-like nothing honourable, but

τὸ ἐφέπεσθαι ἐμποιεῖ θάρσος καὶ τοῖς
— to-follow 'puts confidence (and courage) even 'into the

καχίοσι. Ἐγὼ οὖν ἂν ἥδιον
cowardly. I-at-least therefore would (as a) more-pleasant (thing)

ἐποίμην σὺν ἡμίσεσιν ἢ ἀπο-
pursue with half (the number of men) (rather) than re-

χωροῖην σὺν διπλασίοις. Καὶ τούτους
treat with double (the number). And (as respects) these

οἷδ' ὅτι, ἡμῶν μὲν ἐπιόντων, ὑμεῖς οἷδ'
(men) I-know that, we indeed attacking, you 'do not

ἐλπίζετε αὐτοὺς δέξασθαι ἡμᾶς· δὲ ἀπιόντων,
'expect (that) they will-receive us; but retreating,

πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι.
'we all 'believe that they-will-dare to-follow-after

Δὲ ποιήσασθαι χαλεπὸν νάπος τὸ ὀπισθεν
(us). But to-have-placed (a) difficult ravine in — (our) rear

διαβάντας, μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι, ἂρ' οἶχι
(after) having-crossed (it), being-about to-fight, is-not-this

και ἄξιον ἄρπάσαι; γὰρ μὲν ἐγὼ
 even (an advantage) worth to-have-seized-on? for indeed I,
 τοῖς πολεμίοις βουλοίμην πάντα
 (as respects) the enemy, wish (that) all (places)
 ἂν φαίνεσθαι εὐπορά, ὥστε ἀποχωρεῖν· δὲ
 may appear easy-to-pass-through, so-that they-may-retreat; but
 καὶ δεῖ ἡμᾶς διδάσκεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ
 even it-is-proper for-us to-learn from (the nature) of-the
 χωρίου, ὅτι ἔστι οὐ σωτηρία μὴ νικῶσι.
 place, that there-is no safety unless (our men) conquer.
 Δ' ἔγωγε θαυμάζω εἰ τις νομίζει καὶ τὸ τοῦτο
 But I-at-least wonder if any-one thinks even — this
 νάπος εἶναι μᾶλλον φοβερόν τῶν ἄλλων χωρίων
 ravine to-be more formidable (than) the other places
 ὧν διαπεπορεύμεθα. Πῶς μὲν γὰρ τὸ πεδίον
 which we-have-passed-through. How indeed therefore (is) the plain
 διαβατόν, εἰ μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἱππείας
 to-be-passable, if we-'do not 'conquer the cavalry.
 Πῶς δὲ ὄρη, ἃ διεληλύδα-
 How indeed (will the) mountains (be passable) which we-have-crossed-
 μεν, ἣν τοσοῖδε πελτασταὶ ἐφέπωνται;
 ever, if so-great-a-number-of targeteers pursue (us)·
 Δ' ἣν δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν,
 But if indeed we-'are even 'saved (so far as) to (the) sea,
 πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἔνθα οὔτε
 how-great a ravine (will) the Pontus (Euxinus be)? where neither
 ἔστι πλοῖα τὰ ἀπάξοντα, οὔτε σῖτος ᾧ
 are vessels — for-'carrying (us) 'away, nor provisions by-which
 θρεψόμεθα μένοντες· δὲ δεήσει, ἣν
 we-may-be-nourished (while) remaining; and it-will-be-necessary, if
 γενωμέδα ἐκεῖ θάττον, θάττον ἐξιέ-
 we-get there more-speedily, the-more-speedily (will we have) to-go-
 ναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὐκ οὖν κρεῖττον
 out for — provisions. (Is it) not therefore better
 μάχεσθαι νῦν ἡριστηκότας, ἢ αὔριον ἀναρίστους;
 to-fight now having-breakfasted, than to-morrow without-breakfast?

Ἄνδρες, τὰ ἱερὰ τε καλὰ ἡμῖν, οἱ οἶωνοι
 Men, the sacrifices indeed (are) favourable to-us, the omens
 τε αἰσιοι, τε τὰ σφάγια κάλλιστα· ἴωμεν
 likewise auspicious, and the victims most-favourable; let us-go
 ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. Οὐκ ἔτι δεῖ
 against the men (our enemies). It-'is not moreover 'proper (that)
 τούτους, ἐπεὶ πάντως εἶδον ἡμᾶς,
 those, since 'they certainly 'have-seen us, (should be allowed)
 δειπνήσαι ἡδέως, οὐδὲ σκηνηῆσαι ὅπου ἂν
 to-sup comfortably, or to-encamp where 'they might
 θέλωσι.
 wish.

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐκέλευον ἡγεῖσθαι, καὶ
 Then the captains requested (him) to-lead-on, and
 οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγε. Καὶ ὃς ἡγεῖτο, παραγ-
 no-one objected. And — (he) led-on (the troops), having
 γείλας διαβαίνειν, ἢ ἕκαστος
 ordered (them) to-cross-over, (in the place) in-which each-one
 ἐτύχανε ὦν τοῦ νάπου· γὰρ ἐδόκει
 found (himself) being (at) the ravine; for he-thought (that)
 τὸ στράτευμα ἂν οὕτω γενέσθαι πέραν ἄδρόον
 the army might thus get over together
 θᾶπτον, ἢ εἰ ἐξεμηρίοντο κατὰ τὴν γεφυραν,
 more speedily, than if they-defiled over the bridge,
 ἣ ἦν ἐπὶ τῷ νάπῃ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν,
 which was on the ravine. When indeed they-had-crossed-over,
 παριὼν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες,
 going-on along the line he-said: Men,
 ἀναμνησθε δὲ ὅσας μάχας, σὺν
 remember how-many battles, with (the assistance of)
 τοῖς θεοῖς, νενικήκατε ἰόντες,
 the gods, (you have fought and) conquered (by) coming-to
 ὁμόσε, καὶ οἷα οἱ φεύγοντες πολεμίους
 close-quarters, and what — (those) fleeing (from the) enemy
 πάσχουσι· καὶ ἐννοήσατε τοῦτο, ὅτι ἐσμεν ἐπὶ
 suffer; and you-will-reflect-on this, that we are

ταῖς θύραις τῆς Ἑλλάδος. Ἄλλ' ἔπεσδε τῷ
the gates of — Greece. But follow —

Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόνι, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε ἀλλήλους
Hercules (your) conductor, and exhort one-another

ὀνοματί. Ἡδὺ τοι νῦν εἰπόντα
by-name. (It is) pleasing indeed (to think, that he) now saying

καὶ ποιήσαντά τι ἀνδρεῖον καὶ καλόν,
and doing any-thing brave and honourable, (that he will)

παρέχειν μνήμην ἑαυτοῦ ἐν οἷς ἐθέλει.
furnish (a) remembrance of-himself among (those) whom he-wishes

Ἔλεγε ταῦτα παρελαύνων, καὶ
(to remember him). He-said these (things) riding-along, and

ἅμα ὑφηγεῖτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ
at-the-same-time he-led-on in line, and (the generals)

ποιησάμενοι τοὺς πελταστάς ἑκατέρωθεν
having-formed the targeteers on-each (flank)

ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. Παρηγγέλλετο
they-marched-forth against the enemy. He-ordered

δὲ ἔχειν μὲν τὰ δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν
(them) however to-have indeed the spears on the right

ὤμον, ἕως σημαῖνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα
shoulder, until a-signal-should-be-given with-the trumpet; then

δὲ καθέντας εἰς προβολὴν ἔπεσδαι
indeed having-lowered (them) for (a) charge to-follow (their

βάδην καὶ μηδένα διώκειν
leaders in a regular) step and (that) no-one (was) to-advance

δρόμῳ. Ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρήει ΖΕΥΣ
'in (a) 'run. On this (the) watch-word came JUPITER

ΣΩΤΗΡ, ΗΡΑΚΛΗΣ ΗΓΕΜΩΝ. Οἱ
(THE) PRESERVER, HERCULES (THE) LEADER. The

πολέμιοι δὲ ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες ἔχειν
enemy however remained-in-place, thinking (that) they-had (a)

καλὸν χωρίον. Δ' ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπλησίαζον,
fine position. But when the Greeks approached,

πελτασταὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔδρον ἐπὶ τοὺς
'and their) targeteers having-shouted ran against the

πολεμίους πρὶν τινὰ κελεύειν· δ' οἱ πολέμιοι
 enemy before (that) any-one ordered (them); but the enemy
 ἀντίοι ὤρμησαν, τε οἱ ἵππεις καὶ τὸ στίφος
 opposite rushed-on, not-only the cavalry but-also the mass
 τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελταστάς
 of-the Bithynians; and put-to-flight the targeteers
 Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ὑπηντίαζε
 But when the line of-the heavy-armed-men came-up
 πορευομένη ταχὺ, καὶ ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ
 advancing quickly, and at-the-same-time the trumpet
 ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
 sounded and they-sang-the-pæan, and after this
 ἤλαλαζον, καὶ ἅμα καδίεσαν τὰ δόρατα,
 they-shouted, and at-the-same-time they-couched — (their) spears,
 ἔνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο,
 then the enemy 'did no-longer (stand or) 'receive
 ἰλλὰ ἔφευγον. Καὶ Τιμασίῳ μὲν ἔχων
 (their attack), but fled. And Timasion indeed having
 τοῦς ἵππεις ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσους
 the cavalry pursued (them), and killed as-many.
 περ ἐδύναντο, ὥς ὄντες ὀλίγοι. Δὲ μὲν
 as he-could, (as) (they) being (but) few. And indeed
 τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν πολεμίων καδ' ὃ οἱ
 the left (wing) of-the enemy against (that) which the
 Ἕλληνες ἵππεις ἦσαν εὐθὺς διεσπάρη,
 Greek cavalry were (opposed to) 'was immediately 'dispersed,
 δὲ τὸ δεξιόν, ἅτε οὐ διωκόμενον σφόδρα,
 but the right (wing), as not being-followed closely,
 συνέστη ἐπὶ λόφον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον
 stood-collected on (a) hill. When indeed the Greeks saw
 αὐτοὺς ὑπομένοντας, ἐδόκει εἶναι τε
 them making-a-stand, it-seemed (to them) to-be not-only
 ῥᾶστον καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον ἵέναι ἐπ' αὐτούς.
 the-easier but-also the-safest to-go against them.
 Παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπεκείντο· δ'
 Singing the-pæan therefore 'they immediately 'attacked (them); but

οἱ οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ
 — they-'did not 'sustain (an attack). And then the
 πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον, μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη·
 targeteers pursued, until the right (wing) was-dispersed;
 δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀπέθανον· γὰρ τὸ ἵππικόν φόβον παρείχε,
 but few died: for the cavalry fear was-present-to
 τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὃν πολὺν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 (them), the (cavalry) of-the enemy being numerous. When however
 οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον τε τὸ ἵππικόν Φαρναβάζου ἔτι
 the Greeks saw not-only the cavalry of-Pharnabazus still
 συνεστηκός, καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἱππέας συναθροίζο-
 standing-together, and the Bithynian cavalry flock-
 μένους πρὸς τοῦτο, καὶ ἀπὸ τινὸς λόφου καταδεω-
 ing to these, and from (a) certain hill looking-
 μένους τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρηκεσαν μὲν,
 down-on the (things) going-on, (though) they-were-tired indeed,
 ὁμῶς δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ εἶναι ἰτέον ἐπὶ
 yet however it-seemed even to-be (best and) necessary — (to attack)
 τούτους οὕτως ὅπως δύναιντο, ὥς
 them in-as-much as they-might-be-able, that after-'they [the enemy]
 ἀναπαύσαιντο μὴ τεδαρρῆκότες.
 had-'rested (they might) not become-confident-and-bold.
 Σινταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται.
 Being-drawn-up-in-close-order 'they [the Greeks] indeed 'advanced
 Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμοιοι ἱππεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ
 Then the hostile cavalry flee down (the hill)
 τοῦ πρανοῦς, ὁμοίως ὥςπερ οἱ διωκόμενοι
 — precipitately, in-the-same-manner as-if — (they) were-being-pursued
 ὑπὸ ἱππέων· γὰρ ράπος ὑπεδέχετο αὐτοὺς, ὃ
 by cavalry; for (a) ravine received them, which
 οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ᾔδεσαν, ἀλλὰ προαπετρά-
 the Greeks 'did not 'know (of), as they-had-turled
 ποντο διώκοντες· γὰρ ἦν ὀψέ. Δὲ ἐπανελ-
 back (from) pursuing; for it-was late. But return-
 θόντες ἐνθα ἡ πρώτη συμβολὴ ἐγένετο,
 ing (to the place) where the first encounter happened.

στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, ἀπήεσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν
 having-erected (a) trophy, they-went-off towards (the) sea
 περὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς· δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἐξήκοντα σταδίοι
 about sun set; and it-was about sixty stadia
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
 to the camp.

CHAPTER VI

Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν οἱ πολέμοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ
 THEN indeed the enemy had (to do) about the
 ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπήγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας
 (affairs) of-themselves, and removed both — (their) families
 καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι προσωτάτω ἐδύναντο· οἱ
 and — effects 'as far-off 'as they-could; the
 Ἕλληνες δὲ προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ
 Greeks however 'waited indeed 'for Cleander and
 τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἥζοντα·
 the galleys and the (transport) vessel that were-about-coming,
 δ' ἐξιόντες ἐκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ἱποζυγίοις
 and going-out each day with the baggage-cattle
 καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδεῶς πυρούς,
 and the slaves they-brought (in) safely wheat,
 κριθάς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια, μελίνας, σῦκα· γὰρ ἡ χώρα
 barley, wine, legumes, millet, figs; for the country
 εἶχεν ἅπαντα ἀγαθὰ πλὴν ἐλαίου.
 had abundance (of) good (things) except (the olive) oil (tree).
 Καὶ ὁπότε τὸ στρατεύμα καταμένει ἀναπαινόμενον
 And while the army remained resting
 ἐξῆν
 it-was-allowed (the men) to-go after plunder, and going-out
 εἰλάμβανον· δὲ ὁπότε τὸ πᾶν στρατεύμα
 they-took (what they could); but when the whole army

ἐξίει, εἴ τις ἀπελθὼν χωρὶς λάβοι τι
 went-out, if any-one going-away aside (alone) might-take any-thing
 ἔδοξεν εἶναι δημόσιον. Δὲ ἦν ἤδη ἀφθονία
 it-judged (it) to-be public-property. And there-was now abundance
 πάντων· γὰρ καὶ ἀφικοῦντο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων
 of-all (things); for even there-arrived from the Greek
 πύλων παντοθεν ἀγοραί, καὶ οἱ
 cities every-where (provisions for) markets, and — (those)
 παραπλέοντες ἄσμενοι κατῆγον, ἀκούοντες
 sailing-by-there-along (the coast) willingly put-in-there, hearing
 ὥς πόλις οἰκίζοιτο, καὶ λιμὴν εἶη Δὲ
 that (a) city would-be-built, and (a) harbour be (formed). And
 καὶ ἤδη οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ὧκουν πλησίον,
 also already the enemy, — (those namely) dwelling near,
 ἐπεμπον πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος
 sent to Xenophon, hearing that he
 πολίζει τὸ χωρίον, ἐρωτῶντες, ὃ τι δέοι
 is-'forming the place, 'to-a-city, inquiring, what it-was-neccassary
 ποιοῦντας εἶναι φίλους. Δ' ὁ ἐπεδείκνυνεν
 (for them) to-be-doing to-be friends. And — he-introduced
 αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις.
 them to-the soldiers.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται, ἔχων δύο
 And on this Cleander arrived, having two
 τριήρεις, δ' οὐδὲν πλοῖον. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα
 galleys, but no (transport) vessels. But the army
 ἐτύγχανε ὃν ἔξω, ὅτε ἀφίκετο, καὶ τινὲς οἰχόμενοι
 happened being out, when he-came, and some were-going
 ἐπὶ λείαν ἄλλοι ἄλλῃ εἰς τὸ
 for plunder | others in-another [some one way, some another,] to the
 ὄρος, καὶ εἰλήφεσαν πολλὰ πρόβατα· ὀκνοῦντες
 mountain, and had-captured many sheep; fearing
 δὲ μὴ ἀφαιρεθεῖεν, λέγουσι Δεξίππῳ,
 nowever lest they-might-be-taken-from (them), they-told Dexippus,
 ὃς ἀπέδρα ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος ἔχων τὴν πεντη-
 (he) who fled from Trebisonde having the fifty-oared

κόνοτρον, καὶ κελεύουσι τα πρόβατα
 galley, and they-request (that) the sheep (might be,
 διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς, αὐτὸν μὲν λαβεῖν
 preserved for-themselves, (and that) he indeed (was) to-take
 τὰ, δὲ ἀποδοῦνα τα σφίσιν.
 — (a part of them for himself), but to-return the (rest) to-themselves
 Δ' ἐκεῖνος εὐθὺς ἀπελαύνει τοὺς περι-
 And he [Dexippus] immediately drives-off — (those) stand-
 εστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι εἶη
 ing-round of-the soldiers, and saying that it-was
 δημόσια, καὶ ἐλθὼν τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει, ὅτι
 public-property, and going to Cleander he-says, that
 ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἀρπάζειν. Ὅ
 they-endeavour to-'seize (them) 'and-take (them) 'away. —
 δὲ κελεύει ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸν
 (Cleander) however ordered (him) to-bring before him the (one)
 ἀρπάζοντα, καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν τινα
 seizing (the sheep), and — (he) indeed laying-hold-on some-one
 ἦγε. δ' Ἀγασίας περιτυχῶν
 was-leading (him away); but Agasias | happening-about [meeting him]
 ἀφαιρεῖται. καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἀγόμενος ἦν
 takes-away (the man); for-indeed — (he) being-led-away | was (a)
 λοχίτης αὐτῷ. Δ' οἱ
 member to-him [was a private soldier in his company]. And the
 ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπι-
 others — (those namely) being-present of-the soldiers at-
 χειροῦσι βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες
 tempted to-throw (stones at) — Dexippus, vociferating
 τον προδότην. Δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν
 the traitor. And also many of-the galley-men
 ἔδεισαν καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλέ-
 got-frightened and fled towards the sea, and Cle-
 ανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
 ander likewise fled. Xenophon and also the other
 στρατηγοὶ τε κατεκώλυνον, καὶ ἔλεγον
 generals not-only endeavoured-to-stop (their flight); but, also told

τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ὅτι εἷη οὐδὲν πρᾶγμα,
— Cleander | that there-was no thing, [that nothing was

ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα τοῦ στρατεύματος
the matter,] but (that) the decree of-the army

εἷη αἴτιον ταῦτα γενέσθαι. Δὲ ὁ Κλέ-
was (the) cause (that) these (things) occurred. And — Cle-

ανδρος τε ἀνερεδιζόμενος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξιππου,
under 'being not-only 'instigated by — Dexippus,

καὶ αὐτὸς ἄχθεσδείς, ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἔφη
but-also he-himself being-vexed, that he-had-been-put-in-fear, said

ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι, καὶ κηρύξειν μηδεμίαν
(that) he-would-sail-off, and proclaim (that) no

πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὥς πολεμίους.
city should-receive them, as (they were public) enemies.

Δὲ τότε οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἦρχον πάντων τῶν
For at-that-time the Lacedæmonians governed all —

Ἑλλήνων. Ἐνταῦθα τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐδόκει πονηρὸν
Greece. Then — (this) affair appeared serious

τοῖς Ἑλλήσι, καὶ ἐδέοντο
(and unfortunate) to-the Greeks, and they-entreated (Cleander)

μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἂν οὐ
not to-do these (things). But — he-said, (that it) could not

γενέσθαι ἄλλως, εἰ μὴ τις ἐκδώσει τὸν
be otherwise, (if not) (unless) some-one should-give-up the

ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελο-
(person) having-commenced to-throw (stones) and the (one) having-

μενον. Δὲ ὃν ἐξήτει ἦν Ἀγασίας,
released (him). But (he) whom he-wanted was Agasias, | the

φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι διὰ τέλους.
friend (of) — Xenophon through (out) (to the) end; [the con-

ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὁ Δέξιππος διέβαλεν
stant friend of Xenophon;] for which even — Dexippus had-accused

αὐτόν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειδὴ ἦν ἀπορία,
him. And then after (this) there-was perplexity

οἱ ἄρχοντες συνήγαγον τὸ στρατεῦμα.
(therefore) the commanders assembled the army

καὶ ἔτιοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐποιοῦντο παρ' ὀλίγον
and some indeed of-them made — little

τὸν Κλέανδρον, δὲ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι
(of the threats of) — Cleander, but to — Xenophon

τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐκ ἐδόκει εἶναι φαῦλον, ἀλλ'
the affair 'did not 'appear to-be trifling, but

ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν·
rising-up he-said :

ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ δέ
O men soldiers, the affair 'does not indeed

δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ εἶναι φαῦλον, εἰ Κλέανδρος ἔχων τὴν
'seem to-me to-be trifling, if Cleander having — (his)

γνώμην οὕτως ἡμῖν ἀπεισιν ὥσπερ λέγει.
mind thus (disposed) to-us he-goes-away as he-says.

Γὰρ μὲν αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις εἰσὶ ἐγγύς·
For indeed the Greek cities are near; (the)

Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ προεστήκασιν τῆς Ἑλλάδος· δέ
Lacedæmonians indeed at-the-head of — Greece; and

εἰς ἱκανοὶ καὶ ἕκαστος εἰς Λακεδαιμονίων
it-is competent even (for a) single one 'of (the) 'Lacedæmonians

διαπράττεσθαι ὃ τι βούλονται ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν.
to-accomplish whatever (he) wished in (these) cities.

Εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἀποκλείσει ἡμᾶς
If therefore this (Cleander) first indeed — us

Βυζαντίου, δ' ἔπειτα παραγγελεῖ τοῖς ἄλλοις
'out-of Byzantium, and then should-announce to-the other

ἄρμοσταῖς μὴ δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰς πόλεις, ὥς ὄντας
governors not to-receive (us) into the cities, as being

ἀπιστοῦντας Λακεδαιμονίοις, καὶ ὄντας ἀνόμους,
'disobeying 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians, and being lawless,

δ' ἔτι οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἥξει πρὸς
and moreover-if this — report about us come to

Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον, ἔσται χαλεπὸν
Anaxibius the commander-of-the-fleet, it-will-be difficult (for us)

καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ γὰρ τὸν νῦν
both to-remain and to-sail-away; for indeed (at) — (this) present

χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐν τῇ γῇ
 time (the) Lacedæmonians rule both by — land
 καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ. Οὐν οὐκ δεῖ οὔτε
 and by — sea. Therefore it-'is not 'proper, (that) either
 ἔνεκα ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς
 for-the-sake-of one mai. or of-two (that) we the
 ἄλλους ἀπέχεσθαι τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἀλλὰ πειστέ-
 rest be-held-back from — Greece, but it-is-necessary-to-
 ον ὅ τι ἂν κελεύσι· καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις
 obey-to whatever 'they may 'command; for indeed the cities
 ἡμῶν, ὅθεν ἐσμέν, πείδονται αὐτοῖς. Ἐγὼ μὲν
 of-us, whence we-are, obey them. I indeed
 οὐν (καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς
 therefore (for indeed I-hear (that) Dexippus said to
 Κλέανδρον, ὡς Ἀγασίας ἂν οὐκ ἐποίησε ταῦτα,
 Cleander, that Agasias would not have-done these (things),
 εἰ ἐγὼ μὴ ἐκέλευσα αὐτόν), ἐγὼ μὲν οὐν
 if I 'had not 'requested him), I indeed therefore (say)
 ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας, καὶ Ἀγασίαν,
 I-clear both you of-the blame, and (also) Agasias,
 ἂν Ἀγασίας αὐτὸς φήσῃ ἐμέ εἶναι τι αἰτιον
 should Agasias himself say (that) I was any cause
 τούτων, καὶ καταδικάζω ἑμαυτοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ
 of-these (things), and I-will-condemn myself, if I
 ἐξάρχω πετροβολίας ἢ τινὸς ἄλλου βιαίου,
 am-the-beginner of-stone-throwing or any other violence,
 εἶναι ἄξιος τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης, καὶ ὑφέξω
 (that I) am worthy of — extreme punishment, and I-will-submit
 τὴν δίκην. Δὲ φημὶ καὶ, εἰ αἰτιᾶται τινα
 to-the punishment. And I-say also, if (Dexippus) accuses any
 ἄλλον, ἑαυτὸν χρῆναι παρασχεῖν
 other (person), (that) he ought to-surrender (himself)
 Κλεάνδρῳ κρῖναι· γὰρ οὕτω ὑμεῖς ἂν εἴητε
 to-Cleander to-try (him); for thus you may be
 ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας. Ὡς δὲ νῦν
 released from — censure. As indeed (the affair) now

ΦΧΕΙ χαλεπὸν εἰ οἰόμενοι καὶ ἐπαίνου
 has (itself), (it is) hard if thinking (that) both applause
 καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι,
 and honour would-be-prepared (for us) in — Greece, (that)
 ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων, οὐδ' ἐσόμεθα ὅμοιοι τοῖς
 in-place indeed of-these, we-'will not 'be equal to-the
 ἑλλοις, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεθα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων
 other (Greeks), but will-be-excluded from the Grecian
 πόλεων.
 cities.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ,
 After this Agasias rising-up said: I,
 ὦ ἄνδρες, δμνυμι θεοὺς καὶ θεάς ἧ μὴν
 O men, swear (by all the) gods and goddesses that truly
 μήτε Ξενοφῶντα κελεύσαι με ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα,
 neither Xenophon requested me to-rescue the man,
 μήτε μηδένα ἄλλον ὑμῶν· δὲ μοι ἰδόντι ἀγα-
 (nor) (or) no-one else of-you; but I seeing (a) good-
 δὸν ἄνδρα τῶν ἐμῶν λοχιτῶν ἀγόμενον ὑπὸ
 and-brave man of — my company led-off by
 Δεξιππου, ὃν ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε προδόντα,
 Dexippus, whom you know (as) betraying (you),
 ἔδοξεν εἶναι δεινόν· καὶ ὁμολογῶ ἀφειλόμην.
 It-seemed (to me) to-be intolerable; and I-confess (that) I-'to-
 *

Καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με, δὲ ἐγὼ
 (him) 'away. And you indeed 'do not 'deliver me 'up, for I
 ἑμαυτόν, ὥςπερ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, παρασχήσω
 myself, as Xenophon recommends, will-surrender (myself)
 Κλεάνδρῳ κρίναντι, ἂν ποιῆσαι ὃ τι
 to-Cleander (that) having-tried (me), 'he may 'do (with me) whatever
 βούληται· ἔνεκα τούτου μήτε πολεμεῖτε
 he may-please; on-account of-this 'do not 'contend 'with (the)
 Λακεδαιμονίοις, σώζοισθέ τε ἀσφαλῶς,
 Lacedæmonians, may-you-unharmed indeed (return) safely (to)
 ὅποι ἕκαστος θέλει. Μέντοι ἐλόμενοι αὐτῶν
 wherever each-one wishes. 'Having indeed 'chosen them

ὑμῶν συμπέμψατε μοι πρὸς Κλέανδρον,
of-yourselves 'send (them) 'with me to Cleander,

οὔτινες, ἂν ἐγὼ παραλείπω τι, καὶ λέξουσιν
who, if I should-omit any-thing, (might, both speak

καὶ πράξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ. Ἐκ τούτου ἡ στρατιὰ
and act for me. On this the army

ἔδωκεν, προσελόμενον οὓςτινας βούλοιτο ἵεναι.
allowed (him), having-chosen whomsoever he-might-wish to-go

Ὁ δὲ προσείλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς.
(with him). — 'He indeed 'chose the generals.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοί, καὶ ὁ
After this Agasias and the generals, and the

ἄνθρωπος ἀφαιρεθεὶς ὑπὸ Ἀγασίου, ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς
man taken-away by Agasias, proceeded to

Κλέανδρον. Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔλεγον·
Cleander. And the generals said :

Ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπέμψεν ἡμᾶς πρὸς σε, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
The army has-sent us to you, O Cleander,

καὶ ἐκέλευσέ σε, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ πάντας, σεαυτὸν
and request you, if you-accuse all, you-yourself

κρίναντα χρῆσθαι ὃ τι
having-tried (all) (are) to-treat (them) (in) whatever (manner) 'you

ἂν βούλῃ, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ τινὰ ἓνα, ἢ δύο, ἢ καὶ
may 'wish, if you-accuse some one, or two, or even

πλείους, ἄξιουσιν τοίτους παρασχεῖν
more, they-'think (it) 'right (that) these 'deliver

ἑαυτοὺς σοι εἰς κρίσιν. Εἴτε οὖν αἰτιᾷ τινα
themselves 'up to-you for judgment. If therefore you-accuse any-one

ἡμῶν, ἡμεῖς πάρεσμέν σοι· εἴτε καὶ τινὰ ἄλλον,
of-us, we are-present (before) you; if even any other,

φράσον· γὰρ οὐδεὶς ἀπέσται ὅστις
say (so); for no-one shall-be-distant-from (obeying you) who

ἂν ἐδέλῃ πείδεσθαι ἡμῖν. Μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ
may wish to-obey us. After these (things) —

Ἀγασίας παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰμ
Agasias having-come-forward said : I, O Cleander, am

ὁ ἀφελόμενος τὸν ἄνδρα Δεξίππου ἄγοντος
 (he) who having-taken-away the man from-Dexippus leading
 τοῦτον, καὶ κελεύσας παίειν Δέξιπ-
 him (away), and (also) having-exhorted (the men) to-strike Dexip-
 πον. Γὰρ μὲν οἶδα ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθόν.
 pus. For indeed I-know (the) man (as) being good-and-brave
 δὲ οἶδα Δέξιππον αἰρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς
 and I-know (that) Dexippus having-been-chosen by the army
 ἀρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου, ἧς ἡτησάμεθα παρὰ
 to-command the fifty-oar-galley, which we-begged from
 Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ὧτε συλλέγειν πλοῖα
 (the) Trebisondians | on which to-collect vessels [for the
 ὡς σωζοίμεθα, καὶ Δέξιππον
 purpose of collecting vessels] that we-might-be-saved, and Dexippus
 ἀποδράντα καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας, μεδ'
 running-away and betraying the soldiers, with
 ὧν ἐσώθη. Καὶ τε ἀπεστερήκαμεν Τραπε-
 whom he-had-been-saved. And not-only we-have-deprived (the) people-of-
 ζουντίους τὴν πεντηκόντορον, καὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι
 Trebisond (of) the fifty-oared-galley, but-also we-seem to-be
 κακοὶ διὰ τοῦτον· αὐτοὶ τε ἀπολώλαμεν
 dishonest through this (man); 'we ourselves indeed 'were-ruined
 τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ. Γὰρ ἤκουε,
 [the on this [as far as depended on this man]. For he-had-heard,
 ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, ὡς εἴη ἀπορον ἀπιόντας πεζῇ
 as-well-as we, that it-would-be impracticable having-departed on-foot
 τε διαβῆναι τοὺς ποταμούς, καὶ σωθῆναι
 not-only to-cross the rivers, but-also | to-be-saved [to get
 εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτον οὖν ὄντα
 safe] to — Greece. (From) this (one) therefore being
 τοιοῦτον ἀφειλόμην. Εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες,
 such (a person) I-rescued (the man). If indeed you were-leading
 ἢ τις ἄλλος τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ
 'him away), or any-one else of—(those) with you, and not (one)
 τῶν ἀποδράντων παρ' ἡμῶν, ἴσθι εὖ ὅτι ἂν
 of — (those) deserting from us, know well that 'I would

σπαίησα οὐδέν τούτων. Νόμιζε δ', εἰάν νῦν
 'have-done nothing of-these (things). Consider then, if 'you now
 ἀποκτείνης ἐμέ, ἀποκτείνων ἀγαθόν
 'kill me, (you) are-putting-to-death (a) brave-and-honourable
 ἄνδρα δι' ἄνδρα τε δειλόν καὶ πονηρόν.
 man for (a) man not-only (a) coward but-also (a) villain.

Ὁ Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν ὅτι μὲν
 — Cleander having-heard this said that indeed
 οὐκ ἐπαινοίη Δέξιππον, εἴη
 he-'could not 'approve (of the conduct of) Dexippus, if (he)
 πεποιηκώς ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη, νομίζειν,
 has-been-doing these (things); | not indeed, said-he, to-consider,
 εἰ Δέξιππος ἦν παμπόνηρος
 [but consider, said he,] (that) if Dexippus were (the) worst-of-villains

οἷδὲ χρῆναι αὐτόν πάσχειν βίαν, ἀλλὰ
 (that) neither ought he to-suffer violence, but
 κριθέντα, (ὥς περ καὶ νῦν ὑμεῖς ἀξιοῦτε,) τυχεῖν
 having-been-tried, (as even now you require,) to-have-met-with
 τῆς δίκης. Νῦν οὖν μὲν ἄπιτε, καταλιπόντες
 — justice. Now therefore indeed retire, leaving-behind

τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω,
 this — man (Agasias); when indeed I shall-call (you).
 πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. Οὐτε δὲ αἰτιῶμαι
 be-present at the trial. 'I neither indeed 'accuse

τὴν στρατιάν, οὐτε οὐδένα ἄλλον ἔτι, ἐπεὶ
 the army, nor (no-one) (any one) else besides, since
 αὐτὸς οὗτος ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. Δέ
 he himself confesses to-have-released the man. But

ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
 — (the man) having-been-taken-away said: I, O Cleander,

εἰ καὶ οἶει με ἄγεσθαι τι
 if even you-suppose (that) I was-led-away (for) 'doing something
 ἄδικοῦντα, οὐτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα, οὐτε
 'wrong, (I indeed) neither struck (no-one) (any one), nor

ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι τὰ πρόβατα εἶναι
 threw (stones), but said that the sheep were

δημόσια· γὰρ ἦν δόγμα τῶν στρατιωτῶν, εἰ
 public-property; for it-was (a) decree of-the army, if
 τι, ὅποτε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξίοι, ἰδία λήζου
 any-~~was~~, when the army went-out, 'should privately 'make-any-
 το, τὰ λήφθέντα εἶναι δημόσια. Ταῦτα
 capture the (things sc.) captured to-be public-property. These
 εἶπον· καὶ ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν με οὗτος
 (things) I-said; and on this seizing me this
 ἤγεν, ἵνα μηδεὶς μὴ
 (Dexippus) was-leading (me away), in-order-that no-one 'might —
 φθέγγοιτο, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος
 'utter (any thing), but he taking — (a) part
 διασώσειε τὰ χρήματα τοῖς λησταῖς παρὰ τὴν
 might-preserve the things for-the plunderers contrary-to the
 ῥήτραν. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ
 agreement. To this — Cleander said: Since
 τοῖνυν εἰ τοιοῦτος, κατὰμενε, ἵνα καὶ βουλευσώ-
 therefore you-are such-a-person, remain-here, that even I-may-delibe-
 μεθα περὶ σοῦ.
 rate about you.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἤριστον
 After this — (those) indeed about Cleander went-to-supper;
 δὲ Ξενοφῶν συνήγαγε τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ συνεβού-
 and Xenophon assembled the army, and coun-
 λευε πέμψαι ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον παραιτη-
 selled (them) to-send men to Cleander inter-
 σομένους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν
 ceding for the men. On this it-seemed (good)
 αὐτοῖς, πέμψαντας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς καὶ
 to-them, having-sent (the) generals and captains, and
 Δραλόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
 Dracontius the Spartan, and (those) of-the others
 οἱ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτήδειοι, δεῖσθαι
 who seemed to-be fit (for the occasion), to-entreat
 Κλεάνδρου κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφείναι τῷ ἄνδρῃ.
 'Cleander by all means to-set-free the-two men

Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔλθων λέγει· Ἐχεις μὲν, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
Xenophon therefore going says: You-have indeed, O Cleander,

τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιά ἵφειτο σοι ποιῆσαι ὃ τι
the men, and the army allowed you to-do what

ἐβούλου, καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ πάντων
you-wished, both (as) respects these and (as) respects all

ἑαυτῶν· νῦν δὲ αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται σε
(of) themselves; now indeed they-entreat and request you

δοῦναί σφισι τὸ ἄνδρε, καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν·
to-give to-themselves the-two men, and not 'put (them) 'to-death;

γὰρ ἐμοχθησάτην πολλὰ ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ ἐμπροσθεν
for they-laboured much in the time past

περὶ τὴν στρατιαν. Δὲ τυχόντες
as-respects (being of service to) the army. And having-obtained

ταῦτα σου, ὑπισχνοῦνταί σοι ἀντὶ τούτων,
this from-you, they-promise you in-return-for these (things),

ἣν βούλη ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν, καὶ ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ὦσιν
if you-wish to-lead them, and if the gods may-be

ἴλεω, ἐπιδείξειν σοι, καὶ ὥς κόσμιοι
propitious, (that they) will-show you, both how orderly-and-well-dis-

εῖσι καὶ ὥς ἱκανοὶ πειδόμενοι.
ciplined they-are and how competent (they are when) obeying

τῷ ἄρχοντι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ
— (their) commanders, (and) with (the assistance of) the gods not

φοβεῖσθαι τοὺς πολεμίους. Δὲ καὶ δέονται σου
to-fear the enemy. And also they-entreat of-you

καὶ τοῦτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα
even this, (that) having-come and having-taken-command

αὐτῶν, λαβεῖν πείραν καὶ
of-them, (and that) | to-have-taken experience [to make trial of] both

Δεξίππου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σφῶν, οἷος ἕκαστος ἐστί,
Dexippus and of-the rest of-them, what each is,

καὶ νεῖμαι ἑκάστοις τὴν ἀξίαν.
and to-distribute to-each-one — (his) merit [and give each one his

ἔσθ'· Ὁ Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα, ἔφρ·
deserts]. — Cleander having-heard these (things) said

Ἀλλὰ ναὶ τῷ σῷ, ταχύ τοι ἀποκρινοῦμα.
But by the twin-gods, I-'will speedily — 'answer

ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὲ δίδωμι τῷ ἄνδρῃ ὑμῖν, καὶ
/ou. And not-only I-give the-two men to-you, but-also

αὐτὸς παρέσομαι· καὶ ἢν οἱ θεοὶ παραδιδῶσιν,
I-myself will-come (to you); and if the gods grant,

ἐξηγήσομαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Καὶ οἱ οὗτοι
I-will-lead (you) to — Greece. And — those

λόγοι εἰσὶν πολὺ ἀντίοι, ἢ
words (of yours) are much opposed, than [are very different from

οὓς ἐγὼ ἤκουον περὶ ἐνίων ὑμῶν, ὧς
those] which I heard about some of-you, (namely) that

ἀφίστατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.
you-were-alienating the army from (the) Lacedæmonians.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν οἱ ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπῆλθον
On this indeed — they-applauding (him) departed

ἔχοντες τὸ ἄνδρῃ. Δὲ Κλέανδρος ἐδύετο ἐπὶ
having the-two men. And Cleander sacrificed about

τῇ πορείᾳ, καὶ ξυνῆν φιλικῶς Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ
the journey, and he-associated friendly with-Xenophon, and

ξυνεβάλοντο ξενίαν. Δὲ καὶ ἐπεὶ
they-joined (intimately in the) bonds-of-hospitality. And also when

ἑώρα αὐτοὺς ποιῶντας εὐτάκτως τὸ παραγγέλ-
he-saw them doing in-good-order the (things) com-

λόμενον, καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐπεδύμει γενέσθαι
manded, and yet more he-desired to-become (the)

ἡγεμῶν αὐτῶν. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι αὐτῷ θυομένῳ ἐπὶ
leader of-them. When however he sacrificing for

τρεῖς ἡμέρας, τὰ ἱερά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο,
three days, the victims 'did not 'become (favourable),

συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπε· Τὰ ἱερά
calling-together the generals he-said: The victims 'were

οὐκ ἐτελέσθαι ἐξάγειν·
not 'brought-to-an-end (so as to be favourable for me) to-'lead (you) 'away,

μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε μέντοι ἕνεκα τούτου· γὰρ ὑμῖν,
be not 'you-discouraged however on-account of-this; for you

ὥς ἔοικε, δέδοται ἐκκομίσαι τοὺς ἀνδρας·
 as it-is-proper, it-is-given to-lead-out the men (home);
 ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε· ἡμεῖς δὲ, ἐπειδὴν ἤκητε ἐκεῖσε,
 but proceed; we indeed, when you-arrive there
 δεξόμεθα ὑμᾶς ὥς κάλλιστα ἂν
 (at Byzantium), will-receive you 'as handsomely 'as 'we may
 δυνώμεθα.
 'be-able.

Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι
 On this it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers to-give
 αὐτῷ τὰ πρόβατα δημόσια· ὁ δὲ
 aim the sheep (being) public-property; — (he) indeed
 δεξάμενος, πάλιν ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς. Καὶ
 having-received (them), again returns (the sheep) to-them. And
 οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ διαδέμενοι
 he indeed set-sail. The soldiers however having-sold
 τὸν σῖτον, ὃν ἦσαν συγκεκομισμένοι, καὶ τᾶλλα
 he corn, which they-had-collected, and the-other
 ἃ εἰλήφεσαν, ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βι-
 (things) which they-had-captured, departed through — Bi-
 θυνῶν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πορευόμενοι τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδὸν ἐνέ-
 thynia. But when pursuing the straight road they-
 τυχον οὐδενί, ὥστε ἔχοντες τι ἔλδειν εἰς τὴν
 met-with nothing, so-that having something to-go to — (a)
 φιλίαν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ὑποστρέψαντες
 friendly (country), it-seemed (good) to-them having-marched
 τοῦτοπαλιν ἔλδειν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. Δε
 back-again to-go one day and night. And
 ποιήσαντες τοῦτο, ἔλαβον καὶ πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα
 doing this, they-took both many slaves
 καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίχοντο ἑκταλοὶ εἰς
 and sheep (or cattle); and arrived (in) six (days) at
 Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν
 Chrysopolis of-the Calchedonians, and there they-remained
 ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας λαφυροπωλοῦντες.
 seven days selling-booty.

BOOK VII.

CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ
 WHAT indeed truly the Greeks did in the
 ἀναβάσει μετὰ Κίρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
 march-up (the country) with Cyrus until the battle,
 καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐπεὶ Κῦρος
 and what (they did and experienced) in the journey after Cyrus
 ἐτελεύτησε μέχρι ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸν Πόντον, καὶ
 died until they-arrived at the Euxine-Sea, and
 ὅσα ἐποιοῦν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἐξιόντες πεζῇ, καὶ
 what they-did from the Euxine, departing on-foot, and
 ἐκπλέοντες, μέχρι ἐγένοντο ἔξω τοῦ στόματος
 sailing-off, until they-got beyond the mouth (thereof)
 ἐν Χρυσόπολει τῆς Ἀσίας, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ
 at Chrysopolis — (in) Asia, has-been-related in the
 πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάδαζος φοβού-
 preceding discourse. On this indeed Pharnabazus fear-
 μενος τὸ στράτευμα, μὴ στρατεῖνται ἐπὶ
 ing the (Grecian) army, lest it-might-invade —
 τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν
 the country of-himself, having-sent to Anaxibius the
 ναύαρχον, (ὃ δ' ἔτυχεν ὢν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ),
 (Spartan) admiral, (who indeed happened being in Byzantium,)
 εἶδεῖτο τὸ στράτευμα διαβιβάσαι ἐκ
 he-requested (him) to-have the army 'transported from
 τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο ποιῆσιν αὐτῷ πάντα,
 - Asia, and promised to-do for-him all,

ἴσα δέοι. Καὶ Ἀναξίβιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς
 what he-might-require. And Anaxibius sent-for the
 στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἰς
 generals and captains of-the soldiers (to come) to
 Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑποσχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαῖεν,
 Byzantium, and promised, if they-should-come-over (to him),

ἔπεσσαι μισθοφορίαν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Οἱ
 (that) there-would-be pay for-the soldiers. The

ἄλλοι μὲν δὴ ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι
 rest (of the officers) indeed truly said (that) after-having-consulted

ἀπαγγελεῖν Δὲ Ξενο-
 (together) they-would-announce (to him their determination). But Xeno-

φῶν εἶπεν αὐτῷ, ὅτι, ἤδη ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἀπὸ τῆς
 phon said to-him, that, already about-to-depart from the

στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιτο ἀποπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξί-
 army, 'he even 'wished / to-set-sail. But — Anaxi-

βιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν, ἔπειτα συνδιαβάντα
 bius requested him, (that) after having-crossed-over-with

οὕτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Οὖν ἔφη
 (the others) then to-depart. 'He therefore 'said (that he)

ποιήσῃν ταῦτα.
 would-do these (things).

Δὲ Σεύδης ὁ Θραξ πέμπει Μηνδοσάδην, καὶ
 But Seuthes the Thracian sends Mendosades, and

κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροδυμείσθαι ὅπως τὸ
 requests Xenophon to-join-in-the-effort-with (him) that the

στράτευμα διαβῇ, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ συμπροδυμη-
 army might-cross-over, and he-said to-him actively-taking-part-

θέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. Δ' ὁ
 in-the-effort that he-'would not 'repent (it). And — (Xenophon)

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσεται·
 said: But indeed the army will-cross-over;

ἐνεκα τούτου τελείτω μηδὲν μήτε ἐμοί, μήτε μηδενί
 oy-reason-of-this let-him-pay no-one neither me, nor (no-one)

ἄλλῳ· ἐπειδὴν δὲ διαβῇ, ἐγὼ μὲν
 any one) else; when indeed it-may-have-crossed-over. I indeed

ἀπαλλάξομι, προσφερέσθω πρὸς τοὺς δὲ
 shall-leave (h.) let-him-address-himself to — (t.h.s.e) indeed
 διαμένοντας, καὶ ὄντας ἐπικαιρίους, ὥς ἂν δοκῇ
 having-remained, and being opportune, (so) as may seem
 αὐτῷ ἀσφαλές.
 to-him safe (and not calculated to fail).

Ἐκ τούτου πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται διαβαίνουσι
 After this all the soldiers cross-over
 εἰς τὸ Βυζαντιον. Καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος μὲν οὐκ
 to — Byzantium. And — Anaxibius indeed 'did not
 ἐδίδον μισθόν, δὲ ἐκήρυξε τοὺς στρα-
 'give (them) pay, but made-proclamation (that) the sol-
 τιώτας λαβόντας τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη
 diers taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage
 ἐξίέναι, ὥς τε ἀποπέμψων
 (should) go-out (of the city), as (if) not-only 'sending (them) 'away
 καὶ ἅμα ποιήσων ἀριθ-
 (home), but-also at-the-same-time (as if) (making) (taking) (their) num-
 μόν. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, δι-
 ber. Then the soldiers were-distressed, (because) that
 εἶχον οὐκ ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν,
 they-had no money to-get-provisions on the journey,
 καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. Καὶ ὁ
 and 'they reluctantly 'packed-up (their) 'baggage. And —
 Ξενοφῶν, γεγενημένος ξένος Κλεάνδρῳ τε
 Xenophon, having-become (the) guest-friend to-Cleander the
 ἄρμοστῃ, προσελθὼν ἡσπάζετο αὐτὸν
 governor, going-to (him) he-kindly-'saluted him 'taking-leave
 ὥς ἤδη ἀποπλευσούμενος. Ὁ δὲ λέγει
 as now about-sailing-away. — (Cleander) indeed said
 αὐτῷ· Μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μὴ,
 to-him: 'Do not 'do this: | if indeed not, [for otherwise]
 ἔφη, ἔξεις αἰτίαν, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινες
 said-he, you-will-have (the) blame, since even now some
 ἤδη αἰτιῶνται σέ· ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα οὐ ταχὺ
 already blame you that the army 'does not quickly

ἰξέρπει. Δ' ὁ εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγωγε εἰμὶ
 creep-out. And — (Xenophon) said: But I-at-least am
 οὐ μὲν αἴτιος τούτου, δ' οἱ στρατιῶται αὐτοί
 not indeed (the) cause of-this, but the soldiers themselves
 δεόμενοι ἐπισιτισμοῦ, διὰ τοῦτο ἀδυμοῦσι πρὸς
 wanting provisions, through this they-are-troubled about
 τὴν ἔξοδον. Ἄλλ' ὅμως, ἔφη, ἐγὼ συμβουλεύω
 the departure. But however, said-he, I advise
 σοι μὲν ἐξελθεῖν ὥς πορευσόμενον,
 you indeed to-go-out (with them) as (if) about-accompanying (them).
 δ' ἐπειδὴν τὸ στράτευμα γένηται ἔξω, τότε
 and when the army has-got without (the city), then
 ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
 to-leave (it). (We) therefore, said — Xenophon,
 ἔλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον διαπραξώμεθα ταῦτα.
 going to Anaxibius will-settle these (things).
 Οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. Δὲ ὁ
 Thus going (to him) they-told (him) these (things). And — (he)
 ἐκέλευσε ποιεῖν οὕτω, καὶ συνεσκευ-
 requested (them) to-do so, and (that the soldiers) having-
 ασμένους ἐξίεναι τὴν ταχίστην,
 'packed-up (their) 'baggage should-go-out in-the quickest (time),
 καὶ προσανειπεῖν, ὃς ἂν μὴ παρῇ
 and moreover-to-declare-publicly, (that he) who might not be-present
 εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμόν, ὅτι αὐτὸς
 at the review and at the numbering, that he
 αἰτιάσεται αὐτόν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ
 (would) blame himself. Then the — generals
 ἐξήσαν πρῶτοι, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. Καὶ ἄρδην
 went-out first, and the others (after them). And altogether
 πάντες ἦσαν ἔξω πλὴν ὀλίγων, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος
 all were out except (some) few, and Eteonikus
 εἰστήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας, ὥς, ὅποτε πάντες
 stood by the gates, that, when all
 γένοιντο ἔξω συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας, καὶ
 had-got out (ready for) shutting the gates, and

ἐμβαλὼν τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας
 throwing-in the bar. And — Anaxibius having-called-together
 τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἔλεξε·
 the generals and the captains said :
 Λαμβάνετε, ἔφη, μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων
 You-may take, said-he, indeed — provisions from the Thracian
 κωμῶν· (δὲ εἰσὶ αὐτόθι πολλαὶ κριδαὶ καὶ πυροί,
 villagus; (and there-is there much barley and wheat,
 καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·) δὲ λαβόντες
 and other — provisions; and taking (these things)
 πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος
 proceed to (the) Chersonesus, where indeed Cyniscus
 μισθοδοτήσῃ ὑμῖν. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 will-'give you 'pay. But some of-the soldiers
 ἢ καὶ τις τῶν λοχαγῶν ἐπακούσαντες ταῦτο,
 or even some (one) of-the captains having-overheard these
 διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στρατεῦμα. Καὶ οἱ
 (things), communicated (them) to the army. And the
 στρατηγοὶ μὲν ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύδου,
 generals indeed (also) inquired about — Seuthes,
 πότῃρα εἴη πολέμιος ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότῃρα
 whether he-might-be inimical or friendly, and whether
 δέοι πορεύεσθαι διὰ τοῦ ἱερῷ ὄρους, ἢ
 it-was-necessary to-march over the sacred mountain, or 'in (a)
 κίκλῳ διὰ μέσης τῆς Θράκης. Δὲ ἐν
 'circuit through (the) middle of — Thrace. But during (the time)
 ᾧ διελέγοντο ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται
 in-which they-were-conversing-about these (things) the soldiers
 ἀναρπάσαντες τὰ ὅπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς
 having-snatched-up — (their) arms run in-full-speed to
 τὰς πύλας, ὥς πάλιν εἰσιόντες εἰς τὸ
 the gates, so-that again (they were about) entering within the
 τεῖχος. Δὲ ὁ Ἐτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ,
 walls. And — Eteonicus and — (those) with him,
 ὥς εἶδον τοὺς ὀπλίτας προσδέοντας συγκλείουσι
 as they-saw the heavy-armed-men running-towards (them) shut

τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐμβάλλουσι τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ οἱ
 the gates and thrust-in the bar. But the
 στρατιῶται ἐκοπτόν τε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἔλεγον
 soldiers knocked indeed at-the gates, and said,
 ὅτι πάσχοιεν ἀδικώτατα ἐκβαλλόμενοι εἰς τοὺς
 that they-suffered most-unjustly, being-thrown-out to the
 πολεμίους· καὶ ἔφασαν κατασχίσειν τὰς
 enemy; and they-said (that they would) out-down the
 πύλας, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες ἀνοίξουσιν. Ἄλλοι
 gates, if they-'did not voluntarily 'open (them). Others
 δὲ ἔδεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν, καὶ ὑπερβαίνουσιν εἰς
 indeed ran to (the) sea, and went-over into
 τὴν πόλιν παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τείχους· δὲ ἄλλοι
 the city along the pier of-the wall; but others
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ ἐτύγχανον ὄντες
 of-the soldiers (those namely) who happened being
 ἔνδον, ὥς ὀρῶσι τὰ πράγματα ἐπὶ
 within (the walls), as they-perceived the things (going on) at
 ταῖς πύλαις, διακόπτοντες τὰ κλειδρα ταῖς
 the gates, cutting-through the bars with — (their)
 ἀξίνας, ἀναπεταννύουσι τὰς πύλας· δ' οἱ
 axes, they-opened-wide the gates; and — (they all)
 εἰσπιπτουσιν.
 rush-in.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὥς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα
 — Xenophon indeed as he-saw the (things) going-on,
 δέσας μὴ τὸ στράτευμα τράποιτο ἐφ' ἄρπαγὴν,
 having-feared lest the army might-turn to plunder,
 καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει, καὶ ἑαυτῷ,
 and irreparable evil might-happen to-the city, and to-himself,
 καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔδει, καὶ συνεισπίπτει σὺν
 and to-the army, ran, and rushes-in-together with
 τῷ ὄχλῳ εἰσὼ τῶν πυλῶν. Οἱ Βυζάντιοι δὲ, ὥς
 the crowd within the gates. The Byzantians indeed, as
 εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα εἰσπύπτον βίᾳ φεύγουσιν ἐκ
 they-saw the army rushed-in by-force fled from

τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ
 the market, — (some) indeed to the ships, — (some) indeed
 οἴκαδε· ὅσοι δὲ ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἐνδον
 home; such indeed (who) happened being within (doors);
 ἔδεον ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον τὰς τριήρεις,
 ran out, — (some) indeed hauled-down the galleys (into
 ὡς σώζοιντο ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι· δὲ πάντες
 the water), that they-might-be-saved in the galleys; but all
 ᾤοντο ἀπολωλέναι, ὡς τῆς πόλεως
 thought (themselves) to-have-been-lost, as (believing) the town
 ἐαλωκυίας. Δὲ ὁ Ἐτεόνικος ἀποφεύγει εἰς τὴν
 having-been-captured. But — Eteonicus flees-away to the
 ἄκραν. Ὁ Ἀναξίβιος δὲ καταδραμὼν ἐπὶ
 citadel. — Anaxibius indeed running-down to (the)
 θάλατταν περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν ἁλιευ-
 sea sailed-round to the citadel in (a) fish-
 τικῷ πλοίῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ
 ing boat, and immediately he-sends-for (men) from (the)
 φρουρούς Καλχηδόνης· γὰρ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει
 garrison of-Calchedon; for — (those) in the citadel
 οὐκ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἱκανοὶ σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας.
 'did not 'appear to-be sufficient to-restrain the men
 Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ὡς εἶδον τὸν Ξενοφῶντα,
 The soldiers however as they-saw — Xenophon,
 προσπίπτουσιν αὐτῷ, πολλοί, καὶ λέγουσι·
 rushed-up to-him, (they being) many, and said:
 Νῦν ἔξεστι σοι, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, γενέσθαι ἀνδρὶ.
 Now it-is-allowed you, O Xenophon, to-become (a great) man.
 Ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα,
 You-have (the) city, you-have galleys, you-have money,
 ἔχεις τοσούτους ἄνδρας. Νῦν, εἰ βούλῃ,
 you-have such-a-great-number (of) men. Now, if you-wish
 σύ ἂν τε ὀνήσῃαις ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἡμεῖς ποιήσαιμεν
 you may not-only profit us, but-also we will-make
 σὲ μέγαν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀλλ'
 you (a) great (man). And — (Xenophon) replied: But

τε λέγετε εὖ, καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ
 you not-only say well, but-also I-will-do these (things); if
 δὲ ἐπιθυμεῖτε τούτων, θέσδε τὰ ὅπλα
 indeed you-desire these (things), place-yourselfs — (under) arms
 ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· βουλόμενος
 (and) in order as speedily (as possible); (he) wishing
 κατηρεμίσαι αὐτοὺς· καὶ τε αὐτὸς παρηγγύα
 to-have-tranquillized them; and not-only he-himself ordered
 ταῦτα, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς ἄλλους
 these (things), but-also he-requested the other (officers)
 παρεγγυᾶν τίδεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα. Δὲ
 to-order (the men) to-place-themselves — (under) arms. And
 οἱ αὐτοὶ ταπτόμενοι ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν, τε
 — they arranging (themselves) on themselves, not-only 'did
 οἱ ὀπλίται ἐγένοντο εἰς ὀκτὼ ἐν
 the heavy-armed-men become in (number) eight (deep) in (a)
 ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ παραδεδραμήκεσαι
 short time, and the targeteers had-ran-on-the-side
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἐκάτερον κέρας. Δὲ τὸ χωρίον ἐστὶ
 to — each wing. And the place, (which) is
 οἶον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι καλούμενον
 such (as is) most-beautiful to-draw-up-in-order (an army), is-called
 τὸ Θράκιον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. Ἐπεὶ
 the Thracian, clear of-houses and level. When
 δε τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο, καὶ κατηρε-
 indeed the arms lay (in place), and (the men) were-some-
 μίσδησαν, Ξενοφῶν συγκαλεῖ τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ
 what-tranquillized, Xenophon assembled the army, and
 λέγει τάδε·
 speaks thus:

Ὅτι μὲν ὀργίζεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ
 That indeed you-are-angry, O men soldiers, | and
 νομίζετε, ἐξαπατῶμενοι, πάσχειν δεινὰ,
 think, being-deceived, to-suffer greatly, [and think, that
 οἱ θαυμάζω.
 you have been badly treated, in being thus deceived,] I 'am not 'surprised

Δὲ ἦν χαριζόμεδα τῷ θυμῷ, καὶ τιμωρησόμεδα
But if we-gratify — (our) anger, and punish

τε Λακεδαιμονίους τοὺς παρόντας,
not-only (the) Lacedæmonians, — (those namely) being-present,

τῆς ἐξαπάτης, καὶ διαρπάσωμεν τὴν πόλιν
(for) the deceit, but-also plunder the city

οὐδὲν τὴν αἰτίαν, ἐνδυμείσδε ἃ ἔσται
| not the cause, [not to blame,] | consider what will-be

ἐντεῦθεν. Ἐσόμεδα
from-this [consider what will be the consequences]. We-will-be

μὲν ἀποδεδειγμένοι πολέμιοι Λακεδαιμονίοις
indeed (the) declared enemies (of the) Lacedæmonians

καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις. Οἷος δ' ὁ πόλεμος ἂν
and — (their) allies. What indeed the war may

γένοιτο πάρεστιν δὴ εἰκάζειν, ἑωρακότας καὶ
be it-is-possible indeed to-conjecture, having-seen and

ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν ἤδη γεγενημένα.
remembered ¹ the (things) now recently having-occurred

Γὰρ ἡμεῖς οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι
[the things that have but recently occurred]. For we — Athenians

ἦλθομεν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς τοὺς
went into the war — (that namely) with the

Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, ἔχοντες
Lacedæmonians and — (their) allies, having

τριήρεις, τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ, δὲ τὰς ἐν
galleys, — (some) indeed at sea, and — (some) in

τοῖς νεωρίοις, οὐκ ἐλάττους τριακοσίων,
the docks, (together) not less (than) three-hundred,

ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει,
there-being also much money in the city

καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν τε
[Acropolis], and (the) income being yearly not-only

ἀπὸ τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ ἐκ τῆς ὑπερορίας
from the home (revenues) but-also from — (our) foreign

οὐ μείον χιλίων ταλάντων, ἄρχοντες
'territories' not less (than) a-thousand talents. rulers

ξέ ἀπασῶν τῶν νήσων, καὶ τε ἔχοντες πολλὰς
 also all the islands, and also having many
 πόλεις ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, καὶ τε πολλὰς ἄλλας ἐν τῇ
 towns in — Asia, and also many others in —
 Εὐρώπῃ, καὶ ἔχοντες αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον,
 Europe, and having this very-same — Byzantium,
 οὗ ἐσμεν νῦν, κατεπολεμήθημεν
 where we-are now, (yet) | we-were-warred-against [the war was car-
 ὡς ὑμεῖς πάντες ἐπίστασθε. Δὲ νῦν
 ried on against us] as you all know. But now
 δὴ ἂν οἴομεθα τί παθεῖν, Λακεδαι-
 truly 'we may 'think what (we may have) to-suffer, (the) Lacedæ-
 μονίων καὶ μὲν τῶν Ἀχαιῶν ὑπαρχόντων συμ-
 monians and indeed the Achæans being ai-
 μάχων, δὲ Ἀθηναίων, καὶ ὅσοι ἦσαν τότε
 lies, and (the) Athenians, and such (as) were then
 σύμμαχοι ἐκείνοις, πάντων προσγεγενημένων·
 allies (of) them, all having-become-joined-to (them).
 δὲ Τισσαφέρνους καὶ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ἐπὶ
 and Tissaphernes (as) also the other barbarians on (the)
 θλάττῃ πάντων ὄντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν, δὲ
 sea (coast) all being enemies to-us, but (the)
 πολεμιωτάτου αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω·
 most-inimical (being) this-same — king up (in the
 ὃν ἤλθομεν ἀφαιρησό-
 country); whom we-went (against for the purpose of) taking-
 μενοι τε τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ ἀποκτε-
 away not-only — (his) rule [throne] but-also (of) kill.
 νοῦτες, εἰ δυναίμεθα. Πάντων τούτων δὴ
 ing (him), if we-could. All these truly
 ὄντων ὁμοῦ, ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων, ὅστις
 being alike (against us), is-there any-one so foolish, who
 οἶται ἡμᾶς ἂν περιγενέσθαι; Μὴ, πρὸς
 thinks (that) we might get-the-superiority? Let-'us not, —
 θεῶν, μαινώμεθα μὴδ' ἀπολώμεθα
 (in the name of the) gods, 'act-like-madmen nor perish

αἰσχρῶς, ὄντες πολέμοι καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι, καὶ
disgracefully, being enemies both to — (our) country, and

τοῖς ἡμετέροις φίλοις αὐτῶν τε καὶ οἰκείοις.
to — our friends (of-ourselves) and also 'to (our) relations

Γὰρ εἰσι πάντες ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ταῖς
For they-are all in the cities — (those namely that)

στρατευσομέναις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ μὲν
will-be-marching against us, and justly, if indeed

ἠδελησάμεν κατασχεῖν οὐδεμίαν βάρβαρον πόλιν,
we-wished to-take-possession-of no barbarian city,

καὶ κρατοῦντες ταῦτα· δὲ πρώτην Ἑλληνίδα
and (we) being-superior-in-force to-these; but (the) first Greek

πόλιν εἰς ἣν ἤλθομεν, ταύτην ἐξαλαπάζομεν.
city to which we-came, that (namely) we-plundered.

Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν εὐχομαι πρὶν ἐπιθεῖν ταῦτα
I indeed therefore pray (that) before I-behold such

γενόμενα ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ἐμέ γε γενέσθαι
(things) brought-to-pass by you, (that) I at-least (may) be

μυρίας ἀργυρίας κατὰ γῆς. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν,
a-thousand fathoms under ground. And I-advice you,

ὄντας Ἕλληνας, πειδομένους τοῖς προεσστη-
being Greeks, (that) yielding-obedience to — (those) standing-at-

κοσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων πειρᾶσθαι τυγχάνειν τῶν
the-head-of-the Greeks to-endeavour 'to-obtain —

δικαίων. Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα,
justice. If indeed you-'are not 'able (to obtain) this,

δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀδικουμένους μὴ γοῦν
it-is-proper (that) you (though) wronged 'should not therefore

στέρεσθαι Ἑλλάδος. Καὶ νῦν δοκεῖ μοι
'deprive-yourselves of-Greece. And now it-seems to-me (that)

πέμπψαντας Ἀναξίβιω εἰπεῖν, ὅτι ἡμεῖς παρεληλύ-
having-sent to-Anaxibius to-say, that we have-en-

δαμεν εἰς τῆς πόλιν ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν βίαιον, ἀλλ'
tered into the city about-committing no violence, but

ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα εὐρίσκεσθαι τι ἀγαθὸν παρ'
if indeed we-could to-obtain something good from

ὕμῶν· δὲ εἰ μὴ, ἀλλὰ δηλώσοντες, ὅτι
 you; but if not, yet (however) showing, that
 ἐξερχόμεθα οὐκ ἐξαπατώμενοι, ἀλλὰ πειδο-
 we-go-out not (as) being-deceived, but (as) obey-
 μένοι.
 ing (you).

Καὶ τὰυτα ἔδοξε·
 | And these (things) seemed (good); [and these propositions were
 καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε Ἡλείον,
 adopted;] and they-sent Hieronymus — (the) Elean,
 ἐρῶντα ταῦτα, καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα,
 saying these (things), and-likewise Eurylochus (the) Arcadian,
 καὶ Φιλήσιον Ἀχαιοῖν. Οἱ μὲν ὥχοντο
 and Philesius (the) Achæan. — | (They) indeed went
 ἐρῶντες ταῦτα.
 saying these (things) [they went carrying this message].

Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔτι καθεμένων Κοιρα-
 But the soldiers 'being still 'seated Cora-
 τάδης Θηβαῖος προσέρχεται, ὃς οὐ
 tades (a) Theban came-up (to them), who (though) not
 φεύγων περιήει τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀλλὰ στρατη-
 (a) fugitive, went-about — Greece, but wishing-to-be-
 γῶν, καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἰ ἢ
 a-general, |and announced-himself, [and offering his services,] if either
 τις πόλις ἢ ἔθνος δέοιτο στρατηγοῦ· καὶ τότε
 any city or nation might-require (a) general; and then
 προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἴη ἔτοιμος ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς
 coming-forward he-said, that he-was prepared to-conduct them
 εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα
 to the Delta, (so) called of — Thrace, where
 πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ λήψονται· δ' ἔστε
 many and good (things) might-be-obtained; and until 'the
 ἂν μόλωσιν, ἔφη παρέξειν καὶ σῖτα καὶ
 should 'arrive, he-said (that) he-would-supply both meat and
 ποτὰ εἰς ἀφθονίαν. Οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούουσι
 drink in abundance. The soldiers listen-to

ταῦτα, καὶ ἅμα τὰ ἀπαγγελλόμενα
 these (things), and at-the-same-time the (things) announced
 παρὰ Ἀναξιβίου· γὰρ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι πειδομένους
 from Anaxibius; for he-replied, that being-obedient
 αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλ' ἀπαγ-
 to-him it-'would not (be) 'repented, but (that) he-would-
 γελεῖ ταῦτα τοῖς τέλεσι τε οἴκοι, καὶ
 announce these (things) to-the highest-authorities — (at) home, and
 αὐτὸς βουλεύσοιτο περὶ αὐτῶν ἀγαθόν,
 he-himself would-consult-and-plan about them (all the) good,
 ὅ τι δύναιτο. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται
 whatever he-might-be-able. On this the soldiers
 δέχοντα τε τὸν Κοιρατᾶδην στρατηγόν, καὶ
 receive indeed — Coeratades (as their) general, and
 ἀπῆλθον ἔξω τοῦ τείχους. Ὁ Κοιρατάδης δὲ
 they-departed without the walls. — Coeratades indeed
 συντίθεται αὐτοῖς παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα
 agreeing with-them to-be-present at the army (the)
 ὑστεραίαν, ἔχων καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ μάντιν, καὶ
 next-day, having both victims and (an) augur, and
 σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐξῆλθον,
 meat and drink for-the army. But when they-had-gone-out,
 ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκλείσε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἐκήρυξεν
 — Anaxibius shut the gates, and made-proclamation
 ὅς ἂν ἁλῶ ἐνδον, ὢν τῶν στρα-
 (that he) who might be-caught within (the walls), being of-the ar-
 τιωτῶν, ὅτι πεπράσεται. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κοι-
 my, that he-would-be-sold. But on-the next-day — Coe-
 ρατάδης μὲν ἦκε, ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν,
 ratades indeed came, having the victims and the augur,
 καὶ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες εἶποντο αὐτῷ φέροντες ἄλφιτα,
 and twenty men followed him carrying barley meal,
 καὶ ἄλλοι εἴκοσι οἶνον, καὶ τρεῖς
 and another twenty (carrying) wine, and three (carrying loads)
 ἔλαιων, καὶ εἷς ἀνὴρ μέγιστον φορτίον ὅσον
 of-olives, and one man (carrying) the-greatest load that

ἐδύνατο σκορόδων, καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. Δὲ
 he-could of-garlic, and another of-onions. And
 καταθέμενος ταῦτα, ὥς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν,
 they-having-laid-down these (things), as (if) for distribution,
 ἐθύετο.
 he-sacrificed.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν μεταπεμψάμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέ-
 But Xenophon having-sent-for Cleander re-
 λευεν διαπραῖξαι ὅπως τε εἰσέλθοι
 requested (him) to-obtain (permission for him) that — he-might-enter
 εἰς τὸ τεῖχος, καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. Ὅ
 within the walls, and to-sail-away from Byzantium. —
 Κλέανδρος δ' ἐλθὼν, ἔφη· Ὅκω διαπραξάμενος
 Cleander indeed having-arrived, said: I-come having-obtained
 μάλα μόλις· γὰρ Ἀναξίβιον λέγειν,
 (permission with) great difficulty; for (that) Anaxibius says,
 ὅτι εἴη οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον τοὺς στρατιώτας μὲν
 that it-is not proper (that) the soldiers indeed

εἶναι πλησίον τοῦ τεύχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ
 (should) be near the walls, Xenophon also (being)
 ἔνδον· δὲ τοὺς Βυζαντίους στασιάζειν καὶ
 within; and (that) the Byzantians were-divided-in-factions and
 εἶναι πονηροὺς ἀλλήλους· ὁμως δὲ,
 (that) they-were evil-disposed to-one-another; yet-however indeed,
 ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν εἰσιέναι, εἰ μέλλοις ἐκπλεῖν σὺν
 he-said, he-requests (you) to-enter, if you-intend to-sail-away with
 αὐτῷ. Ὅ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς
 him. — Xenophon indeed truly | having-embraced the

στρατιώτας ἀπήει εἰσω τοῦ
 soldiers [having taken leave of the soldiers] departed within the
 τεύχους σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. Ὅ Κοιρατάδης δὲ τῇ
 walls with Cleander. — Coeratades indeed on-the
 μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει, οὐδὲ διε-
 — first day 'had no 'favourable-sacrifice, neither did-
 μέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Τῇ
 he-distribute (nothing) (any thing) to-the soldiers. On-the

ἑσπεραίᾳ δ' εἰστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμόν, καὶ
 next-day indeed he-stood by the altar, and
 Κοιρατάδης, ἐστεφανωμένος, ὥς θύσων· δὲ Τι-
 Coeratades, being-crowned, as about-sacrificing; but Ti-
 μασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ
 masion the Dardanian, and Neon the Asinean, and
 Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, ἔλεγον μὴ Κοιρα-
 Cleanor the Orchomenian, said (that it was) not for-Coera-
 τάδῃ θύειν, ὥς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ,
 tades to-sacrifice, as (he was) not to-be-leading the army,
 εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ὁ κελεύει
 unless he-should-give the provisions. And — he-ordered (them)
 διαμετρεῖσθαι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐνέδει αὐτῷ πολλῶν,
 to-be-distributed. When indeed it-was-wanting to-him many
 ὥστε σίτον γενέσθαι ἐκάστῳ τῶν στρα-
 (things), so-that food should-be to-each of-the sol-
 τωτῶν ἡμέρας, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα ἀπῆει,
 diers 'for (the) 'day, taking-away the victims he-departed,
 καὶ ἀπειπὼν τὴν στρατηγίαν.
 and renouncing the generalship.

CHAPTER II.

Δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος, καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιοῦς,
 But Neon the Asinean, and Phryniscus the Achæan,
 καὶ Φιλῆσιος ὁ Ἀχαιοῦς, καὶ Ξανδικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιοῦς,
 and Philesius the Achæan, and Xanthicles the Achæan,
 καὶ Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ,
 and Timasion the Dardanian, remained with the army,
 καὶ προελθόντες εἰς κώμας τῶν Θρακῶν, τὰς
 and proceeding to (some) villages of-the Thracians, —
 κατὰ Βυζάντιον, ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. Καὶ
 those namely) opposite Byzantium, they-encamped. And

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυ-
 the generals formed-parties, Cleanor indeed and Phry-
 νίσκος βουλόμενοι ἄγειν πρὸς Σευθην· (γὰρ
 niscus wishing to-lead (the army) to Seuthes; (for
 ἔπειθε αὐτούς, καὶ τῷ
 he-persuaded (and gained) them (over to his interest) and to-the (one)
 μὲν ἔδωκε ἵππον, δὲ τῷ γυναικα·) δὲ Νέων
 indeed he-gave (a) horse, but to-the (other a) woman;) and Neon
 εἰς Χερρόνησον· οἰόμενος, εἰ γένοιντο ὑπὸ
 to (the) Cherroneus; thinking, (that) if they-got under (the)
 Λακεδαιμονίοις ἂν προστάναι παντὸς τοῦ
 Lacedæmonians (that) 'he might 'stand-at-the-head of-all the
 στρατεύματος δὲ Τιμασίῳ προῖδυμειτο διαβῆναι
 army; but Timasion wanted-much to-cross
 πέραν πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν, οἰόμενος ἂν
 over again into — Asia, thinking (that) 'he might (thus)
 κατελθεῖν οἴκαδε. Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐβούλοντο
 'return home. And the soldiers desired
 ταῦτα. Δὲ τοῦ χρόνου διατριβομένου, πολλοὶ
 this-same. But the time 'being (thus) 'consumed, many
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν ἀποδιδόμενοι τὰ
 of-the soldiers, — (some) indeed selling — (their)
 ὅπλα κατὰ τοὺς χώρους, ἀπέπλεον ὥς
 arms up-and-down the places, sailed-away as (well as)
 ἐδύναντο· δὲ οἱ καὶ κατεμινύοντο εἰς
 they-could; but — (others) also mingled-with (the people) in
 τὰς πόλεις. Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ἀκούων ταῦτα,
 the towns. Anaxibius however rejoiced hearing these
 τὸ στράτευμα διαφθειρόμενον·
 (things), (that) the army (was about) being-broken-up (and)
 γὰρ, τούτων γιγνομένων, ᾧετο μάλιστα
 dispersed); for, these (things) happening, he-thought most-of-all
 χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζῳ.
 to-gratify Pharnabazus.

Δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ ἁρμοστή·
 Brt Aristarchus (the) successor of-Cleander (the) governo

Βυζαντίου συναντᾷ Ἀναξίβιω ἀποπλέοντι ἐκ
of-Byzantium met Anaxibius sailing-away from

Βυζαντίου ἐν Κυζίκῳ· δὲ ἐλέγετο, ὅτι καὶ Πῶλος
Byzantium at Cyzicus; and he-said, that even Polus

ναύαρχος διάδοχος ὅσον οὐ ἤδη
(the) admiral, (the) successor (of Anaxibius), | as-much-as not already

παρεῖη εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον.

was-present in (the) Hellespont [was expected every instant to

Καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ἐπιστέλλει μὲν τῷ
enter the Hellespont]. And Anaxibius enjoined-on — —

Ἀριστάρχῳ ἀποδόσθαι ὅπόσους ἂν εὔροι τῶν
Aristarchus to-sell as-many-as 'he might 'find of-the

στρατιωτῶν Κύρου ὑπολελειμένους ἐν Βυζαντίῳ.
army of-Cyrus remaining-behind in Byzantium.

Ὁ Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐπεπράκει οὐδένα, ἀλλὰ καὶ
— Cleander indeed had-sold none, but even

ἐδεράπευε τοὺς κάμνοντας, οἰκτεῖρων,
nursed-and-took-care-of — (those) being-sick, commiserating (them),

καὶ ἀναγκάζων δέχεσθαι οἰκίαν.
and obliging (the inhabitants) to-receive (them) 'in (their) 'houses.

Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος, ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχιστα, ἀπέδοτο οἷκ
But Aristarchus, when he-came speedily, sold not

ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων. Ἀναξίβιος δ' παρα-
less (than) four-hundred. Anaxibius indeed sail-

πλείσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον
ing-along (the coast) to Parium sends to Pharnabazus

κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα. Δ' ὁ ἐπεὶ ἤσδετο
according-to — agreement. But — (Pharnabazus) when he-heard

Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἤκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον
(that) Aristarchus — had-come to Byzantium (as)

ἄρμοσθην, καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα,
governor and Anaxibius no-longer commanded-the-fleet,

ἡμέλησε Ἀναξίβιον πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ διεπράττετο
be-neglected Anaxibius for Aristarchus, and practised

τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ στρατεύματος τοῦ Κυρείου
the same (things) about the army of — Cyrus

ἵπερ καὶ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.
which (he had) even (done) with Anaxibius

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα,
On this — Anaxibius, having-called Xenophon

κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι
(to him), requests (him) by-every means and contrivance to-sail

ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὡς τάχιστα, καὶ τε
to the army as speedily (as possible), and not-only

τυνέχειν αὐτό καὶ συναθροίζειν τῶν διε-
to-'keep it 'together, but-also to-collect of-the dis-

σπαρμένων ὡς πλείστους ἂν δύνηται,
persed (soldiers) as many (as) 'he might 'be-able

καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Πέρινδον διὰ
and having-'led (them) 'along to — Perinthus &c

βιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα.
'transport (them) 'across into — Asia as speedily (a-

καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τριακόντορον, καὶ
possible); and he-gave to-him (a) thirty-oared-galley, and (a)

ἐπιστολὴν, καὶ συμπέμπει ἄνδρα, κελεύοντα τοὺς
letter, and he-sends (a) man, requesting the

Περινηδίου προπέμψαι Ξενοφῶντα τοῖς ἵπποις
Perinthians to-send-away Xenophon on — horse (back)

ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ ὁ
as speedily (as possible) to the army And —

Ξενοφῶν μὲν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ
Xenophon indeed having-sailed-across arrived at the

στράτευμα· οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἐδέξαντο ἡδέως,
army; the soldiers also received (him) with-pleasure,

καὶ ἄσμενοι εὐθὺς εἶποντο, ὡς διαβησόμενοι
and 'they willingly immediately 'followed (him), as crossing-over

ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.
from — Thrace into — Asia.

Ὁ Σεύδης δὲ, ἀκούσας Ἱκοντα πάλιν,
— Seuthes however, having-heard (of him) coming back, (and)

πέμψας Μηδοσάδην πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν,
having-sent Medosades to him by sea,

ἔδεῖτο ἄγειν τὴν στρατιὰν πρὸς ἑαυτόν,
he-begged (him) to-bring the army to him,

ὑπισχνούμενος αὐτῷ, ὃ τι ᾤετο λέγων
promising him, whatever he-thought mentioning (it) (he

παίσειν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο,
might be able) to-persuade (him). But — (Xenophon) answered (him),

ὅτι εἴη οἷόν τε οὐδὲν τούτων γενέσθαι.
[that it-was possible for-none of-these (things) to-happen [that

Καὶ ὁ

it was impossible for any thing of the kind to take place]. And — (he)

μὲν ἀκούσας ταῦτα ᾤχετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
indeed having-heard these (things) departed. When however the

Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινδον, Νέων μὲν
Greeks arrived at Perinthus, Neon indeed

ἀποσπάσας, ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο
having-drawn-off (his troops) 'from (the rest), encamped

χωρίς, ἔχων ὡς ὀκτακοσίους ἀνδρώπους· δὲ πᾶν
apart, having about eight-hundred men; and all

τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ἦν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
the other (troops of the) army were in the same (place)

παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περινδίων.
under the walls — (those namely) of-Perinthus.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἐπραττε περὶ πλοίων,
After this Xenophon indeed was-bargaining for ships,

ὅπως ὅτι διαβαλεῖν τάχιστα. Ἐπὶ
so that he-might-cross-over (as) speedily (as possible). At

τούτῳ δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος, ὁ ἄρμοστής ἐκ
this (time) however Aristarchus, the governor from

Βυζαντίου, ἀφικόμενος, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισ-
Byzantium, arriving, having two galleys, having-been-

μένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου, ἀπείπε τε τοῖς ναυκλή-
persuaded by Pharnabazus, he-forbade indeed the masters-of-the-

ποις μὴ διάγειν, ἐλδὼν τε ἐπὶ τὸ
ships — to-carry-over (the Greeks), (and) having-gone also to the

στράτευμα εἶπε τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ περαιούσθαι
 army he-told the soldiers not to go-across
 εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀναξί-
 into — Asia. But — Xenophon said, that Anaxi-
 βιος ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἔπεμψεν ἐμὲ ἐνθάδε πρὸς τοῦτο.
 bius had-ordered (it) and sent me hither about this
 Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἔλεξεν· Ἀναξίβιος μὲν
 But Aristarchus again said: Anaxibius indeed
 τοῖνυν οὐκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ ἄρμοστής
 therefore no-longer (is) admiral, I indeed (am) governor
 τῇδε· δὲ εἰ λήψομαι τινα ὑμῶν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ,
 here; and if I-shall-take any of-you on the sea,
 καταδύσω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ὤχετο εἰς τὸ
 I-will-sink (you). Saying these (things) he-departed within the
 τεῖχος. Δ' τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ μεταπέμπεται τοὺς
 walls. But on-the next-day he-sent-for the
 στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τοῦ στρατεύματος.
 generals and captains of-the army
 Δὲ ὄντων ἤδη πρὸς τῇ τείχει, τις ἐξαγγέλλει
 But being already before the walls, some-one informs
 Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι, εἰ εἰσεῖσι συλληφθήσεται, καὶ ἢ
 Xenophon, that, if he-entered he-would-be-apprehended, and either
 πείσεται τι αὐτοῦ, ἢ καὶ παραδοθήσεται
 would-suffer something there, or even be-delivered-up
 Φαρναβάζῳ. Ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα,
 to-Pharnabazus. — (Xenophon) however hearing these (things),
 μὲν προπέμπεται τοὺς, δὲ αὐτὸς εἶπεν, ὅτι
 indeed sent-on-before the (rest), but himself said, that
 βούλοιο θῦσαι τι. Καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο,
 he-wished to-sacrifice (about) something. And going-away he-sacrificed,
 εἰ οἱ θεοὶ παρεῖεν αὐτῷ πειρᾶσθαι ἄγειν τὸ
 if the gods permitted him to-attempt to-lead the
 στράτευμα πρὸς Σεύθην. Γὰρ ἑώρα οὔτε ὃν
 army to Seuthes. For he-saw (it) neither being
 ἀσφαλὲς διαβαίνειν τοῦ κωλύσοντος
 safe to-cross-over (into Asia), — (he) hindering (them)

ἔχοντος τριήρεις, οὐτ' ἐβούλετο ἔλδων ἐπὶ Χερ-
 having galleys, nor did-he-wish having-gone to (the) Cher-
 ρόνησον κατακλεισθῆναι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα
 sonessu to-be-shut-up (there), and the army
 γενέσθαι ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων, ἔνθα μὲν
 'e-be in great want of-every-thing, where indeed
 ἀνάγκη πείθεσθαι τῷ ἁρμοστῇ ἐκεῖ,
 (there would be a) necessity to-obey the governor there,
 δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔμελλεν ἔξιν οὐδὲν τῶν
 and the army would-hereafter have nothing of—
 ἐπιτηδεύων.
 provisions.

Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶχεν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ'·
 | And — (he) indeed had (himself) about these (things);
 οἱ στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
 [while he was thus engaged;] the generals indeed and captains
 ἦκοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον,
 coming (back) from — Aristarchus announced,
 ὅτι μὲν κελεύει σφᾶς νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι, δὲ
 that 'he indeed 'requests them now indeed to-go-away, but
 ἦκειν τῆς δείλης· ἔνθα καὶ ἡ ἐπιβουλή
 to-come (in) the evening; whereby even — (his) design-against (them)
 ἐδόκει μᾶλλον δῆλη. Οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει
 appeared more manifest. Therefore — Xenophon when it-seemed
 τὰ ἱερὰ εἶναι καλὰ αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,
 (that) the victims were favourable for-him and the army,
 ἵέναι ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύθην, παραλαβὼν Πολυ-
 to-go safely to Seuthes, taking Poly-
 κράτην τὸν Ἀθηναῖον, λοχαγόν, καὶ παρὰ τῶν
 erates the Athenian, (a) captain, and from the
 στρατηγῶν (πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος) ἄνδρα ἐκάστου,
 generals (except from Neon) (a) man of-each,
 ᾧ ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν, ᾧ ἔχετο τῆς νυκτὸς
 in-whom each-one confided, he-departed (in) the night
 ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα Σεύθου ἑξήκοντα στάδια.
 ' the army of-Seuthes (distant) sixty stadia.

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυγχάνει πυροῖς
But when he-was near it, he-falls-in with-watch-fires

ἐρήμοις. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ᾤετο
desitute (of sentinels). And indeed at-the first he-thought (that)

τὸν Σεύδην μετακεχωρηκένα ποι· ἐπεὶ δ'
— Seuthes had-gone-off somewhere; when indeed

ἤσδετο τε θορύβου, καὶ, τῶν περὶ Σεύδην
he-heard not-only (a) noise, but-also, — (those) about Seuthes

σημαινόντων ἀλλήλοις, κατέμαδεν ὅτι τὰ πυρὰ
making-signals to-one-another, he-understood that the fires

κεκαυμένα εἶη τῷ Σεύδῃ πρὸ τῶν νυκτοφυλάκων
had-been-kindled by — Seuthes before the night-watches

ἐνεκα τούτου, ὅπως οἱ φύλακες μὴ ὀρῶντο,
by-reason of-this, that the sentinels 'might not 'be-seen,

ὄντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, μήτε ὅποσοι μήτε ὅπου εἶεν,
being in the — neither how-many nor where they-might-be,

οἱ προσιόντες μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ
— (those) approaching 'might not 'be-concealed, but

εἶεν καταφανεῖς διὰ τὸ φῶς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤσδετο,
might-be conspicuous in the light. When indeed he-perceived

προπέμπει τὸν ἑρμηνέα ὃν ἐτυγχανεν ἔχων,
(this), he-sends the interpreter whom he-happened having

καὶ κελεύει εἰπεῖν Σεύδῃ, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν
(with him), and requests (him) to-tell Seuthes, that Xenophon

πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. Δὲ οἱ
is-present desiring to-have-an-interview with-him. But —

ἤρουντο, εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ
they-inquired, if (it was) the Athenian, the (one) from the

στρατεύματος. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη εἶναι οὗτος,
army. When indeed he-said (that) it-was he-himself.

ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδίωκον· καὶ ὀλίγον
jumping-on (their horses) they-departed; and (a) little

ὑστερον πελτασταὶ ὅσον διακόσιοι παρῆσαν, καὶ
after targeteers as-many-as two-hundred were-present, and

παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ
having-received Xenophon and — (those) with him

ἦγον πρὸς Σεύδην. ὁ δ' ἦν ἐπὶ
 they-conducted (them) to Seuthes. — (Seuthes) indeed was in
 τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι ἐγκεχαλι-
 (a) tower well guarded, and horses having-been-
 κωμένοι περὶ αὐτὴν κύκλῳ· γὰρ διὰ τὸν
 already-bridled (stood) round it 'in (a) 'circle; for through —
 φόβον μὲν ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας,
 fear 'he indeed 'fed the horses during-indeed-the days,
 δὲ τὰς νύκτας ἐφυλάττετο, ἐγκεχαλινωμένων.
 but during-the nights he-kept-guard, they-being-bridled,
 Γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρόσθεν Τήρης, ὁ πρόγονος
 For indeed it-was-said (that) formerly Teres, the ancestor
 τούτου, ἔχων πολὺ στρατεύμα ἐν τῇ
 of-this (Seuthes), having (a) numerous army in —
 ταύτῃ χώρᾳ, παλλοὺς ἀπολέσαι ὑπο
 this (same) country, 'had many (men) 'destroyed by
 τῶν τούτων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ ἀφαιρεθῆναι
 — these men (of this country), and had-been-deprived-of
 τὰ σκευοφόρα· δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν Θυνοί,
 — (his) baggage; and these were (the) Thynians,
 λεγόμενοι εἶναι πολεμικώτατοι πάντων, μάλιστα
 said to-be (the) most-warlike of-all, especially
 νυκτός.
 by-night.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευσε Ξενο-
 When indeed they-were near, (Seuthes) requested Xeno-
 φῶντα εἰσελθεῖν ἔχοντα δύο οὓς βούλοιοτο.
 phon to-enter having two (with him) whom he-might-wish.
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐνδον, πρῶτον μὲν ἡσπάζοντο
 When indeed they-were within, 'they first indeed 'embraced
 ἀλλήλους, καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον προῦπι-
 one-another, and according-to the Thracian custom they drank.
 νον κέρατα οἴνου· (δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης
 to-one-another (in) horns of-wine; (and also Medosades
 παρῆν τῷ Σεύδῃ, ὃς περ ἐπρέσβευε τῷ αὐτῷ
 was-present with — Seuthes, who was-the-ambassador for — him

πάτῳσε). Ἐπειτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν·
to-all-places). Afterwards indeed Xenophon began to-speak ;

ὦ Σεύδη, ἐπεμψας πρὸς ἐμέ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα,
'You, O Seuthes, 'having-sent to me, at Calchedon,

πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενος
(the) first (time) Medosades this-same-one (here), entreating

μοι συμπροδυμηθῆναι τὸ στράτευμα
me to-co-operate-with (you) (that) the army (might)

διαβῆναι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνούμενός μοι,
be-crossed-over from — Asia, and promising me,

εἰ πράξαιμι ταῦτα, ποιήσῃν
if I-should-effect these (things), (that) you-would-do (something)

εἶ, ὥς Μηδοσάδης οὕτοσι ἔφη.
good (for me), as Medosades the-same (here present) said.

Εἰπὼν ταῦτα, ἐπῆρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ
Saying these (things), he-inquired-of — Medosades if

ταῦτ' εἶη ἀληθῆ. Ὁ δ' ἔφη.
these (things) were true. — 'He indeed 'said (that they were).

Οὗτος Μηδοσάδης αὖτις ἦλθε ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ διέβην
This Medosades again came (to me) when I went-over

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παρίου, ὑπισχνούμενος,
back to the army from Parium, promising,

εἰ ἀγοίμι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς σέ, τἄλλα
if I-should-lead the army to you, in-other-respects

τέ χρήσεσθαι μοι φίλῳ καὶ
you-'would not-only 'treat me 'as (a) 'friend but-also (a)

ἀδελφῷ, καὶ τὰ χωρία παρὰ τὰ θαλάττη,
brother, and (that) the places along the sea,

ὧν σὺ κρατεῖς, ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ μοι.
of-which you are-master, would-be (a present) from you to-me.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἐπῆρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην,
About these (things) 'he again 'inquired-of — Medosades,

εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. Ὁ δὲ συνέφη
if he-said these (things). — 'He indeed agreed (that he said)

καὶ ταῦτα. Ἴδι νῦν, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι
even these (things). Go-on now, said (Xenophon) to-relate

τούτῳ τί ἀπεκρινάμην πρῶτον ἐν Καλχηδόνι.
 to-this (Scythas) what I-answered first in Calchedon.
 Ἄπεκρίνω ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσοιτο εἰς Βυζάν-
 You-answered that the army would-cross-over to Byzan-
 τιον, καὶ ἕνεκα τούτου δέοι οὔτε σοὶ
 tium, and on-account-of this there-would-be-need neither for-you
 οὔτε ἄλλῳ τελεῖν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἔφησθα ἐπεὶ
 or for-another to-pay; yourself indeed said (that) when
 διαβαίης, ἀπιέναι· καὶ
 you-had-crossed-over, (that) you-would-depart (from the army); and
 οὕτως ἐγένετο ὥσπερ σὺ ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,
 thus it-happened as you have-said. What — (then) did-I-say,
 ἔφη, ὅτε ἀφίκου κατὰ Σηλυβρίαν; Ἔφησθα
 said-he, when you-came to Selybria? You-said (that)
 εἶναι οὐκ οἶόν τε, ἀλλ' ἐλθόντας εἰς
 it-was not possible, but (that) (the army) having-gone to
 Πέρινθον διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν
 Perintus (was) to-cross-over into — Asia. Now
 τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυ-
 therefore, said — Xenophon, and I and-also this Phry-
 νίσκος, εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν, καὶ οὗτος Πολυκράτες,
 niscus, one of-the generals, and this Polycrates,
 εἰς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν πιστότατος
 one of-the captains, and without are (the) most-confidential (friends)
 ἀπὸ ἐκάστῳ τῶν στρατηγῶν, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ
 from each of-the generals, except Neon the
 Λακωνικοῦ. Εἰ οὖν βούλει τὴν πράξιν εἶναι
 Lacedæmonian. If therefore you-wish the business to-be
 πιστοτέραν, καὶ κάλεσαι ἐκείνους. Δὲ σὺ,
 more-trustworthy, even call them (in). And 'do you,
 ὦ Πολύκρατες, ἐλθὼν, εἰπέ ὅτι ἐγὼ κελεύω
 O Polycrates, going, tell (them) that I request (them)
 καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ αὐτὸς καταλιπὼν
 to-leave-behind — (their) arms; and you-yourself, leaving-behind
 ἐκεῖ τὴν μάχαιραν εἰσιδὶ.
 there (your) sword, come-in

Ὁ Σεύδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀπι-
 — Seuthes hearing these (things) said, that he-
 πτήσειεν οὐδενὶ Ἀθηναίων· γὰρ καὶ ὅτι
 would distrust no-one 'of (the) 'Athenians; for truly indeed that (he)
 εἶδέναι εἶεν συγγενεῖς, καὶ ἔφη νομίζειν
 knew they-were relatives, and said (that) he-considered (them as)
 εἵνους φίλους. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ εἰς-
 kind friends. But after these (things) when (those) en-
 ἤλδον οὓς ἔδει, Ξενοφῶν πρῶτον μὲν ἐπῆρετο
 tared whom he-wanted, Xenophon first indeed inquired-of
 Σεύδην ὅ τι δέοιτο. χρῆσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ.
 Seuthes in-what he-might-require to-use the army.
 Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὧδε· Μαισάδες ἦν πατήρ μοι,
 — (Seuthes) indeed spoke thus: Mæsades was father to-me,
 δὲ ἐκείνου ἦν ἀρχη
 |and of-him was (the) government [and under his government were]
 Μελανδίται, καὶ Θυνοὶ, καὶ Τρανίψαι. Ἐπεὶ
 (the) Melanditæ, and Thynians, and Tranipsians. Wh
 τὰ πράγματα Ὀδρυσῶν ἐνόσησεν, ὁ πατήρ
 the affairs 'of (the) 'Odrysæ had-declined, — (my) father
 ἐκπεσὼν οὖν ἐκ τῆς ταύτης χώρας, αὐτὸς μὲν
 being-driven therefore from — these-same countries, he indeed
 ἀποθνήσκει νόσῳ· δ' ἐγὼ ὀρφανὸς ἐξετράφη
 died 'of (a) disease; and I (an) orphan was-brought-up
 παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγενόμην
 under Medocus the present king. When indeed I-had-become
 νεανίσκος, ἐδυνάμην οὐ ζῆν ἀποβλέπων εἰς
 (a) young-man, I-could not live looking-for (support) to
 ἀλλοτρίαν τράπεζαν· καὶ ἐκοδεζόμεν ἐνδίφριος
 another's table; and I-sat on-the-same-seat
 αὐτῷ ἱκετῆς, δοῦναί μοι ὁπόσους ἀνδρας
 with-him (a) suppliant, to-give me as-many men 'as
 εἴη δυνατός, ὅπως ποιοίην κακόν, εἴ τι
 he-might-be able, in-order-that I-might-do evil, if any
 δυναίμην, καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς, καὶ ζῶην,
 I-could, even on — (those) expelling us, and might-live

μή ἀποβλέπων εἰς τὴν τράπεζαν ἐκείνου ὥσπερ
not looking at the table of-him like

κύων. Ἐκ τούτου δίδωσι μοι τοὺς ἀνδρας καὶ
(a) dog. On this he-gave me the men and

τοὺς ἵππους, οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε ἐπειδὴν γένηται
the cavalry, which you will-see after it-becomes

ἡμέρα. Καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ζῶ, ἔχων τούτους,
day. And I now live, having these (under my command)

ληϊζόμενος τὴν πατρῶαν χώραν ἐμαυτοῦ.
(by) depredating-on the paternal country of-myself.

Εἰ δὲ ὑμεῖς παραγένοισθε μοι, οἶμαι ἂν
If indeed you join me, I-think (that I) may

σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥαδίως ἀπολαβεῖν
with (the assistance of) the gods easily recover

τὴν ἀρχήν. Ταῦτ' ἐστίν ἃ ἐγὼ θέλω
the government. These are (the things) which I want

ὑμῶν.
of-you.

Τί οὖν ἂν δύναιο, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰ
What therefore might you-be-able, said — Xenophon, if

ἔλθοιμεν, δίδοναι τε τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ τοῖς
we-come, to-give not-only to-the army but-also to-the

λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι
captains and the generals? tell-us, in-order-that these

ἀπαγγέλλωσι. Δ' ὁ ἰπέσχετο μὲν τῷ
(persons) may-announce (it). And — he-promised indeed to-the

στρατιώτῃ Κυζικηνόν, δὲ τῷ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν,
soldier (a) Cyzicene, and to-the captain twice-as-much,

δὲ τῷ στρατηγῷ τετραμοιρίαν, καὶ γῆν, ὅπόσῃ
and to-the general four-times-as-much, and land, as-much-as

ἂν βούλωνται, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ χωρίον
'they might: 'desire, and yokes (of oxen), and (a) place

ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δέ, ἔφη ὁ
near (the) sea having-been-fortified. If indeed, said --

Ξενοφῶν, πειρώμενοι ταῦτα μὴ δια-
Xenophon, attempting these (things) we-'should not 'sue

πράξωμεν, ἀλλὰ ἢ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακε-
 deid, but (that) there-may-be some fear about (the) Lace-
 δαιμονίων, ἐάν τις βούληται ἀπιέναι παρὰ σέ,
 dæmonians, if any (of us) may-wish to-depart to you,
 δέξῃ εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ; Ὁ δ'
 would-you-receive (them) into — (your) country? — 'He indeed
 εἶπε, Καὶ γε ποιήσομαι ἀδελφούς, καὶ
 said, Even 'I at-least 'will-make (them) brothers, and
 ἐνδιφρίους, καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἀπάντων, ὧν ἂν
 table-companions, and sharers of-all, which 'we may
 δυνάμεθα κτᾶσθαι. Δὲ σοὶ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, δώσω
 'be-able to-acquire. And to-you, O Xenophon, I-will-give
 καὶ θυγατέρα, καὶ εἴ ἔστι τις θυγάτηρ σοὶ
 even (my) daughter, and if there-is any daughter to-you
 ὠνήσομαι Θρακίῳ νόμῳ· καὶ δώσω
 I-will-buy (her according) 'to (the) 'Thracian custom; and I-will-give
 Βισάνδην οἴκησιν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον
 (you) Bisanthe (as a) residence, which is to-me the-most-beautiful
 χωρίον τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ.
 place of — (those) on (the) sea.

CHAPTER III.

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, καὶ δόντες καὶ λυβόντες
 HEARING these (things), and giving and taking
 δεξιὰς ἀπήλαινον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο
 right-hands they-rode-off; and before day (break) they-got
 ἐπὶ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ ἕαστοι ἀπήγγειλαν
 to the camp, and each reported
 τοῖς πέμψασι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα
 to — (those) having-sent (them). And when it-was day (light)
 ὁ Ἀρίσταρχος μὲν πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
 — Aristarchus indeed again called-for the generals

καὶ ἡγετοὺς, οἳ εἶδον αὐτοὺς καὶ ἔφη·
 and captains; but it-seemed (best) to — (them) to-omit indeed the
 ὁδὸν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ συγκαλέσαι τὸ
 road to Aristarchus, and to-call-together the
 στρατεύμα. Καὶ πάντες συνῆλθον, πλὴν οἱ
 army. And all assembled, except the(soldiers)
 Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπείχον ὥς δέκα στάδια
 of-Neon; these indeed were-distant about ten stadia.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε
 When indeed they-had-assembled, Xenophon rising-up spoke
 τὰδε· Ἄνδρες, Ἀρίσταρχος ἔχων τριήρεις κωλύει
 thus: Men, Aristarchus having galleys prevents (us)
 διαπλεῖν ἐνθα μὲν βουλόμεθα· ὥστε οὐκ
 to-sail (there) where indeed we-wish; so-that (it is) not
 ἀσφαλὲς ἐμβαίνειν εἰς πλοῖα· δὲ οὗτος ὁ αὐτός
 safe to-embark on vessels; but this — (same) —
 κελεύει πορεύεσθαι βίᾳ διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους
 (man) orders (us) to-proceed by-force over the sacred mountain
 εἰς Χερσόνησον· ἣν δὲ, κρατήσαντες τούτου
 into (the) Chersonesus; if indeed, having-overcome this
 ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε, φησὶν οὐτε πωλήσειν
 we-should-arrive there, he-says (that) he-'would neither 'sell
 ὑμᾶς ἔτι ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε ἔτι
 you hereafter as (he did) at Byzantium, nor hereafter
 ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μισθόν,
 deceive you, but (that you) shall-receive pay,
 οὔτε ἔτι περιόψεσθαι, ὥσπερ νυνί
 (nor) (and) hereafter he-will--take-care, that-as now you-'will (not)
 δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Οὗτος μὲν
 'be-wanting — provisions. This (Aristarchus) indeed
 λέγει ταῦτα. Δὲ Σεύδης φησὶν, ἂν ἴητε
 says these (things). But Seuthes says, if you-go
 πρὸς ἐκεῖνον, ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς εὖ.
 to him, | (that) he-will-make you well [that he will bene-
 Νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε, πότερον μένοντες
 't you]. Now therefore consider, whether remaining

ἐνθάδε βουλευέσσεσθε τοῦτο, ἢ ἐπανελθόντες;
 here you-will-deliberate (about) this, or (after) having-gone-back

εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὖν μὲν δοκεῖ ἔμοι ἐπεὶ
 for provision. Therefore indeed it-seems to-me (that) since

ἐνθάδε ἔχομεν οὔτε ἀργύριον, ὥστε ἀγοράζειν,
 here we-have neither money, that (we may) buy-provisions,

οὔτε ἄνευ ἀργυρίου ἑῷσι λαμβάνειν τὰ
 nor, without money, will-they-allow (us) to-take —

ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπανελθόντες εἰς τὰς κώμας, ὅθεν οἱ
 provisions, having-returned to the villages, where the

ἥττους ἑῷσι λαμβάνειν,
 (inhabitants being) weaker (than we) will-permit (us) to-take

ἐκεῖ, ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀκούοντας
 (provisions), there, having — provisions, (and) hearing

ὅτι τις δεῖται ὑμῶν, αἰρεῖσθαι ὅτι ἂν δοκῇ
 what any-one asks of-you, to-choose what may seem

εἶναι κράτιστον ὑμῖν. Καὶ ἔφη ὅτω ταῦτα
 to-be the-best to-you. And he-said to-whomsoever these

δοκεῖ ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ὅτι πάντες
 (things) seem (good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All

ἀνέτειναν. Ἀπιόντες τοῖνον, ἔφη, συσκευ-
 extended (them) upwards. Going-away therefore, said-he, pack

άζεσθε, καὶ ἐπειδὰν τις παραγγέλλῃ,
 'up (your) 'baggage, and when any-one may-announce (it),

ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.
 follow — (your) leader.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγεῖτο, δ'
 After these (things) Xenophon indeed led-on. and

οἱ εἶποντο. Δὲ Νέων καὶ ἄλλοι παρ'
 the (soldiers) followed. And Neon and others about

Ἀριστάρχου ἐπειδὴν ἀποτρέπεσθαι· δ' οἱ
 Aristarchus persuaded (them) to-turn-back; but — (they)

οὐχ ὑπήκουον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ προεληλύθεσαν
 'would not 'mind (them). When indeed they-had-advanced

ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίου, Σεύθης ἀπαντᾷ.
 as-much-as thirty stadia. Seuthes meets (them).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτόν ἐκέλευσε *προσελάσαι*.
 And — Xenophon seeing him requested (him) to-ride-up.
 ὅπως ὅτι εἰποι αὐτῷ *πλείστων*
 so that he-might-speak to-him (while) the-greatest-number (were)
ἀκούντων ἃ *ἐδόκει* *συμφέρειν*.
 listening, (about) what might-seem to-be-'for (their) 'advantage.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθε, Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Ἡμεῖς πορευ-
 When indeed he-came-forward, Xenophon said: We are-pro-
όμεθα, ὅπου τὸ *στράτευμα* *μέλλει* *ἔχειν τροφήν*.
 we-are-going, where the army will-be-about to-have food;
 δ' ἐκεῖ *ἀκούοντες* καὶ *σοῦ* καὶ *τοῦ*
 at I where hearing both (the propositions) of-you and — (those)
τῶν Λακωνικοῦ, *αἰρησόμεθα* ἃ *ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι*
 of-the Lacedæmonians, we-shall-determine what may seem to-be
κράτιστα. Ἦν οὖν *ἡγήσῃ* *ἡμῖν*, *ὅπου*
 the-best. If therefore you-should-conduct us, where
ἐπιτήδεια *ἐστὶν* *πλείστά*, *νομιοῦμεν*
 provisions are most (abundant), we-shall-consider (ourselves)
ξενίζεσθαι *ὑπὸ σοῦ*. Καὶ ὁ Σεύθης *ἔφη*.
 to-be-hospitably-entertained by you. And — Seuthes said:
Ἀλλὰ οἶδα *πολλὰς κώμας* *ἀδρόας*, καὶ
 But I-know (of) many villages (being) close-together, and
ἐχούσας πάντα *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*, *ἀπεχούσας*
 having all (kinds of) — provisions, being-distant
ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες *ἂν ἀριστώητε*
 from-us as-much-as having-gone-over (to them) 'you may 'dine
ἡδέως. Ἦγοῦ *τοίνυν*, *ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν*. Ἐπεὶ
 pleasantly. Conduct (us) therefore, said — Xenophon. When
 δ' *ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δείλης*, οἱ *στρα-*
 indeed they-arrived to them towards-the evening, the sol-
τιῶται *συνῆλθον*, καὶ *Σευθης* *εἶπε* *τοιάδε*. Ἐγὼ
 iers assembled, and Seuthes spoke thus: I
 ὧ *ἄνδρες*, *δέουμαι ὑμῶν στρατεύεσθαι* *σὺν ἐμοι*,
 O men, want you to-serve-as-soldiers with me,
καὶ ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις
 and I-promise you to-give to-the soldiers 'a

κυζικηνόν, δὲ καὶ λοχαγοῖς στρα-
cysicene (each month), and also 'to (the) 'captains (and) gene-
τηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων
rals — (that) being-right-and-customary; besides indeed these

τιμήσω τὸν ἄξιον. Ἔξετε σίτα καὶ δέ
(things) I-will-honour the deserving. You-shall-have meat and also
ποτά ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν, λαμβάνοντες ἐκ τῆς
drink as even now, taking (them) from the
χώρας. Δ' ὅποσα ἂν ἀλίσκηται, αὐτὸς
country. But whatever (spoils) may be-taken, I-myself
ἀξιώσω ἔχειν ἵνα διατιθέμενος ταῦτα
shall-claim to-have (it) in-order-that having-disposed-of these (things)

πορίζω τὸν μισθὸν ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὰ μὲν
'I (may) 'provide — pay for-you. And — (those) indeed
φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἐσόμεθα ἱκανοὶ
fleeing and concealing-themselves we will-be able
διώκειν καὶ μαστεῦειν. Ἄν δέ τις ἀνδιστῇται,
to-pursue and to-seek-out. If indeed any-one resists,

σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
with you we-shall-endeavour to-overcome (him). — Xenophon

ἐπήρετο· Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσει
inquired: How (far) indeed from (the) sea will-you-require

τὸ στράτευμα συνέπεσθαι σοι; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,
the army to-accompany you? — 'he indeed 'replied,

Οὐδαμῇ πλεῖον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, δὲ πολλαχῇ
Never more (than) seven days' (march), but often

μείον.
less.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδοτο τῷ βου-
After these (things) (permission) was-given to — (those) wish-

λομένῳ λέγειν· καὶ πολλοὶ ἔλεγον κατὰ
ing (it) to-speak; and many spoke respecting (and con-

ταῦτά, ὅτι Σεύδης λέγοι παντὸς
curring in) these (things), that Seuthes spoke (words) all

ἄξια· γὰρ εἴη χειμῶν,
worthy-of-esteem (and advantageous to them); for it-was winter

καὶ οὔτε εἴη δυνατόν τῷ βουλομένῳ τοῦτο
and neither was-it possible for — (those) desiring this

ἀποπλεῖν οἴκαδε, τε εἴη οὐχ οἶόν τε διαγενέσθαι
to-sail-away home, and it-was not possible to-stay

ἐν φιλίᾳ, εἰ δέοι ζῆν ὠνούμενους,
in (a) friendly (country), if it-might-be-necessary to-live buying

δὲ ἀσφαλέστερον διατρίβειν
(their provisions), but (it would be) safest to-remain

καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ μετὰ Σεύδου,
and to-be-nourished in — (a) hostile (country) with Seuthes,

ἢ μόνους, ὄντων τοσούτων ἀγαθῶν· εἰ δὲ
than alone, there-being so-many advantages; if moreover

προσλήφοντο μισδὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι
they-should-receive in-addition pay it-would-seem to-be (an unexpected)

εὖρημα. Ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
good-fortune. | On these (things) Xenophon said: [Xeno-

phon then said:] Εἴ τις ἀντιλέγει,
If any-one (have anything) to-say-against (this), 'let

λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφίζετω ταῦτα.
(him) 'speak: if however not, 'let (him) 'vote-for these

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,
(things). When indeed no-one 'said (anything) 'against,

ἐπεψήφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα.
he-'put (it) to-vote, | and it-seemed (that) these (things were good);

Δὲ εὐθὺς εἶπε ταῦτα
[and it was carried]. And (Xenophon) immediately told these (thing):

Σεύδῃ, ὅτι συστρατεύουσιν αὐτῷ.
to-Seuthes, (and) that they-would-fight-and-join with-him (in the expedition).

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ ἄλλοι μὲν ἐσκήνησαν
After this the other (soldiers) indeed encamped

κατὰ τάξεις, Σεύδης ἔχων
according-to (their) ranks-and-divisions, Seuthes (having) (being in)

πλησίον κώμην, ἐκάλεσε στρατηγοὺς δὲ καὶ
(a) near village, invited (the) generals and-also

λοχαγοὺς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐπὶ
(the) captains to supper. And when they-were at (the)

θύραις, ὡς παριόντες ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, ἦν τις Ἡρα-
 doors, as going to supper, there-was a-certain Hera-
 κλείδης Μαρωνεΐτης· οὗτος προσιών ἐκάστω
 elides (a) Maronean; this (person) going-to each
 ἐνὶ, οὓστινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύδῃ,
 one, whom he-thought to-have any-thing to-give to-Seuthes,
 πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τινὰς Παριανούς, οἱ παρῆσαν
 first indeed to some Parians, — (who) were-present
 διαπραξόμενοι φιλίαν πρὸς Μήδοκον, τὸν βασιλέα
 about-to-obtain friendship with Medocus, the king
 Ὀδρυσῶν, καὶ ἄγοντες δῶρα αὐτῷ τε καὶ
 'of (the) 'Odrysia, and bringing presents to-him and-also
 τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν εἴη ἄνα
 to — (his) wife, he-said, that Medocus indeed was up
 δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπὸ θαλάττης,
 (in the country) twelve days' journey from (the) sea,
 δὲ Σεύδης, ἐπεὶ εἵληφε τὸ τοῦτο στράτευμα,
 out Seuthes, since he-has-taken — this army (into his
 ἔσοιτο ἀρχὼν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ. Ὡν οὖν
 service), would-be master on (the) sea (coast). Being therefore
 γείτων, ἔσται ἰκανώτατος ποιεῖν ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ
 neighbours, he-will-be most-able to-treat you both well
 καὶ κακῶς. Ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, δώσετε τούτῳ
 and ill. If therefore you-are-wise, give to-this
 ὅ τι ἂν αἰτῇται, καὶ διακείσεται
 (Seuthes to obtain) what 'you may 'ask-for, and it-will-be-disposed-of
 ἄμεινον ὑμῖν, ἢ ἐὰν δῶτε Μήδοκῳ τῷ οἰκοῦντι
 better for-you, than if you-give (it) to-Medocus — dwelling
 πρόσω. Οὕτως μὲν ἐπειδε τούτους. Ἀὖτις δὲ
 far-off. Thus indeed he-persuaded them. Afterwards indeed
 προσελθὼν Τιμασίῳ τῷ Δαρδανεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν
 going-to Timasion the Dardanian, since he-had-heard
 εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ
 | (that there) were to-him [that he had] both cups and
 βαρβαρικά ταπίδας, ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομίζοιτο
 barbaric (or Persian) carpets, he-said that it-was-customary

ὅποτε Σεύδης καλέσαιτο δεῖπνον τοὺς κλη
 whenever Seuthes invited to-supper (for) — (those) having.
 Δείτας δωρεῖσθαι αὐτῷ. Δ' οὗτος
 been-invited to-give (presents) to-him. And this (Seuthes)
 ἦν γένηται μέγας ἐνθάδε, ἔσται ἱκανός, καὶ
 if he-becomes great here, will-be able, both
 καταγαγεῖν σε οἶκαδε, καὶ ποιῆσαι πλούσιον
 to-have-restored you to-home, and to-make (you) rich
 ἐνθάδε. Τοιαῦτα προῖμνᾶτο, προς
 here. (In) such (a manner) he-kept-suing (for Seuthes), go-
 ὶν ἐκάστῳ. Δὲ καὶ προσελθὼν Ξενο-
 ing-to each (of the guests). And also advancing to-Xeno-
 φῶντι ἔλεγε· Σὺ εἰ καὶ μεγίστης πόλεως,
 phon he-said: You are also (from a) very-great city,
 καὶ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα ἐστὶ μέγιστον παρὰ Σεύδῃ,
 and — your name is very-great with Seuthes,
 καὶ ἐν τῇδε χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ λαμ-
 and in this country you-'will perhaps 'claim even to-re-
 βάνειν τεῖχῃ, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων
 ceive walled-places, as even others of — your
 ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν· οὖν
 (countrymen) have-received, and-like-wise land; (it will) therefore (be)
 ἀξιὸν σοι τιμῆσαι Σεύδην καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα.
 proper for-you to-honour Seuthes even most-magnificently
 Δὲ παραινῶ σοι ὦν εὖνους· γὰρ εὖ οἶδα,
 And I-advise you being (your) well-wisher; for 'I well 'know
 ὅτι ὅσῳ μείζῳ ἂν δωρήσῃ τούτῳ
 that how-much the-greater may (be the presents) you-give him
 τοσοῦτῳ μείζῳ πείσῃ ὑπὸ τούτου
 so-much the-greater you-may-persuade of this (person)
 ἀγαθὰ. Ξενοφῶν ἀκούων ταῦτα
 (to grant you) benefits. Xenophon hearing these (things),
 ἠπόρει· γὰρ δὴ διαβεβήκει ἐκ Παρίου οὐ ἔχων,
 was-perplexed; for indeed he-had-come-over from Parium not having

εἰ μὴ παιδα καὶ ὅσον
[any thing), | if not, [except] (a) servant and as-much-as (enough
ἔφóδιον.
money) 'for (the) 'journey.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον
When indeed they-went-in to the supper (the guests consist
τὲ τῶν Θρακῶν, οἱ κράτιστο
tag of) indeed the Thracians, — (those namely being) the-best
τῶν παρόντων, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
(and most considerable) of — (those) present, and the genera.
καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ εἰ τις πρεσβεία
and the captains of-the Greeks, and if any ambassador
παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν
was-present from (a) town, | the supper indeed was (for them)
καθήμενοι κύκλῳ.
sitting 'in (a) 'circle; [they took their supper sitting in a circle]
ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰσηνέχθησαν πᾶσιν
afterwards indeed tables-with-three-feet were-brought-in for-all,
οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν μεστοὶ κρεῶν νενεμημέ-
these (tables) indeed were full (of pieces of) meat heaped.
των, καὶ μεγάλοι ζυμίται ἄρτοι ἦσαν προσ-
up, and large leavened (loaves of) bread were at-
πεπερονημένοι πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. Δ' αἱ
tached to the (pieces of) meat. And the
τράπεζαι αἰεὶ μάλιστα ἐτίθεντο κατὰ τοὺς
tables 'were always in-preference 'placed near the
ξένους· γὰρ ἦν νόμος. Καὶ Σεύθης πρῶτος
guests; for (this) was (their) custom. And Seuthes first
ἐποίει τοῦτο· ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἄρτους παρα-
acted thus: taking-up the (loaves of) bread lying-
κειμένους ἑαυτῷ διέκλα κατὰ μικρόν, καὶ
near him he-broke (them) into small (pieces), and
διεῤῥίπτειν, οἷς ἐδόκει αὐτῷ· καὶ τὰ κρέα ὡς-
distributed, to-whom it-pleased him; and the meat in-like.
αὕτως καταλιπὼν ἑαυτῷ μόνον ὅσον γεύσασθαι
manner, leaving for-himself only as-much-as to-taste

Καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δέ, καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο,
And the others indeed, before whom the tables were-placed,
ἑποίουν κατὰ ταῦτά. Δέ τις Ἀρκάς

acted according to-this-same (manner). But a-certain Arcadian,

Ἄρυστας ὄνομα, δεινός φαγεῖν, εἷα
Arystas by-name, | terrible to-eat, [a very great eater,] | permitted

χαίρειν μὲν τὸ διαρρῖπτειν,
(himself to say) good-by [took no care of] indeed the distributing,

δὲ λαβὼν εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ἄρτον ὅσον
but having-taken in — (his) hand (a loaf of) bread (of) as-much-as

τριχοίνικον, καὶ κρέα, θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ
three-choenix, and-also meat, having-placed (them) on — (his)

γόνατα, ἐδείπνει. Δέ περιέφερον κέρατα
knees, he-'ate (his) 'supper. And they-carried-about horns

ἄλνου, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο. Δ' ὁ Ἀρύστας,
of-wine, and all received (some). But — Arystas,

ἐπεὶ ὁ οἰνοχόος ἦκεν παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας,
when the cup-bearer came to him bearing the horn,

εἶπεν, ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα,
he-said, seeing — Xenophon no-longer supping,

δός, ἔφη, ἐκείνῳ· γὰρ ἤδη σχολάζει, δὲ ἐγὼ
give (it), said-he, to-him; for now he-is-at-leisure, but I

οὐδέπω. Σεύδης ἀκούσας τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν
not-yet. Seuthes nearing the voice asked the

οἰνοχόον τί λέγοι. Δὲ ὁ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν·
cup-bearer what he-might-say. And the cup-bearer told (him);

γὰρ ἠπίστατο ἑλληνίζειν. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ
for he-knew (how) to-speak-Greek. Then 'indeed truly

ἐγένετο γέλως.
there-was laughter.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὁ πότος προῦχώρει, ἀνὴρ, Θραξ,
When indeed the drinking was-going-on, (a) man, (a) Thracian,

εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων λευκὸν ἵππον· καὶ λαβὼν κέρας
entered having (a) white horse; and taking (a) horn

μεστὸν εἶπε· Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύδη, καὶ
full (of wine) said· I-drink to-you, O Seuthes, and

ὠροῦμαι τὸν τοῦτον ἵππον, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκων
 present (you) — this-same horse, on which both following
 ὃν ἂν θέλῃς, αἰρήσεις, καὶ ἀποχωρῶν
 whom 'you may 'wish you-will-take (him), and retreating you-'will
 οὐ μὴ δείσης τὸν πολέμιον. Ἄλλος εἰσαγαγὼν
 not — 'fear the enemy. Another leading-in (a)
 παῖδα, οὕτως προπίκων ἐδωρήσατο, καὶ
 boy, in-like-manner drinking-to (him) presented (the boy), and
 ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. Καὶ Τιμασίῳ προ-
 another vestments for — (his) wife. And Timasion drink-
 πίνων ἐδωρήσατο τε ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην καὶ
 ing-to (him) presented not-only (a) silver cup but-also
 ταπίδα ἀξίαν δέκα μινῶν. Δὲ Γνήσιππος, τις
 (a) carpet worth ten minæ. But Gnesippus, a-certain
 Ἀθηναῖος, ἀναστὰς εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀρχαῖος νόμος
 Athenian, rising-up said, that (the) ancient custom
 εἶη κάλλιστος τοῖς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ
 was most-beautiful for — (those) indeed having to-give to-the
 βασιλεῖ ἕνεκα τιμῆς, δὲ τὸν
 king | by-reason-of honour, [in order to honour him,] but (that) the
 βασιλέα διδόναι τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι, ἵνα καὶ
 king should-give to — (those) indeed not having, therefore even
 ἐγώ, ἔφη, σοι ἔχω δωρεῖσθαι
 I, said-he, (beg of) you (that) I-may-have (something) to-present
 καὶ τιμᾶν. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἠπορεῖτο
 and to-honour (you). — Xenophon indeed was-perplexed (to know)
 ὅ τι ποιήσοι· γὰρ καὶ ἐτύγχανεν καθήμενος ὡς
 what he-might-do; for even he-happened being-seated as
 τιμώμενος ἐν δίφρῳ πλησιατάτῳ Σεύδῃ.
 (one) honoured in (the) seat the-nearest to-Seuthæ.
 Ὁ Ἡρακλείδης δὲ ἐκέλευεν τὸν οἰνοχόον ὀρέξαι
 — Heraclides indeed requests the cup-bearer to-present
 τὸ κέρας αὐτῷ. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ (γὰρ ἤδη
 the cup to-him. — Xenophon however (for already
 ἐτύγχανεν ἱποπεπωκώς) ἀνέστη, θάρρα-
 he-happened being-somewhat-exhilarated-by-wine stood-up, (and) boldly

λέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρας, καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δέ,
 taking the horn, 'he also 'said: I indeed,
 ὦ Σεΐδῃ, δίδωμι σοι ἑμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς τούτους
 O Seuthes, give to-you myself and — these
 ἑμούς· ἑταίρους, εἶναι πιστοὺς φίλους, καὶ οὐδέν
 my companions, to-be (your) faithful friends, and none
 ἄκοιτα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ βου-
 being-reluctant, but all more than-even myself de-
 λομένους εἶναι φίλους. Καὶ νῦν πάρεισι
 siring to-be (your) friends. And now they-are-present
 προσαιτοῦντες οὐδέν σε, ἀλλὰ καὶ προϊέμενοι
 asking-'for nothing 'more of-you, but even 'giving
 καὶ ἐθέλοντες πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ
 (themselves) 'up (to you) and desiring to-labour for you
 καὶ προκινδυνεύειν· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν οἱ θεοὶ
 and-also to-incur-danger (for you); with whom, if the gods
 θέλωσι, ἀπολήψῃ πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν
 will (it), you-will-retake much territory — (that) indeed
 ἦσαν πατρώαν, δὲ κτήσῃ τὴν· δὲ
 being paternal, but-also you-will-acquire — (other territory); also
 κτήσῃ πολλοὺς ἵππους δὲ ἄνδρας, καὶ καλὰς
 you-will-acquire many horses and men, and handsome
 γυναῖκας, οὓς οὐ δεήσει ληΐζεσθαι, ἀλλ
 women, whom it-'will not be-necessary to-take-by-force, but
 αὐτοὶ παρέσονται φέροντες δῶρα πρὸς σε.
 they-themselves will-be-present bringing gifts, for you.
 Ὁ Σεύδης ἀναστὰς συνεξέπιε
 Seuthes standing-up drank-out-'of (the same horn) 'with (him)
 καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο συγκατεσκεδάσατο
 and after this 'with (him) 'poured-out (on himself)
 τὸ κέρας. Μετὰ ταῦτα
 (the contents of) the horn. After these (things) (persons)
 εἰσῆλθον αὐλοῦντες τε κέρασι, οἷοις σημαίνου-
 entered playing not-only on-horns, such-as they-make-signals-
 νιν, καὶ σάλπιγξιν ὠμοβοῖναις, σαλπίζοντες τε
 with, but-also on-trumpets made-of-raw-hides, blowing not-only

ῥυθμούς καὶ οἶον μαγάδι. Καὶ Σεύδης αὐτὸς
 regular-tunes but-also as-if 'on (the) 'megadis. And Seuthes himself
 ἀναστὰς τε ἀνέκραγε πολεμικόν, καὶ
 standing-up not-only shouted (a) warlike (cry), but-also
 ἐξήλατο μάλα ἐλαφρῶς, ὥσπερ φυλαττόμενος
 leaped-away very nimbly, as-if guarding-against (a)
 βέλος. Δὲ καὶ γελοιοποιοὶ εἰσῆσαν.
 missile. And also buffoons entered.

Ὡς δ' ἥλιος ἦν ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, οἱ Ἕλληνες
 As indeed (the) sun was about setting, the Greeks
 ἀνέστησαν, καὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ὥρα καδιστάναι
 stood-up, and said, that (it was) time to-place (the)
 νυκτοφύλακας, καὶ παραδιδόναι σύνδημα. Καὶ
 night-sentinels, and to-give-out (the) watch-word. And
 ἐκέλευον Σεύδην παραγγεῖλαι, ὅπως μηδεὶς τῶν
 they-requested Seuthes to-announce, that no-one of-the
 Θρακῶν εἵξεισι εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα
 Thracians should-enter into the Greek camp.
 νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ πολέμοι ὑμῖν Θραῖκες, καὶ
 by-night; for not-only the enemies to-you (are) Thracians, but-also
 οἱ φίλοι ἡμῖν. Ὡς δ' ἐξήεσαν, ὁ Σεύδης
 the friends to-us. As indeed they-went-out, — Seuthes
 συνανέσθη οὐδὲν ἔτι ἐοικώς μεθύοντι.
 stood-up-with (them) not as-yet like (a man) being-intoxicated.
 Δ' ἐξελθὼν, ἀποκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς αὐτοὺς,
 And going-out, having-called-back the generals (by) themselves,
 εἶπεν· ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασι
 he-said: O men, the enemies of-us 'do not 'know
 πῶ τὴν ὑμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἣν οὖν ἔλωμεν
 as-yet — (of) our alliance; if therefore we-should-go
 ἐπ' αὐτούς, πρὶν φυλάξασθαι, ὥστε
 against them, before (that) they-were-'on (their) 'guard, so-as
 μὴ ληφθῆναι, ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὥστε
 not to-be-taken, or prepared (for defence), thus
 ἀμύνασθαι ἂν λάβοιμεν μάλιστα καὶ
 to-arrange-ourselves (if) 'we may 'have-taken the-most both (of)

ἀνδράποους καὶ χρήματα. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνεπήνοον
 men and things. The generals assented-to
 ταῦτα, καὶ ἐκέλευον ἡγεῖσθαι. Δ' ὁ εἶπε·
 these (things), and requested (him) to-lead-on. But—said-he:
 Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὁπόταν
 Having-prepared-yourself wait-for (me); I indeed when
 καιρὸς ἢ ἥξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ ἀναλαβὼν
 (the) proper-time may-be will-come to you, and taking
 τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἡγήσομαι σὺν
 the targeteers and you I-will-lead (you) with (the assist-
 τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
 ance of) the gods. And — Xenophon said: (We ought)
 Σκέψαι τοίνυν, εἴπερ πορευσόμεθα νυκτὸς, εἰ
 to-consider therefore, if-indeed we-are-to-proceed by-night, whether
 ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος ἔχει κάλλιον·
 the Grecian custom | has (itself) more-beautifully; [is the best;]
 γὰρ μὲν ἐν ταῖς πορείαις μεθ' ἡμέραν, τοῦ
 for indeed on the march during (the) day, (that part) of-the
 στρατεύματος, ὅποιον ἂν αἰεὶ συμφέρῃ πρὸς τὴν
 army, whichever may always be-best-suited to the
 χώραν, ἡγεῖται, εἴν τε ὀπλιτικόν, ἐάν τε πελ-
 place, leads, it-may-be heavy-armed-men, — (or) tar-
 ταστικόν, ἐάν τε ἵππικόν· δὲ νύκτωρ νόμος
 geteers, — (or) cavalry; but by-night (the) custom
 ἐστὶ τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν τὸ βραδύτατον ἡγεῖσθαι.
 is for-the Greeks (fo., the) slowest (troops) to-lead-the-way.
 Γὰρ οὕτω τὰ στρατιῶματα ἥκιστα διασπᾶται,
 For— thus the army will-'be least 'dispersed,
 καὶ ἥκιστα ἀποδιδράσκοντες λανθάνουσιν
 and there-will-'be the-least 'straggling unperceived
 ἀλλήλους· δὲ οἱ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ
 from-one-another; but — (those) having-been-dispersed often both
 περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες ποιοῦσι
 fall-foul-of one-another, and not-knowing (it) they-do
 καὶ πάσχουσι κακῶς. Οὖν Σεύδης εἶπεν· Τε
 and suffer ill. Therefore Seuthes said: 'You indeed

λίγετε ὀρθῶς, καὶ ἐγὼ πείσομαι τῷ νόμῳ τῷ
 'say what-is-right, and I will-conform to-the custom —

ἱμετέρῳ. Καὶ δώσω ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας τῶν
 '(namely) to-yours. And I-will-give you indeed guides of-the

πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς
 oldest-men — (those namely) best-acquainted with-the

χώρας, δ' αὐτὸς ἐφέψομαι ἔχων τοὺς ἵππους
 country, but I-myself will-follow having the cavalry

τελευταῖος· ἂν δέη γὰρ ταχὺ
 last (in the rear); if required I-will-'be however speedily

παρέσομαι πρῶτος. Δ' εἶπον σύνθημα
 'present first (in front). And they-said (the) watch-word

Ἀθηναίαν, κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. Εἰπόντες
 (was) Minerva, on-account-of — (their) relationship. Having-said

ταῦτ' ἀνεπαύοντο.
 these (things) they-went-to-sleep.

Ἦνίχα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας Σεύθης
 When indeed it-was about mid night Seuthes

παρῆν ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας τεθωρακισμένους, καὶ
 was-present having the cavalry clad-in-corselets, and

τοὺς πελταστάς σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Καὶ ἐπεὶ
 the targeteers with — (their) arms. And when

παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ ὀπλῖται μὲν
 he-had-delivered the guides, the heavy-armed-men indeed

ἡγοῦντο, δ' οἱ πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, δ' οἱ ἱππεῖς
 took-the-lead, and the targeteers followed, and the cavalry

ὠπισθοφυλάκουν. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἡμέρα, ὁ Σευθῆς
 brought-up-the-rear. When indeed it-was day, — Seuthes

παρήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπῆνεσε τὸν
 rode-up to the front, and praised the

Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον πολλάκις, γὰρ ἔφη αὐτὸς
 Greek custom much, for he-said he-himself

νύκτωρ, καὶ πορευόμενος σὺν ὀλίγοις,
 at-night, even proceeding with (but) few (men),

ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν.
 to have-been-separated with the cavalry from the infantry

Δὲ νῦν ὥσπερ δεῖ, πάντες φαινόμεθα ὅμως
 But now as it-ought-to-be 'we all 'appear at-the-same-time
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀδρόοι. Ἄλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν
 with-the (break of) day collected-in-a-body. But 'do you indeed
 περιμένετε αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ
 'remain here, and rest-yourselves, I however
 σκεψάμενός τι ἥξω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
 having-r. connoitred somewhat will-return. Having-said these (things)
 ἤλαυνε δι' ὄρους λαβὼν τινα ὁδόν. Δ' ἐπεὶ
 he-rode over (a) mountain taking a-certain road. But when
 ἀφίκετο εἰς πολλήν χιόνα, ἐσκέφατο εἰ εἴη
 he-had-come to much snow, he-examined if there-might-be
 ἰχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ ἡγούμενα πρόσω ἢ
 foot-steps of-men (and) whether leading forward or (the)
 ἐναντία. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδὸν ἀτρυβῆ,
 contrary (way.) But when he-perceived the road untrodden,
 ταχὺ ἦκε πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, ἔσται
 he speedily 'came back and said: Men, it-will-be
 καλῶς, ἢν θεὸς θέλῃ· γὰρ λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες
 well, if god (so) wishes; | for we-shall-concealing be-attacking
 τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἄλλ'
 the men [for we shall fall upon the men unawares]. But
 ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως, ἂν ἴδωμεν
 I indeed will-lead with-the cavalry, so-that, if we-may-see
 τινα μὴ διαφυγὼν σημήνην τοῖς πολεμίοις·
 any-one he-'may not fleeing-away 'give-notice to-the enemy;
 δ' ὑμεῖς ἑπесθε· καὶν λειφθῆτε, ἑπесθε
 out 'do you 'follow; and-if you-are-left (behind), follow
 τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων. Δὲ ὑπερβάντες τὰ
 the tracks of-the horses. And having-crossed-over — (those)
 ὄρη ἥξομεν εἰς πολλάς τε καὶ εἰδαίμονας
 mountains we-shall-come to many and also rich
 κώμας.
 villages.

Δ' ἡνίκα ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, τε ἤδη ἦν ἐπὶ
 And when it-was mid day, and already he-was on

τοῖς ἄκροις, καὶ κατιδὼν τὰς κώμας, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων
 the heights, and seeing the villages, he-came riding
 πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἦδη μὲν
 to the heavy-armed-men and said: I-'wil' now indeed
 ἀφήσω τοὺς ἱππέας καταδεῖν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, δὲ
 'send-off the cavalry to-run-down to the plain, and
 τοὺς πελταστας ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. Ἀλλ' ἔπεσδε
 the targeteers to the villages. But follow
 ὡς τάχιστα δύνησδε, ὅπως ἐάν τις ὑφιστῇται
 as speedily (as) you-can, so-that if any-one withstand
 ἀλέξησδε. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα
 (them) you-may-help (them). — Xenophon having-heard these
 κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου. Καὶ ὁ
 (things) dismounted from — (his) horse. And — (Seuthes)
 ἤρετο· Τί καταβαίνεις, ἐπεὶ δεῖ σπεύδειν;
 inquired: Why do-you-dismount, when it-is-necessary to-hasten?
 Οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐ δέη ἐμοῦ μόνοῦ.
 I-know, said (Xenophon), that you-'do not 'want me alone;
 δ' οἱ ὀπλῖται δραμοῦνται θάπτον καὶ ἡδιον,
 and the heavy-armed-men will-hasten-on more-quickly and agreeably,
 ἐάν ἐγὼ καὶ ἡγῶμαι πεζός. Μετὰ ταῦτα
 if I even lead (them) on-foot. After these (things)
 ὦχετο, καὶ Τιμασίῳ μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ὥς
 (Seuthes) departed, and Timasion with him having about
 τετταράκοντα ἱππέας τῶν Ἑλλήνων· Ξενοφῶν δὲ
 forty horsemen of-the Greeks; Xenophon also
 παρηγγύησε τοὺς εὐζῶνους ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εἰς
 ordered the active (men) from the companies about
 τριάκοντα ἔτη παριέναι. Καὶ αὐτὸς
 thirty (years of) age to-proceed-forward. And he
 ἐτρόχαζε ἔχων τούτους. Δὲ Κλεάνωρ ἡγεῖτο
 ran-on having these (men). And Cleanor led
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Ἐπεὶ θ' ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς
 the other Greeks. When indeed they-were in the
 κώμαις, Σεύδης, ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἱππέας.
 villages, Seuthes, having about thirty horsemen.

προσελάσας εἶπε· Τάδε δὴ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἃ
having-riden-up said: The (things) indeed, O Xenophon, which

σὺ ἔλεγες· οἱ ἀνδραποὶ ἔχονται
you told (us) (are taking place): the men are-held

ἀλλὰ γὰρ οἱ μοι ἵπτις οἰχονται ἔρημοι
captives); but however — my cavalry are-gone-off destitute

διώκων ἄλλος ἄλλη·
(of a leader) pursuing (the enemy) | other in-another; [some one way,

καὶ δέδοικα μὴ οἱ πολέμοι συστάντες
some another;] and I-have-feared lest the enemy assembling

που ἄνθρωποι ἐργάσωνται τι κακόν· καὶ
somewhere collected-in-a-body may-do (us) some injury; and

δὲ δεῖ τινᾶς ἡμῶν καταμένειν ἐν ταῖς
also it-is-necessary (that) some of-us should-remain in the

κώμαις· γὰρ εἰσιν μεστὰὶ ἀνθρώπων. Ἄλλ' ἐγώ
villages; for they-are full of-people. But I

μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω
indeed, said — Xenophon, with (those) whom I-have (with me)

καταλήψομαι τὰ ἄκρα· δὲ σὺ κέλευε Κλεάνορα
will-take-possession-of the heights; and 'do you 'order Cleanor

παρατεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ
to-stretch — (his) line through the plain by

τὰς κώμας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα, συνη-
the villages. When indeed they-had-done these (things), there-

λίσθησαν μὲν ὡς χίλια ἀνδράποδα, δὲ δις-
were-collected-together indeed about a-thousand slaves, and two-

χίλιοι βόες, ἅλλα καὶ μύρια πρόβατα. Τότε μὲν
thousand oxen, but also ten-thousand sheep. Then indeed

δὴ ἡυλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ.

— they-'quartered there 'for-the-night.

CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ τῇ ἰστεραίᾳ ὁ Σεύδης παντελῶς κατα-
 But on-the next-day — Seuthes 'having entirely 'burned-
 καύσας τὰς κώμας, καὶ λιπὼν οὐδεμίαν οἰκίαν,
 down the villages, and leaving not (a) house,
 ὅπως ἐνδείη φόβον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις,
 in-order-that he-might-'strike fear 'into even the rest, (when
 οἷα πείσονται ἂν μὴ πείδωνται,
 they saw) what they-would-suffer if they-'did not 'submit,
 ἀπῆει πάλιν. Καὶ ἀπέπεμψε μὲν Ἡρακλείδην
 he-departed back. And he-sent indeed Heraclides
 διατίδεσθαι μὲν τὴν λείαν εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως
 to-sell indeed the booty at Perinthus, that
 μισθὸς ἂν γένηται τοῖς στρατιώταις· δὲ αὐτὸς
 pay might be-got for-the soldiers; but he
 καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ πεδίον
 and the Greeks encamped on the plain
 Θυνῶν, οἱ ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον εἰς
 'of (the) Thynians, — (who) deserting (their houses) fled to
 τὰ ὄρη. Ἦν δὲ πολλή χιών, καὶ οὕτως
 the mountains. There-was indeed much snow, and such
 ψυχρός, ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον
 cold, that the water which they-brought-in for supper
 ἐπῆγγνυτο, καὶ ὁ οἶνος, ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγεῖ-
 was-frozen, and-also the wine, — (that namely) in the ves-
 οῖς, καὶ ῥῖνες καὶ ὦτα πολλῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 sels, likewise (the) noses and ears of-many of-the Greeks
 ἀπεκαίουτο. Καὶ τότε ἐγένετο δῆλον
 | were-burnt-off [were frozen off]. And thus it-becomes evident
 οὗ ἕνεκα οἱ Θρᾷκες φοροῦσι τὰς ἀλωπεκίδας
 why the Thracians wear — (their) fox (skin caps)
 ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς καὶ τοῖς ὠσὶ, καὶ
 on — (their) heads and — (their) ears, and (have)

χιτῶνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στήνεσι, ἀλλὰ
 coats (extending) not only about the breasts, but
 καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων
 also about the thighs, and (why) on — horse (back)
 ἔχουσιν ζειφὰς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν, ἀλλ'
 they-have wide-upper-garments (reaching) just-to the feet, but
 ὁ χλαμύδας. Ὁ Σεύδης ἀφιεῖς δὲ τῶν
 not (having) cloaks. — Seuthes letting-go indeed (some) of-the
 αἰχμαλώτων εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἰ μὴ
 captives to the mountains he-said, that unless
 καταβήσονται καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ
 they-should-come-down and obey, that he-would-burn-down both
 τὰς κώμας τούτων, καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται
 the villages-of-themselves, and the corn, and they-would-perish
 τῷ λιμῷ. Ἐκ τούτου καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ παῖδες
 of— hunger. On this both women and children
 καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι κατέβαινον. Δὲ οἱ νεώτεροι
 and-also the old-men descended. But the younger
 ἡγλίζοντο ἐν ταῖς κώμας ὑπο τὸ ὄρος.
 (persons) quartered in the villages under the mountain.
 Καὶ ὁ Σεύδης καταμαδὼν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενο-
 And — Seuthes being-informed (of this) requested — Xeno-
 φῶντα λαβόντα τοὺς νεωτάτους τῶν ὀπιτιῶν
 phon taking the youngest of-the heavy-armed-men
 συνεπισπένδαι. Καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτός
 to-follow-with (him). And having-risen-up at — night
 ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρῆσαν εἰς τὰς κώμας.
 together-with-the (break of) day they-were-present at the villages
 Καὶ μὲν οἱ πλείστοι ἐξέφυγον· (γὰρ τὸ ὄρος
 And indeed the most (of them) fled-away; (for the mountain
 ἦν πλησίον·) δὲ ὅσους Σεύδης ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν
 was near;) but as-many-as Seuthes took he-speared
 ἀφειδῶς.
 without-mercy.

Δ' ἦν τις Ἐπισθένης, Ὀλύθιος, παιδε-
 And there-was a-certain Episthines, (an) Olynthian, (a) lover

ραστής, ὃς ἰδὼν καλὸν παῖδα ἄρτι ἡδ' ἄσκοντα,
of-boys, who seeing (a) handsome youth just arrived-at-the-age-of

ἔχοντα πέλτην, μέλλοντα ἀποδινήσκειν,
puberty, having (a) shield, about-being put-to-death,

προςδραμὼν Ξενοφῶντα ἰκέτευσε βοηθῆσαι
having-run-to Xenophon he-suppliated (him) to-succor (the)

καλῷ παιδί. Καὶ ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ,
handsome boy. And who going-up to Seuthes,

δεῖται μὴ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν παῖδα· καὶ διηγείτα
requests (him) not to-kill the boy; and relates

τὸν τρόπον τοῦ Ἐπισθένης, καὶ ὅτι ποτὲ
the character of — Episthenes, and that once

συνελέξατο λόχον σκοπῶν οὐδὲν
he-collected (a) company (of soldiers) looking-to nothing (else)

ἢ εἰ τινες εἴεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων
(or if) (but that) such might-be handsome, and with these

ἦν ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ. Δὲ ὁ Σεύδης ἤρετο Καὶ ἡ
he-was (a) brave man. But — Seuthes inquired: And —

ἂν θέλοις, ὦ Ἐπίσθενες ἀποθανεῖν ὑπὲρ
would you-be-willing, O Episthenes to-die for

τούτου; Δ' ὁ ἀνατείνας τὸν
this (youth)? But — (Episthenes) having-stretched-out — (his)

τράχηλον εἶπε Παιῖε, ἔφη, εἰ ὁ παῖς κελεύει,
neck said: Strike, said-he, if the boy requires (it).

καὶ μέλλει εἰδέναι χάριν. Ὁ Σεύδης ἐπῆρετο
and hereafter-will consider (it as a) favour. — Seuthes inquired-of

τὸν παῖδα, εἰ παίσειεν αὐτὸν ἀντ' ἐκείνου.
the youth, if he-should-strike him [Episthenes] in-place-of himself

Ὁ παῖς οὐκ εἶα, ἀλλ' ἰκέτευε κατα-
The youth 'would not 'permit (this), but requested (him) to-

κίνειν μηδέτερον Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ἐπισθένης, περι-
kill neither. Then — Episthenes, having-

λαβὼν τὸν παῖδα, εἶπε· ὦρα σοι, ὦ Σεύδη,
embraced the youth, said: (It is) time for-you, O Seuthes,

διαμάχεσθαι μοι περὶ τούδε· γὰρ οὐ
to-fight with-me for this (youth); for I-'will not

μεθήσω τὸν παῖδα. Ὁ Σεύδης δὲ γελῶν, εἶα μὲν
give-up the boy. — Seuthes then laughing, 'let indeed

ταῦτα. Ἔδοξε
these (things) 'alone (and the boy's life was spared). It-seemed (best)

δὲ αὐτῷ αὐλισθῆναι αὐτοῦ, ἵνα οἱ ἐπὶ
indeed to-him to-encamp there, in-order-that — (those) on

τοῦ ὄρους μὴ τρέφοντο ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν.
the mountain 'might not 'be-nourished from these — villages.

Καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ὑποκαταβάς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
And he indeed having-gone-down-lower in the plain

ἑσκήνον. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους,
encamped. But — Xenophon, having the select-body-of-men,

ἀνωπάτω ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος, καὶ
(quartered) higher-up in the village under the mountain, and

οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες κατεσκήνησαν πλησίον ἐν
the other Greeks encamped near-by among

τοῖς καλουμένοις τοῖς ὄρεινοῖς Θραξί.
— (those) called the mountain Thracians.

Ἐκ τούτου οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι διετρίβοντο, καὶ οἱ
After this not many days had-passed, and the

Θράκες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους, καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν
Thracians from the mountain, coming-down to —

Σεύδην, διεπράττοντο περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὀκλήρων.
Seuthes, negotiated about (a) treaty and hostages.

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ ἔλεγε, ὅτι
And — Xenophon going to Seuthes said, that

σκηνῶεν ἐν πονηροῖς τόποις, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
they-were-encamped on dangerous places, and (that) the enemy

εἶεν πλησίον· τ' ἔφη ἂν ἡδίων αὐλίζεσ-
were near; 'he also 'said 'it would 'be-more-agreeable to-en-

δαι ἔξω ἐν ἐχυροῖς χωρίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς
camp without in strong places rather than in —

στεγνοῖς, ὥστε ἀπολέσθαι. Δὲ ὁ
covered (places as houses), so-as to-perish. But — (Seuthes)

ἐκέλευε θαρρῆν, καὶ ἔδειξεν ὁμήρους πα-
'requested (him) to-be-confident, and showed (the) hostages | being-

ρόντας αὐτῷ. Δέ καὶ τινες τῶν
present with-him [in his possession]. And also some of — (those)

ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους καταβείνοντες ἐδέοντο τοῦ Ξενο-
from the mountain coming-down begged — Xeno-

φῶντος συμπαραῖξαι σφισι τὰς σπονδάς.
phon to-assist them (to obtain) — (a) truce.

Ὁ δ' ὁμολόγει, καὶ ἐλέεινε θαρ-
— (Xenophon) indeed consented, and requested (them) to-be-in-

ρεῖν, καὶ ἠγγυᾶτο αὐτοὺς πείσεσθαι μηδὲν
good-spirits, and assured (them that) they should-suffer no

κακὸν πειδομένους Σεύθῃ. Δὲ οἱ ἄρα ἔλεγον ταῦτ'
evil being-obedient to-Seuthes. But — therefore they-said these

ἕνεκα κατασκοπῆς.
(things) for-the-purpose (of) spying-out (the condition of the Grecians),

Ταῦτα μὲν ἐγένετο τῆς ἡμέρας, δὲ εἰς
These (things) indeed happened during-the day, but on

τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα οἱ Θυνοὶ ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ
the following night the Thynians coming from the

ὄρους ἐπιτίθενται. Καὶ ὁ δεσπότης ἐκάστης
mountain attacked (them). And the master of-each

τῆς οἰκίας ἦν μὲν ἡγεμὼν· γὰρ ἦν χα-
— house was indeed (a) leader; for it-would-have-been dif-

λεπὸν ἄλλως ἀνευρίσκειν τὰς οἰκίας ὄντας
cult otherwise to-find-out the houses being (in the)

σκότους ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· γὰρ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι
dark in the villages; for even the houses

περιεσταύρωντο κύκλῳ μεγάλοις σταυροῖς ἕνεκα
were-palisaded 'in (a) 'circle with-large palisades on-account-of

τῶν προβάτων. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο κατὰ θύρας
the cattle. And when they-got near (the) doors

ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰσηκόντιζον,
of-each — dwelling, — (some) indeed threw-spears-in,

οἱ δὲ ἐβαλλον τοῖς σκυτάλοις, αἱ
— (others) indeed threw with — (their) clubs, which

ἔχασαν ἔχειν ὥς ἀποκόψοντες τὰς λόγχας
they-were-said to-have as (for) knocking-off the sharp-iron-heads

τῶν δοράτων, δ' οἱ ἐνεπίμπρασαν,
 of — spears, and — (others) set-fire-to (the buildings)
 καὶ καλοῦντες Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστί ἐκέλευον
 and calling-on Xenophon by-name bade (him)
 ἐξιόντα ἀποδνήσκειν, ἣ ἔφασαν αὐτόν κατα-
 coming-out to-die, or they-said (that) he would-
 καυθήσεσθαι αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἤδη τὲ πῦρ ἐφαίνετο
 be-burnt-up there. And already not-only fire appeared
 διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου, καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα
 through the roofs, but-also — (those) about Xenophon
 ἐντεδωρακισμένοι ἦσαν ἔνδον, ἔχοντες ἀσπίδας καὶ
 having-their-corselets-on were within, having shields and
 μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακέστιος ὢν
 swords and helmets, and Silanus (a) Macedonian being
 ἤδη ὥς ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἐτῶν σημαίνει τῇ
 already about eighteen (years) of-age gives-the-signal with-the
 σάλπιγγι· καὶ ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη εὐδὺς
 trumpet; and having-drawn — (their) swords 'they immediately
 ἐκπηδῶσιν, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνω-
 'sprang-out, and (also) — (those) from the other quar-
 μάτων. Οἱ Θραῖκες δὲ φεύγουσι, περιβαλλόμενοι
 ters. The Thracians indeed flee, throwing-over
 τὰς πέλτας ὀπισθεν, ὥςπερ δὴ
 — (their) shields behind (them on their backs), as indeed
 τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπεραλλομένων
 (the) custom was to-them, and they jumping-over
 τοὺς σταυροὺς τινες ἐλήφθησαν κρεμασθέντες,
 the palisades some were-caught having-been-suspended
 τῶν πελτῶν ἐνεχομένων τοῖς σταυροῖς· καὶ οἱ
 the shields holding-fast to-the stakes; and — (others)
 δὲ ἀπέθανον διαμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· δὲ οἱ
 also died missing the outlets; and the
 Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς κώμης. Τινὲς τῶν
 Greeks drove (them) out-of the village. Some of-the
 Θυνῶν δὲ ὑποστραφέντες ἐν τῷ σκοτει, ἠκόντιζον
 Thynians however coming-back in the dark, 'threw

εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκούτους τους
 (their) 'javelins into the light out-of the dark at — (those)
 παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην· καὶ ἔτρωσαν
 running-along by (a) house on-fire; and wounded
 Ἱερώνυμόν τε καὶ Εὐδοέα, λοχαγόν, καὶ Θεο-
 Hieronymus indeed — (the) Euodean, (a) captain, as-also Theo-
 γένην Λοκρὸν λοχαγον· δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀπέθανε
 genes (the) Locrian captain; but no-one died;
 μέντοι καὶ ἐσφῆς καὶ σκευὴ τινων κατεκαυθη.
 however even (the) clothes and baggage of-some were-burnt.
 Δὲ Σεύδης ἦκε βοηθήσων σὺν ἑπτὰ ἵππευσι.
 But Seuthes came about-helping (them) with seven horsemen,
 τοῖς πρώτοις ἔχων τὸν σαλπιγκτὴν τὸν Θρά-
 the first (assembled) having the trumpeter the Thra-
 κιον. Καὶ ἐπείπερ ᾔσθετο, ὅσον-
 cian (namely). And when he-perceived (the state of affairs), as-
 περ χρόνον ἐβοήθει,
 'long (a) time 'as he-was-assisting (them by marching to their aid),
 τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφθέγγετο αὐτῷ· ὥστε
 so-long even the horn sounded for him; so-that
 καὶ τοῦτο συμπαρέσχε φόβον τοῖς πολεμίοις.
 also this (noise) furnished fear to-the enemy.
 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν τε ἐδεξιούτο καὶ
 When however he-came 'he not-only 'shook-hands (with them) but-also
 ἔλεγεν, ὅτι οἶοιτο εὐρήσειν πολλοὺς τεθνεῶτας.
 said, that he-thought to-find many dead.
 Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν τε δεῖται τοὺς ὁμήρους
 After this — Xenophon not-only asks-for the hostages
 παραδοῦναι αὐτῷ, καὶ συστρατεύεσθαι, εἰ
 to-be-given-up to-him, but-also to-march-with (him), if
 βούλεται, ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος· εἰ δὲ μή, ἔἶσαι αὐτόν.
 he-wished, to the mountain; if indeed not, to-allow him (to go)
 Τῇ ἰστεραίᾳ οὖν ὁ Σεύδης παραδίδωσι τοὺς
 On-the next-day therefore — Seuthes gave-up (to him) the
 ὁμήρους, ἤδη πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας, τοὺς κρατίστους,
 hostages, already old men, the best

ὥς ἔφασαι, τῶν ὄρεινῶν· καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται
 as they-said, of-the mountain (people); and he came

σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. Δὲ ἤδη ὁ Σεύδης εἶχε καὶ
 with — (his) forces. And already — Seuthes had even

τριπλασίαν δύναμιν·
 three-times (as large a) force (as he had when the Greeks came);

γὰρ πολλοὶ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν, ἀκούοντες ἃ ὁ Σεΐδης
 for many of-the Odrysians, hearing what — Seuthes

πράττοι, κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. Δὲ οἱ
 might-be-doing, came-down taking-the-field-with (him). But the

Θυνοὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους μὲν πολλοὺς
 Thynians when they-saw from the mountain indeed many

ὀπλίτας, δὲ πολλοὺς πελταστάς, δὲ πολλοὺς
 heavy-armed-men, and many targeteers, and many

ἵππεις, καταβάντες ἰκέτεον σπείσασθαι·
 horsemen, coming-down besought (him) to-make-a-treaty (of peace

καὶ ὁμολόγουν ποιήσειν πάντα,
 with them); and promised to-do all (he might require),

καὶ ἐκέλευον λαμβάνειν τὰ πιστὰ.
 and requested (him) to-take the pledges (of fidelity from them)

Δὲ ὁ Σεΐδης, καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεδείκνυνεν
 But — Seuthes, having-called-on — Xenophon, showed

ἃ λέγοιεν, καὶ ἔφη οὐ σπεί-
 what they-may-have-said, and he-said (that he) 'would not 'treat-

σασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιτο τιμωρῆσασθαι αὐτοὺς
 with-them, if Xenophon might-wish to-punish them

τῆς ἐπιδέσεως. Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀλλ'
 (for) — (their) attack. — But (Xenophon) said: But

ἔγωγε νομίζω ἔχειν καὶ νῦν ἱκανὴν δίκην,
 I-at-least consider (that I) have even now sufficient revenge,

εἰ οὗτοι ἔσονται δοῦλοι αὐτ' ἐλευθέρων.
 if these (people) will-be slaves (having) before (been) free.

Μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ συμβουλεύειν, τὸ λοιπὸν
 Moreover said-he to-him (that I) counsel (you), in-future

λαμβάνειν ὁμήρους τοὺς δυνατωτάτους ποιεῖν
 'take (as) hostages — (those) the-most-able to-do

τι κακόν, δὲ ἔαν τοὺς γέροντας οἴκοι.
 (you) any harm, but leave the old-men at-home.
 Οὖν μὲν οἱ ταύτη πάντες δὴ
 Therefore indeed the (inhabitants) in-this (country) all truly
 προσωμολόγουν.
 submitted (to him).

CHAPTER V.

Δὲ ὑπερβάλλουσι τοὺς Θραῖκας ἵπερ Βυζαντίου
 AND they-cross-over to-the Thracians above Byzantium,
 εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι
 into the Delta so-called; this (country) indeed was not
 ἀρχὴ Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους
 (a part of the) dominion of-Mæsadæ, but (it belonged to) Teræ
 τοῦ Ὀδρύσου, τινὸς ἀρχαίου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
 the (son) of-Odryseæ, some ancient (king). And here
 ὁ Ἡρακλείδης παρῆν ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας.
 — Heraclides was-present having the price of-the spoils.
 Καὶ Σεύδης ἐξαγαγὼν τρία ζεύγη ἡμιονικὰ (γὰρ
 And Seuthææ selecting three pair (of) mules (for
 ἦν οὐ πλείω) δὲ τὰ ἄλλα βοϊκά, καλέσας
 there-were no more) and the others oxen, having-called-for
 Ξενοφῶντα, ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν, δὲ
 Xenophon, he-requested (him) to-take (the mules for himself), but
 διανεῖμαι τὰ ἄλλα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
 to-distribute the rest (namely the oxen) to-the generals
 καὶ λοχαγοῖς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ μὲν
 and captains. But Xenophon said: For-myself indeed
 τοίνυν ἀρκεῖ καὶ αὐτίς λαβεῖν· δὲ
 therefore it-is-sufficient even hereafter to-take (something); but
 δωροῦ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς,
 make-a-present (of them) to-the generals and captain-

̐αι. Καὶ ὁ Τιμασίῳν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν
 vice (of Seuthes). And — Timasion said: I indeed
 τοῖνυν οὐδ', ἂν μέλλῃ εἶναι πέντε μηνῶν
 therefore not, if there-were-about to-be five months'
 μισθός, ἂν στρατευσαίμην ἄνευ Ξενοφῶντος. Καὶ
 say, would serve-in-the-army without Xenophon. And
 ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν τῷ
 — Phryniscus and — Cleanor agreed-with —
 Τιμασίῳνι.
 Timasion.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύδης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην,
 Then — Seuthes reprehended — Heraclides,
 ̐τι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. Δ' ἐκ
 that he-'had not 'called-in also Xenophon. And on
 τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. Δ' ὁ
 this they-call-for him alone. But — (Xenophon)
 γνοὺς τὴν πανουργίαν τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου, ̐τι
 knowing the knavery of — Heraclides, that
 βούλοίτο διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς
 he-wished to-calumniate (and make him unpopular, with the
 ἄλλους στρατηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν τε
 other generals, departed taking (with him) not-only
 πάντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς.
 all the generals, but-also the captains.
 Καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπείσθησαν συνεστρα-
 And when all had-been-persuaded (by Seuthes) they-
 τεύοντο, καὶ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον
 'joined (him) 'in-an-expedition, and having the Euxine-Sea
 ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν,
 on (their) right they-arrived at — Salmydessus,
 διὰ τῶν Θρακῶν καλουμένων Μελινο-
 through the (country) 'of (the) 'Thracians called Melino-
 φάγων· ἔνθα πολλαὶ τῶν νεῶν πλεουσῶν εἰς τὸν
 phagi; here many of-the vessels sailing into the
 Πόντον ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· γὰρ ἐστὶ
 Euxine-Sea strike and (are) cast-away; for there-is (a)

τέναγος **πάμπολυ** **ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης.**
 shoal (there) (stretching) very-far (out) into the sea.
Καὶ οἱ Θραῖκες, οἱ οἰκοῦντες κατὰ ταῦτα,
 And the Thracians, — (those namely) dwelling along there,
ὀρισάμενοι στήλας, **ἕκαστοι**
 having-set-up pillars 'to-mark-the-boundaries, (so that) each
ληΐζονται τὰ ἐκπίπτοντα καδ' αὐτοὺς
 plunder the (things) cast (on shore) on these
δὲ ἔλεγον **τέως πρὶν**
 (their own limits); and they-say (that) for-some-time before (that they)
ὀρίσασθαι, **ἄρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ἀποδινῆ-**
 erected-boundaries, (that while) plundering many died
σκεῖν ὑπ' ἀλλήλων. **Ἐνταῦθα εὐρίσκονται**
 by (the hands) of-one-another. There are-found
μὲν πολλαὶ κλῖναι, δὲ πολλὰ κιβώτια, δὲ πολλαὶ
 indeed many couches, also many chests, likewise many
γεγραμμέναι βίβλοι, καὶ πολλὰ τᾶλλα, **ὅσα**
 written books, and many other (things), such-as
ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι. **Ἐντεῦθεν**
 seamen carry in wooden receptacles. Then
καταστρεψάμενοι ταῦτα, **ἀπήεσαν πάλιν**
 having-subdued these (people), they-departed back
Ἐνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στρατεύμα ἤδη πλεον
 Then truly Seuthes had (an) army already more
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. **Γὰρ τε πολὺ ἔτ**
 (numerous than) the Grecian. For not-only many yet
πλείους Ὀδρυσῶν καταβεβήκεσαν, **καὶ οἱ**
 numerous 'of-(the) 'Odrysæ had-come-down (to him), but-also —
αἰὲ πειδόμενοι συνεστρατεῖ-
 (those) successively obeying-and-submitting (to him) 'joined
οντο. **Δὲ κατηυλίσθησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ**
 (his) 'army. And they-encamped on the plain
ὑπὲρ Σηλυβρίας, ἀπέχοντες ὅσον τριάκοντα στα-
 above Selybria, being-distant about 'thirty sta-
δίου τῆς θαλάττης. **Καὶ οὐδεὶς μισθὸς μὲν**
 dia (from) the sea. And no pay indeed

̐αι. Καὶ ὁ Τιμασίῳν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν
 vice (of Seuthes). And — Timasion said: I indeed
 τοῖνιν οὐδ', ἂν μέλλῃ εἶναι πέντε μηνῶν
 therefore not, if there-were-about to-be five months'
 μισθός, ἂν στρατευσαίμην ἄνευ Ξενοφώντος. Καὶ
 pay, would serve-in-the-army without Xenophon. And
 ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν τῷ
 — Phryniscus and — Cleanor agreed-with —

Τιμασίῳνι.

Timasion.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύθης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην,
 Then — Seuthes reprehended — Heraclides,
 ̐τι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. Δ' ἐκ
 that he-'had not 'called-in also Xenophon. And on
 τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. Δ' ὁ
 this they-call-for him alone. But — (Xenophon)
 γνοὺς τὴν πανουργίαν τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου, ̐τι
 knowing the knavery of — Heraclides, that
 βούλοιο διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς
 he-wished to-calumniate (and make him unpopular, with the
 ἄλλους στρατηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν τε
 other generals, departed taking (with him) not-only
 πάντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς.
 all the generals, but-also the captains.
 Καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπείσθησαν συνεστρα-
 And when all had-been-persuaded (by Seuthes) they-
 τεύοντο, καὶ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον
 'joined (him) 'in-an-expedition, and having the Euxine-Sea
 ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν,
 on (their) right they-arrived at — Salmydessus,
 διὰ τῶν Θρακῶν καλουμένων Μελινο-
 through the (country) 'of (the) 'Thracians called Melino-
 φάγων· ἔνθα πολλαὶ τῶν νεῶν πλεουσῶν εἰς τὸν
 phagi; here many of-the vessels sailing into the
 Πόντον ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· γὰρ ἔστι
 Euxine-Sea strike and (are) cast-away; for there-is (a)

τέναγος **πάμπολυ** **ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης.**
 shoal (there) (stretching) very-far (out) into the sea.
Καὶ οἱ Θρᾶκες, οἱ οἰκοῦντες κατὰ ταῦτα,
 And the Thracians, — (those namely) dwelling along there,
ὀρισάμενοι στήλας, **ἐκαστοι**
 having-set-up pillars 'to-mark-the-boundaries, (so that) each
ληίζονται τὰ ἐκπίπτοντα καδ' αὐτοὺς
 plunder the (things) cast (on shore) on these
δὲ ἔλεγον **τέως πρὶν**
 (their own limits); and they-say (that) for-some-time before (that they)
ὀρίσασθαι, **ἀρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ἀποδινή-**
 erected-boundaries, (that while) plundering many died
σκειν ὑπ' ἀλλήλων. **Ἐνταῦθα εὗρίσκονται**
 by (the hands) of-one-another. There are-found
μὲν πολλαὶ κλῖναι, δὲ πολλὰ κιβώτια, δὲ πολλαὶ
 indeed many couches, also many chests, likewise many
γεγραμμένοι βιβλοὶ, καὶ πολλὰ τᾶλλα, **ὅσα**
 written books, and many other (things), such-as
ναύκληροὶ ἄγουσιν ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι. **Ἐντεῦθεν**
 seamen carry in wooden receptacles. Then
καταστρεψάμενοι ταῦτα, **ἀπήεσαν πάλιν**
 having-subdued these (people), they-departed back
Ἐνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στρατεύμα ἤδη πλεόν
 Then truly Seuthes had (an) army already more
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. **Γὰρ τε πολὺ ἐτ**
 (numerous than) the Grecian. For not-only many yet
πλείους Ὀδρυσῶν καταβεβήκεσαν, **καὶ οἱ**
 numerous 'of-(the) Ὀδrysæ had-come-down (to him), but-also —
αἰὲ πειδόμενοι συνεστρατεῖ-
 (those) successively obeying-and-submitting (to him) 'joined
οντο. **Δὲ κατηγλίσθησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ**
 (his) 'army. And they-encamped on the plain
ὑπὲρ Σηλυβρίας, ἀπέχοντες ὅσον τριάκοντα στα-
 above Selybria, being-distant about 'thirty sta-
δίους τῆς θαλάττης. **Καὶ οὐδεὶς μισθὸς μὲν**
 dia (from) the sea. And no pay indeed

πω ἐφαίνετο· τε οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον τὸν Ξενο-
 as-yet appeared; and the soldiers | had — Xeno-
 φῶντα παγχαλέπως,
 phon much-aggrieved, [were very much displeased with Xenophon,]
 τε ὁ Σεύδης οὐκέτι οἰκείως διέκειτο, ἀλλ
 and — Seuthes no-longer 'was familiarly 'disposed (to him), but
 'πότε ἔλδοι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ,
 whenever he-might-go desiring to-have-an-interview-with him,
 πολλὰ ἀσχολία ἤδη ἐφαίνοντο.
 many occupations 'were now 'pretended.

CHAPTER VI.

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ὄντων ἤδη σχεδὸν δύο
 At this — time, being already nearly two
 μηνῶν, Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος
 months, Charminus indeed the Lacedæmonian and Polynicus
 ἀφικοῦνται παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν, ὅτι
 arrived from Thibron, and they-said, that
 δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις στρατεῦεσθαι ἐπὶ
 it-seemed (good) 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians to-take-the-field against
 Τισσαφέρην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὥς πολε-
 Tissaphernes, and Thibron had-set-sail as about-
 μήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ
 making-war, and (that) he-wanted this — army, and
 λέγει, ὅτι δαρεικός τοῦ μηνός ἐσται μισθός
 he-says that (a) daric the month would-be (the) pay
 ἐκάστῳ, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμοῖρία, δὲ τοῖς
 to-each (soldier), and to-the captains twice-as-much, but to-the
 στρατηγοῖς τετραμοῖρία. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ Λακε-
 generals four-times-as-much. When indeed — (these) Lacedæ-
 δαιμόνιοι ἦλθον, εὐθὺς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πυνθόμενος
 dæmonians came, immediately — Heraclides, hearing

ὅτι ἤκουσι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, λέγει. τῷ Σεύδῃ,
that they-came for the army, says to — Seuthes,

ὅτι γεγένηται κάλλιστον· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Λακεδαι-
that it-had-happened luckily; for indeed the Lacedæ-

μόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ σὺ οὐκέτε
monians wanted the army, but you no-longer

δέῃ· ἀποδιδούς τὸ στράτευμα χαριεῖ αὐτοῖς,
want (it); giving-up the army you-will-gratify them,

δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν μισθόν σε,
and they-'will no-more 'demand — (their) pay of-you,

ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ὁ Σεύδης
but will-depart from the country. — Seuthes

ἀκούσας ταῦτα κελεύει παράγειν·
hearing these (things) requests (him) to-'bring (them) 'to (him);

καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ἤκουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα,
and when they-said, that they-come for the army,

ἔλεγεν, ὅτι ἀποδίδωσι τὸ στράτευμα, τε βούλεται
he-said, that he-would-give-up the army, and desired

εἶναι φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος· τε καλεῖ αὐτοὺς
to-be (their) friend — and ally; and he-invited them

ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ, καὶ ἐξένιζε μεγαλοπρεπῶς.
on terms-of-hospitality, and he-entertained (them) magnificently.

Δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει Ξενοφῶντα οὐδὲ οὐδένα τῶν
But he-'did not 'invite Xenophon nor (none) (any) of-the

ἄλλων στρατηγῶν. Δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων ἔρω-
other generals. But the Lacedæmonians in-

τώντων, τίς ἀνὴρ Ξενοφῶν εἶη, ἀπεκρίνατο,
quired, what (kind of) man Xenophon might-be, he-replied,

ὅτι μὲν τὰ ἄλλα εἶη οὐ κακός, δὲ
that indeed in — other (respects) he-was not (a) bad (man), but

φιλοστρατιώτης· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐστὶν χειρὸν
(was a) friend-of-the-soldiers; and through this it-is worse

αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἱ εἶπον· Ἀλλ' ἢ ὁ ἀνὴρ δημα-
for-him. And — they-said: But — 'does the man 'make-

γωγεῖ τοὺς ἄνδρας; Καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης
himself popular (with) the men? And — Heraclides

ἔφη, Οὖν μὲν πάνν. Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν,
said, Therefore indeed altogether (so). — Therefore, said-they,

μὴ καὶ ἀναντιώσεται ἡμῖν περὶ τῆς ἀπαγωγῆς;
will-'he not even oppose us about the leading-away (of the army)? But if you, said — Heraclides,

συλλέξαντες αὐτούς, ὑποσχῆσθε τὸν μισθόν,
assembling them, promise the pay,

προσσχόντες ὀλίγον ἐκείνῳ, ἀποδραμοῦνται
'paying little 'attention to-him, they-will-return

σὺν ὑμῖν. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, ἂν συλλεγεῖεν
with you. How therefore, said-they, may (they) assemble

ἡμῖν; Αὔριον πρωὶ, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, ἄξομεν
for-us? To-morrow early, said — Heraclides, we-will-conduct

ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐπειδὰν
you to them; and I-know, said-he, that when

ἴδωσιν ὑμᾶς, ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται.
they-see you, they-'will willingly 'flock-round (you).

Αὕτη ἡ ἡμέρα μὲν ἔληξε οὕτως.
This — day indeed closed thus.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Σεύδης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης
And on-the next-day Seuthes and also Heraclides

ἄγουσιν τοὺς Λάκωνας ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ
conducted the Lacedæmonians to the army, and

ἡ στρατιά συλλέγεται. Δὲ τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην,
the army assembled. And the-two Lacedæmonians said,

ὅτι δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις πολεμεῖν Τισσα-
that it-seemed (good) 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians to-go-to-war with-Tissa-

φέρνει, τῷ ἀδικήσαντι ὑμᾶς· ἦν οὖν ἴητε σὺν
phernes, — (he) having-injured you; if therefore you-go with

ἡμῖν, τε τιμωρήσεσθε τὸν ἐχθρόν, καὶ
us, you-'will not-only 'revenge-yourselves-on the enemy, but-also

ἕκαστος ὑμῶν οἶσει δαρεῖκόν τοῦ μηνός, δὲ
each of-you will-receive (a) daric the month, and (a)

λοχαγὸς τὸ διπλοῦν, δὲ στρατηγὸς τὸ τετρα-
captain the double. and (a) general the qua-

πλοῦν. Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται τε ἄσμενοι ἤκουσαν,
druple. And the soldiers not-only willingly listened,

καὶ τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων εὐδὺς ἀνίσταται
out-also some-one of-the Arcadians immediately rising-up

κατηγορήσων ἢ τῷ Ξενοφῶντος. Δὲ καὶ Σεύδης
denouncing - Xenophon. But also Seuthes

παρῆν, βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πραχθήσεται·
was-present, desiring to-know how the-affair-would-be-conducted ;

καὶ εἰστήκει ἐν ἐπηκόῳ, ἔχων ἑρμηνέα·
and stood in (a place proper for) hearing, having (an) interpreter ;

δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ξυνίει τὰ πλεῖστα ἑλληνιστί.
and also he-himself understood — most (things) in-Greek.

Ἐνθα δὴ ὁ Ἀρκάς λέγει· Ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν,
Then indeed the Arcadian speaks: But we indeed,

ὧ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἂν ἤμεν παρ' ὑμῖν,
O Lacedæmonians, even long-ago would have-been with you,

εἰ Ξενοφῶν πείσας ἡμᾶς μὴ ἀπήγαγεν
if Xenophon having-persuaded us 'had not 'led (us)

δεῖρο, ἐνθα δὴ ἡμεῖς μὲν στρατευόμενοι τὸν
hither, where truly we indeed performing-military-duty (through) —

δεινὸν χειμῶνα πεπαύμεθα οἷδέν καὶ νύκτα
most-severe cold-weather we-rested neither — night

καὶ ἡμέραν· δὲ ὁ ἔχει τοὺς ἡμετέρους
— (or) day; but — (he) has (the fruits of) — our

πόνους· καὶ Σεύδης μὲν πεπλούτικεν ἐκείνον ἰδίᾳ,
labour; and Seuthes indeed has-enriched him personally,

δὲ ἀποστερεῖ ἡμᾶς τὸν μισθόν. Ὡστε δ
but defrauded us (of) — (our) pay. So-that (I) who

γε λέγων πρῶτος ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ ἴδοιμι τοῦτον
'am at-least 'speaking first I indeed if I-saw this

καταλευσθέντα, καὶ δόντα δίκην
[Xenophon] stoned-to-death, | and giving justice [and thus

ὧν περιεῖλκε ἡμᾶς,
be punished] | of-which he-has-'dragged us 'about, [for having so

καὶ ἂν δοκῶ μοι ἔχειν τον
dragged us about,] and 'I would 'seem to-myself to-have — (my)

μισδόν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἄχδεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς πεποινη
pay, and neither to-be-aggrieved at — (what I) had-under-

μένοις. Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη καὶ
gone. After this (one) another stood-up and

ὁμοίως ἄλλος. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν
likewise another. After this indeed Xenophon spoke

ὥδε·
thus:

Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἄρα δεῖ ἄνθρωπον
But indeed therefore | it-is-necessary (that) (a) man

ὄντα προσδοκᾶν πάντα,
being to-expect all, [one must expect all kinds of fate,]

ὅποτε γε καὶ νῦν ἔχω αἰτίας ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ἐν
since at-least even now I-have accusations from you, in

ὧ δοκῶ συνειδέναι γε ἐμαντῶ
(the thing) which I-seem to-be-conscious at-least to-myself (of)

παρεσχημένος πλείστην προθυμίαν περὶ ὑμᾶς.
having-shown (the) most zeal for you.

Μὲν γε ἀπετραπόμεν ἤδη ὠρμημένος
'I indeed at-least 'turned-back 'having already 'set-out

οἴκαδε, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὔτοι πυνθανόμενος
for-home, no by — Jupiter not-indeed hearing (that);

ὑμᾶς πράττειν εὖ· ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀκούων
you (were) doing well; but rather hearing (that)

εἶναι ἐν ἀπόροις, ὥς ὠφελήσω, εἴ τι
(you) were in difficulties, as being-about-helping (you) if in-any-thing

δυναίμεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, τουτοῦ Σεύδου
I-might-be-able. When indeed I-came, this-here Seuthes

πέμποντος πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ, καὶ
sending many messengers to me, and

ὑπισχνουμένου πολλὰ μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς
promising many (things) to-me, if I-would-persuade you

ἔλδεῖν πρὸς αὐτόν, οὐκ μὲν ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν
to-go to him, I-'did not indeed 'attempt to-do

τοῦτο, ὥς ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ ἐπίστασθε· δὲ ἤγον
this, as you yourselves know; but I-led (you to

ὁδὸν ὥρμεν ἂν τάχιστα διαβῆναι
 a place, whence I-thought (that you) might the-most-speedily cross-over
 εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν Γὰρ ἐνόμιζον ταῦτα εἶναι
 into — Asia For I-thought this to-be
 βέλτιστα ὑμῖν, καὶ ἤδειν ὑμᾶς βουλομένους. Δ'
 the-best for-you, and I-knew you desiring (it). But
 ἐπεὶ Ἀρίσταρχος, ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν, ἐκώλυε
 when Aristarchus, coming with galleys, prohibited
 ἡμᾶς διαπλεῖν, ἐκ τοῦτου, ὅπερ ἦν δήπου εἰκὸς,
 us to-sail-across, on this, as was certainly proper,
 συνέλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὃ τι
 I-assembled you, in-order-that we-might-consult-together what
 χρὴ ποιεῖν. Ὑμεῖς οὐκ οὖν, ἀκού-
 it-might-be-necessary to-do. (Did) you not therefore, hear-
 οντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάττοντος ὑμῖν πορεῦ-
 ing indeed Aristarchus commanding you to-pro-
 εσσαι εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύδου πει-
 ceed to (the) Chersonesus, hearing also Seuthes per-
 δοντος ἑαυτῷ συστρατεύεσθαι, μὲν πάντες
 suading yourselves to-enter-into-his-service, (did you not) indeed all
 ἐλέγετε εἶναι σὺν Σεύδῃ, δὲ
 say (that you would) go with Seuthes, and (did you not)
 πάντες ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα; Τί οὖν ἐγὼ
 all vote-for these (things)? How therefore 'did I
 ἐνταῦθα ἠδίκησα, ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἐνθα ἐδόκει
 then 'wrong (you), leading you there-where it-seemed
 ὑμῖν πᾶσιν; Ἐπεὶ γε Σεύδης μὲν ἤρξατο
 (good) for-you all (to go)? Since at-least Seuthes indeed began
 ψεύδισθαι περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ
 to-deceive about the pay, if indeed I-should-praise
 αὐτόν, ἂν δικαίως καὶ αἰτιῶσθε καὶ μισοῖτε.
 him, 'you would justly both 'accuse and detest (me)
 εἰ δὲ ὢν πρόσθεν μάλιστα πάντων φίλος,
 if however being formerly most of-all (his) friend,
 νῦν πάντῳ εἰμι διαφορώτατός, πῶς
 now of-all (men) I-am the-most-at-variance (with him), how

ἂν αἰρούμενος ὑμᾶς ἀντὶ Σεύδου, ἔτι δικαίως
 can 'I, preferring you before Seuthes, as-yet justly
 ἔχοιμι αἰτίαν ἰφ' ὑμῶν περὶ ὧν δια-
 'have censure from you about (those things in) which I-am-
 φέρομαι πρὸς τοῦτον; 'Αλλ' ἂν εἴποιτε, ὅτι
 at-variance with this [Seuthes]? But 'you may 'say, that
 ἔξεσι ἔχοντα ὑμέτερα παρὰ Σεύδου
 it-is (possible that) 'I, having your (money) from Seuthes
 τεχνάζειν. Οὐκ οὖν τοῦτό γε δῆλον, ὅτι,
 'am-practising-artifice. 'Is not therefore this at-least 'evident, that,
 εἴπερ Σεύδης ἐτέλει τι ἐμοί, οὐ δῆπου
 if Seuthes paid any-thing to-me, he-'did not certainly
 ἐτέλει οὕτως, ὥς τε στεροίτο ὧν
 'pay (it) for-the-purpose, that not-only he-might-be-deprived-of what
 δοίῃ ἐμοί, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀποτίσειεν ὑμῖν; 'Αλλ' οἶμαι,
 he-gave me, but also to-repay you? But I-think,
 εἰ ἐδίδου, ἂν ἐδίδου ἐπὶ τούτῳ,
 if he-gave (me anything) 'he may 'have-given (it) for this (purpose),
 ὅπως δούς μείον μὴ ἀποδοίῃ ὑμῖν
 that having-given (a) less (sum) he-'might not 'pay you
 τὸ πλεῖον. Εἰ τοίνυν οἴσδε ἔχειν
 the greater (sum). If therefore you-think (the affair) to-have (itself)
 οὕτως, ἔξεσιν ὑμῖν μάλα αὐτίκα ποιῆσαι ταύτην
 thus, it-is-allowed you very speedily to-make this
 τὴν πρᾶξιν ματαίαν ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν, εἰάν πράτ-
 transaction useless for-both (of) us, if you-
 τητε αὐτὸν τὰ χρήματα. Γὰρ δῆλον, ὅτι
 exact (from) him the money. For (it is) evident, that
 Σεύδης, εἰ ἔχω τι παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσῃ
 Seuthes, if I-have (received) anything from him, will-'demand
 με, καὶ μέντοι ἀπαιτήσαι δικαίως, εἰάν
 (it) 'lack (of) me, and moreover will-demand (it) justly, if
 μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πρᾶξιν αὐτῷ ἐφ' ἧ ἔδωρα-
 I-'do not 'confirm the transaction to-him for which I-received-
 δόκουν. 'Αλλὰ δοκῶ μοι δεῖν πολλοῦ
 gifts (from him). But I-seem to-myself to-want much (as

ἔχειν τὰ ἡμέτερα· γὰρ ὁμνῶ ἡμῖν ἅπαντας
 having — your (money); for I-swear to-you by-all
 θεοῦς καὶ πάσας ἔχειν μηδέ
 (the) gods and (by) all (the goddesses) (that I) have never-indeed
 ἃ Σεῦδης ὑπέσχετο ἐμοὶ ἰδίᾳ·
 (received) what Seuthos promised me (as my own) proper (pay);
 δὲ καὶ αὐτός πάρεστι, καὶ ἀκούων σύνοιδέ μοι, εἰ
 and also he-himself is-present, and hearing knows with-me, if
 ἐπιορκῶ. Ὅτι δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε,
 I-perjure-myself. That indeed you-may-'be yet-more 'surprised,
 συνεπόμνυμι μὴδὲ εἰληφέναι ἃ οἱ
 I-swear (that) I-'have not-indeed 'received what the
 ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον, μὴ τοῖνυν μὴδὲ ὅσα
 other generals received, no moreover not-indeed as-much-as
 ἔνιοι τῶν λοχαγῶν. Καὶ τί ἐποίουν ταῦτ';
 some of-the captains. And why did-I-do this?
 Ὡς ἄνδρες, ὅσω μᾶλλον συμφέροισιν
 C men, (I thought that) how-much the-more I-endured-with
 τούτῳ τότε τὴν πενίαν, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον
 this (man) while in — poverty, so-much the-more
 ποιήσεσθαι αὐτὸν φίλον ὅποτε δυνασθεῖν. Δὲ
 I-would-make him (a) friend whenever he-might-be-able. But
 ἐγὼ ἅμα τε ὁρῶ αὐτὸν πράττοντα εὖ,
 I at-the-present-time not-only see him doing well,
 καὶ δὴ γινώσκω τὴν γνώμην αὐτοῦ. Τίς
 but-also truly know the disposition of-him. Some-one
 δὴ ἂν εἴποι· οὐκ οὖν αἰσχύνῃ οὕτως
 indeed may say: are-'you not therefore 'ashamed (at) 'being thus
 μωρῶς ἐξαπατῶμενος; Ναὶ μὰ Δία μέντοι
 foolishly 'deceived? Certainly, by Jupiter, I-'would indeed
 ἦσυχνόμεν, εἰ ἐξηπατήθην ὑπὸ γε ὄντος
 'have-been-ashamed, if I-had-been-deceived by (one) at-least being (an)
 πολεμίῳ· δὲ ὄντι φίλῳ δοκεῖ μοι αἰσχίον
 enemy; but being (a) friend it-seems to-me more-shameful
 ἐξαπατᾶν ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι. Ἐπεὶ, εἰ γε
 so-deceive than to-be-deceived. Since if at-least the

φυλακή ἐστὶ πρὸς φίλους, οἶδα ὑμᾶς φυλαξαμένους,
guard is-to-be against friends, I-know you guarding

πᾶσαν, ὥς μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτῳ δικάϊαν
all, so-as not to-give to-this [Seuthes] (a) just

πρόφασιν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ὑμῖν ἃ
pretext, (that he might) not pay us what

ὑπέσχετο· γὰρ οὔτε ἠδικήσαμεν τοῦτον
he-promised; for we-'have neither 'injured this [Seuthes]

οὐδέν, οὔτε κατεβλακεύσαμεν τὰ
— (in any thing), nor neglected the (affairs)

τοίτου, οὐδὲ μὲν κατεδειλιάσαμεν οὐδὲν
of-this (man), or indeed did-we-cowardly-shrink — (from any

ἐφ' ὃ τι οὗτος παρεκάλεσεν ἡμᾶς. Ἀλλά,
thing) to which he called us. But, 'you

ἂν φαίητε, ἔδει τότε λαβεῖν τὰ
may 'say, it-ought (to be, that I should) then have-taken —

ἐνέχυρα, ὥς εἰ ἐβούλετο μὴδ' ἐδύνατο ἐξα-
pledges, so-that if he-wished he-'could not-indeed 'be-able to-

πατᾶν. Πρὸς ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσατε, ἃ ἐγὼ
deceive. As-respects these (things) indeed hear, what I

ἂν οὐκ εἶπον ἐναντίον τούτο, εἰ
should 'at no 'time have-mentioned 'before this [Seuthes], if

μὴ ἔδοκεῖτε μοι εἶναι παντάπασιν
you-'had not 'shown (yourselves) to-me to-be altogether

ἀγνώμονες, ἢ λίαν ἀχάριστοι εἰς ἐμέ. Γὰρ
destitute-of-intelligence, or very ungrateful towards me. | For

ἀναμνήσθητε ἐν ποίοις τισὶ πράγμασιν ἐτυγχάνετε
recollect in what any things you-happened

ὄντες ἐξ
being [for recollect in what kind of circumstances you were placed] out-of

ὧν ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον ὑμᾶς πρὸς Σεύδην.
which I (extricated you and) 'led you 'up to Seuthes

Οὐκ μὲν Πέρινδον προσήτε εἰς πόλιν,
(Was it) not indeed (at) Perinthus you-went to (the) city,

δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀποκλείσας τὰς
but Aristarchus the Lacedæmonian having-shut the

πύλας οὐκ εἶα ὑμᾶς εἰσιέναι; Δ' ἐστρα-
 gates he-'did not 'let you go-in? And did-'you (not) 'en-

τοπεδεύετε ἔξω ὑπαίθριοι; Ἦν δὲ μέσος
 camp without in-the-open-air? Was-it (not) indeed (the) middle

χειμῶν; Ἐχρῆσδε ἀγορᾶ,
 (of) winter? | Had-'you (not) 'to-make-use-of (a) market, [had you

ὀρῶντες μὲν σπάνια τὰ ὄνια,
 not to buy your provisions,] seeing indeed (a) scarcity (of) — saleable

δ' ἔχοντες σπάνια ὅτων ὠνήσεσδε;
 (things), and having (a) scarcity of-any (things that) you-may-buy

Δὲ ἦν ἀνάγκη μένειν ἐπὶ Θράκης·
 (with)? And was-there (not a) necessity to-remain in Thrace;

(γὰρ τριήρεις ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκώλυνον διαπλεῖν·)
 (for galleys having-been-anchored hindered (us) to-sail-over:)

εἰ δὲ τις μένοι εἶναι ἐν πολεμίᾳ,
 if indeed any-one stayed (it was) to-be in (a) hostile (country),

ἐνθα μὲν ἦσαν πολλοὶ ἵππεις ἐναντίοι, δὲ
 where indeed there-were many horsemen opposed (to you), as-likewise

πολλοὶ πελτασταί; Δὲ μὲν ἦν ὀπλιτικὸν
 many targeteers? And indeed there-was (a) heavy-armed

ἡμῖν, ᾧ, ἰόντες μὲν ἀδρόοι ἐπὶ τὰς
 (corps) for-us, with-which, going indeed 'in (a) 'body to the

κώμας, ἴσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα λαμβάνειν σίτον
 villages, perhaps 'we might 'be-able to-take food

οὐδὲν τι ἄφθονον· δὲ διώκοντες ὅτῳ ἂν
 'but) not any abundance; and following whom 'we might

ιατελαμβάνομεν ἢ ἀνδράποδα ἢ πρόβατα,
 capture neither slaves or cattle, (for the

ἦν οὐχ ἡμῖν. Γὰρ ἐγὼ κατέλαβον οὐτε
 proper troops) were not to-us. For I found neither

ἵπικόν οὐτε πελταστικόν συνεστηκὸς παρ' ὑμῖν.
 cavalry nor targeteers constituted-in-a-body among you.

Εἰ οὖν, ὑμῶν ὄντων ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ, μηδὲ
 If therefore, you being in this difficulty, not-indeed

προσαιτήσας ὄντιναοῦν μισθόν,
 having-asked-in-addition (for any thing) whatever (as) pay,

προξέλαβον Σεύδην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν, ἔχοντα
I-had-acquired Seuthes (as an) ally for-you, (he) having

καὶ ἱππέας καὶ πελταστάς, ὧν ὑμεῖς προσεδείσδε,
both cavalry and targeteers, which you were-in-want-of,

ἢ ἂν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβουλευσθαι κακῶς;
would I-have-seemed to-you to-have-consulted ill (for you)?

Γὰρ δὴπὺν κοινωρήσαντες τούτων,
For certainly having-shared (in the advantages) of-these

καὶ εὗρίσκετε ἄφθονώτερον σῖτον
(kinds of troops), 'you both 'found more-abundant provisions

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, διὰ τοὺς Θρᾶκες τὸ ἀναγκά-
in the villages, on-account-of the Thracians — being-

ζεσθαι φεύγειν κατὰ μᾶλλον σπουδὴν, καὶ
forced to-fly with greater speed, and you-'had (a)

μᾶλλον μετέσχετε προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων. Καὶ
greater 'share of-cattle and of-slaves. And

ἑωρῶμεν οὐδένα πολέμιον οἰκέτι, ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἱππικὸν
we-saw no enemy no-more, after the cavalry

προσεγένετο ἡμῖν, δὲ τέως οἱ πολέμοι θάρραλέως
were-joined to-us, but at-this-time the enemy boldly

ἠφείποντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἱππικῶ καὶ πελταστικῶ,
pursued us both cavalry and targeteers.

κωλύοντες ἡμᾶς ἀποσκεδαννυμένους κατ' ὀλίγους
hindering us (from) being-dispersed in small

μηδαμῇ πορίζεσθαι ἄφθονώτερα τὰ ἐπι-
(parties) every-where to-procure more-abundant — pro

τήδεια.
visions.

Δὲ εἰ δὴ ὁ συμπάρεχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν
But if truly (he) — (who) presenting you this —

ἀσφάλειαν μὴ προσετέλει πάνν πολὺν
security 'did not 'pay (you) 'in-addition very great

μισθὸν τῆς ἀσφαλείας, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σχέτλιον
wages for-the security, (is) this indeed the shocking

πάδημα; καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οἴεσθε
suffering (you complain of)? and on-account-of this do-you-think

χρῆναι οὐδαμῇ ἀνεῖναι ἐμὲ ζῶντα;
 (that) it-is-necessary not to-'send me 'away alive?

Δὲ νῦν δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; Οὐ διαχειμά-
 But now truly how do-you-depart? (Is it) not after-having-passed-the-

σαντες ἐν ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, δ' ἔχοντες
 winter in abundant — provisions, and having

περιττὸν τοῦτο εἴ τι ἐλάβετε παρὰ
 moreover-in-addition that, if any, (which) you-received from

Σεύδου; Γὰρ ἐδαπανᾶτε τὰ τῶν πολεμίων.
 Seuthes? For you-consumed the (things) of-the enemy.

Καὶ πράττοντες ταῦτα οὔτε
 |And performing these (things) [and faring thus] | 'you neither

ἐπείδετε ἀνδρας ὑμῶν ἀποθανόντας αὐτῶν,
 'beheld (the) men of-you having-died from-them, [you

οὔτε ἀπεβάλετε ζῶντας.
 neither saw any of your men killed,] nor have-you-lost (any) living.

Εἰ δὲ τι καλὸν ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ
 If indeed any-thing glorious has-been-performed by-you in — Asia

πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους, καὶ οἶκ' ἐκεῖνο σῶν,
 against the barbarians, and have-'you not 'that safe,

καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις προσεilhήφατε νῦν ἄλλην
 and to these have-'you (not) 'added now another

εὐκλειαν, καὶ κρατήσαντες τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐν Εὐρώπῃ,
 glory, and having-subdued the Thracians in Europe,

ἐφ' οὓς ἐστρατεύσασθε; Ἐγὼ μὲν ἂν δικαίως
 against whom you-marched? I indeed may justly

φημὶ ὑμᾶς ὧν χαλεπαίνετε ἐμοί,
 say (to) you (the things) for-which you-are-angry with-me,

τούτων εἰδέναι χάριν τοῖς θεοῖς ὥς
 for-these (we ought) to-consider (as a) favour from-the gods as

ἀγαθῶν. Καὶ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα
 for so many) good-things. And indeed truly such (is the state of)

τὰ ὑμέτερα. Ἄγετε δὲ πρὸς
 — our (affairs). | Lead indeed [well then] for (the sake)

θεῶν, σκέψασθε καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ ὥς
 of (the) 'gods, | consider also — my (affairs) as (how they)

ἔχουσιν. Γὰρ ἐγὼ ὅτε μὲν
 have (themselves) [consider my condition]. For I when indeed
 πρότερον ἀπῆα οἴκαδε, ἀπεπορευόμεν μὲν
 'I first 'went-away (for) home, I-went-away indeed
 ἔχων πολὺν ἔπαινον πρὸς ὑμῶν, ἔχων δὲ δ' ὑμᾶς
 having much praise from you, having also through you
 καὶ εὐκλειαν ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων.
 ever glory (and renown) with the other Greeks
 Δὲ ἐπιστευόμεν ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων· γὰρ
 And I-was-trusted by (the) Lacedæmonians; for 'they
 ἂν οὐ ἔπεμπον με πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Νῦν δὲ
 would not 'have-sent me back to you. Now indeed
 ἀπέρχομαι διαβεβλημένος ὑφ' ὑμῶν μὲν πρὸς
 I-depart calumniated by you indeed to (the)
 Λακεδαιμονίους, δὲ ἀπηχθήμενος Σεύθῃ ὑπὲρ
 Lacedæmonians, and having-offended Seuthes by (reason of)
 ὑμῶν, ὃν ἤλπιζον ποιήσας εὖ
 you, whom I-hoped | having-made (it) well [having served him effec-
 μεδ' ὑμῶν, καὶ καταδήσεσθαι καλὴν
 tively] with you, and to-have-procured (with him an) honourable
 ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ παισίν, εἰ γένοιτο.
 retreat both for-myself and (my) children, if there-should-be
 Δ' ὑμεῖς ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐγὼ τε ἀπήχθημαι
 (any to me). But you for whom I not-only have-'incurred
 πλεῖστα, καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρεῖττοσιν
 the-most 'hatred, but-also this (from those) much better
 ἑμαυτοῦ, τε οὐδὲ πῶ νῦν πέπαυμαι πραγμα-
 (than) myself, and neither not-even now do-I-cease labouring-to-
 τεύόμενος ὃ τι ἀγαθὸν δύναμαι ὑμῖν, ἔχετε
 effect whatever good I-can for-you, who-have
 τοιαύτην γνώμην περὶ ἐμοῦ. Ἄλλ' μὲν ἔχετε
 such (an) opinion respecting me. But indeed you have
 με οὔτε λαβόντες φεύγοντα, οὔτε
 me (in your power). neither having-taken (me) fleeing-away, nor
 ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ἣν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε, ἴστε,
 about-running-away; if indeed you-will-do what you-say, know

ὅτι ἔσεσθε κατακάνοντες ἄνδρα ἀγρυπνήσαντα
that you-will-be killing (a) man having-watched

μὲν δὴ πολλὰ πρὸ ὑμῶν, δὲ ποιήσαντα καὶ
indeed truly much for you, and having-laboured (much) and

κινδυνεύσαντα πολλὰ σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἐν τῷ
encountered many 'dangers with you, both in —

μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ μέρος, δὲ θεῶν ὄντων
(his) share and beyond — (his) share, and (the) gods being

ἰλεων πολλὰ τρόπαια δὴ βαρβάρων στη-
propitious many trophies truly 'over (the) 'barbarians have-

σάμενον σὺν ὑμῖν· διατεινόμενον πρὸς ὑμᾶς πᾶν
been-erected with you; having-exerted-myself for you (in) all

ὅσον ἐδυνάμην, ὅπως δὲ γένοισθε πολέμιοι
as-much-as I-was-able, that indeed you-might-become inimical

γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Γὰρ καὶ οὖν νῦν
at-least to-none of-the Greeks. For even therefore now

ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἀνεπιλήπτως πορεύεσθαι, ὅπῃ ἂν
it-is-allowed you blamelessly to-proceed, where 'you may

ἔλησθε, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
'have-desired, both by land and by sea.

Δὲ ὑμεῖς, ὅτε πολλὴ εὐπορία φαίνεται ὑμῖν, καὶ
And you, when great abundance shows-itself to-you, and

πλεῖτε ἔνθα δὴ πάλαι ἐπιθυμεῖτε, τε
about-to-sail where indeed heretofore you-have-desired-to-be, and

δέονται ὑμῶν οἱ
those desire you — (those, namely, who are considered as) 'being

μέγιστον δυνάμενοι, δὲ μισθὸς φαίνεται,
the-most 'able (and powerful), | and pay appears

δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἱ

[and pay is offered to you,] and Lacedæmonians, — (those, namely,

νομιζόμενοι κράτιστοι ἡγεμόνες ἔχουσιν,
who) being-considered the-best leaders come (for you).

νῦν δὴ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν εἶναι καιρὸς κατα-
does it now indeed seem to-you to-be (a) proper (time) to

κάνειν ἐμὲ ὥς τάχιστα; Οὐ
kill me as speedily (as possible)? (You had) no (such

μὴν γε ὅτε ἤμεν ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις,
 intentions) certainly at-least when we-were in — difficulties,
 ὧ μνημονικώτατοι πάντων· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκαλεῖτε
 O (men) having-memories of-all; but even you-called
 ἐμὲ πατέρα, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖσθε αἰεὶ μεμνησθαι ὥς
 me father, and you-promised always to-remember (me) as (a)
 εὐεργέτου. Μέντοι οὐτοί, οἱ νῦν ἥκοντες
 benefactor. However those, — (those namely) now come
 ἐφ' ὑμᾶς, εἰσιν οὐ οὐδὲ ἀγνώμονες· ὥστε, ὥς
 for you, are not either (so) ignorant; so-that, as
 ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ δοκεῖτε βελτίονες τούτοις,
 I think, you-'will neither 'seem better to-these
 ὄντες τοιοῦτοι περὶ ἐμέ. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
 (persons), being such as-respects me. Having-said there
 ἐπαύσατο.
 (things) he-ceased.

Δὲ Χαρμῖνος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν·
 And Charminus the Lacedæmonian standing-up said:
 'Ἄλλ' οὐ τῷ σιῷ, μέντοι δοκεῖτε ἐμοί, ὧ ἄνδρες,
 Certainly by-the twin-gods, however you-seem to-me, O men,
 χαλεπαίνειν τῷ τούτῳ ἀνδρὶ οὐ δικάως· γὰρ
 to-be-displeased with — this man not justly; for
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἔχω μαρτυρῆσαι αὐτῷ. Γὰρ Σεύδης
 even I-myself have to-bear-witness to-him. For Seuthes
 ἐρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου περὶ Ξενοφώντος,
 inquiring of-me and Polynicius about Xenophon,
 τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη, εἶχε μὲν οὐδὲν
 what-kind (of a) man he-might-be, (he said) he-had indeed nothing
 ἄλλο μέμψασθαι, δὲ ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι
 else to-'accuse (him) of, but he-said (that) he was
 φιλοστρατιώτην· διὸ εἶναι χεῖρον αὐτῷ
 a) friend-of-the-soldiers; wherefore (that it) was worse for-him
 τε πρὸς ἡμῶν τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, καὶ πρὸς
 not-only with us the Lacedæmonians, but-also with
 αὐτοῦ. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λυσιιάτης
 himself. After this-one Eurylochus (the) Lusian (an)

**Ἀρχὰς ἀναστὰς εἶπε·* Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι, Λακεδαι-
Arcadian rising-up said: 'It even 'seems at-least to-me, Lacedæ-

μόνιοι ἄνδρες, ὑμᾶς *στρατηγῆσαι πρῶτον*
monian men, (that) you should-'be (our) 'generals first

τοῦτο ἀναπράξαι παρὰ Σεύδου ἡμῖν τὸν μισθόν
in-this to-have-exacted from Seuthes for-us — (our) pay

ἢ ἐκόντος, ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον
either willingly, or unwillingly, and not before (this was done)

ἀπαγαγεῖν ἡμᾶς. Πολυκράτης δὲ **Ἀθηναῖοι*
to-have-'led us 'away. Polycrates indeed (the) Athenian

ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὑπὲρ Ξενοφῶντος· Γὲ μὴν ὁρῶ,
rising-up spoke for Xenophon: 'I at-least certainly 'see,

ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ **Ἡρακλείδην παρόντα ἐνταῦθα,*
said-he, O men, even Heraclides being-present here,

ὃς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα, ἃ ἡμεῖς ἐπονήσαμεν,
who having-received the things, which we laboured

ἀποδόμενος ταῦτα, ἀπέδωκε τὰ γιγνώ-
(to obtain), having-sold these (things) gave the pro-

μενα οὔτε Σεύδῃ οὔτε ἡμῖν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας,
ceeds neither to-Seuthes nor to-us, but he having-stolen

πέπαται. **Ἦν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν*
(them), keeps-possession (of them). If therefore we-are-wise

ἐξόμεθα αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ, ἔφη, οὗτος δὴ
we-will-lay-hold of-him. For, said-he, this (person) indeed

*ἐστίν οὗ γε Θράξ, ἀλλ' ὢν *Ἕλλην*
is not at-least (a) Thracian, but being (a) Greek 'treats

**Ἕλληνας ἀδίκει.*
(the) Greeks 'unjustly.

**Ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα* *μᾶλλον*
— Heraclides hearing these (things), 'was more

ἐξεπλάγη· καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ λέγει·
'alarmed (than before); and proceeding to — Seuthes he-says:

**Ἦν σωφρονῶμεν* *ἅπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς*
If we-are-wise 'we (will) 'depart hence from the

ἐπικρατείας τούτων. Καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοῖς
power of-these (men). And mounting on — (their)

πῶς ὄχοντο ἀπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον
 horses they-departed riding-off to the camp
 ἑαυτῶν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύδης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλην
 of-themselves. And thence Seuthes sends Abrozelmes
 τὸν ἑρμηνέα ἑαυτοῦ πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ κελεύει
 he interpreter of-himself to Xenophon, and requests
 αὐτὸν καταμεῖναι παρ' ἑαυτῷ, ἔχοντα χιλίους
 'm to-remain with himself, having (a) thousand
 πλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται ἀποδώσειν αὐτῷ τε
 heavy-armed-men, and promised to-give to-him also
 τὰ χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, καὶ
 the places — (those namely) on (the) sea (coast), and
 τὰλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. Καὶ ποιησάμενος
 the-other (things), which he-promised. And having-made (the
 ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ λέγει, ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πο-
 (communication) in secret he-says, that he-had-heard from-Po-
 λυνίκοι, ὥς, εἰ ἔσται ὑποχείριος Λακεδαι-
 lonicus, that, if he-should-be in-the-hands 'of (the) 'Lacedæ-
 μονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποδανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. Δὲ
 monians, evidently he-would-be-put-to-death by Thibron. And
 καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι ἐπέστελλον ταῦτα τῷ Ξενο-
 also many others communicated these (things) to — Xeno-
 φῶντι, ὥς εἴη διαβεβλημένος, καὶ δεοὶ φυλάττεσθαι.
 phon, that he-was calumniated, and ought to-be-on-his-guard.
 Δὲ ὁ ἰκούων ταῦτα, λαβὼν δύο ἱερεῖα,
 But — (he) hearing these (things), having-taken two victims,
 ἔδωκε τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, πότερά εἴη λῶον
 sacrificed to — 'upiter the king, whether it-would-be more-desirable
 καὶ ἄμειν ν μένειν παρὰ Σεύδῃ ἢ οἷς
 and better to-remain with Seuthes on (the terms) which
 Σεύδης λέγει, ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι.
 Seuthes mentions, or to-remain with the army.
 Δ' ἀναιρεῖ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.
 And (Jupiter) signifies to-him to-depart.

CHAPTER VII.

Σεύδης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐντεῦθεν
 SEUTHEES indeed 'removed (his) 'camp thence
 προσωτέρω· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς κώμας,
 farther-off; and the Greeks quartered in villages,
 ὁθεν ἔμελλον, ἐπισιτισάμενοι πλεῖ-
 whence they-intended, having-supplied-themselves-with-provisions plenti-
 στα, ἥξειν ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Αἱ αὖται κώμαι δὲ
 fully, to-go to (the) sea. — These villages indeed
 ἦσαν δεδομέναι Μηδοσάδῃ ὑπὸ Σεύδου. Οὖν ὁ
 had been-given to-Medosades by Seuthes. Therefore —
 Μηδοσάδης ὁρῶν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς
 Medosades seeing [the (things) of-him [his property] in the
 κώμαις δαπανώμενα ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, χαλε-
 villages consumed by the Greeks, he-'was grievous-
 πῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν Ὀδρύσην ἄνδρα δυνα-
 ly 'excited; and taking (an) Odrysian man, (the) most-
 τώτατον τῶν καταβεβηκότων ἀνωθεν,
 powerful of — (those) having-come-down | from-above, [from the
 καὶ ἱππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα, ἔρχεται
 upper country,] and horsemen as-many-as thirty, he-went
 καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
 and called-out Xenophon from the Greciaa
 στρατεύματος. Καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν
 camp. And who taking some of-the captains
 καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται.
 and others of-the proper (men) went-to-meet (him).
 Ἐνθα δὴ Μηδοσάδης λέγει· Ἀδικοῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν
 Then indeed Medosades said: You-act-unjustly, O Xenophon,
 πορδοῦντες τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας. Οὖν προλέγομεν
 laying-waste — our villages. Therefore we warn
 ὑμῖν, ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύδου, καὶ ὁδε ὁ ἀνὴρ,
 you, I not-only for Seuthes, but also this — man,

ἦκιν παρὰ Μηδόκου τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω,
 coming from Medocus the king | above, [of the upper
 ἀπιέναι τῆς χώρας· δὲ εἰ μὴ,
 country,] to-leave — (these) places; but if (you do) not,
 οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' εἰὰν ποιῇτε
 we-'shall not 'permit you (to do so), but if you-do
 κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ἀλεξόμεθα
 harm — our territory, we-shall-defend (ourselves against
 ὡς πολεμίους.
 you) as enemies.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν·
 — Xenophon indeed hearing these (things) said:
 Ἀλλὰ μὲν σοὶ λέγοντι τοιαῦτα καὶ ἀποκρί-
 But indeed to-you saying such (things) even to-an-
 νασθαι χαλεπὸν· δ' ἔνεκα τοῦδε τοῦ νεανισκου
 swer (is) painful; but on-account-of this — young-man
 λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῇ τε οἰοί ὑμεῖς
 I-shall-reply, that he-may-know, not-only what-sort (of people) you
 ἐστε, καὶ οἰοί ἡμεῖς. Γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη,
 are, but-also what-sort we (are). For we indeed, said-he,
 πρὶν γενέσθαι φίλοι ὑμῖν, ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ
 before (that we) became friends to-you, marched through
 ταύτης τῆς χώρας, ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα, πορδοῦντες
 this — country, wherever we-wished, laying-waste
 ἦν μὲν ἐδέλοισιν, δὲ καίοντες ἦν ἐδέλοισιν. Καὶ
 what indeed we-wished, and burning what we-wished. And
 σὺ ὁπότε ἔλδοις ἡμᾶς πρεσβεύων, ἡυλίζου τότε
 y-u when you-came to-us acting-as-an-ambassador, encamped then
 παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβούμενος οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων· δὲ
 by us, fearing none of-the enemy; but
 ὑμεῖς οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἢ, εἰ
 you 'did not 'come into this — country. or, if
 ποτε ἔλδοιτε ἡυλίζεσθε τοῖς ἵπποις
 at-any-time you-may-have-came you-encamped with — (your) horses
 ἱγκεχαλνωμένοις ὡς ἐν χώρα κρειττόνων.
 ready-bridled as in (a) country (of people) better

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένεσθ' ἐφίλοι
 (or more powerful than yourselves). But when you-became friends
 ἡμῖν, καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε
 to-us, and through us with (the assistance of the) gods you-have
 τήνδε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε
 (possession of) this — country, now truly 'you (would) 'expel
 ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆςδε τῆς χώρας, ἣν ἐχόντων παρελάβετε
 us from this — country, which having you-received
 παρ' ἡμῶν κατὰ κράτος· γὰρ ὡς αὐτὸς
 from us as (the more) powerful; for as you-yourself
 οἶσδα, οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἐξελαύνειν
 know, the enemy were not able to-'drive
 ἡμᾶς. Καὶ ἀξιοῖς ἀποπέμψασθαι ἡμᾶς
 us 'out. And you-think-proper to-'send us 'away
 ὅπως οὐ δοὺς δῶρα καὶ ποιήσας εὖ,
 so-as not (only not) having-given presents and having-done well
 ἀνδ' ὧν ἔπαδες εὖ, ἀλλ'
 (to us), in-place-of (that) which you-receive? 'benefits (from us), but
 ἀποκορευομένους, ἐπιτρέπεις ἡμᾶς ἢ ἐναυλίσσῃναι,
 about-departing, you-would-permit us rather to-sojourn,
 ὅσον δύνασαι. Καὶ λέγων ταῦτα
 (in) as-much-as (that you were) able. And saying these
 οὔτε αἰσχύνῃ θεοὺς, οὔτε τόνδε τὸν
 (things), 'you neither reverence (the) gods, nor this —
 ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν ὄρᾳ σε πλουτεῖντα, δὲ πρὶν
 man, who now indeed sees you being-rich, but before
 γενέσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν ἔχοντα
 (that you) became (a) friend to-us (he saw you) (having)
 τὸν βίον ἀπὸ ληστείας, ὥς αὐτὸς
 (supporting) — (your) life by plunder, as you-yourself
 ἔφησθα. Ἀτὰρ τί καὶ λέγεις ταῦτα πρὸς
 have-said. But why even do-you-say these (things) to
 ἐμὲ; ἔφη· γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἀρχῶ, ἰλλὰ
 me? continued-he; for I-at-least no-longer command, but (the)
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς, ὦ θαυμαστότατα,
 Lacedæmonians, to-whom you, O most-wonderful (men)

παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν, οὐδὲν
 'gave the army 'up to-have-'led (it) 'away, not
 παρακαλέσαντες, ὅπως, ὥσπερ ἀπηχθάνοιμην αὐτοῖς,
 having-called-on-me, so-that, as I-was-hated by-them,
 ὅτε ἤγον πρὸς ὑμᾶς, οὕτω καὶ νῦν χαρισαίμην
 as I-led (the army) to you, so even now I-might-gratify
 ἀποδιδούς.
 (them) having-restored (it).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ὀδρύσης ἤκουσεν ταῦτα, εἶπεν·
 When indeed the Odrysian heard these (things), he-said:
 Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἀκούων ταῦτα
 I indeed, O Medosades, hearing these (things), (feel)
 καταδύομαι κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὑπὸ αἰσχύνῃς. Καὶ
 myself-sinking beneath the earth from shame. And
 εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμην πρόσθεν, ἂν οὐδ' συνηκο-
 if indeed I-had-known (this) before, 'I would not 'have-accom-
 λούδησά σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. Γὰρ Μηδοκός ὁ
 panied you; and now I-depart. For Medocus the
 βασιλεὺς ἂν οὐδ' ἐπαινοίη με, εἰ ἐξελαίνοιμι τοὺς
 king would not approve me, if I-had-expelled — (his)
 εὐεργέτας. Εἰπων ταῦτ', ἀναβάς ἐπὶ τὸν
 benefactors. Having-said these (things), mounting on — (his)
 ἵππον ἀπήλαινε, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἵππεις,
 horse he-ride-off, and with him the other horsemen
 πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε. Δὲ ὁ Μηδοσάδης, (γὰρ
 except four or five. But — Medosades, (for
 ἡ χώρα πορδουμένη ἐλύπει αὐτὸν,) ἐκέλευε τὸν
 the country being-laid-waste distressed him,) requested —
 Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. Καὶ ὃς
 Xenophon to-call-on the-two Lacedæmonians. And who
 λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους,
 taking — (those) most-suitable (for the purpose with him),
 προσηλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ, καὶ ἔλεξεν,
 he-went-to — Charminus and Polynicus, and said,
 ὅτι Μηδοσάδης καλεῖ αὐτοὺς, προερῶν ἅπερ
 that Medosades calls-on them, warning (them) as

αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ἄν οὖν
 (he had done) himself to-depart from the country. 'I should therefore
 οἶμαι, ἔφη, ὅτι ὑμᾶς ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν
 'think, said (Xenophon), that you (would) obtain the
 μισθὸν ὀφειλόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ εἵποιτε ὅτι
 pay due to-the army, if you-were-to-say that
 ἡ στρατιὰ δεδέηται ὑμῶν συναναπράξαι τὸν
 the army has-entreated of-you together-to-exact — (your)
 μισθὸν Σεύδου ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἀκόντος.
 pay of-Seuthes either — willing or — unwilling,
 καὶ ὅτι φασὶ τυχόντες τούτων ἂν προδύ-
 and that they-say having-obtained these (things) 'they would cheer-
 μως συνέπessαι ὑμῖν, καὶ ὅτι δοκοῦσι ὑμῖν λέγειν
 fully 'follow you, and that they-appear to-you to-say
 δίκαια, καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς
 (the things that are) just, and that you-had-promised there
 τότε ἀπιέναι, ὅταν οἱ στρατιῶται ἔχωσι τὰ
 then to-depart, when the soldiers might-have — (their)
 δίκαια. Οἱ Λάκωνες ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
 just (demands). The Lacedæmonians hearing these (things),
 ἔφασαν ἔρῃν, καὶ ἄλλα
 said (that they would) say (so), and (such) other (things)
 ὅποια ἂν δύνωνται κράτιστα.
 as-that 'they might 'be-able (to urge) to-the-best (advantage),
 καὶ εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς
 and immediately they-proceeded having all the
 ἐπικαιρίους. Ἐλθὼν δὲ Χαρμῖνος ἔλεξε· Εἰ μὲν,
 proper-persons. Having-come indeed Charminus said: If indeed,
 ὦ Μηδόσαδης, σύ ἔχεις τι, λέγειν πρὸς ἡμᾶς
 O Medosades, you have any-thing, to-say to us
 δὲ εἰ μή, ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν πρὸς σέ.
 (say it); but if not, we have (something to say) to you.
 Ὁ Μηδοσάδης δὲ μάλα ὑφειμένως ἔφη· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
 — Medosades indeed very submissively said: But I
 μὲν λέγω, καὶ Σεύδης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιούμεν
 'ndeed say, and Seuthes (says) the same, that we-consider

τοὺς γεγενημένους φίλους ἡμῖν
 (it right, that) — (those) having-become friends to-us, (ought)
 μὴ πάσχειν κακῶς ὑφ' ὑμῶν· γὰρ ὅ τι ἄν
 not to-suffer evil by you; for whatever you may
 ποιῇτε κακῶς τούτους, ποιεῖτε ἤδη ἡμᾶς·
 do ill (to) them, you-do already (the same to) us;
 γὰρ εἰσιν ἡμέτεροι. Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ
 for they-are ours. We therefore, said the
 Λάκωνες, ἂν ἀπίοιμεν, ὅποτε οἱ καταπράξαντες
 Lacedæmonians, may depart, when — (those) having-performed
 ταῦτα ὑμῖν ἔχοιεν τὸν μισθόν· εἰ δὲ μή,
 these (great things) for-you may-have — (their) pay; if indeed not,
 ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσונτες
 we-come indeed even now helping (and taking part with)
 τούτοις, καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἱ ἡδίκη-
 these, and about-taking-vengeance-on (the) men who wronged
 σαν τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους. Δὲ ἦν
 these (soldiers) against — (their) oaths. And if
 δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε τοιοῦτοι, ἐνδένδε
 indeed also you may-have-been (of) such (number), (from-here)
 ἀρξόμεθα λαμβάνειν τὰ δίκαια. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 (of you) we-will-begin to-take — justice. — Xenophon
 δὲ εἶπεν· Δ' ἐδέλοιτε, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἂν
 (then) indeed said: And would-you-be-willing, O Medosades, —
 ἐπιτρέψαι τούτοις, (ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφατε
 to-leave (it) to-these (people), (since they-say (that they)
 εἶναι φίλους ὑμῖν,) ἐν ᾧ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν,
 are friends to-you,) in whose — country we-are, (that they)
 ἂν ψηφίσωνται ὁπότερα, εἴδ' προσῆκεν ὑμᾶς ἀπιέναι
 might decide-by-vote either, whether it-were-fit for-you to-depart
 ἐκ τῆς χώρας, εἴτε ἡμᾶς; Δὲ ὁ ἔφη
 from the country, or us? But — (Medosades) said (I do)
 οὐ μὲν ταῦτα· δὲ μάλιστα μὲν ἐκέλευε αὐτῷ
 not indeed (want) this; but most-of-all indeed he-requested these-two
 τῷ Λάκωνι ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθῃν περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ,
 — Lacedæmonians to-go to Seuthes about the pay,

καὶ οἶεσθαι ἂν πείσαι Σεΐδην· ὃ
 and (that he) thought (that they) might persuade Seuthes; but
 εἰ μὴ, πέμπειν Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ, καὶ ὑπι-
 if not, to-send Xenophon with himself, and he-
 σχνεῖτο συμπράξειν. Ἔδεῖτο δὲ μὴ καίειν
 promised to-co-operate. He-requested (them) moreover not to-burn
 τὰς κώμας.
 the villages.

Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ
 Thereupon they-send Xenophon, and with him
 οἱ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτηδειότατοι. Ὁ
 (those) who seemed to-be the-most-proper (persons). — (He)
 δὲ ἔλθων λέγει πρὸς Σεΐδην· Πάρεμι,
 indeed having-come speaks (thus) to Seuthes; I-am-here,
 ὦ Σεΐδη, οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ἀλλὰ
 O Seuthes, not about-demanding (any thing of you), but
 διδάξων, ἣν δύνωμαι, ὥς οὐ
 teaching (and convincing you), if I-am-able, that you-'are not
 δικαίως ἠχδέσθης μοι, ὅτι προθύμως ἀπήτουν
 justly 'displeased with-me, because 'I earnestly 'entreated
 σε ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἃ ὑπέσχου
 you about (the pay) of-the soldiers, which you-promised
 αὐτοῖς· γὰρ ἔγωγε ἐνόμιζον οὐκ εἶναι ἥττον
 them; for I-at-least thought (it would) not be less
 συμφέρον σοὶ ἀποδοῦναι, ἢ ἀπολαβεῖν
 advantageous to-you to-pay, than (that it would be) to-receive
 ἐκείνοις. Γὰρ οἶδα μὲν πρῶτον μετὰ τοὺς
 (it) by-them. For I-know indeed (that) first after the
 θεοὺς, τούτους καταστήσαντα σε εἰς τὰ
 gods, these (soldiers) having-placed you in — (a)
 φανερόν, ἐπεὶ γε ἐποίησαν σε βασιλέα
 conspicuous (position), then at-least they-made you king
 πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνδρῶπων· ὥστε οὐχ
 of-many places and of-many men; so-that (it is) not
 οἶόν τε λανθάνειν σοι, οὔτε ἥν
 possible | to-conceal yourself, [to escape notice,] whether if

ποιήσης τι καλόν, οὔτε ἦν τί αἰσχρόν.
you-do any-thing good, or if any-thing shameful. 'To (a,

Ἄνδρὶ δὲ ὄντι τοιούτῳ ἐδόκει μὲν εἶναι
man indeed being such (in situation) it-seems indeed to-be

μοι μέγα μὴ δοκεῖν ἀποπέμψασ-
to-me (to be a thing of) great (importance) not to-seem to-have-sent-

δαι ἰχαρίστως ἄνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα
away ungratefully men (his) benefactors, (a) great (thing)

δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνδράπων.
indeed to-be-well-spoken-of by six-thousand men

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον καταστήναι
and the greatest to-be-firmly-established (in the confidence that)

σαυτὸν μηδαμῶς ἄπιστον ὅ τι λέγοις.
you (are) in-no-wise unworthy-of-belief (in) what you-may-say

Γὰρ ὁρῶ τοὺς λόγους μὲν ἄπιστων πλανω-
For I-see the words indeed of-those-unworthy-of-belief wander-

μένους ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους· δ'
ing-about in-vain and powerless and dishonoured; but

οἱ λόγοι τούτων, οἳ ἂν ὦσιν φανεροὶ ἀσχοῦντες
the words of-those, who may be openly cultivating

ἀλήθειαν, ἣν θέουκνται τι, δύνανται οὐδὲν μείον
truth, if they-want any-thing, are-able not less

ἀνύσασθαι, ἢ ἢ βία ἄλλων· ἣν τε βού-
to-effect (it), than the force of-other (men); if also they-

λωνται σωφρονίζειν τινὰς, γινώσκω τὰς
wish to-'bring any-one 'to-reason, I-know the

ἀπειλὰς τούτων οὐχ ἥττον σωφρονιζούσας,
threats of-these (men are) not less correcting,

ἢ τὰς ἤδη κολάσεις ἄλλων· ἣν τέ οἱ
than the already (given) punishments of-others; if also —

τοιούτοι ἄνδρες ὑπισχνῶνται τῷ τι δια-
such men promise — (any one) anything they-

πράττονται οὐδὲν μείον, ἢ ἄλλοι δίδόντες παρα-
accomplish no less, than others giving at-the-

χρῆμα. Δὲ καὶ ἀναμνήσθητι σύ, τί προτελέσας
instant. And also recollect yourself, what you-advanced

ἡμῖν ἔλαβες ἡμᾶς συμμάχους. Οἶσθ' ὅτι
to-us having-taken us (as) allies. You-know that (it was)

οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεὶς ἀληθεύσειν, ἃ ἔλαβες,
nothing; | but having-been-trusted to-speak-the-truth, what you-say,

ἐπηῆρας

[but trusting that you spoke the truth in what you said,] you-induced

τοσοῦτους ἀνδρώπους τε συστρατεύεσθαι τε καὶ
such-a-number (of) men not-only to-fight-with (you), but-also

συνκατεργάσασθαι σοι ἀρχὴν οὐ μόνον ἀξίαν
to-conquer-with you (a) government not only worth

τριάκοντα ταλάντων, ὅσα οὗτοι οἴονται
thirty talents. which (sum) they think (that they)

δεῖν νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων.
ought now to-receive (from you), but many-times-more.

Οὐκ οὖν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτο τὸ πιστεύεσθαι σε,
(Is) not therefore first indeed this | the to-confide in-you,

τὸ καὶ κατεργασάμενον
[the confidence placed in you,] — (that) even (which) secured

σοι τὴν βασιλείαν πιπράσκειται ὑπὸ σου τούτων
for-you the kingdom sold by you (for) this

τῶν χρημάτων. Ἴδι δὴ ἀναμνήσδετι, πῶς μέγα
— money. Well-then truly recollect, how great

τότε ἡγοῦ καταπράξασθαι ἃ
'you then 'considered (it) to-accomplish (those things) which

νῦν ἔχεις καταστρεψάμενος. Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶδ' εὖ,
now you-have having-conquered. I indeed know well

ὅτι εὖξω ἂν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα
that 'you would 'have-prayed (for) the (things) now accomplished

μᾶλλον καταπραχθῆναι σοι, ἢ πολλαπλάσια
rather to-be-effected for-you, than (for) many-times

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. Τοίνυν
that (sum) of — money (might) be. Therefore

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ εἶναι μεῖζον βλάβος καὶ αἰσχίον μὴ
to-me it-seems to-be (a) greater detriment and disgrace not

νῦν κατασχεῖν τὰ ταῦτα, ἢ τότε μὴ
now to-have-retained — these (things), than then not

πρὸς ὧν ἄπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον
 horses they-departed riding-off to the camp
 αὐτῶν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύδης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλην
 of-themselves. And thence Seuthes sends Abrozelmes
 τὸν ἑρμηνέα αὐτοῦ πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ κελεύει
 he interpreter of-himself to Xenophon, and requests
 αὐτὸν καταμεῖναι παρ' αὐτῷ, ἔχοντα χιλίους
 'm to-remain with himself, having (a) thousand
 πλῆτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται ἀποδώσειν αὐτῷ τε
 heavy-armed-men, and promised to-give to-him also
 τὰ χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, καὶ
 the places — (those namely) on (the) sea (coast), and
 τὰλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. Καὶ ποιησάμενος
 the-other (things), which he-promised. And having-made (the
 ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ λέγει, ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πο-
 (communication) in secret he-says, that he-had-heard from-Po-
 λυνίκοι, ὥς, εἰ ἔσται ὑποχείριος Λακεδαι-
 lynicus, that, if he-should-be in-the-hands 'of (the) 'Lacedæ-
 μονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποδανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. Δὲ
 monians, evidently he-would-be-put-to-death by Thibron. And
 καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι ἐπέστελλον ταῦτα τῷ Ξενο-
 also many others communicated these (things) to — Xeno-
 φῶντι, ὥς εἴη διαβεβλημένος, καὶ δεοὶ φυλάττεσθαι.
 phon, that he-was calumniated, and ought to-be-on-his-guard.
 Δὲ ὁ ἰκούνων ταῦτα, λαβὼν δύο ἱερεῖα,
 But — (he) hearing these (things), having-taken two victims,
 ἔδωκε τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, πότερά εἴη λῶον
 sacrificed to — 'Jupiter the king, whether it-would-be more-desirable
 καὶ ἄμειν ν μένειν παρὰ Σεύδῃ ἐφ' οἷς
 and better to-remain with Seuthes on (the terms) which
 Σεύδης λέγει, ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι.
 Seuthes mentions, or to-remain with the army.
 Δ' ἀναίρει αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.
 And (Jupiter) signifies to-him to-depart.

CHAPTER VII.

Σεύδης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐντεῦθεν
 SEUTHES indeed 'removed (his) 'camp thence
 προσωτέρω· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς κώμας,
 farther-off; and the Greeks quartered in villages,
 ὁθεν ἐμελλον, ἐπισιτισάμενοι πλεῖ-
 whence they-intended, having-supplied-themselves-with-provisions plenti-
 στα, ἥξειν ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Αἱ αὐταὶ κώμαι δὲ
 fully, to-go to (the) sea. — These villages indeed
 ἦσαν δεδομέναι Μηδοσάδῃ ὑπὸ Σεύδου. Οὖν ὁ
 had been-given to-Medosades by Seuthes. Therefore —
 Μηδοσάδης ὁρῶν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς
 Medosades seeing [the (things) of-him [his property] in the
 κώμας δαπανώμενα ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, χαλε-
 villages consumed by the Greeks, he-'was grievous-
 πῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν Ὀδρύσην ἄνδρα δυνα-
 ly 'excited; and taking (an) Odrysian man, (the) most-
 τῶτατον τῶν καταβεβηκότων ἀνωθεν,
 powerful of — (those) having-come-down | from-above, [from the
 καὶ ἱππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα, ἔρχεται
 upper country,] and horsemen as-many-as thirty, he-went
 καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
 and called-out Xenophon from the Grecian
 στρατεύματος. Καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν
 camp. And who taking some of-the captains
 καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται.
 and others of-the proper (men) went-to-meet (him).
 Ἐνθα δὴ Μηδοσάδης λέγει· Ἀδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν
 Then indeed Medosades said: You-act-unjustly, O Xenophon,
 πορδοῦντες τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας. Οὖν προλέγομεν
 laying-waste — our villages. Therefore we warn
 ὑμῖν, ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύδου, καὶ ὁδε ὁ ἀνὴρ,
 you, I not-only for Seuthes, but also this — man,

ἤκων παρὰ Μηδόκου τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω,
 coming from Medocus the king | above, [of the upper
 ἀπιέναι τῆς χώρας· δὲ εἰ μὴ,
 country,] to-leave — (these) places; but if (you do) not,
 οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιῇτε
 we-'shall not 'permit you (to do so), but if you-do
 κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ἀλεξόμεθα
 harm — our territory, we-shall-defend (ourselves against
 ὡς πολεμίους.
 you) as enemies.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν·
 — Xenophon indeed hearing these (things) said:
 Ἀλλὰ μὲν σοὶ λέγοντι τοιαῦτα καὶ ἀποκρί-
 But indeed to-you saying such (things) even to-an-
 νασθαι χαλεπὸν· δ' ἔνεκα τοῦδε τοῦ νεανισκου
 swer (is) painful; but on-account-of this — young-man
 λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῇ τε οἰοί ὑμεῖς
 I-shall-reply, that he-may-know, not-only what-sort (of people) you
 ἐστε, καὶ οἰοί ἡμεῖς. Γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη,
 are, but-also what-sort we (are). For we indeed, said-he,
 πρὶν γενέσθαι φίλοι ὑμῖν, ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ
 before (that we) became friends to-you, marched through
 ταύτης τῆς χώρας, ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα, πορδοῦντες
 this — country, wherever we-wished, laying-waste
 ἦν μὲν ἐθέλοισεν, δὲ καίοντες ἦν ἐθέλοισεν. Καὶ
 what indeed we-wished, and burning what we-wished. And
 σὺ ὅποτε ἔλθοις ἡμᾶς πρεσβεύων, ἡϋλίζου τότε
 you when you-came to-us acting-as-an-ambassador, encamped then
 παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβούμενος οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων· δὲ
 by us, fearing none of-the enemy; but
 ὑμεῖς οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἢ, εἰ
 you 'did not 'come into this — country. or, if
 ποτε ἔλδοιτε ἡϋλίζεσθε τοῖς ἵπποις
 at-any-time you-may-have-came you-encamped with — (your) horses
 ἱγχεχαλνωμένοις ὡς ἐν χώρα κρειττόνων.
 ready-bridled as in (a) country (of people) better

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένεσθε φίλοι
 (or more powerful than yourselves). But when you-became friends
 ἡμῖν, καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε
 to-us, and through us with (the assistance of the) gods you-have
 τήνδε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε
 (possession of) this — country, now truly 'you (would) 'expel
 ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆςδε τῆς χώρας, ἣν ἐχόντων παρελάβετε
 us from this — country, which having you-received
 παρ' ἡμῶν κατὰ κράτος· γὰρ ὡς αὐτὸς
 from us as (the more) powerful; for as you-yourself
 οἶσδα, οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἐξελαύνειν
 know, the enemy were not able to-'drive
 ἡμᾶς. Καὶ ἀξιοῖς ἀποπέμψασθαι ἡμᾶς
 us 'out. And you-think-proper to-'send us 'away
 ὅπως οὐ δούς δῶρα καὶ ποιήσας εὖ,
 so-as not (only not) having-given presents and having-done well
 ἀνδ' ὧν ἔπαδες εὖ, ἀλλ'
 (to us), in-place-of (that) which you-receive 'benefits (from us), but
 ἀποκορευομένους, ἐπιτρέπεις ἡμᾶς ἢ ἐναυλισθῆναι,
 about-departing, you-would-permit us rather to-sojourn,
 ὅσον δύνασαι. Καὶ λέγων ταῦτα
 (in) as-much-as (that you were) able. And saying these
 οὔτε αἰσχύνῃ θεοὺς, οὔτε τόνδε τὸν
 (things), 'you neither reverence (the) gods, nor this —
 ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν ὁρᾷ σε πλουτύνοντα, δὲ πρὶν
 man, who now indeed sees you being-rich, but before
 γενέσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν ἔχοντα
 (that you) became (a) friend to-us (he and you) (having)
 τὸν βίον ἀπὸ ληστείας, ὥς αὐτὸς
 (supporting) — (your) life by plunder, as you-yourself
 ἔφησθα. Ἀτὰρ τί καὶ λέγεις ταῦτα πρὸς
 have-said. But why even do-you-say these (things) to
 ἐμέ; ἔφη· γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἐτι ἄρχω, ἰλλὰ
 me? continued-he; for I-at-least no-longer command, but (the)
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς ὦ θαυμαστότατοι,
 Lacedæmonians, to-whom you, O most-wonderful (men)

παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν, οὐδὲν
 'gave the army 'up to-have-'led (it) 'away, not
 παρακαλέσαντες, ὅπως, ὥσπερ ἀπηχθάνομην αὐτοῖς,
 having-called-on-me, so-that, as I-was-hated by-them,
 ὅτε ἤγον πρὸς ὑμᾶς, οὕτω καὶ νῦν χαρισαίμην
 as I-led (the army) to you, so even now I-might-gratify
 ἀποδιδούς.
 (them) having-restored (it).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ὀδρύσης ἤκουσεν ταῦτα, εἶπεν·
 When indeed the Odrysian heard these (things), he-said:
 Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἀκούων ταῦτα
 I indeed, O Medosades, hearing these (things), (feel)
 καταδύομαι κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὑπὸ αἰσχύνῃς. Καὶ
 myself-sinking beneath the earth from shame. And
 εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμην πρόσθεν, ἂν οὐδ' ὀνηροῦ
 if indeed I-had-known (this) before, 'I would not 'have-accom-
 λούδησά σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. Γὰρ Μηδοκός ὁ
 panied you; and now I-depart. For Medocus the
 βασιλεὺς ἂν οὐδ' ἐπαινοίη με, εἰ ἐξελαύνοιμι τοὺς
 king would not approve me, if I-had-expelled — (his)
 εὐεργέτας. Εἰπων ταῦτ', ἀναβάς ἐπὶ τὸν
 benefactors. Having-said these (things), mounting on — (his)
 ἵππον ἀπήλαινε, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἵππεις,
 horse he-rode-off, and with him the other horsemen
 πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε. Δὲ ὁ Μηδοσάδης, (γὰρ
 except four or five. But — Medosades, (for
 ἡ χώρα πορδουμένη ἐλύπει αὐτόν,) ἐκέλευε τὸν
 the country being-laid-waste distressed him,) requested —
 Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. Καὶ ὃς
 Xenophon to-call-on the-two Lacedæmonians. And who
 λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους,
 taking — (those) most-suitable (for the purpose with him),
 προσῆλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ, καὶ ἔλεξεν,
 he-went-to — Charminus and Polynicius, and said,
 ὅτι Μηδοσάδης καλεῖ αὐτοὺς, προεῶν ἅπερ
 that Medosades calls-on them, warning (them) as

αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ἄν οὖν
(he had done) himself to-depart from the country. 'I should therefore

οἶμαι, ἔφη, ὅτι ὑμᾶς ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν
'think, said (Xenophon), that you (would) obtain the

μισθὸν ὀφειλόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ εἵποιτε ὅτι
pay due to-the army, if you-were-to-say that

ἡ στρατιὰ δεδέηται ὑμῶν συναναπράξαι τὸν
the army has-entreated of-you together-to-exact — (your)

μισθὸν Σείδου ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἀκόντος,
pay of-Seuthes either — willing or — unwilling,

καὶ ὅτι φασι τυχόντες τούτων ἂν προδύ-
and that they-say having-obtained these (things) 'they would cheer-

μως συνέπεσθαι ὑμῖν, καὶ ὅτι δοκοῦσι ὑμῖν λέγειν
fully 'follow you, and that they-appear to-you to-say

δίκαια, καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς
(the things that are) just, and that you-had-promised there

τότε ἀπιέναι, ὅταν οἱ στρατιῶται ἔχωσι τὰ
then to-depart, when the soldiers might-have — (their)

δίκαια. Οἱ Λάκωνες ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
just (demands). The Lacedæmonians hearing these (things),

ἔφασαν ἔρεῖν, καὶ ἄλλα
said (that they would) say (so), and (such) other (things)

ὅποια ἂν δύνωνται κράτιστα.
as-that 'they might 'be-able (to urge) to-the-best (advantage),

καὶ εὐδὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς
and immediately they-proceeded having all the

ἐπικαιρίους. Ἐλθὼν δὲ Χαρμῖνος ἔλεξε· Εἰ μὲν,
proper-persons. Having-come indeed Charminus said: If indeed,

ὦ Μηδόσαδης, σύ ἔχεις τι, λέγειν πρὸς ἡμᾶς
O Medosades, you have any-thing, to-say to us

δὲ εἰ μή, ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν πρὸς σέ.
(say it); but if not, we have (something to say) to you.

Ὁ Μηδοσάδης δὲ μάλα ὑφειμένως ἔφη· Ἀλλ' ἐγώ
— Medosades indeed very submissively said: But I

μὲν λέγω, καὶ Σείδης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιοῦμεν
'indeed say, and Seuthes (says) the same, that we-consider

τοὺς γεγενημένους φίλους ἡμῖν
 (it right, that) — (those) having-become friends to-us, (ought)
 μὴ πάσχειν κακῶς ὑφ' ὑμῶν· γὰρ ὅ τι ἂν
 not to-suffer evil by you; for whatever you may
 ποιῆτε κακῶς τούτους, ποιεῖτε ἤδη ἡμᾶς·
 do ill (to) them, you-do already (the same to) us;
 γὰρ εἰσιν ἡμέτεροι. Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ
 for they-are ours. We therefore, said the
 Λάκωνες, ἂν ἀπίοιμεν, ὅποτε οἱ καταπράξαντες
 Lacedæmonians, may depart, when — (those) having-performed
 ταῦτα ὑμῖν ἔχοιεν τὸν μισθόν· εἰ δὲ μή,
 these (great things) for-you may-have — (their) pay; if indeed not,
 ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσונτες
 we-come indeed even now helping (and taking part with)
 τούτοις, καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἱ ἠδίκη-
 these, and about-taking-vengeance-on (the) men who wronged
 σαν τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους. Δὲ ἦν
 these (soldiers) against — (their) oaths. And if
 δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε τοιοῦτοι, ἐνδένδε
 indeed also you may-have-been (of) such (number), (from-here)
 ἀρξόμεθα λαμβάνειν τὰ δίκαια. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 (of you) we-will-begin to-take — justice. — Xenophon
 δὲ εἶπεν· Δ' ἐδέλοιτε, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἂν
 (then) indeed said: And would-you-be-willing, O Medosades, —
 ἐπιτρέψαι τούτοις, (ἐπειδὴ ἔφατε
 to-leave (it) to-these (people), (since they-say (that they)
 εἶναι φίλους ὑμῖν,) ἐν ᾧ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν,
 are friends to-you,) in whose — country we-are, (that they)
 ἂν ψηφίσωνται ὅποτερα, εἴδ' προσῆκεν ὑμᾶς ἀπιέναι
 might decide-by-vote either, whether it-were-fit for-you to-depart
 ἐκ τῆς χώρας, εἴτε ἡμᾶς; Δὲ ὁ ἔφη
 from the country, or us? But — (Medosades) said (I do)
 οὐ μὲν ταῦτα· δὲ μάλιστα μὲν ἐκέλευε αὐτῷ
 not indeed (want) this; but most-of-all indeed he-requested these-two
 τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθῃν περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ,
 — Lacedæmonians to-go to Seuthes about the pay,

καὶ οἶεσθαι ἂν πείσαι Σεύδη· δ'
 and (that he) thought (that they) might persuade Seuthes; but
 εἰ μὴ, πέμπειν Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἑπι-
 if not, to-send Xenophon with himself, and he-
 σχνεῖτο συμπράξειν. Ἐδεῖτο δὲ μὴ καίειν
 promised to-co-operate. He-requested (them) moreover not to-burn
 τὰς κώμας.
 the villages.

Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ
 Thereupon they-send Xenophon, and with him
 οἱ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτηδείοτατοι. Ὁ
 (those) who seemed to-be the-most-proper (persons). — (He)
 δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς Σεύδη· Πάρεμι,
 indeed having-come speaks (thus) to Seuthes; I-am-here,
 ὦ Σεύδη, οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ἀλλὰ
 O Seuthes, not about-demanding (any thing of you), but
 διδάξων, ἣν δύνωμαι, ὥς οὐ
 teaching (and convincing you), if I-am-able, that you-'are not
 δικαίως ἡχθέσθης μοι, ὅτι προθύμως ἀπήτουν
 justly 'displeased with-me, because 'I earnestly 'entreated
 σε ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἃ ὑπέσχου
 you about (the pay) of-the soldiers, which you-promised
 αὐτοῖς· γὰρ ἔγωγε ἐνόμιζον οὐκ εἶναι ἥττον
 them; for I-at-least thortght (it would) not be less
 συμφέρον σοὶ ἀποδοῦναι, ἢ ἀπολαβεῖν
 advantageous to-you to-pay, than (that it would be) to-receive
 ἐκείνοις. Γὰρ οἶδα μὲν πρῶτον μετὰ τοὺς
 (it) by-them. For I-know indeed (that) first after the
 θεοὺς, τούτους καταστήσαντα σε εἰς τὰ
 gods, these (soldiers) having-placed you in — (a)
 φανερόν, ἐπεὶ γε ἐποίησαν σε βασιλέα
 conspicuous (position), then at-least they-made you king
 πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνδρῶν· ὥστε οὐχ
 of-many places and of-many men; so-that (it is) not
 οἶόν τε λανθάνειν σοι, οὔτε ἦν
 possible | to-conceal yourself, [to escape notice,] whether if

ποιήσης τι καλόν, οὔτε ἦν τί αἰσχρόν.
 you-do any-thing good, or if any-thing shameful. 'To (a,
 Ἄνδρ' δὲ ὄντι τοιούτῳ ἐδόκει μὲν εἶναι
 man indeed being such (in situation) it-seems indeed to-be
 μοι μέγα μὴ δοκεῖν ἀποπέμψασ-
 to-me (to be a thing of) great (importance) not to-seem to-have-sent-
 δαι ἰχαρίστως ἄνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα
 away ungratefully men (his) benefactors, (a) great (thing)
 δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνδράπων.
 indeed to-be-well-spoken-of by six-thousand men
 δὲ τὸ μέγιστον καταστήναι
 and the greatest to-be-firmly-established (in the confidence that)
 σαυτὸν μηδαμῶς ἄπιστον ὃ τι λέγοις.
 you (are) in-no-wise unworthy-of-belief (in) what you-may-say
 Γὰρ ὁρῶ τοὺς λόγους μὲν ἄπιστων πλανω-
 For I-see the words indeed of-those-unworthy-of-belief wander-
 μένους ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους· ὃ
 ing-about in-vain and powerless and dishonoured; but
 οἱ λόγοι τούτων, οἳ ἂν ὦσιν φανεροὶ ἀσχοῦντες
 the words of-those, who may be openly cultivating
 ἀλήθειαν, ἣν θέονονται τι, δύνανται οὐδὲν μείον
 truth, if they-want any-thing, are-able not less
 ἀνύσασθαι, ἢ ἢ βία ἄλλων· ἣν τε βού-
 to-effect (it), than the force of-other (men); if also they-
 λωνται σωφρονίζειν τινὰς, γινώσκω τὰς
 wish to-'bring any-one 'to-reason, I-know the
 ἀπειλὰς τούτων οἷχ ἦτον σωφρονιζούσας,
 threats of-these (men are) not less correcting,
 ἢ τὰς ἤδη κολάσεις ἄλλων· ἣν τέ οἱ
 than the already (given) punishments of-others; if also —
 τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες ὑπισχνῶνται τῷ τι δια-
 such men promise — (any one) anything they-
 πράττονται οὐδὲν μείον, ἢ ἄλλοι διδόντες παρα-
 accomplish no less, than others giving at-the-
 χρῆμα. Δὲ καὶ ἀναμνήσθητι σύ, τί προτελέσας
 instant. And also recollect yourself, what you-advanced

ἡμῖν ἔλαβες ἡμᾶς συμμάχους. Οἶσθ' ὅτι
to-us having-taken us (as) allies. You-know that (it was)

οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεὶς ἀληθεύσειν, ἃ ἔλαβες,
nothing; | but having-been-trusted to-speak-the-truth, what you-say,

ἐπῆρας
[but trusting that you spoke the truth in what you said,] you-induced

τοσούτους ἀνδρώπους τε συστρατεύεσθαι τε καὶ
such-a-number (of) men not-only to-fight-with (you), but-also

συγκατεργάσασθαι σοι ἀρχὴν οἱ μόνον ἀξίαν
to-conquer-with you (a) government not only worth

τριάκοντα ταλάντων, ὅσα οὗτοι οἴονται
thirty talents. which (sum) they think (that they)

δεῖν νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων.
ought now to-receive (from you), but many-times-more.

Οὐκ οὖν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτο τὸ πιστεύεσθαι σε,
(Is) not therefore first indeed this | the to-confide in-you,

τὸ καὶ κατεργασάμενον
[the confidence placed in you,] — (that) even (which) secured

σοι τὴν βασιλείαν πιπράσκειται ὑπὸ σου τούτων
for-you the kingdom sold by you (for) this

τῶν χρημάτων. Ἴδι δὴ ἀναμνήσδετι, πῶς μέγα
— money. Well-then truly recollect, how great

τότε ἡγοῦ καταπράξασθαι ἃ
'you then 'considered (it) to-accomplish (those things) which

νῦν ἔχεις καταστρεψάμενος. Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶδ' εὖ,
now you-have having-conquered. I indeed know well

ὅτι εὖξω ἂν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα
that 'you would 'have-prayed (for) the (things) now accomplished

μᾶλλον καταπραχθῆναι σοι, ἢ πολλαπλάσια
rather to-be-effected for-you, than (for) many-times

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. Τοίνυν
that (sum) of — money (might) be. Therefore

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ εἶναι μείζον βλάβος καὶ αἰσχιον μὴ
to-me it-seems to-be (a) greater detriment and disgrace not

νῦν κατασχεῖν τὰ ταῦτα, ἢ τότε μὴ
now to-have-retained — these (things), than then not

λαβεῖν, ὅσῳ περ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίων
to-have-acquired (them), as (it is) more-grievous from (the) rich

γενέσθαι πένητα, ἢ μὴ πλουτῆσαι ἢ
to-become poor, | than not to-have-been-rich if (from the)

ἀρχήν, καὶ ὅσῳ
beginning, [than not to have been rich at all,] and in-as-much-as (it is)

λυπηρότερον φανῆναι ἰδιώτην ἐκ
more-distressing to-appear (a) private (person) from (having been a)

βασιλέως, ἢ μὴ βασιλεύσαι ἢ ἀρχήν.
king, than not to-have-reigned | if (from the) beginning [at all].

Οὐκ οὖν μὲν ἐπίστασαι ὅτι οἱ γενομένοι
Do-'you not therefore indeed 'know that — (those) 'having

νῦν ὑπήκοοι σοι ἐπέισθισαν οὐ τῇ
now 'become subject to-you 'have not 'submitted | (for) —

τῇ φιλίᾳ ἀρχεσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἀλλ'
your love [through love of you] to-be-governed by you, but

ἀνάγκῃ, καὶ ὅτι ἂν ἐπιχειροῖεν πάλιν
through-necessity, and that 'they would 'endeavour again

γίγνεσθαι ἐλεύθεροι, εἰ μὴ τις φόβος
to-become free, if (there were) not some fear (that)

κατέχοι; Ποτέρως οὖν οἶσι αὐτούς
might-restrain (them)? Whether therefore do-you-think (that) they

ἂν τε μᾶλλον φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ σωφρονεῖν
would also 'be more 'restrained-by-fear, and 'conduct (them-

τὰ πρὸς σέ,
selves more) 'discreetly (and obediently) in-the (affairs) concerning you,

εἰ ὁρῶεν τοὺς στρατιώτας οὕτω διακειμένους σοι,
if they-should-see the soldiers so disposed | to-you,

ὥς νῦν τε μένοντας, εἰ σὺ ἂν κηλεύεις, τ' ἂν
as now also remaining, if you would request (it), and —

ἔλδοντας αὐθίς ταχὺ, εἰ δέοι, τε ἄλλους
having-come back speedily, if it-is-required, also (that) others

ἀκούοντας πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ τούτων
hearing much good (concerning you) of-those (soldiers

περὶ σοῦ, ἂν παραγενέσθαι
who have been in service) with you, would join (you)

ταχυ ὅποτε βούλοιο· ἢ εἰ κατα-
immediately when you-might-wish (it); or if they-should-form-a-an-un-

δοξάσειαν ἄλλους ἢ μὴτ' ἐλθεῖν σοι,
favourable-opinion (of you, that) others would not go to-you,

δι' ἀπιστίαν ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενη-
through distrust (arising) from the (things that) now have-hap-

μένων, τε τούτους εἶναι εὐνουστέρους αὐτοῖς
pened, also (that) these (Greeks) are better-affected to-them

ἢ σοί; Ἀλλὰ μὴν
(namely, your unconquered subjects,) than to-yourself? But certainly

ὑπεῖξάν σοι οὐδέ γε λειφθέντε
(that these people) submitted to-you not at-least (as) deficient

πλήθει ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἀπορία προστατῶν.
In-number (to) us, but (as being) in-want of-leaders,

Οὐκ οὖν καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος, μὴ λάβωσι
(Is there) not therefore even this (as a) danger, lest they take

προστάτας τινὰς αὐτῶν τούτων, οἱ νομίζουσιν
(as) leaders some of-those same, who consider

ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἢ καὶ τοὺς Λακε-
(themselves) wronged by you, or even the Lace-

δαιμονίους κρείττονας τούτων,
dæmonians better (and more powerful than) those,

ἐὰν μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπισχνῶνται συστρατεῖσθαι
if indeed the soldiers promise to-serve-in-the-army

αὐτοῖς προθυμότρον ἂν νῦν ἀναπράξωσι τὰ
with-them more-spiritedly (if) 'they would now 'exact the

παρὰ σοῦ, δὲ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι συναινέσωσιν
(money) from you, and the Lacedæmonians should-agree-with

αὐτοῖς ταῦτα διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς
hem (about) these (things) through | the to-want [want] of the

ἰσχυροῦς; Ὅτι γε μὴν οἱ Θρᾷκες γενόμενοι
army? That at-least certainly the Thracians | having-become

ὑπὸ σοι ἂν πολὺ προθυμότερον ἴοιεν
under you [subjugated by you] would much more-promptly go

ἐπὶ σε ἢ σὺν σοι, οὐκ ἄδηλον· γὰρ μὲν σοὶ
against you than with you, (is) not doubtful; for indeed you

κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάχει αὐτοῖς, δὲ σοῦ κρατου
conquering slavery is for-them, but you being-con-

μείνῃ, ἐλευθερία. Δὲ καὶ εἰ ἤδη δεῖ προνο
quered, liberty. And also if it-'is now 'necessary to pro

εἶσθαι τι τῆς χώρας, ὡς οὐσης σῆς, ποτέρως
vide something for-the country, as being yours, whethers

ἂν οἶε αὐτὴν εἶναι μᾶλλον ἀπαθῇ κακῶν,
you may 'think it to-be more free-from evil,

εἰ αὐτοὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπολαβόντες ἃ
if they the soldiers having-received (from you) what

ἐγκαλοῦσιν καταλιπόντες εἰρήνην οἴχονται, ἢ εἰ
they-claim leaving peace should-depart, or if

οὗτοί τε μένοιεν ὡς ἐν πολεμίᾳ,
these (soldiers should) also remain as in (a) hostile (country),

σύ τε πειρῶ ἔχων ἄλλους πλείονας
you also should-endeavour having other (soldiers) more-numerous (than)

τούτων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι, δεομένους τῶν
these to-encamp-over-against (them), wanting —

ἐπιτηδείων; Δὲ ποτέρως πλεῖον ἀργύριον ἂν
provisions? And whether more money might

ἀναλωθεῖν, εἰ τοῦτο τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθεῖν,
be-spent, if that — (which) is-due should-be-paid,

ἢ εἰ τε ταῦτα ὀφείλοιντο, τε δέοι
than if also this (money were left) due, and it-were-necessary

σε μισθοῦσθαι ἄλλους κρείττονας τούτων;
(that) you should-hire other (troops) better (than) these?

Ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης, ὡς ἐδήλου πρὸς ἐμὲ, τοῦτο
But — Heraclides, as he-declared to me, this

τὸ ἀργύριον δοκεῖ εἶναι πάμπαν. Ἡ μὲν ἐστὶ
— money seems to-be very-great. — Certainly it-is

γε πολὺ ἑλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ
at-least (a) much smaller (or easier affair) now for-you both

λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι τοῦτο, ἢ, πρὶν
to-take this and pay this, than, before (that)

ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σε, δέκατον μέρος
we came to you, (to take or pay the) tenth part

τούτου. Γὰρ ἐστὶν οὐ ἀριθμός ὁ ὀρί-
 of-it For it-is not (the) number (or amount) — (that) de-
 ζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις
 terminates the much and the little, but the power
 τε τοῦ ἀποδιδόντος καὶ τοῦ λαμβάνοντος.
 not-only of — paying but-also of — taking (and

Δὲ νῦν ἡ πρόσδοδος σοὶ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν
 receiving). But now the income to-you for (the) year
 ἔσται πλείων, ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ πάντα ἃ ἐκέ-
 will-be more, than before — all which you-had-pos-
 τησο. Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Σεύδη, προενοούμην ταῦτα
 sessed. I indeed, O Seuthes, have-considered these (things)

ὥς ὄντος φίλου σου, ὅπως τε σύ δοκοῖς ἄξιος
 as being (a) friend of-you, so-that also you may-appear worthy
 ὧν ἀγαθῶν οἱ θεοὶ ἔδωκαν σοι, ἐγὼ
 of-the good-things — (that the) gods have-given you, | (and) I
 τε μὴ διαφθαρείην ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ.
 also (that) I-might not 'be-ruined in the army

Γὰρ ἴσθι εὔ,
 [and that I might not lose all credit in the army]. For know well,
 ὅτι ἐγὼ νῦν οὔτ' βουλόμενος ἂν δυνηθεῖην ποιῆσαι
 that I now neither wishing could I-be-able to-do
 κακῶς σὺν ταύτῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ, οὔτ' εἰ ἂν πάλιν
 harm with this — army, nor if 'I might again
 βουλοίμην βοηθῆσαι, ἂν γενοίμην ἱκανός.
 'desire to-assist (you), might I-be able.

Γὰρ οὕτω ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειται πρὸς ἐμέ. Καίτῃ
 For thus the army (is) disposed to me. | And-certainly
 ποιῶμαι αὐτὸν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσιν,
 I-make you yourself to-give-witness with (the) gods knowing,

ὅτι
 [and I call on you and the gods, knowing the truth, to witness,] that 'I
 οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ σοῦ οὐδέν ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις,
 — 'have from you nothing for the soldiers,
 οὔτε πώποτε ἤτησα εἰς τὸ ἴδιον
 nor have-'I ever 'asked (of you) for — (my) private (use)

τὰ ἐκείνων, οὔτε ἀπήτησα ἃ
 the (things belonging to) them, nor have-I-asked-for (that) which
 ὑπέσχου μοι. Ὅμνυμι σοι δὲ ἀποδιδόντος
 you-promised me. I-swear to-you indeed (that) offering
 ἂν μὴ δέξασθαι, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρα-
 (pay to me) 'I would not 'have-received (it), unless also the sol-
 τῶται ἐμελλον συναπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἐαυ-
 diers were-about to-receive-together-with (me) the (pay) of-them-
 τῶν. Γὰρ ἦν αἰσχρὸν διαπεπραῆσθαι μὲν
 selves. For it-would-have-been disgraceful to-have-accomplished indeed
 τὰ ἐμὰ, δὲ ἐμὲ περιδεῖν τὰ
 -- my-own (affairs), | but (for) me to-have-neglected the (affairs)
 ἐκείνων ἔχοντα κακῶς,
 of-them having (themselves) ill, [but for me to neglect their
 ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώ-
 affairs when in an unsatisfactory condition,] otherwise also even hon-
 μενον ὑπ' ἐκείνων. Καίτοι Ἡρακλείδῃ γε
 oured by them. Though-indeed to-Heraclides at-least
 πάντα δοκεῖ εἶναι λῆρος, πρὸς ἔχειν τὸ
 all seems to-be (a) trifle, — (compared) to-having —
 ἀργύριον ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου. Ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Σεύδῃ,
 money by all means. I indeed, O Sentes,
 νομίζω οὐδὲν κτῆμα εἶναι κάλλιον οὐδὲ λαμ-
 think (that) no possession to-be more-beautiful or more-
 πρότερον ἀνδρί, ἄλλως τε καὶ
 illustrious 'in (a) 'man, | otherwise also even [especially] 'in (a)
 ἄρχοντι, ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναί-
 'ruler, (than) virtue and justice and gene-
 τητος. Γὰρ ὁ ἔχων ταῦτα πλουτεῖ μὲν
 rosity. For — (he) having these (things) is-rich indeed
 ὄντων πολλῶν φίλων, δὲ καὶ πλουτεῖ
 (being) (having) many friends, and also rich (in)
 ἄλλων βουλομένῳ γενέσθαι, καὶ μὲν
 others wishing to-become (his friends), and indeed (when)
 παρ᾽ αὐτῶν εὖ ἔχει τοὺς συνησθησομένους,
 'among well he-has — (those) rejoicing-with (him),

εἰν δὲ σφαλῇ τι, σπανίζει
 [if indeed he-falls (in) any-thing, [in reverse of fortune,] he-wants
 οὐ τῶν βοηθησόντων. Ἀλλὰ γάρ
 not — (those) helping (him). But (enough) for
 εἰ μήτε κατέμαδες ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν ἔργων,
 if you-'have neither 'learned from — my actions,
 ὅτι ἦν φίλος σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς, μήτε
 tha: I-was (a) friend to-you from — mind, [at heart,] nor
 δύνασαι γινῶναι τοῦτο ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν
 (that you) have-been-able to-have-known this from — my
 λόγων, ἀλλὰ κατανόησον πάντως τοὺς λόγους τῶν
 words, but-yet consider by-all-means the words of-the
 στρατιωτῶν· γὰρ παρῆσθα, καὶ ἤκουες, ἃ
 soldiers; for you-were-present, and you-heard, what
 ἔλεγον οἱ βουλόμενοι ψέγειν ἐμέ. Γὰρ κατη-
 they-said, — (those) wishing to-asperse me. For they-
 γόρουν μου μὲν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὡς ποιόμην
 accused me indeed to (the) Lacedæmonians, that I-made
 πλείονος περὶ σε ἢ Λακεδαιμονίους· δ'
 more — (of) you than (of the) Lacedæmonians; and
 αὐτοὶ ἐνεκάλουν ἐμοί, ὥς μᾶλλον μέλοι μοι,
 they charged me, that it-'was more (a) 'care to-me,
 ὅπως τὰ σὰ ἔχοι καλῶς
 [that — your (affairs) might-have (themselves) well [that your
 ἢ ὅπως τὰ ἐαυτῶν· ἔφασαν
 affairs might prosper] or than the (affairs) of-them; they-said
 δὲ με καὶ ἔχειν δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ. Καίτοι
 indeed (that) I even had presents from you. And-yet
 πότερον οἶει αὐτοὺς ἐνιδόντας μοι τινα
 whether do-you-think (that) they having-seen in-me some
 κακόνοιαν πρὸς σέ, αἰτιᾶσθαι με ἔχειν τὰ ταῦτα
 ill-will toward you, accused me of-having — these
 δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ, ἢ κατανόησαντ' ἐν πολλῇ
 presents from you, or perceiving (in me) much
 προθυμίαν περὶ σε; Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι ἀνθρώπους
 zeal for you? I indeed think (that) men

νομίζειν, εὖνοιαν δεῖν ἀποκείσθαι τούτῳ
 consider (that) gratitude ought to-be-laid-up for-those (persons,
 παρ' οὗ τις δωρά ἄν λαμβάνῃ. Δὲ σὺ πρὶν μὲν
 from whom any gift may be-received. But you before indeed
 ἐμὲ ὑπηρετῆσαι σοι τι, ἐδέξω ἡδέως καὶ
 I had-'done you any 'service, gave favourably —
 ὁμμασι καὶ φωνῇ καὶ ξενίοις, καὶ οὐκ
 looks and words and gifts-of-hospitality, | and 'had not
 ἐνἐπίμπλαστο ὑπισχνούμενος
 'filled-up [and did not satisfy yourself] promising
 ὅσα ἔσοιτο· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας
 how-great would-be (my rewards); when indeed you-had-accomplished
 ἃ ἐβούλου, καὶ γεγένησαι μέγιστος ὅσον
 what you-wished, and (that you) have-become as-great as
 ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην, τολμᾷς περιο-
 I was-able (to assist you to become), can-you-bear to-see-with-
 ρᾶν νῦν με ὄντα οὕτω ἄτιμον ἐν τοῖς στρα-
 indifference now me being thus dishonoured among the sol-
 τιώταις; Ἀλλὰ μὲν, πιστεύω ὅτι καὶ τὸν χρόνον
 diers? But certainly, I-trust that even — time
 διδάξειν σε δόξει σοι ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ σε
 will-teach you (that) it-will-seem (best) to-you to-pay-the-debt, and you
 αὐτόν γε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι ὁρῶντά τοὺς
 yourself at-least 'will not 'bear seeing — (those)
 προεμένους εὐεργεσίαν σοὶ ἐγκαλοῦντας
 freely-bestowing benefits on-you accusing (and reproaching)
 σοι. Οὖν δέομαι σοῦ, ὅταν ἀποδιδῶς, προδυσμεῖσθαι
 you. Therefore I-entreat you, when you-pay, you-will-study
 ποιῆσαι ἐμὲ τοιοῦτον παρὰ τοῖς στρατιώταις οἷον περ
 to-make me the-same with the soldiers as-altogether
 καὶ παρέλαβες.
 even (when) you-received (me into your service).

Ὁ Σεύδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα κατηράσατο
 — Seuthes hearing these (things) uttered-imprecations-against
 τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν·
 the author of — not long-since paying the wage

(καὶ πάντες ὑπώπτευσαν τοῦτον εἶναι Ἡρα-
 (and all suspected this (one) to-be Hera-

κλείδην·) γὰρ ἐγώ, ἔφη, οὔτε διανοήδην
 elides;) for I, said-he, [Seuthes,] never intended

πώποτε ἀποστερηῆσαι, τε ἀποδώσω.
 at-any-time to-deprive (the men of their pay), and I-will-pay (it).

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν
 — Xenophon then again said: Since therefore

διανοῇ ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν ἐγώ δέομαι σου ἀποδιδόναι
 you-are-resolved to-pay, now I entreat you to-pay

δί' ἐμοῦ, καὶ μὴ περιδεῖν με διὰ σέ
 (them) through me, and not to-neglect me through you

ἔχοντα ἀνομοίως νῦν τε ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ
 having (myself) differently now also in the army

καὶ ὅτε ἀφικόμεθα πρὸς σέ. Ὁ δ'
 — (than) when we-came to you. — (Seuthes) indeed

εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' οὐτ' ἔσῃ ἀτιμότερος τοῖς
 said: But you-'will not 'be more-dishonoured among-the

στρατιώταις δι' ἐμέ, ἂν τε μένης παρ' ἐμοί,
 soldiers through me, should also you-remain with me,

ἔχων μόνους χιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἐγὼ τε
 having only thousand heavy-armed-men, I 'will also

ἀποδώσω σοὶ τὰ χωρία, καὶ τἄλλα δ'
 'give you — (strong) places, and the-other (things) which

ὑπεσχόμεν. Δὲ ὁ πάλιν εἶπε·
 I-promised (you). But — (Xenophon) again said: (That)

Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ
 these (things) indeed (should) have (themselves) so (is) not

οἶόν τε· δὲ ἀπόπεμπε ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μὴν, ἔφη
 possible; but 'send us 'away. And certainly, said

Σεύδης γε οἶδα ὅν καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον σοι
 Seuthes 'I at-least 'know (it is) being even safer for-you

μένειν ἐμοὶ ἢ ἀπιέναι. Ὁ δὲ πάλιν
 to-remain with-me than to-depart. — (Xenophon) indeed again

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ τὴν σὴν πρόνοιαν.
 said: But indeed I-praise — your forethought

Ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε. Δ' ὅποι ἐγὼ
For-me indeed to-remain (is) not possible. But wherever I

ἂν ὦ ἐντιμότερος, νόμιζε καὶ τοῦτο ἔσεσθαι
may be more-honoured, know (that) even this will-be (a)

ἀγαθὸν σοί. Ἐντεῦθεν Σεύδης λέγει·
good (thing) for-you. Then Seuthes says:

Ἀργύριον μὲν ἔχω οὐκ, ἀλλ' ἢ τι μικρόν,
Money indeed I-have not, but really-only some little,

καὶ τοῦτο δίδωμι σοι, τάλαντον· δὲ
and this I-will-give you, (namely a) talent; (I have) however

ἑξακοσίους βοῦς, καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια,
six-hundred oxen, and sheep about four-thousand,

καὶ ἀνδράποδα εἰς ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι.
and slaves to (the number of a) hundred and twenty.

Λαβὼν ταῦτα, καὶ τοὺς ὁμήρους τῶν ἀδίκη-
Having-taken these, and the hostages of — (those) acting-

σάντων σε, προσλαβὼν, ἀπιθι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
unjustly to-you, (and) having-received (them) depart. — Xenophon

γελάσας εἶπεν· Ἦν οὖν ταῦτα μὴ
having-laughed said: If therefore these (things) 'do not

ἕξικνήται εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνος φήσω
'amount to (a sufficiency) for-the pay, (for) whom shall-I-say

ἔχειν τάλαντον; Οὐκ ἄρ', ἐπειδὴ καὶ
(that I) have (the) talent? (Is it) not therefore, since even

ἐπικίνδυνόν ἐστι μοί, ἄμεινον ἀπιόντά γε φυλάτ-
danger is to-me, better going-away at-least to-guard-

τεσθαι πέτρους; Δὲ ἤκουες τὰς ἀπειλάς.
myself (against) stones? 'You indeed 'heard the threats

Τότε δὴ μὲν ἔμεινε αὐτοῦ.
Then truly indeed he-remained there (that day).

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τε ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς ἃ ὑπέ-
But on-the next-day 'he also 'gave to-them what he-had-

σχετο, καὶ συνέπεμψε τοὺς ἐλάσσοντας
promised, and he-sent-with (them) — (those) driving

ταῦτα. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ τέως μὲν
these (=attle). The soldiers however in-the-mean-time indeed

ἔλεγον, ὥς Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὥς Σεύδην οἰκήσων
 said, that Xenophon was-gone to Seuthes, dwelling
 καὶ ἀποληψόμενος ἃ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ·
 (with him) and having-received what he-promised him;
 δε ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν ἥκοντα τε ἡσθησαν
 bu: when they-saw him coming they-'were not-only 'delighted
 καὶ προσέδρον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρ-
 out-also ran-to (him). But Xenophon when he-saw Char-
 μινόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· Ταῦτα, ἔφη, καὶ
 minus as also Polynicus: These (things), said-he, 'have even
 δι' ὑμᾶς σέσωσται τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ ἐγὼ παρα-
 through you 'been-saved for-the army, and I de-
 δίδωμι αὐτὰ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαδέμενοι διά-
 liver them to-you; you indeed having-disposed-of (them) dis-
 δοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. Οἱ οὖν μὲν,
 tribute (the proceeds) to-the soldiers. — (Those) therefore indeed,
 παραλαβόντες καὶ καταστήσαντες λαφυρο-
 having-received (the things) and having-appointed booty-
 πώλας, ἐπώλουν, καὶ εἶχον πολλήν αἰτίαν.
 sellers, sold (the things), and they-had much blame.
 Δὲ Ξενοφῶν οὐ προσήει, ἀλλὰ ἦν φανερός
 Bu. Xenophon 'did not 'go-near (them), but was openly
 παρασκευοζόμενος οἴκαδε· γὰρ πῶ ψῆφος
 preparing for-home; for as-yet (a) vote (or sentence)
 οὐ ἐπῆκτο αὐτῷ Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς.
 'was not 'proposed against-him at-Athens respecting banishment.
 Δὲ οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ προσελθόντες
 But — (his) friends in the camp going-to
 αὐτῷ ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν, πρὶν ἀπα-
 him requested (that he would) not depart, before he-might
 γάγοι τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ παραδοίη Θίβρωνι.
 lead-off the army, and deliver (it) to-Thibron

CHAPTER VI. I

Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον· καὶ
 THENCE they-sailed-across to Lampsacus; and
 Εὐκλείδης μάντις, Φλιάσιος, ὁ υἱὸς Κλεαγόρου,
 Euclides (the) augur, (a) Phliasian, the son of-Cleagorus,
 τοῦ γεγραφότος τὰ ἐνύπνια ἐν Λυκείῳ, ἀπαντᾷ
 the (one) having-written the dreams in (the) Lyceum, came-to-meet
 τῷ Ξενοφῶντι. Οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι,
 — Xenophon. This (person) congratulated — Xenophon,
 ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἠρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον
 that he-had-been-saved, and inquired-of him how-much gold
 ἔχει. Ὁ δ' ἐπομόσας αὐτῷ εἶπεν,
 he-has. — (Xenophon) indeed having-taken-an-oath to-him said,
 ἥ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μὴδὲ ἱκανὸν ἐφόδιον
 (that) there-was-certainly to-be not sufficient travelling-expenses
 ἀπιόντι οἴκαδε, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ
 departing for-home, unless he-sold — (his) horse and
 ἃ εἶχεν ἀμφ' αὐτόν. Δ' ὁ οὐκ ἐπί-
 what he-had about him. But — (Euclides) 'did not 'be-
 στευεν αὐτῷ. Δ' ἐπεὶ Λαμψακηνοὶ ἐπεμψαν
 lieve him. But when (the) Lampsaceans had-sent
 ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ Ἀπόλ-
 gifts-of-hospitality to — Xenophon, and he-sacrificed to — Apollo,
 λωνι, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ὁ Εὐκλείδης
 he-placed-beside (him) — Euclides; — Euclides
 δὲ ἰδὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα εἶπεν, ὅτι πείδοιτο αὐτῷ
 indeed seeing the victims said, that he-believed him
 μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. Ἀλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι
 [not to-be [not to have] riches. But I-know, said-he, that
 καὶ ποτὲ μέλλῃ ἔσεσθαι τι
 even-if (money) at-any-time should-be-about to-be (yours) some
 ἐμπόδιον φαίνεται, εἰ μὴδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ
 impediment shows-itself, if no other, you yourself

Ο Ξενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα. Ὅ
 — Xenophon assents to-these (things). — (Euclides,
 δὲ εἶπε· Γὰρ ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ Μειλίχιος ἐστι
 indeed said: — (However) — Jupiter — Meilichius is (a)
 ἐμπόδιον· καὶ ἐπῆρετο, εἰ ποτὲ ἤδη θύσειν,
 hindrance: and inquired, if ever now (that he) sacrificed,
 ὥσπερ οἴκοι, ἔφη, ἐγὼ εἰώδην θύεσθαι καὶ
 the-same-as at-home, said-he, I was-accustomed to-sacrifice and
 ὀλοκαυτεῖν ὑμῖν. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἐξ οὗτου
 offer-holocausts for-you. But — (Xenophon) said, from whatever
 ἀπεδήμησε οὐ τεθυκέναι τῷ τούτῳ
 (time) he-left-home (that he) 'had not 'sacrificed to — this
 θεῷ. Οὖν συνεβούλευσεν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καδὰ
 god. Therefore he-advised him to-sacrifice as
 εἰώδει, καὶ, ἔφη, συνοίσειν
 he-had-been-accustomed, and, said-he, (I think that) it-will-contribute
 ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν προ-
 for the better. And on-the next-day — Xenophon pro-
 ελδὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο, καὶ ὠλοκαύτει χοίρους
 ceeding to Ophrynum sacrificed, and burned-up hogs
 τῷ νόμῳ πατρίῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρει.
 in-the manner (of his) country, and he-found-the-entrails-favourable.
 Καὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ Βίτων ἀφικεῖται καὶ
 And on-that — (same) day Biton arrived also
 ἅμα Εὐκλείδης δώσοντες χρήματα τῷ στρατεύ-
 together-with Euclides | having-given money to-the army;
 ματι· καὶ ξενοῦνται τῷ
 [with pay for the army;] and they-were-hospitably-entertained by —
 Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ λυσάμενοι ἵππον, ὃν ἀπέδοτο ἐ-
 Xenophon, and having-redeemed (the) horse, which he-sold in
 Λαμψάκῳ πεντήκοντα δαρεικῶν, ὑποπτεύοντες
 Lampsacus for-fifty darics, suspecting (that)
 αὐτὸν πεπραχέναι δι' ἔνδειαν, ὅτι
 he had-sold (it) through want, (because) that
 ἤκουον αὐτὸν ἡδεσθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, ἀπέ-
 they-had-heard (that) he was-fond-of the horse, they-

δοσαν καὶ ἤδελον οὐκ ἀπολαβεῖν τὴν
 restored (it to him) and they-would not receive the
 τιμὴν.
 price (from him).

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ
 Thence they-proceeded through — Troas, and
 ἐπερβάντες τὴν Ἰδην ἀφικοῦνται πρῶτον εἰς Ἄν-
 crossing-over — Ida they-arrived first at An-
 τανδρόν· εἶτα πορευόμενοι παρὰ θάλατταν
 tandrium; afterwards proceeding along (the) sea (they arrived)
 εἰς πεδῖον Θήβης τῆς Λυδίας. Ἐντεῦθεν
 on (the) plain of-Thebe — (in) Lydia. Thence
 ὁδεύσαντες δι' Ἀτραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ παρ'
 journeying through Atramyttium and Certonium by
 Ἀταρνέα ἐλθόντες εἰς πεδῖον Καΐκου κατα-
 Atarneus having-come to (the) plain of-Caicus they-
 λαμβάνουσι Πέργαμον τῆς Μυσίας.
 reached Pergamus — (in) Mysia.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν ξενοῦται παρ'
 Here indeed Xenophon was-entertained-hospitably by
 Ἑλλάδι, γυναικὶ τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ Ἐρετριέως,
 Hellas, (the) wife of — Gongylus the Eretrian,
 καὶ μητρὶ Γοργίωνης καὶ Γογγύλου. Αὕτη
 and (the) mother of-Gorgion and Gongylus. This (Hellas)
 δὲ φράζει αὐτῷ, ὅτι ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ Πέρσης
 indeed mentions to-him, that there-was in the plain (a) Persian
 ἀνὴρ Ἀσιδάτης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν,
 man (called) Asidates; this (person) she-said (that) he, [Xenophon,]
 εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίοις ἀνδράσι,
 if he-would-go at — night with three-hundred men,
 ἂν λαβεῖν καὶ αὐτόν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ παῖδας,
 might capture — him, and (his) wife, and children,
 καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλὰ.
 and — (his) property; (and that this) was indeed much.
 Ἐπεμψε δὲ τε τὸν ἀνεψιὸν αὐτῆς καὶ Δαφνα-
 She-sends indeed also the cousin of-herself and Daphna

γόραι, ὃν ἐποιεῖτο πλείστου, καθηγησομένους
goras, whom she-'made much 'of, acting-as-guides (in)

ταῦτα. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔχων τούτους
these (things). — Xenophon therefore having these (men)

παρ ἑαυτῷ ἐδύετο. Καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἡλείος,
with himself sacrificed. And Basias the Elian, (an)

μάντις παρών, εἶπεν, ὅτι τὰ ἱερὰ εἴη καλλίστα
augur being-present, said, that the victims were most-favourable

αὐτῷ, καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ εἴη ἀλώσιμος. Λειπνήσας οὖν
to-him, and the man might-be easily-captured. Having-supped therefore

ἐπορεύετο τε λαβὼν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς τοὺς
he-proceeded-forth also taking the captains — (those namely

μάλιστα φίλους, καὶ γεγενημένους πιστοὺς διὰ
his) greatest friends, and having-been faithful through

παντός, ὅπως ποιῆσαι εὖ αὐτούς. Δὲ καὶ
all, in-order-that he-might-do good to-them. And also

ἄλλοι συνεξέρχονται αὐτῷ βιασάμενοι
others joined him having-forced-themselves (on him)

εἰς ἑξακοσίους· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλυνον,
to (the number of) six-hundred; but the captains 'drove

ἵνα μὴ μεταδοῖεν τὸ μέρος
(them) 'back, that they-'might not 'share (in) the part

χρημάτων ὥς δὴ ἐτοίμων.
of-things as really ready (to be taken).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ
When however they-arrived (there) about mid night, the

ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὄντα πέριξ τῆς τύρσιος καὶ τὰ
slaves indeed being about the castle and the

πλείστα χρήματα ἀπέδρα αὐτοὺς, παραμε-
most (of the) things escaped them, having.

λοῦντας, ὥς λάβοιεν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν καὶ
neglected (them), that they-might-take Asidates himself and

τὰ ἐκείνου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πυργομαχοῦντες
the (property) of-him. But when assaulting they-'were

οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν, (γὰρ ἦν ὑψηλὴ,
not 'able to-take the castle, (for it-was high,

καὶ μεγάλη, καὶ ἔχουσα προμαχεῶνας καὶ πολλοὺς
 and large, and having battlements and many
 καὶ μαχίμους ἄνδρας,) ἐπεχειρήσαν διορύττειν
 and brave men,) they-endeavoured to-dig-through (the
 τὸν πύργον. Ὁ τοῖχος δὲ ἦν ἐπ' ὀκτώ
 walls of) the castle. The wall indeed was of eight
 γήινων πλίνδων τὸ εὖρος. Ἄμα δὲ
 earthen bricks (in) the breadth. At-the-same-time however
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διωρώρυκτο· καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον
 with-the (break of) day it-was-dug-through; and as the first
 διεφάνη τις ἐνδοθεν βουπόρῳ ὀβελίσκῳ
 (opening) appeared some-one from-within 'with (an) 'ox-piercing spit
 ἐπάταξε τοῦ ἐγγυτάτῳ διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρόν· δὲ
 struck the nearest entirely-through the thigh; | and
 τὸ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν
 (for) the rest [and afterwards] shooting-arrows they-made (it)
 μηδὲ ἔτι εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς παρίεναι. Δὲ αἰτῶν
 no longer to-be safe to-approach. But they
 κεκραγόντων καὶ πυρσευόντων, Ἰταμβέλεσις μὲν
 shouting and giving-signals-by-torches, Itambelesis indeed
 ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὀπλίται
 having the force of-himself from Comania and heavy-armed
 Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ἱππεῖς, ὡς ὀγδοήκοντα,
 (men) Assyrians and Hyrcanian cavalry, about eighty,
 καὶ οὗτοι μισθοφόροι βασιλέως, καὶ ἄλλοι
 and these mercenaries 'of (the) 'king, and other
 πελτασταὶ εἰς ὀκτακοσίους, ἐκβοηδοῦσιν
 targeteers to (the number of) eight-hundred, came-'to (their)
 δ' ἄλλοι ἐκ Παρθενίου, δ' ἄλλοι
 assistance; and (also) others (came) from Parthenium, and others
 ἱξ Ἀππολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίων χωρίων,
 from Apollonia and from the near places,
 καὶ ἱππεῖς.
 likewise cavalry.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν ὥρα σκοπεῖν, πῶς ἡ ἀφodus
 Now truly it-was time to-consider, how the retreat

ἔσται· καὶ λαβόντες, ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ
 would-be; and taking, as-many-as there-were oxen and
 πρόβατα, ἤλαυνον, καὶ ποιησάμενοι
 sheep, they-'drove (them) 'off, and having-placed (the)
 ἀνδράποδα ἐντὸς πλαισίου· οὐ οὕτω προσέχοντες
 slaves within (the) square; not so-much as-applying
 τὸν νοῦν τοῖς χρήμασιν, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἔφοδος
 the mind to — (these) things, but (that) the retreat
 μὴ εἶη φυγή, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ χρήματα
 might not 'be (like a) flight, if leaving-behind the things
 ἀπίοιεν, καὶ τε οἱ πολέμιοι εἶεν θρασύτεροι,
 they-should-depart, and also the enemy might-become more-bold,
 καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀδυνότεροι· δὲ νῦν ἀπῆεσαν ὥς
 and the soldiers discouraged; but now they-retreated as
 μαχοῦμενοι περὶ τῶν χρημάτων. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
 fighting about the things (captured). But when
 Γογγύλος ἑώρα τοὺς Ἑλληνας ὀλίγους μὲν,
 Gorgylus saw the Greeks (to be) few indeed,
 δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους πολλοὺς, καὶ αὐτὸς
 but — (those) pressing-on (them) many, — he
 ἐξέρχεται βία τῆς μητρὸς, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν
 sallied-forth despite — (his) mother, | having the force
 ἑαυτοῦ, βουλόμενος συμ-
 of-himself, [having his own force with him,] wishing to-par-
 μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς συνεβοήθει
 icipate (in) the action: but also Procles came-'to
 ἐξ Ἀλισαρινῆς καὶ Τευδρανίας,
 (their) 'assistance from Halisarne and (likewise) Teuthranias,
 ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. Οἱ δὲ περὶ
 (he) who (was descended) from Damuratus. The (men) indeed with
 Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ ἤδη πάνυ ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν
 Xenophon when already much oppressed by the
 τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, πορευόμενοι
 arrows and slings, (while) marching-forward 'in (a)
 κύκλῳ, ὅπως ἔχουσιν τὰ ὅπλα πρὸ
 'circle, so-that they-might-have — (their) shields (as a defence) against

τῶν τοξευμάτων, μόλις διαβαίνουνσι τὸν ποταμὸν
the arrows, 'they with-difficulty 'crossed-over the river

Καῖκον, ἐγγὺς οἱ ἡμίσεις τετρωμένοι. Καί
Caucus, near the half (of them) being-wounded. And

ἐνταῦθα Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς τιτρω-
here Agasias (the) Stymphalian, (a) captain, was-

σκεται, μαχόμενος τὸν πάντα χρόνον πρὸς τοὺς
wounded, fighting the whole time against the

πολεμίους. Καὶ διασώζονται, ἔχοντες ὥς διακόσια
enemy. And they-were-saved, having about two-hundred

ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα ὅσον θύματα.
slaves and cattle as-much-as (was required for the) sacrifices.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θυσάμενος, ἐξάγει
But the next-day — Xenophon having-sacrificed, lead-out

τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα νύκτωρ, ὅπως ὅτι ἔλθοι
the whole army at-night, in-order that he-might-go (a)

μακροτάτην τῆς Λυδίας εἰς τὸ
very-long (way) through — Lydia for the (purpose, that the

μὴ φοβεῖσθαι διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐγγὺς,
Persian) 'might not 'be-alarmed | through the to-be near, [by

ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀσι-
his proximity,] but be-'off (his) 'guard. But — Asi-

δάτης ἀκούσας, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν εἶη τεθυμένος πάλιν
dates hearing, that Xenophon has-been-sacrificing again

ἐπ' αὐτὸν, καὶ ἥξει
(about marching) against him, and (that) he-would-come (back)

παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἔξαυλίζεται εἰς
with-all the army, 'he [the Persian] 'went-out to

κώμας ἔχουσας ὑπὸ τὸ πόλισμα Παρθένιον.
villages having (themselves) under the town (of) Parthenium.

Ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγχάνουσιν
Here — (those) with Xenophon come-upon

αὐτῷ, καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ
him, and captured him, and (his) wife, and

παῖδας, καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, καὶ πάντα τὰ
(his) children, and — (his) horses, | and all the

τὰ ὄντα · καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερα
 — being (his); [and all his property;] and thus the first
 ἱερὰ ἀπέβη. Ἐπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται
 sacrifices happened (truly). Afterwards 'they again 'arrived
 εἰς Πέργαμον. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὐκ
 at Pergamus. Here — Xenophon 'could not
 ἡπάσατο τὸν θεόν· γὰρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες, καὶ
 'complain (of) the god; for also the Lacedæmonians, and
 οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί, καὶ οἱ στρα-
 the captains and the other generals, and the sol-
 τιῶται, συνέπραττον ὥστε λαμβάνειν ἐξαίρετα
 diers, agreed that he-should-take select-portions
 καὶ ἵππους, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ τᾶλλα· ὥστε
 — (namely) horses, and yokes-of-oxen, and other-things; so-that
 εἶναι ἤδη ἱκανὸν καὶ ποιεῖν εἰς ἄλλον.
 he-was now able even to-do good to-another.

Ἐν τούτου Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ
 After this Thibron having-arrived he-received the
 στρατεύμα καὶ συμμίσας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ,
 army and having-mixed (it) with-the other Grecian
 ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον
 (force), he-made-war against Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus.

Οἶδε ἄρχοντες δὲ τῆς χώρας βασιλεῶς,
 Those governors indeed of-the territories 'of (the) 'king,
 ὅσῃν ἐπῆλθομεν· Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας·
 as-much-as we-passed-through (were these): of-Lydia, Artimas;
 Φρυγίας Ἀρτακάμας· Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας
 of-Phrygia, Artacamas; of-Lycaonia and Cappadocia,
 Μιθριδάτης· Κιλικίας Συέννεσις· Φοινίκης καὶ
 Mithridates; of-Cilicia, Suennesis; of-Phoenicia and
 Ἀραβίας Δέρνης· Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσος·
 Arabia, Dernes; of-Syria and Assyria Belesys;
 Βαβυλῶνος Ῥωπάρας· Μηδίας Ἀρβάκας· Φασια-
 of-Babylon, Rhoparas; of-Media, Arbacas; of-the-Pha-
 νῶν καὶ Ἑσπεριτῶν Τιρίβαζος· (δὲ Καρδοῦχοι,
 sians and the-Hesperitæ, Tiribazus; (for (the) Cardouchi,

δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες,
and also (the) Chalybes and (the) Chaldeans and (the) Macrones
καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ
and (the) Colchians and (the) Mossynœci and (the) Tibareni

αὐτόνομοι.) Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας.
(were) independent-nations;) of-Paphlagonia, Corylas; 'of (the)

Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος· τῶν Θρακῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ
'Bithynians Pharnabazus; of — (those) Thracians in Europe,

Σεύθης. Ἄριθμός δὲ τῆς συμπάσης ὁδοῦ τῆς
Seuthes. (The) enumeration indeed of-the entire route of-the

ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως διακόσιοι δεκα-
ascent and descent (is) two-hundred (and) fif-

πέντε σταδιοί, χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πενήκοντα
teen days'-march, one-thousand one-hundred (and) five

πέντε παρασάγγαι, τριςμύρια τετρακισχίλια
five parasangs, thirty-thousand (and) four-thousand

ἑξακόσια πενήκοντα στάδια. Πλήθος
(and) six-hundred (and) fifty stadia. (The) amount-of

χρόνου τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως
time (spent in) the ascent and descent (being:

ἔνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.
a-year and three months.

THE END.

Hi
290

THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, SANTA CRUZ

This book is due on the last **DATE** stamped below.
To renew by phone, call **429-2756**
Books not returned or renewed within 14 days
after due date are subject to billing.

JUL 25 1989

JUL 24 1989 REC'D

APR 15 '93

NOV 10 1992 REC'D

JUL 20 '96

JUL 24 1996 REC'D

UG 1 3 1996

AUG 09 1995 REC'D

APR 23 1997

APR 23 1997 REC'D

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, SANTA CRUZ



3 2106 00901 6004

